

**Thirties session**  
Council session, part I  
Kingston,  
17-28 March 2024

## **Draft regulations on exploitation of mineral resources in the Area**

### **Compilation of proposals**

#### **Explanatory note**

1. This document is a collation of the following texts:
  - (a) The Presidents further revised draft text ([ISBA/28/C/WOW/CRP.2](#))
  - (b) The Chair of the OEWG's third revised draft text ([ISBA/28/C/OEWG/CRP.6](#))
  - (c) The Facilitator of the IWG on ENV fourth revised text ([ISBA/28/C/IWG/ENV/CRP.3/Rev.1](#))
  - (d) The Facilitator of the IWG on ICE fourth revised text ([ISBA/28/C/IWG/ICE/CRP.2](#))
  - (e) The Co-Facilitators of the IWG on IM revised text ([ISBA/28/C/IWG/IM/CRP.2](#))
2. This collation is a “copy/paste” of the texts of the different groups provided for the third part of the twenty-eight session and the first and second part of the twenty-ninth session.
3. This document is not to be confused with the revised consolidated text ([ISBA/30/C/CRP.1](#)) that is the actual negotiated text.
4. This document is a collation of old texts that also contains a compilation of all written proposals received after the third part of the twenty-eight session and the twenty-ninth session. This compilation also contains oral proposals provided during the first and second part of the twenty-ninth session.

### Comments/remarks

For the purposes of the present document, the following colours have been used for the inclusion of proposals:

- **Blue text highlighted in yellow** has been used for written proposals received after the third part of the twenty-eight session.
- **Blue text highlighted in green or in light blue** has been used when written proposals were received by delegations after the third part of the twenty-eight session, but where the proposals overlapped. This in order to avoid confusion.
- **Black text highlighted in teal** has been used for written and oral proposals received during and after the first part of the twenty-ninth session.
- **Black text highlighted in red** has been used for written and oral proposals received during and after the second part of the twenty-ninth session.

## Preamble

~~—In accordance with the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (“the Convention”);~~

~~—[Ensuring the effective protection for the Marine Environment from harmful effects, which may arise from the activities in the Area, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention];~~

~~—Reaffirming the fundamental importance of the principle that the Area and its resources are the common heritage of mankind;~~

~~—Emphasizing that the exploitation of the resources of the Area shall be carried out for the benefit of mankind as a whole, on whose behalf the International Seabed Authority acts, in accordance with Part XI of the Convention and the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (“the Agreement”);~~

~~—Considering that the objective of these regulations is to provide for the exploitation of the resources of the Area consistent with the Convention and the Agreement.~~

**[Desiring to act as stewards of the ocean in areas beyond national jurisdiction on behalf of present and future generations by protecting, caring for and ensuring responsible use of the marine environment, maintaining the integrity of ocean ecosystems and conserving the inherent value of biological diversity of areas beyond national jurisdiction;**

**Convinced of the need to safeguard Underwater Cultural Heritage;**

**Recalling relevant provisions of the Convention, in particular articles 149 and 303;**

**[Recalling the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples,]**

**[Affirming that nothing in these Regulations shall be construed as diminishing or extinguishing the existing rights of Indigenous Peoples, including as set out**

in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, or of, as appropriate, local communities,]

ALT TO ABOVE [Affirming that these Regulations shall recognized and safeguard the existing rights of Indigenous Peoples, including as set out in the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, or of, as appropriate, local communities,]] [IWG on UCH]

#### Preamble Alt.

In accordance with the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (“the Convention”) and the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 (“the Agreement”), the Area and its resources are the common heritage of ~~human~~ mankind, and the Exploration and ~~Germany - remove brackets]~~ Exploitation of the resources of the Area shall be carried out for the benefit of ~~human~~ mankind as a whole, on whose behalf the Authority acts.

The objective of these regulations is therefore to regulate ~~Germany - remove brackets]~~ ~~provide for]~~ the Exploitation of the ~~mineral]~~ ~~Spain]~~ resources of the Area consistent with the Convention, including the duty to take necessary measures in accordance with the Convention] ~~Germany - delete]~~ ~~Spain - reinstate]~~ to ensure effective protection ~~for]~~ ~~of]~~ ~~Spain - replace]~~ the Marine Environment from ~~harmful effects]~~ ~~Serious Harm]~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ caused by those activities.

The Authority acknowledges the current uncertainties and limited knowledge about deep ocean ecosystems and the potential effects of activities in the Area and the need to revise these regulations in light of advancements in scientific knowledge] ~~considers these regulations open to revision if necessary in light of advancement of scientific knowledge]~~ ~~Italy - replace]~~ ~~- Germany]~~

#### Comments/remarks

- I noted that many delegations welcomed the alternative wording of the preamble. Furthermore, many delegations stated their flexibility in terms of what version would be used. I therefore suggest continuing the negotiations based on the alternative wording, and I have attempted to implement the relevant parts of the original wording and ensured better reference to the language of article 145 of UNCLOS.

## Part I Introduction

### Regulation 1

#### Use of terms and scope

1. Terms used in the Convention shall have the same meaning in these Regulations.

2. In accordance with the Agreement, the provisions of the Agreement and part XI of the Convention shall be interpreted and applied together as a single instrument. These regulations and references in these regulations to the Convention are to be interpreted and applied accordingly.

[3. Subject to paragraph 1 and the Schedule, terms used in other [subsequent][Norway] rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority shall have the same meaning in these Regulations.] [PEW – delete para 3 entirely]

[3.alt Subject to paragraph 1 and the Schedule, terms used in in these Regulations shall have the same meaning as in other rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.] [Norway]

[3.alt2 Terms and phrases in these Regulations, used for the purposes of these Regulations and the applicable Standards and Guidelines are defined in the Schedule.] [Japan]

4. Terms and phrases used in these regulations are defined [for the purposes of these regulations] [Russia- delete] in the [S][s]chedule [Pew] [and the Standards and Guidelines.] [Russia, PEW – delete]

[4.alt Terms and phrases which are not defined in the Schedule, but used in these Regulations, shall have the same meaning as in other rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority.] [Japan]

5. Nothing in these Regulations shall affect the rights, jurisdiction and duties of States under the Convention, including the rights and legitimate interests of the [potentially affected] [Indonesia] coastal states [pursuant to] [such as in] [Micronesia suggests replacing] article 142 of the Convention [Indonesia - delete], the right to conduct marine scientific research in the Area pursuant to articles 143 and 256 of the Convention, and the exercise by States of the freedom of the high seas, [in accordance with] [pursuant to / as reflected in] [Singapore - replace] article 87 of the Convention.

6. These regulations are [accompanied] [complemented] [PEW; Argentina - suggests replacing] [Spain - supports] by Standards and Guidelines, [and Regional Environmental Management Plans, as may be adopted by the Authority from time to time, - PEW] as referred to in these regulations and the annexes thereto, as well as by further rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, [in particular on the protection and preservation of the Marine Environment] [Argentina; Russia - keep] [alt 1. including regional environmental management plans, [and conservation and management measures]] [alt 2. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] (6.bis)] [Spain – supports keeping] These regulations are further complemented by regional environmental management plans.[)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket] [Russia- delete] [Norway; Argentina; Russia – delete]

7. The annexes, appendices and schedule to these regulations form an integral part of the regulations and any reference to the Regulations includes the annexes, appendices and schedule thereto.

8. These regulations are subject to the provisions of the Convention and the Agreement [and other rules of international law not incompatible with the Convention.] [Russia - delete]

9. These [r][R]egulations [PEW] shall be applied in a uniform and non-discriminatory manner. *[One delegate suggests moving paragraph (9) to a new Regulation 2(7)].*

## Regulation 2

### Principles, approaches and policies

1. These [r][R]egulations [PEW], and any decision-making thereunder, shall be applied in [conformity] [accordance] [Russia – suggests replacing] with the principles governing the Area embodied in Section 2 of [the][Germany – delete] Part XI [with policies set out in Section 3 of the Part XI] [Russia] [and] [in][with][Germany suggests replacing] Part XII]] [Norway, Russia; Brazil – delete] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] of the Convention [and with the aim to achieve the Authority’s Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives] [Germany] [and relevant provisions of the Agreement] [Russia] [and with the other relevant rules of the Convention and the Agreement] [Russia].

2. [Recognizing that the rights in the Resources of the Area are vested in humankind as a whole, on whose behalf the Authority shall act,] [Russia - delete] Exploitation in the Area shall be carried out for peaceful purposes and for the benefit of humankind as a whole, taking into particular consideration the interests and needs of developing States, [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] while ensuring the effective protection of [the][Germany] marine environment[[, including biological diversity and ecological ecosystem integrity,]] [Germany] [Russia - delete] [Spain – supports keeping] from [harmful effects] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] which may arise from such activities in the Area [[ ]] [consistent] [in accordance] [Russia - replace] with Article 145 of the Convention ] [[Germany, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Indonesia - delete] [including] [biological diversity and ecological integrity]] [Spain – supports keeping] [Russia – delete] [its flora and fauna]] [Norway; Russia – delete] [The Authority and States Parties shall have the responsibility to ensure a reasonable balance between exploration for and exploitation of the resources in the Area and protection of the marine environment.][China]

[2 bis. Exploitation in the Area and other activities in the Marine Environment shall be carried out with reasonable regard for each other in accordance with article 147 of the Convention. ] [Pew; Germany - reinsert]

~~[[3. Exploitation in the Area shall not commence until the legal framework intended for the effective protection and preservation of the Marine Environment is adopted and scientific evidence demonstrates that the Exploitation will be conducted in such a manner as not to cause significant and harmful changes to the Marine Environment and its resources and to effectively protect and preserve the Marine Environment pursuant to article 145 and [article 209 of] Part XII of UNCLOS.]] [Brazil; Pew – reinsert / Russia - delete]~~

[3 alt 1. Exploitation shall not be authorized in the Area unless, [inter alia, phase one and two Standards and Guidelines] [Russia – delete] [measures] [Russia] are adopted [to ensure] [Russia] [, and] [Russia – delete] effective protection of the Marine Environment from harmful effects [can be ensured consistent] [Russia – delete] [in accordance] [Russia] with Article 145 of the Convention [[and including biological diversity and ecosystem integrity]] [Russia – delete]

[and effective protection of human life in accordance with Article 146 of the Convention].] [This does not prejudice preference and priority for a plan of work on exploitation in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III of the Convention.] [Russia]

[Norway, Nauru – delete 3 alt. 1 entirely]

[[[Germany – remove brackets]

3 alt 2. Exploitation in the Area shall not commence until:

(a) the legal framework intended for the effective protection and preservation of the Marine Environment has entered into force [ ] and the Authority has adopted an environmental policy [ ]; [Germany – remove brackets]

(b) the implementation of [Target 3 of] [Germany – delete] the Kunming-Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework is well on track in the area beyond national jurisdiction; and

(c) scientific evidence demonstrates that Exploitation will be conducted in such a manner so as: not to cause significant and harmful changes to the Marine Environment and its resources, [pursuant to article 196 of UNCLOS, and][Germany] to effectively protect and preserve the Marine Environment[, including biological diversity and ecosystem integrity,][Germany] pursuant to article 145 and Part XII of UNCLOS [[including biological diversity and ecosystem integrity]] [Germany – delete], and not to impede the full implementation of [Target 3 of] the Kunming-Montreal Global Biodiversity Framework in the area beyond national jurisdiction. ]

**[3 Alt. 3. Exploitation in the Area shall only commence:**

**(a) once all Phase 1 Standards and Guidelines, Phase 2 Standards and Guidelines and Phase 3 Standards and Guidelines have been adopted;**

**(b) when it is demonstrable, in the view of the Commission and Council, that such Exploitation can be conducted in such a manner so as to ensure effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects which may arise from Exploitation in the Area, and the ecological balance of the marine environment is not interfered with; and**

**(c) in instances where it would not impede the effective implementation of international frameworks and agreements related to the protection of the marine environment. Decisions regarding exploitation activities will be made by taking into consideration progress on the implementation of such frameworks and agreements;] [Netherlands]**

[Norway, Russia – delete 3 alt 2. entirely] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3.alt.1 and 3.alt.2 entirely] [Spain – supports para 3 or 3 alt.2] [Belgium – supports para 3 alt.2]

4. [According to article 145 of the Convention,] the effective protection of the Marine Environment from the harmful effects which may arise from Exploitation, in [accordance] [line] with the Authority's environmental policy, including regional environmental management plans, is based inter alia on the following principles and approaches:

4 alt. The following principles and approaches shall guide the application of these regulations:

(a) ~~[[The principle of] [[Intergenerational] [delete] equity.] [and the equitable sharing of benefits] [Brazil – also suggested moved after (a) Alt as “(a) Bis”] [regime of common heritage of mankind] [Russia- replace] [benefits for all mankind] [Russia - replace] [Sustainable Development] [Indonesia - replace]~~

~~[(a) Alt The principle of the common heritage of mankind] [Brazil]~~

~~[(a) bis principles of non-discrimination and uniformity] [Russia] [(a) bis the principle of non-discrimination] [Russia]~~

(b) Precautionary ~~[principle [or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Argentina – delete] [precautionary] [Germany] approach [as appropriate.] [Norway – delete] [Argentina - delete]~~

~~[(c) Ecosystem [[based management]] [Russia – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] approach.] [(c) An ecosystem approach;] [Germany suggests replacing]~~

~~[[c bis) An integrated approach to ocean management;] [Germany] [Russia - delete]~~

(d) Polluter pays principle.

~~[(e) Open access to [non-confidential] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] data, [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] information and knowledge ~~including~~ relating to the protection and preservation of the Marine Environment.] [Indonesia - delete]~~

(f) Transparency, ~~inclusivity~~ and accountability ~~[Russia – delete]~~ in decision-making ~~[including effective stakeholder involvement [through consultation] [Indonesia] and public participation] [as set out in these Regulations] [Russia];~~

(g) The use of ~~the [the scientific methods taking into account] [Russia] b[B]est [Germany] [A][a]vailable [Germany] [science and] [S][s]cientific [I][i]nformation; [Germany] [as defined by the Council] [Russia]~~

~~[(h) The use of relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities where available.] [Russia – delete] [IWG on UCH - retain]~~

~~[(h) bis The prevention of transboundary harm to the areas within national jurisdiction from activities in the Area, including the due diligence obligation of sponsoring States and Contractors in ensuring the prevention of such harm;] [Indonesia]~~

~~[(i) The protection and safeguarding of intangible Underwater Cultural Heritage, including the free prior informed consent of Indigenous people and low-end of local communities] [The Ocean Foundation]~~

~~[[5. These regulations shall be also applied in [accordance] [conformity] [Russia – suggests replacing] with the policies relating to activities in the Area established in article 150 and 151 of the Convention and [related principles contained] [Russia - delete] in the Annex of the Agreement] [Russia – suggests moving after para 1 as 1bis]; [as well as the environmental policy of the Authority] [Pew - reinsert] [and the policies adopted by the Assembly in accordance with the Convention] [Portugal].]~~

~~[5. Bis. Activities in the Area shall be carried out for the benefit of humankind as a whole, irrespective of the geographical location of States, whether coastal or land-locked, and taking into particular consideration the interests and needs of developing States.] [Brazil]~~

6. Members of the Authority, Sponsoring States, Contractors, and the Authority shall use best endeavours in their actions to uphold ensure PEW – suggests replacing public trust in PEW and the PEW regulatory integrity of, the Authority PEW, and shall not engage on decisions in which they have a conflict of interest. efforts to ensure performance of functions by the Authority Russia – suggests replacing Pew; Germany – reinsert para 6 Spain – reinsert para 6

Norway – delete para 6 entirely Russia – delete paras 5 and 6 entirely

### Regulation 3

#### Duty to cooperate and exchange of information

In matters relating to these regulations:

(a) Members of the Authority, the Enterprise, Applicants and Contractors shall cooperate with the Authority to facilitate performance of its duties and responsibilities under the Convention inter alia Russia to provide to the Authority Russia such Russia - delete necessary Russia data and information necessary for the Authority to discharge its duties and responsibilities under the Convention Russia - delete;

(b) The Authority and sponsoring States, flag States, and port States shall cooperate towards the avoidance of unnecessary duplication of administrative procedures and compliance requirements;

(c) The Authority and Russia – delete in cooperation with Russia sponsoring States shall cooperate to Russia – delete develop, implement and ensure Russia – delete effective and transparent communication, public information and public participation procedures and ensure their implementation Russia;

(d) The Authority shall consult and, where relevant cooperate, with Members of the Authority, including Russia sponsoring States, relevant Russia – delete potentially affected Indonesia coastal States contiguous/ adjacent /proximate Pew - supports to the Contract Area Russia – delete, Norway – delete port States, flag States, as well as with Russia competent international organizations and other relevant bodies as appropriate Norway – delete Pew – supports keeping relevant global regional, subregional and sectorial bodies Germany - replace, to develop measures to implement these regulations, including to:

(i) Ensure effective P protection Pew of human life and property at sea, and effective P protection Pew of the Marine Environment, with respect to activities in the Area;

(ii) Exchange information and data to facilitate compliance with and enforcement of applicable international rules and standards relevant rules, regulations, and procedures of the Authority;

(iii) Facilitate access to sites and items that may fall outside the Authority's jurisdiction Russia, UK – delete to be inspected under these Regulations and international laws of each State in order to fulfill Cuba for the purposes of Contractor compliance monitoring and enforcement. monitoring, compliance and enforcement UK - replace PEW



(e) Contractors, the Enterprise, sponsoring States and members of the Authority shall cooperate with the Authority ~~[to inform decisions and recommendations on] [Russia] [in] [Russia – delete]~~ the establishment and implementation of programmes to ~~[control and observe pollution and other hazards to] [Russia] [observe, measure, evaluate and analyse the impacts of Exploitation [and related activities][Norway – delete] on] [Russia – delete]~~ the Marine Environment ~~[in connection with activities in the Area] [Russia] [including at the regional scale, to share the findings and results of such programmes with the Authority for wider dissemination and to extend such cooperation and collaboration to the implementation] [Russia – delete] and [further development of] [Russia – delete] [on the] [Russia]~~ Best Environmental Practices in connection with activities in the Area;

(f) Members of the Authority, sponsoring States, Contractors, and the Enterprise shall, in conjunction with the Authority, cooperate ~~[among and] [Russia]~~ with each other, ~~[as well as with other Contractors and national and international scientific research and technology development agencies] [Pew – supports deleting] [and in accordance with their respective capabilities and resources] [IDG of the Enterprise]~~ with a view to:

(i) Sharing, exchanging and assessing ~~[environmental] [PEW – delete]~~ data and information ~~[for [and about] [PEW]] [about] [Pew - replace]~~ the Area, including by use of data repositories and open-access databases;

(ii) Identifying gaps in scientific knowledge and developing targeted and focused research programmes to address such gaps;

(iii) ~~[share expertise in the fields of the collection, sampling, standardization, assessment and management of data and] [Russia] [Collaborating with the scientific community to identify and develop best practices and] [Russia – delete] [inform decisions and recommendations of the Authority in order to] [Russia]~~ improve existing standards and protocols with regard to the collection, sampling, standardization, assessment and management of data and information;

(iv) Undertaking educational awareness programmes for Stakeholders relating to activities in the Area;

(v) Promoting the advancement of marine scientific research in the Area for the benefit of humankind as a whole; and

(vi) Developing incentive ~~[structures] [Pew – supports deleting] mechanisms,~~ including ~~[market-based instruments] [commercially available technology] [India],~~ to ~~[support transfer of technology and capacity [enhancement] [Pew – supports deleting] building] [capacity building and transfer of technology] [African Group] of developing states [and the Enterprise] [IDG of the Enterprise], [and to enhance the environmental performance of Contractors beyond the legal requirements] [Pew - delete]~~ including through technology development and innovation; ~~and~~

~~(vii) Establishing a community which links the ocean data with data product users such as biogeographers, and ecologists.~~

(g) In order to assist the Authority in carrying out its policy and duties under section 7 of the annex to the Agreement, Contractors and members of the Authority shall enable access to ~~[non-confidential] [Russia – remove brackets] information, upon the request by the Secretary General [for the Council], [upon the request of the Economic Planning Commission, or other appropriate organs of the Authority][PEW]~~ to facilitate the Authority's ~~[preparation of studies on]~~

[Russia – delete] [necessary analyses of] [Russia] the [potential] [Russia – delete] impact of Exploitation in the Area on the economies of developing land-based producers of those Minerals which are [likely to be] [Russia – delete] most seriously affected. [The content of [any] [Russia – delete] such [studies] [analyses] [Russia - replace] shall be in accordance with specific terms of reference and any relevant Standards, and taking account of Guidelines.] *[Facilitators' note: delegates are invited to consider whether the last sentence of this sub-paragraph (g) may be better located in a standalone provision, as this sub-paragraph's focus is on cooperation duties, and obligations of Contractors and member States (not the obligation on the Authority to produce such studies, to which the latter sentence pertains)]*

[(h) The Council shall, taking into account recommendations by the Commission, adopt Standards [and Guidelines [concerning the duties mentioned in] [Russia – delete] paras. (c) to (g)] [which establish requirements, obligations and procedural arrangements, including standardized data templates and methodology for data collection and analysis [within three years after the adoption of these regulations or before any Commercial Production commences, whichever takes place first].] [Russia – delete] [Pew - reinstate]

[(h) Alt Standards and Guidelines on requirements and procedures including standardized data templates and methodology for data collection and analysis regarding matters of this regulation are adopted by the Council and the Commission respectively.] [Russia]

[Norway – delete sub-paras h and g entirely]

[(i) The Authority may issue reasonable requests to Contractors, the Enterprise, and member States to participate in joint research or test activities in accordance with directions issued by, and under the control of, the Authority, in order for the Authority to test proposed or adopted rules, regulations and procedures, as well as monitoring practices, and other institutional functioning.]

[(j) Contractors, the Enterprise, and member States shall cooperate with requests under paragraph (i).] [PEW]

## Regulation 4

**Rights [and legitimate interests] of coastal States [and duty to notify]**  
**[Argentina; Brazil – keep / Australia - delete]**

*[Facilitators' Note: the outcomes of the intersessional working group focused on coastal states will further inform this DR4 (and other references to 'coastal States' contained in this IWG's portions of the regulations). We have nonetheless reflected some comments received on the topic in this latest draft text. In this regard, the view was expressed that identification / definition of coastal States with relevant interests should not be a function left to the discretion of the Contractors or the Secretary-General. It was also suggested that the Regional Environmental Management Plan could be a relevant tool for making such identification.]*

1. Nothing in these regulations shall affect the rights [and legitimate interests] of [potentially affected] [Indonesia] coastal States in accordance with [article 142 and] [Indonesia - delete] other relevant provisions of the Convention, including its provisions on consultation, prior notification, and the taking of measures [Brazil - keep].

[1bis. The Council shall elaborate standardized criteria for the definition of potentially affected coastal States. During the consideration of an application for Exploitation the Council shall define the list of potentially affected coastal States and address the issue of the relevant rights of coastal States.] [Russia]

[2. The Secretary-General shall inform potentially affected coastal States, as identified in the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan, upon the submission of an application for Exploitation. Appropriate consultation and notification [alt 1. protocols] [alt 2. procedures] [Brazil] [alt 3. Standards] shall be developed within three years after the adoption of these regulations or before any Commercial Production commences, whichever takes place first.]

[Russia – delete para 2 entirely]

2 alt. [The Council shall elaborate standardised criteria for the definition of potentially affected coastal States. Based on these criteria] [Russia] During the consideration of an application for Exploitation the [Council] [Secretary-General] [Russia – replace] shall define the list of potentially affected coastal States [and address the issue of the relevant rights of coastal States] [Russia – delete].

3. Contractors shall [in accordance with their Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan] [Nauru] take [in conformity with rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority] [Russia] [all measures required and] [Nauru – delete] necessary [Russia – delete] [measures] [Nauru] to ensure that their activities are conducted so as not to cause [harmful effects] [Serious Harms] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] to the Marine Environment, including, but not restricted to, pollution, damage to the flora and fauna, [interference with the ecological balance of the Marine Environment] [Australia] [including ecosystem structure, function and resilience] [Russia – delete] and other hazards to the Marine Environment in areas under the jurisdiction or sovereignty of coastal States, and that [such] [any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] harmful effects or pollution [Serious Harms] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] arising from Incidents or activities in its Contract Area [are prevented, reduced and controlled] [Russia] [do not spread into areas under the jurisdiction or sovereignty of a coastal State] [Russia – delete].

4. [Such measures by Contractors] [ Contractor measures pursuant to paragraph 3] [PEW; Russia – suggests replacing] [Measures] [Indonesia - replace] shall include:

(a) [consulting] [targeted and proactive consultation] [Russia – suggests replacing] with any potentially affected coastal State [when required and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] in accordance with Article 142 of the Convention, [and as identified in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan,] [PEW] [Argentina; Russia - delete] prior to submitting an application for approval of a Plan of Work]; and

(b) maintaining throughout the term of the contract:

(i) monitoring of potential transboundary impacts [to the areas within jurisdiction of States] [Indonesia],

(ii) accurate and precise recording of the operational area [in conformity with these Regulations] [Russia], and

(iii) consultations with [any] [Russia - delete] potentially affected coastal State [including through the Authority] [Russia] [in conformity with these regulations] [Russia], with a view to ensuring that the rights and legitimate interests of coastal States are not infringed.

5. Any coastal State which has grounds for believing that any activity under a Plan of Work in the Area by a Contractor or the Enterprise is likely to **could** cause **[Serious] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [H][h]arm[ful effects] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] or a threat of [harmful effects] [Russia] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]** to its coastline or to the Marine Environment under its jurisdiction or sovereignty, **or may result in exploitation by the Contractor of resources lying within national jurisdiction without the relevant State’s consent**, shall notify the Secretary-General in writing of the grounds upon which such belief is based. The Secretary-General shall **immediately [promptly] [Russia – suggests replacing]** inform the **[Commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ, Russia - remove brackets], the Council [Russia]**, and the Contractor and its sponsoring State or States or the Enterprise, of such notification. The Contractor and its sponsoring State or States or the Enterprise shall be provided with a reasonable opportunity to examine the evidence, **if any [Russia - delete] provided by the coastal States as the basis for its belief**, and submit their observations thereon to the **[Authority] [Russia] Secretary-General [in the shortest possible time] [as soon as reasonable practicable] [Russia]**. *[Facilitators’ note: the references to the Commission and the Secretary-General in this paragraph may be re-visited when the organisational structure for the inspection and compliance function of the Authority has been determined].*

6. Regulation 4(5) shall apply *mutatis mutandi[s]* to any State with grounds for believing that such **harm[ful effects] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] or threat of [harm[ful effects] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]** may be caused in any location **under its jurisdiction or sovereignty [NORI, TOML, BMJ]** by an activity under a Plan of Work, **and the procedure established in regulation 4(7) shall also apply.**

**[6. Any State with grounds for believing that harmful effects to the Marine Environment were caused in any location by an activity under a Plan of Work, shall notify the Secretary-General in writing of the grounds upon which such belief is based. Secretary-General shall promptly inform the Commission, the Council, and Contractors of relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan Area and their Sponsoring State or States or the Enterprise, of such notification. The Contractors and their Sponsoring State or States or the Enterprise shall be provided with a reasonable opportunity to examine the evidence, provided by the coastal States as the basis for its belief, and submit their observations thereon to the Authority. The Council shall consider such information.] [Russia]**

**[7. If the [Commission] determines, in accordance with the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru; Pew - replace] Standards and taking into [account] [consideration] [Nauru; Pew - replace] Guidelines, that there are clear grounds for believing that, as a result of the Contractor’s operations:**

(a) Serious Harm or the threat of Serious Harm to the Marine Environment is likely to occur or has occurred **[as the result of Contractor operations] [PEW]**, the Secretary-General shall notify the Sponsoring State, and **[the Commission]** shall recommend that the Council issue an emergency order, which may include an order for the suspension or adjustment of operations, pursuant to article 165(2)(k) of the Convention **and take all necessary measures to prevent Serious Harm to the Marine Environment [Pew - replace].** Such recommendation shall be taken up by the Council on a priority basis. **[Upon] [Pending] [Nauru - replace]** the receipt of **[the] [an] [Nauru - replace]** emergency order, the Contractor shall take necessary measures in accordance with regulation **[s] 28(3)**

[and 29bis] [Pew] [and where applicable implement its Emergency Response and Contingency Plan pursuant to regulation 33] [Nauru]; [or

(b) other harmful effects, or threat of harmful effects, to the Marine Environment [is] [, in breach of the terms and conditions of the Contractor's Exploitation Contract, provisions of the Convention related to activities in the Area, the Agreement, or the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] likely to occur or [has] [have] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] occurred, the Secretary-General shall notify the Sponsoring State, and the [Commission] shall recommend that the Council issue a compliance notice pursuant to regulation 103 or direct an inspection of the Contractor's activities pursuant to article 165 (2) (m) of the Convention and Part XI of these regulations.]] [Nauru – delete sub-para (b) entirely]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 7 entirely]

*[Facilitators' note: the reference to the Commission in this paragraph may be re-visited when the organisational structure for the inspection and compliance function of the Authority has been determined. It has also previously been proposed that the text contained in this paragraph (7) may be better located in Part XI of the Regulations, pertaining to Inspections, Compliance and Enforcement].*

8. In the case of harmful effects to the Marine Environment within any national jurisdiction resulting from the activities of the Contractor, or in the case of exploitation of resources lying within national jurisdiction without the relevant State's consent, the Contractor shall [take measures to minimize, prevent, reduce and control the harm from environmental effects, and] [Indonesia] be [[strictly]] [Nauru; Russia; Center for Polar and Deep Ocean Development – delete] [Pew – remove brackets] liable for any response and clean-up costs, and for any damage that cannot be fully contained, mitigated or repaired[, and the Authority shall require the Contractor to pay compensation [to the coastal State] [France], proportionally to the damage caused]] [Russia - delete] [and taking into account any compensation already claimed against the Contractor [in national proceedings] [in accordance with the State's legal system] [India - replace] brought in accordance with Article 235 of the Convention.] [PEW] [The Contractor is required to carry out and bear the cost of mitigation measures aimed at reducing and eliminating the impact over time in accordance with the Convention, this Regulation, its Standards and Guidelines, and applicable international laws.] [Indonesia]

#### **[Regulation 4bis]**

##### **Protection and Safeguarding of Underwater Cultural Heritage**

1. The Authority, Contractors, and States shall at all times ensure the protection and safeguarding of Underwater Cultural Heritage.

2. No application for a Plan of Work shall be granted which does not [include provisions to] protect and safeguard Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH]

#### **[Regulation 4ter]**

##### **Committee on Underwater Cultural Heritage**

1. A Committee on Underwater Cultural Heritage (“the Committee”) is hereby established to assist the Council in carrying out its responsibility to assist the Council protect and safeguard Underwater Cultural Heritage
2. The Committee shall comprise 11 members elected by the Assembly. Members shall be Members of the Authority or representatives of observers referred to under Rule 82 of the Rules of Procedure of the Assembly. The Committee shall include a majority of representatives from Indigenous Peoples and local communities.
3. Without limiting the powers and functions conferred upon another organ of the Authority the Committee shall:
  - a. Provide recommendations to the Council on matters relating to Underwater Cultural Heritage
  - b. Advise the Legal and Technical Commission on all matters relating to Underwater Cultural Heritage
  - c. Liaise with Indigenous Peoples
  - d. Perform any other duties that the Council directs in writing
  - e. Provide recommendations to the Assembly in its development of general policies of the Authority relating to Underwater Cultural Heritage
  - f. Make recommendations and take decisions as provided in these Regulations
  - g. Make recommendations and take decisions as to the identification of Stakeholders, including Indigenous Peoples and local communities
4. The Committee shall develop its own rules of procedure, which shall be approved by the Council.
5. Decisions of the Committee shall be taken by consensus. If all efforts to achieve consensus have been exhausted, decisions shall be taken by a majority of members present and voting. In the case of a tie, the Chair of the Committee shall have the decisive vote.
6. The Committee shall meet at regular intervals preferably using virtual means.
7. The Secretary-General shall provide such administrative support to the Committee as is required. [IWG on UCH]

## **Part II**

### **Applications for approval of Plans of Work in the form of contracts**

#### **Section 1 Applications**

*Facilitators’ Note: It has been agreed in the Institutional Matters informal working group that a discussion on **Effective***

*Control is pertinent. An intersessional webinar to inform this discussion was held on 1 September 2023.*

*Clarity regarding who may become a sponsoring state and whose sponsorship is required for a contractor's application to be approved by the ISA is crucial to the development of an effective compliance and liability system. Clarity regarding the nationality of a contractor will also assist ensure equitable outcomes from activities in the Area, and to avoid monopolization of the resources of the Area.*

*The Authority's past practice appears to have been to default to a State's own assessment that their sponsorship arrangements constitute a relationship of 'effective control'. This may have led to arrangements in which an ISA contractor operates through a subsidiary company registered in the sponsoring State, but the contractor is majority-owned and managed from outside the sponsoring State.*

*Alternative views have been expressed that to evaluate Effective Control, the Authority must go beyond the location of the registration of the Contractor company, analysing also ownership and business management as factors relevant to determine the level of "de facto" control by the State or its nationals.*

*This is a matter for the Council to determine. Article 4(3) of the Annex III to UNCLOS provides that the Authority itself is called to develop criteria and procedures for the implementation of the provisions on sponsorship. For the consequences it can entail, we find the Regulations, and particularly Regulations 5 and 6 are relevant to develop such rules and procedures on sponsorship with a view to ensure that the requirement of effective control is duly met. In this regard, after a more detailed discussion, Member States might decide to include further requirements to demonstrate Effective Control in this Part II, and in other sections of the Regulations e.g. a definition of the term could also be inserted in the Schedule.*

## **Regulation 5**

### **Qualified applicants**

1. Subject to the provisions of the Convention, the following may apply to the Authority for approval of Plans of Work:
  - (a) The Enterprise, on its own behalf or in a joint arrangement; and
  - (b) States parties, State enterprises or natural or juridical persons which possess the nationality of States or are effectively controlled by them or their nationals, when sponsored by such States, or any group of the foregoing which meets the requirements of the Convention and these regulations.
2. Each application shall be submitted:

- (a) In the case of the Enterprise, by its Director-General;
- (b) In the case of a State, by the authority designated for that purpose by it;
- (c) In the case of any other qualified applicant, ~~by a designated representative,~~ ~~or~~ [by a designated representative, or] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; UK Seabed Resources] by the authority designated for that purpose by the sponsoring State or States.

3. Each application by an entity referred to in regulation 5(1)(b) shall also contain [the information required by Regulation 7 and Annex I, sufficient to enable the Authority to determine whether or not the applicant is qualified to apply according to Regulation 5(1)] [PEW; NORI, TOML, BMJ] [, together with the necessary documentation as supporting evidence:] [PEW – delete]

[(a) The name of the applicant, and all information necessary to determine the nationality of the applicant or ~~the identity~~ of the State or States by which, or by whose nationals, the applicant is effectively controlled;

(b) The principal place of business or domicile and, if applicable, the place of registration of the applicant;

[[~~(b bis) All information necessary on the Contractor's principals~~] [~~information necessary on the Contractor~~] [~~Singapore – replace~~] to allow the Authority to determine their track record [~~regarding previous contracts with the Authority~~] [~~Singapore~~] in accordance with Regulation 77(4) [~~and as required under Regulation 83bis~~] [~~Canada~~].] [~~Germany~~] [~~Pew – supports keeping~~]

(c) All information necessary to demonstrate that the applicant has the necessary financial, technical and operational capability to carry out the proposed Plan of Work [~~and of fulfilling its financial obligations to the Authority~~] [~~Indonesia~~] in accordance with these Regulations, [~~in particular Section 4, Annex I,~~] [~~Indonesia~~] applicable Standards and Good Industry Practice using appropriately qualified [~~and adequately supervised~~] personnel; and

(d) All information necessary to demonstrate the technical capability [~~in~~] [~~to meet health, safety and~~] [~~Indonesia - replace~~] environmental [~~management~~] [~~requirements, to effectively implement the proposed Plan of Work~~] [~~Indonesia - replace~~] pursuant to regulation 13(3)(c) and Section III of Annex I to be able to comply with the requirements of [~~these Regulations and applicable Standards~~] [~~the Rules of the Authority~~] [~~Nauru~~].]

[PEW – delete sub paras a-d entirely]

[[~~(e) All information necessary to demonstrate that the Contractor will, throughout the term of their contract, for the purposes of Exploitation and ancillary activities, only use vessels flagged to registries of States that are Members of the Authority, and only use ports located in States that are Members of the Authority, except where non-Member States accept to be bound by the Rules of the Authority relating to compliance and enforcement, to ensure the Authority can rely upon and require the cooperation of those States for the purpose of securing compliance with the Rules of the Authority.~~] [~~Germany~~] [~~Russia; Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~] [~~Pew - keep~~]

4. Each application submitted by a partnership or consortium of entities shall contain the information required by these regulations in respect of each member of the partnership or consortium.



5. In the case of a consortium or any group, the consortium or group shall specify in its application a lead member of the consortium or group.

6. The Authority shall not accept the application if the sponsoring State or States has not enacted a mining law legislation [about] [on] [pertaining to] [Germany] activities in the Area that complies with the standards requirements referred to in Regulation 105. [Nauru – delete para 6 entirely] [Pew – keep para 6]

## Regulation 6

### Certificate of sponsorship

1. Each application by an entity referred to in regulation 5(1)(b) shall be accompanied by a certificate of sponsorship issued by the State of which it is a national or by whose nationals it is effectively controlled. If the applicant has more than one nationality, as in the case of a partnership or consortium of entities from more than one State, each State involved shall issue a certificate of sponsorship.

2. Where an applicant has the nationality of one State but is effectively controlled by another State or its nationals, each State shall issue a certificate of sponsorship.

[2bis. For the purposes of issuance of a certificate of sponsorship, the State of nationality means the State under whose law the corporation was incorporated. However, when the corporation is controlled by nationals of another State or States and has no substantial business activities in the State of incorporation, and the seat of management and the financial control of the corporation are both located in another State, that State shall be regarded as the State of nationality.] [Brazil]

3. Each certificate of sponsorship shall be duly signed on behalf of the State by which it is submitted, and shall contain:

(a) The name, address and contact details of the applicant;

(b) The name of the sponsoring State [or States] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete];

(c) A statement ~~and supporting evidence~~ [and supporting evidence] [Australia; Germany] [such as a passport, citizenship certificate, certificate of incorporation or other evidence of registration or nationality] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew; Germany – delete] [Australia – insert brackets] that the applicant is: *[Facilitators' note: the red text, a new proposal from Nauru Ocean Resources Inc., Tonga Offshore Mining Ltd. and Blue Minerals Jamaica Ltd, may need to be removed or relocated, given other delegates' proposals to delete the preceding wording (with the rationale that the certificate of sponsorship is not the correct place to require such evidence). The point to give examples of relevant evidence may be better located in regulation 7 (form and content of applications). What constitutes such examples may also need to be reconsidered, depending on the definition of Effective Control to be agreed by the Council].*

(i) A national of the sponsoring State; or

(ii) Subject to the effective control of the sponsoring State or its nationals;

(d) A statement by the sponsoring State that it sponsors the applicant; ~~[[Germany – delete]~~

~~[(d) bis. A copy or description] [together with a description] [Germany - replace] of the necessary and appropriate measures taken by the State to secure effective compliance pursuant to article 139(2) of the Convention, and to ensure legal recourse for compensation in accordance with article 235 (2) of the Convention.] [Facilitators' note: it has been suggested that this regulation 6(3)(d)bis requirement would be better located in regulation 7, relating to the form and content of applications for a Plan of Work].~~

~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete d.bis. entirely]~~

~~[(e) The date of deposit by the sponsoring State of its instrument of ratification of, or accession or succession to, the Convention, and the date on which it consented to be bound by the Agreement; and]~~

~~[(f) A statement by the sponsoring State that it registers the vessels/ships and/or installations of the applicant that are intended to be used to undertake activities in the Area, and assumes flag state responsibilities pursuant to Article 94 of the Convention.] [Canada]~~

~~[[f)] [g] [Canada] A declaration that the sponsoring State assumes responsibility in accordance with articles 139 and 153 (4) of the Convention and article 4 (4) of annex III to the Convention]~~

~~[Facilitators' note: there are conflicting suggestions to delete sub-paragraphs (e) and (f) on the basis they are unnecessary, and to keep them on the basis of consistency with the Exploration Regulations].~~

4. States or other qualified applicants in a joint arrangement with the Enterprise shall also comply with this regulation.

## Regulation 7

### Form of applications and information to accompany a Plan of Work

1. Each application for approval of a Plan of Work shall be

(a) in the form prescribed in annex I to these regulations;

(b) addressed to the Secretary-General; and

(c) prepared in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standards, ~~[the Relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan] and taking [account of] [Russia - delete] [into consideration] [Pew - replace] Guidelines.~~

2. Each applicant, including the Enterprise, shall, as part of its application, provide a written undertaking to the Authority that it will:

(a) Accept ~~[as enforceable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] during all stages of the process chain~~ and comply with the applicable obligations created by the provisions of ~~[Part XI of] [Indonesia - delete] the Convention, the Agreement, the rules, regulations and procedures, including the [applicable] [Russia] Standards~~ of the Authority, the decisions of the organs of the Authority and the terms of its ~~[Exploitation C] [e] contract [Russia]~~ with the Authority;

(b) Accept control by the Authority of activities in the Area ~~during all stages of the process chain~~ as authorized by the Convention;

(c) Provide the Authority with a written ~~substantiated~~ assurance that its obligations under its contract will be fulfilled in good faith; and

**[(c bis) Provide the Authority with written undertakings from parent or holding companies of the applicant, if any, to assume joint and several liability for damages to the Authority in the event of liability having been established against the applicant in carrying out of the plan of work.]**

**[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete c bis entirely]**

~~[(d) Comply with the national laws, regulations and administrative measures of the sponsoring State or States made pursuant to articles 139 and 153(4) of the Convention and article 4(4) of annex III to the Convention.] [Netherlands – delete / Pew - reinsert]~~

**[(d) Provide the Authority with written undertakings from parent or holding companies of the applicant, if any, to assume joint and several liability for damages to [failure to fulfil its obligation towards] [Poland - replace] the Authority in the event of liability having been established against the applicant in carrying out of the plan of work.] [Pew – supports keeping]**

[alt. proposal to delete (2) and all its sub-paragraphs, on the basis that an applicant should already be subject to the relevant instruments and requirements, and a written statement does not give them new legal force.] *[Facilitators' note: Article 4 of Annex III to the Convention requires the undertakings listed in sub-paragraphs (a)-(c) above to be included in every application].*

3. An application shall be prepared in accordance with these regulations [and applicable Standards] [Norway – insert brackets], taking into account applicable Guidelines, and **[[alt 1. in accordance with] [alt 2. on the basis of] [Norway supports] [alt 3. in line with] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [alt 4. taking account of] [alt 5. taking into account] [[alt 6. consistent with]] [alt. 7 as well as the] [Russia] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany – delete] [the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] respective Regional Environmental Management Plan.**

**[[3alt. An application shall be prepared [taking into account] [in accordance with] [Nauru - replace] these regulations [.] [and] [Nauru - replace] the applicable Standards [and] [., and shall take into consideration applicable] [Nauru - replace] Guidelines, as well as the [respective] [relevant] [Nauru - replace] Regional Environmental Management Plan[s] [Nauru – delete].] [Germany]]]**

**[Pew – delete entire para 3]**

3. bis. An application shall contain sufficient information to demonstrate that the applicant has **[[or will have]] [Germany, Australia; Pew – delete] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [access to] [Pew - delete] the necessary financial and technical capability and resources to carry out the proposed Plan of Work, and shall be accompanied by the following:**

[(a) The data and information to be provided pursuant to section 11.2 of the standard clauses for exploration contracts, as annexed to the relevant Exploration Regulations;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

(b) A Mining Work Plan prepared in accordance with annex II to these regulations;

(c) A Financing Plan prepared in accordance with annex III to these regulations;

(d) An Environmental Impact Statement prepared in accordance with regulation 47 and in the format prescribed in annex IV to these regulations;

[(d bis) A test mining study prepared in accordance with regulation 48ter;] [A study of Test Mining pursuant to the Schedule to these Regulations. In cases where an applicant utilizes mature mining technology that has been internationally validated, there shall be no requirement to conduct Test Mining. Instead, the applicant shall provide supporting materials in relation to the mature mining technology when submitting the application.] [China - replace]

(e) An Emergency Response and Contingency Plan prepared in accordance with annex V to these regulations;

(f) A Health and Safety Plan and a Maritime Security Plan prepared in accordance with Regulation 30 and annex VI to these regulations;

[alt. to (f):

(f) A Health and Safety Plan prepared in accordance with Regulation 30 and Annex VI to these regulations;

(f bis) A Maritime Security Plan prepared in accordance with Regulation 30 and Annex VI to these regulations;]

*[Facilitators' note: delegations have proposed that these two subjects should be covered by two separate standalone plans. If that proposal is taken forward, this is likely also to require amendment also to the Regulation 30 and Annex VI, and updating of the cross-reference here].*

(g) A Training Plan in fulfilment of article 15 of annex III to the Convention, prepared in accordance [annex VI bis. to these Regulations and] [PEW] with the [applicable] [Nauru] [Guideline[s] [Nauru – delete]] [Annex XX to these Regulations [Standards]] [Pew – suggests replacing];

*[Facilitators' note: one proposal also suggests addition of an Annex setting out format and minimum requirements for the Training Plan, as with other plans].*

(h) An Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan prepared in accordance with regulation 48 and annex VII to these regulations [~~which documents that management and monitoring [are in compliance with [take into account] the applicable Regional Environment Management Plan and based on the result of the Environmental Impact Assessment];~~] [including information regarding the environmental management system that the Contractor will implement in

accordance with regulation 46 and the relevant Standards, taking account of Guidelines]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Russia - delete]

*[Facilitators' note: delegates may wish to consider the need to avoid introducing text here, that is also, and more fully, covered in the relevant regulations and Annex that provide the requirements for the EMMP].*

(i) A [temporary draft] [Norway] Closure Plan prepared in accordance with regulation 59 and annex VIII to these regulations;

(j) An application processing fee in the amount specified in appendix II.

[(k) A copy of the Contractor's code of Conduct or other rules applicable to all staff involved in the execution of a proposed Plan of Work, including policies pertaining to personnel safety, environmental compliance, inclusivity, gender equality and diversity, and sustainability], which shall conform in material respects with the rules applicable to staff of the Enterprise or any other rules proposed by the Authority [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]; and [Russia – delete sub-para 3bis(k) entirely]

(l) A copy of documents to evidence the applicant's Environmental Performance Guarantee, in accordance with regulation 26.

4. Where the proposed Plan of Work proposes two or more non-contiguous Mining Areas, the Commission shall require separate documents under paragraphs 3 (b), (d), (h), (i) and (l) for each Mining Area, unless the applicant demonstrates [to the satisfaction of the Commission] that a single set of documents is appropriate, taking account of the relevant Guidelines.

[(ii) a decision can be taken by the Council in relation to one Mining Area at this time, with subsequent decisions for further Mining Areas being deferred to a later time upon the submission of further documentation.] [PEW]

~~5. Where a single set of documents is submitted by the applicant proposing a Plan of work for two or more non-contiguous Mining Areas and the Commission considers it is not appropriate, the Commission shall reject the application and request separate documents under paragraphs 3 (b), (d), (h) (i) and (l) for each Mining Area.~~

[5. Where a single set of documents is submitted by the applicant proposing a Plan of work for two or more non-contiguous Mining Areas and the Commission considers it is not appropriate, the Commission shall reject the application and request separate documents under paragraphs 3 (b), (d), (h) (i) and (l) for each Mining Area.] [PEW]

## **Regulation 8**

### **Area covered by an application**

1. Each application for approval of a Plan of Work shall define the boundaries of the area under application, by a list of geographical coordinates in accordance with [[alt 1. Annex 1 to these regulations] [alt 2. the World Geodetic System 84]

[alt 3.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the most recent applicable international standard used by the Authority[] [Nauru - delete bracket].

2. The area under application need not be contiguous and shall be defined in the application in the form of blocks comprising one or more cells of a grid, as provided by the Authority.

3. The area under application shall be an area previously subject to an exploration contract [or an area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [for which [adequate and satisfactory]] [Australia – remove brackets] environmental baseline data [gathered in accordance with the relevant Standards] [Germany] is publicly available [and environmental baseline studies carried out according to the Rules of the Authority] [Russia – suggests replacing].

4. The area under application must be covered by a [relevant] [PEW – delete] Regional Environmental Management Plan pursuant to regulation 44bis. [Australia; Russia – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

5. In the application, the applicant shall provide an overview of other potential legitimate activities in the marine environment covered by the application, and a statement confirming whether the area under application or any part of it has received attention under any [other international organisation or treaty regime] [relevant legal instruments and framework and relevant global regional, subregional and sectorial bodies] [France - replace].

[China, Australia, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete para 5 entirely]

5 alt. For any part of the area under application, to the extent practicable [and] [Nauru] after reasonable investigations, the applicant shall [indicate in the application,] [provide an overview of other potential legitimate activities in the Marine Environment covered by the application and] [Pew - replace] whether [it] [such area] [Nauru – delete] [the area or any part of it] [Pew - replace] is designated or managed [or under active] [Pew - delete] consideration [Australia; Pew] under any international regime or international organization. [The applicant] [will] [shall] [UK - replace] also indicate that it is aware of its obligation of reasonable regard to other activities in the Area in accordance with Article 147. [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete] [Russia – delete para 5 and 5 alt entirely]

[5alt alt: For any part of the area under application, to the extent practicable after reasonable investigations, the applicant shall in the application provide an overview of other potential legitimate activities in the Marine Environment covered by the application, and indicate whether the area or any part of it is designated or managed under any international regime or international organization. The applicant will also indicate that it is aware of its obligation of reasonable regard to other activities in the Area in accordance with Article 147.] [PEW]

X. Where an application concerns a Reserved Area, the Enterprise shall be given an opportunity to decide whether it intends to carry out activities in the area in accordance with Article 9 of Annex III to the Convention, [and Section 2 of the Annex to the Agreement]. [Pew - delete] [and Section 2 of the Annex to the Agreement]. [Pew – suggests keeping]

**Comments/remarks**

The inclusion of the above paragraph, still unnumbered, has been suggested by Pew Charitable Trust. Currently, this is the text of Regulation 10(5). Pew suggests moving it to Regulation 8.

**Section 2**

**Processing and review of applications**

**Regulation 9**

**Receipt, acknowledgement and safe custody of applications**

The Secretary-General shall:

(a) Acknowledge in writing, within ~~[[alt 1.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] 7]~~ ~~[[alt 2. 14][alt 3. 30]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ Days, receipt of every application for approval of a Plan of Work submitted under this Part, specifying the date of receipt;

(b) Place the application, together with the attachments and annexes thereto, in safe custody and ensure the confidentiality of all Confidential Information contained in the application; and

(c) Within 30 Days of receipt of an application for approval of a Plan of Work submitted under this Part, **and upon confirming that it is complete in accordance with regulation 10(1):**

**[(i) Notify the members of the Authority of the receipt of such application and circulate to them the contents of the application save for any Confidential Information contained in the application along with notice of the determination made, if any, pursuant to regulation 10 as to whether the applicant has preference and priority; and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]**

**[(i alt) Notify the members of the Authority of the receipt of such application and circulate to them information of a general nature which is not confidential regarding the application, and information enabling them to access a non-confidential version of the application; and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]**

**[(c) Alt. Within 30 Days of receipt of an application for approval of a Plan of Work submitted under this Part:**

**(i) Notify the members of the Authority of the receipt of such application and circulate to them information of a general nature which is not confidential regarding the application, and information enabling them to access a non-confidential version of the application;**

**(ii) Notify the members of the Commission and the Finance Committee of receipt of such application.] [Nauru – reinstate previous wording]**

(ii) Notify the members of the Commission and the Finance Committee of receipt of such application.

*[Facilitators' note: previous paragraph 9(2), relating to the LTC consideration of an application has been moved to regulation 11(1 bis)].*

## Regulation 10

### Preliminary review of application by the Secretary-General

1. The Secretary-General shall preliminarily review an application for approval of a Plan of Work and determine whether the application contains all the information required by Regulations 5 to 8 for further processing.

[1 Bis. Where the Secretary-General considers that an application does not contain all the information required by Regulations 5 to 8, the Secretary-General shall submit it to the Legal and Technical Commission.] [Russia]

2. Where the [Secretary-General] [Legal and Technical Commission] [Russia – suggests replacing] determines an application does not contain all the information required by Regulations 5 to 8, the Secretary-General shall, within 45 Days of receipt of the application, notify the applicant, specifying the information which the applicant must submit in order to complete the application, together with a justification in writing as to why the information is necessary and a date by which the application must be completed. Further processing of an application will not begin until the [Secretary-General] [Legal and Technical Commission] [Russia – suggests replacing] determines that the application is complete, which includes all required information has been submitted by the applicant, including payment of the administrative fee specified in appendix II. An application will not be processed further if there is another potential applicant who has a preference and priority and an intention to apply in accordance with regulation 10 (1).

[3. In case there is a potential applicant who has claims preference and priority in the same area and same Resource category under an Exploration contract in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III to the Convention the Secretary-General shall, before progressing the original application further, [confirm] [request confirmation of] [Russia – suggests replacing] the intention of such a potential applicant to apply for approval of a Plan of Work for Exploitation within 30 days of the original applicant's application. The new applicant shall then lodge their application within a further [60] [180] [270] [Russia – suggests replacing] days; and the Secretary General shall consider the additional application in accordance with Regulation 10(1) and (2).]

[Germany – delete para 3 entirely]

[3.ALT In case an application is lodged for the same area for which an operator has preference and priority in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III first sentence, the Secretary-General shall, after having made the determinations under para. 1 and 2 of this article, forward the application to the Commission. The Commission shall make a recommendation as to whether the operator's performance has not been satisfactory in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III based on which the Council shall decide whether the operator's preference and priority shall be withdrawn in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III second sentence.] [Germany] [Russia - delete]



[Pew – keep both para 3 and 3 Alt.]

[4. Should there be more than one application for the same area and same Resource category, [or a potential applicant has confirmed their intention to apply for approval of a Plan of Work pursuant to Regulation 10(2)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] the [Commission] [Secretary-General] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [Secretary-General] shall [make recommendations to the Council, and the Council shall] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] determine which applicant has preference and priority in accordance with article 10 of annex III to the Convention and section 1, para. 13 of the annex to the Agreement, and taking into account any relevant Guidelines.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], and in case of any dispute, it shall be submitted to the Commission to make recommendations, upon which the Council shall make the decision.] The Secretary-General shall notify the members of the Authority of the determination made, if any, as to whether the applicant has preference and priority.

[5. Where an application concerns a Reserved Area [that is not or has not been subject to an exploration contract] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru], the Enterprise shall be given an opportunity to decide whether it intends to carry out activities in the area in accordance with article 9 of annex III to the Convention, [and section 2 of the annex to the Agreement]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete].] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 5 entirely]

#### Regulation 11

[Publication and review of the Environmental Plans [and Environmental Management Systems]] [Germany; Russia – delete]

[Alt. [Publication, notification, and review of the Application]] [Australia - supports]

1. The Secretary-General shall, within seven Days after determining that an application for the approval of a Plan of Work is ready to progress pursuant to complete under regulation 10:

(a) Taking into account the confidentiality of the data, place [alt 1. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [summary of the Plan of Work]] [Indonesia] the Environmental Plans and any information necessary for their assessment [German – delete] [alt 2. the application and all [non-confidential] [Pew - delete] documentation submitted and associated with it], including any supporting material [Pew - delete]] [Pew – supports alt. 2] [alt 3. the Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information] [as well as the non-confidential parts of the test mining study]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [alt. 4 the Environmental plans and non-confidential of Test Mining Study, if applicable] [Russia] on the Authority's website [for a period of [60 90 Days] [of consideration of an application by the Authority] [Russia]] [Pew- delete], and notify and invite members of the Authority, [the Finance Committee] [Pew] [relevant]] [Norway – remove brackets] adjacent [potentially affected] [Indonesia] coastal States, [and any other States adjacent to the Exploitation Area when they are potentially the most affected States]] [Indonesia - delete].] [Russia - delete] Stakeholders, [and the general public]] [Norway; Australia; Pew – remove brackets] [Russia - delete] to submit comments in writing within

90 days, in accordance with the relevant Standards and taking account of the relevant Guidelines. ~~[[All comments shall be published on the Website of the Authority; and]]~~ ~~[[Norway]]~~ ~~[[Russia; Pew - delete]]~~

~~[(b) Request the Commission to provide its comments on the Environmental Plans ~~[[and the non-confidential parts of the test mining study]]~~ ~~[[Norway - delete]]~~ within the 90 Day comment period.]~~

~~[[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Pew - delete sub-para b entirely]]~~

*[Facilitator's note: proposals to delete this paragraph (b) noted potential conflict with DRs 11(4) and 12, and queried the rationale for the LTC reviewing the application once in this 90-day period, and then again afterwards]*

~~[[c) [Based on the assessment of the Commission, if necessary,] Establish an independent review team, making use of the roster of competent independent experts, if any, to provide comments on the Environmental Plans within the comment period.]]~~ ~~[[Germany - remove brackets]]~~

~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Pew - delete sub-para c entirely]]~~

2. The Secretary-General shall, within seven Days following the closure of the comment period ~~[[pursuant to paragraph 1]]~~ ~~[[PEW, Germany]]~~, provide all submissions received, ~~from members of the Authority, relevant adjacent coastal States, Stakeholders, the general public, the Commission]~~, and any comments from ~~[[the independent review team and]]~~ ~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]]~~ the Secretary-General to the applicant ~~for its consideration~~ and publish all submissions and comments provided on the website of the Authority.

2 bis. The applicant shall ~~[[consider the comments provided pursuant to paragraph (2) (1) and may]]~~ ~~[[shall]]~~ ~~[[may]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ]]~~, as appropriate, ~~[[Australia - delete]]~~ revise the ~~[[[alt 1. Environmental Plans]]]~~ ~~[[Germany - delete]]~~ ~~[[Russia - supports]]~~ ~~[[alt 2. application]]~~ ~~[[Australia - supports]]~~ ~~[[alt 3. Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information]]~~ ~~[[revise the application accordingly]]~~ ~~[[Uganda - replace]]~~ or provide responses ~~in reply to the~~ ~~[[relevant and]]~~ ~~[[substantive]]~~ ~~[[Russia - delete]]~~ comments, ~~[[as to]]~~ ~~[[explaining]]~~ ~~[[Australia - suggests replacing]]~~ how they were taken into account ~~[[Russia - delete]]~~ and ~~[[shall]]~~ ~~[[may]]~~ ~~[[may]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ]]~~ submit any ~~revised plans~~ ~~revisions and~~ responses to the ~~[[[alt 1.]]~~ ~~[[may]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ- delete]]~~ Secretary-General ~~[[alt 2. Commission]]~~

~~[[...[alt. continuation of 2 bis ...]]~~ ~~[[may]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]]~~ within a period of ~~[[30]]~~ ~~[[60]]~~ ~~[[Russia]]~~ Days following ~~[[the close of the comment period unless otherwise decided or such longer period as determined by the Secretary-General after considering]]~~ ~~[[[alt 1.]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]]~~ following a request by the applicant ~~[[alt 2. after consulting with the applicant]]~~ ~~before the initial time period [of 30 days] expires~~ for an extension of the period due to the time required ~~[[alt. on the basis that it requires more time]]~~ to revise the plans or responses. Notice of the extension of the period shall be posted on the Authority's website. ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]]~~ ~~[[the providing of the comments by the Secretary-General]]~~ ~~[[Russia - suggests replacing]]~~ ~~[[The 60-~~

Days' time period could be extended by the Secretary-General after considering a reasonable request by the applicant before the time period of 60 Days expires for an extension of the period due to the time required to revise the plans or responses. Notice of the extension of the period shall be posted on the Authority's website [Russia] [Pew – delete everything after “Secretary-General”].

2 ter. The Secretary-General shall provide [the Environmental Plans, non-confidential parts of Test Mining Study, if applicable,] [Russia] comments submitted pursuant to paragraph [(1), and any revisions and responses to comments submitted pursuant to paragraph (2 bis), to the Commission.] [1(a), together with any responses by the applicant provided pursuant to paragraph 2 bis, and any relevant additional information to the Commission and request the Commission to provide its comments on the Environmental Plans and non-confidential parts of Test Mining Study, if applicable, within the 90 Days.] [Russia – suggests replacing]

[3. The Commission shall, as part of its examination of an application under regulation 12 and assessment of applicants under regulation 13, examine the Environmental Plans or revised plans [and the test mining study] in the light of the [the Environmental Plans and non-confidential parts of the Test Mining Study, if applicable, the] [Russia] comments submitted under paragraph (1)[(a)] [Russia], together with any revisions and responses provided by the applicant under paragraph (2 bis), and any additional information provided by the Secretary-General under paragraph (2)[, and provide comments to the Secretary-General] [Russia].]

[3ter. The roster of competent recognized experts in the field of the protection of the marine environment selected on the basis of their significant experience in a particular deep sea environment or technology sector could be established by the Council as assistance to the Commission in choice of the experts. The Commission may consult with other competent experts too.

3 quat. The Secretary-General shall, within seven Days following the receiving comments from the Commission, provide them to the applicant and publish them on the Website of the Authority.

3 quin. The applicant shall consider the comments provided pursuant to paragraph (3) and shall revise the Environmental Plans or provide responses in reply to the substantive comments, and shall submit any revised plans or responses to the Secretary-General within a period of 60 Days following the providing of the comments by the Secretary-General. The 60-Days' time period could be extended by the Secretary-General after considering a reasonable request by the applicant before the time period of 60 Days expires for an extension of the period due to the time required to revise the plans or responses. Notice of the extension of the period shall be posted on the Authority's website.]

[Russia – suggests insertion of paras 3ter, 3 quat., 3 quin.]

[4. Notwithstanding the provisions of regulation 12(2), the Commission shall not consider an application for approval of a Plan of Work until the [[alt 1. Environmental Plans have]] [Germany – delete] [alt 2. application has] [alt 3. Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information have] been published and if necessary, revised in accordance with this regulation.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4 entirely]

5. The Commission shall prepare a [draft] [Pew] report on the [[alt 1. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Environmental Plans]] [Germany – delete] [alt 2. application] [alt 3. Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Environmental Plans and non-confidential parts of Test Mining Study, if applicable] [Russia] [application and all documentation submitted and associated with it] [Pew], which shall be published on the Authority’s website, [subject to the redaction of any Confidential Information as may be necessary] [for consultation for [x] days] [Pew] ], and [5. Bis. Upon receipt of comments from the consultation under paragraph 5, the Commission shall finalize its report and its recommendation which] [Pew – also suggests moving to new para 5bis] shall be included as part of the reports and recommendations to the Council pursuant to regulation 15. The report shall include:

(a) details of the Commission’s determination under regulation 13(4)(e);

(b) details of the comments and responses submitted under paragraphs (1) [and] [Pew - delete] (2bis) [and (5)] [Pew];

(c) any further information provided by the Secretary-General under paragraph (2);

(d) any amendments or modifications to the [[alt 1. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Environmental Plans]] [Germany – delete] [Russia - supports] [alt 2. application] [alt 3. Plan of Work]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] recommended by the Commission under regulation 14 [and changes subsequently made to application documents by the applicant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets];

(e) the relevant rationale for the Commission’s determination, with specific explanation as to any comments or responses that are disregarded.

[6. In preparing its report under paragraph (5), the Commission [shall] [alt.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] may]] [Nauru – delete] [Costa Rica; Pew – support “shall”] seek advice from [competent] [Nauru – delete] independent experts as necessary. In such case, the Commission shall clarify the necessity of advice from experts and seek prior approval of the Council. The experts shall be selected and appointed in accordance with [the applicable Standard] [Nauru] [relevant Guidelines] [alt. Annex [tbc]. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Nauru; Russia – delete]]

[Germany – remove brackets from para 6]

### Section 3

#### Consideration of applications by the Commission

##### Regulation 12

##### **General Rules for considering applications**

1. Subject to Regulation 10 concerning preference and priority among applicants, the Commission shall examine applications in the order in which they are received by the Secretary-General and shall assess applications in accordance with this regulation and against the criteria contained in regulation 13, in order to make a report and submit appropriate [Australia] recommendation[s] to the Council [whether the Plan of Work under application should be approved, or disapproved, pursuant to regulation 15] [Australia - delete].

1bis. [Subject to paragraph (1 ter) and to regulation 11(4),] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [the Commission shall commence [the] [its] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] consideration of an application [at its next meeting after [its] [Australia] receipt of the application [alt.] [Nauru, [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [within 30 days of its receipt of the application]]] [Australia; Russia; Pew – delete / NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [provided that the notifications and information pursuant to regulation 11(1)-(2 ter) have been circulated at least 30 [90] [Pew – supports 90] Days prior to the commencement of that meeting of the Commission]] [including via virtual and intersessional meetings in addition to its regular meetings, if necessary] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]. [Australia; Russia – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [The Commission may extend consideration of the application to its next meeting if necessary.] [Russia]

*[Facilitator's note: this has been proposed to move here, from DR9. One submission notes in relation to this paragraph (1 bis), that regulation 11(4) (cross-referenced) actually prevents the LTC from considering the application until after the documents have been published for consultation for 90 days in any event – hence the proposal to delete the wording from 'provided...' onwards.]*

[1 ter. [Germany; Australia – remove brackets] The Commission may defer consideration of an application to a subsequent meeting [alt. suspend further consideration of such application and resume consideration at its subsequent meeting] if it considers the application to be overly complex [if the complexity of the applications so requires.]] [Germany – delete] [Australia - keep]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Nauru – 1 ter. delete entirely]

[2. The Commission shall consider applications [expeditiously] [in an efficient manner] [Pew; Costa Rica; France] [alt. The Commission] [and] shall [endeavour to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – delete] submit its [reports and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] recommendations to the Council [no later than] [within] [Nauru - replace] [alt 1. [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – delete] 120] [alt 2. 180] [Germany – delete] [alt 3. 275]] [Australia - supports] [NORI

[TOML, BMJ; Nauru – delete] [Germany – remove brackets] Days from [whichever date occurs later out of] [the later of] [Nauru]:

(a) [the close of the comment period, in accordance with Regulation 11(1)(a)] [the date of completion of the review of the Environmental Plans, under regulation 11] [Russia – suggests replacing], or

(b) the date of submission of a revised plan, in accordance with Regulation 11(2 bis) [or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[(b alt) the date of completion of the amendments to the proposed Plan of Work, under regulation 14] [Russia]

[(c) the date the Commission receives additional information or amendments to the Plan of Work requested by the Commission under regulation 14.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete]

[Australia – suggests ending para 2 after “expeditiously”. Alternatively, suggests using the other wording as para 2alt.] [Pew also suggests ending para 2 after “in an efficient manner”.]

2bis. If [an application is overly complex] or incomplete information has been submitted by the applicant, the Commission may delay its reports and recommendations under regulation 12(2) by a further 90 Days.

[2bis. The Commission may delay its reports and recommendations under regulation 12(2) by a further 90 Days, if additional information or consultations with experts are necessary.] [Russia]

[3. The Commission shall, in considering a proposed Plan of Work, apply the Convention, the Agreement, and the Rules of the Authority in a uniform and non-discriminatory manner, [and may not recommend approval of a Plan of Work that does not comply with these] [requirements] [regulations] [Nauru].] [Russia - delete]

[Germany – delete para 3 entirely] [Norway – revert to original text]

[3 alt. The Commission shall, in considering a proposed Plan of Work, apply the Convention, the Agreement, and the Rules of the Authority in a uniform and non-discriminatory manner, and [ensure its compliance with] [shall have regard to] apply the principles, policies and objectives relating to activities in the Area [as provided for in] [the Convention,] [the Preamble,] [and] [Germany – delete] Part I [and Regulation 44ter] [Germany] of these regulations [)], [)] [Germany - remove brackets] and in particular the manner in which the proposed Plan of Work [)] [Germany – remove bracket] [contributes to realizing benefits for] [)] [Germany – delete] is in the interests of [)] [Germany – delete] humankind as a whole [in accordance with decisions of the Council and Assembly]] [Germany – delete] including in ensuring the fair and equitable sharing of benefits [)] [and] [Germany – remove brackets] ensuring the effective protection of the marine environment], and may not recommend approval of a Plan of Work that does not comply with these requirements]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Nauru – delete 3 alt. entirely]

[3. alt.1 The Commission shall, in considering a proposed Plan of Work, apply the Convention, the Agreement, and the Rules of the Authority in a uniform and

non-discriminatory manner, and may not recommend approval of a Plan of Work that does not comply with any mandatory these requirements contained therein.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[Pew – suggests moving para 3 / 3alt. to Regulation 13]

[3 bis. The Commission in considering a proposed Plan of Work may seek advice and reports from competent independent experts on any matters considered to be relevant, as necessary.]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 bis entirely]

[3 bis alt. In the case the Commission evaluates that there are aspects of the proposed Plan of Work that are not covered entirely by its own internal expertise, the Commission shall nominate at least three competent independent experts selected on the basis of their significant experience or record of publications in a particular deep sea environment or technology sector, to review the application and provide comments to the Commission to inform their consideration of the proposed Plan of Work.]

[Germany, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; delete 3bis alt entirely] [Russia – delete 3bis and 3bis.alt entirely]

*[Facilitators' note: the points raised in paragraphs (3 bis) and (3 bis alt.) may be covered sufficiently by regulation 11(6), if this is retained.]*

4. In considering the proposed Plan of Work, the Commission shall take into account:

(a) ~~Any~~ ~~R~~ relevant reports from the Secretary-General [Russia];

[(a)bis. Any relevant [and substantive] comments received following the publication of the [alt 1. Environmental Plans][alt 2. Application][alt 3. Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information] or the Commission's report on the [alt 1. Environmental Plans][alt 2. Application][alt 3. Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information] made by Stakeholders, together with any revisions and responses provided by the applicant pursuant to regulation 11(3);

[(a)ter. Any advice or reports received from any competent organ of the United Nations or of its specialized agencies or any international organizations with [alt 1. competence in] [[alt 2. relevance to]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the subject-matter;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para (a)ter entirely]

[(a) quat. Any information supplied by the sponsoring State or States [relating to the financial and technical capabilities of the sponsored applicant]].

[(b) Any concern raised by [a [relevant] adjacent coastal State] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [[likely to be affected]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] with respect to the application;]

[Germany – delete (a. bis), (a.ter), (a.quat), and (b) entirely] [Russia – delete (a ter) and (b) entirely]

alt. to (a bis.), (a ter.), (a quat.), and (b):

(b) Any further relevant information about the applicant or in respect of the application sought by the Commission or the Secretary-General or supplied by the Sponsoring State(s), Members of the Authority, international organizations, adjacent coastal States, and other States or stakeholders prior to, and during the period of, the Commission’s evaluation.

(b) bis. Reports from the Finance Committee upon matters within its competence, including:

(i) assessment of the economic benefits to be derived from the activities proposed in the application;

(ii) advice as to securing optimum revenue for the Authority;

(iii) the administrative budget required to manage a contract if awarded, and the proposed annual reporting fee to be levied pursuant to regulation 84;

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete i-iii entirely]

(iv) any recommendation regarding the amount or format of the environmental performance guarantee; and

(v) advice as to whether the applicant would be subsidized so as to be given an artificial competitive advantage with respect to land-based miners.

[b bis alt) 2bis. The Commission may delay its reports and recommendations under regulation 12(2) by a further 90 Days, if additional information or consultations with experts are necessary] [Russia]

[b ter.) Any advice or reports sought by the Commission or the Secretary-General from competent independent experts persons in respect of the application [the Environmental Plans] [environmental matters] to verify, clarify or substantiate the information provided, methodology used or conclusions drawn by an applicant;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete b.ter. entirely]

(c) The Any previous operating record of responsibility of the applicant [including in relation to mining activities within other jurisdictions] [Germany – remove brackets] [, as well as the applicant’s performance during the exploration stage, including the quality of annual reports and baseline data, and the results of test mining activities] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany – delete brackets] [, if any] [Russia];

(c) bis. The previous operating record of the Sponsoring State(s), and the Sponsoring State(s)’ technical resources and enforcement capabilities to monitor and enforce the applicant’s compliance with the Rules of the Authority; [Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Nauru; China – delete entirely]



~~[(d) any objectives or measures established in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan.] [Germany] [Russia – remove brackets / NORI, TOML, BMJ; China – delete sub-para (d) entirely]~~

~~(d) any objectives or measures established in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan.~~

~~(e) Any relevant Standards and Guidelines developed in accordance with Regulations 94 and 95; and~~

**Comments/remarks**

During Part I of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session, the United Kingdom has proposed to move current Draft Regulation 12 after Draft Regulation 13.

**Regulation 12 *bis*.**

**General obligations of contractors**

~~In conducting their activities in the Area, Contractors shall at all times:~~

~~(a) comply with the applicable obligations created by the provisions of Part XI of the Convention, the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, the decisions of the organs of the Authority and the terms of its contract with the Authority; and~~

~~(b) Comply with the national laws, regulations and administrative measures of the sponsoring State or States made pursuant to articles 139 and 153 (4) of the Convention and article 4 (4) of annex III to the Convention.~~

*[Facilitators' note: in accordance with proposals received, the content of this regulation 12 bis. has now been captured in regulation 18 bis. (President's Text)]*

**Regulation 13 [IWG IM]**

**Assessment of Applicants and applications**

1. The Commission shall determine ~~[under consideration of]~~ taking into account the **relevant** comments made by members of the Authority and Stakeholders, responses by the applicant and any additional information or comments provided by the Secretary General if **whether** the applicant **proposed Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information** ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports proposed deletions and amendments]~~: *[Facilitators' note: deleted text is covered in regulation 12 (above), and proposed regulation 13(1 bis) (below).]*

(a) ~~[Document]~~ ~~[Demonstrate]~~ ~~[Singapore - replace]~~ that the applicant is a qualified applicant pursuant to regulation 5;

**(a bis.) Are accompanied by a certificate of sponsorship;**

(b) ~~Are Has prepared the application~~ in conformity with these regulations, the **applicable** Standards and **taking into account** ~~[the applicable]~~ Guidelines, **and the Regional Environmental Management Plan;**

(c) Demonstrate that the applicant has given the undertakings and assurances specified in regulation 7(2);

(d) Demonstrate that the applicant and, if applicable its parent company, legal predecessor, senior management and controlling shareholders, have Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Has has Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ satisfactorily discharged its their Nauru, TOML, BMJ – supports reinstating “its” obligations to the Authority, including having a satisfactory record of past performance both within the Area and in other jurisdictions, if applicable Nauru NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete; Nauru – delete sub-para (d) entirely

(d alt.) moved from (h) Has demonstrated a satisfactory record of past performance both Nauru, TOML, BMJ – delete within the Area and in other jurisdictions Nauru, TOML, BMJ – delete Nauru – remove brackets, if applicable Nauru;

(e) Demonstrate that the applicant has or can demonstrate that it will have Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets the financial and technical capabilities and capacity Nauru, TOML, BMJ to carry out the Plan of Work, technical and operational capabilities to carry out the Plan of Work and meet the health, safety, and environmental requirements for the activities proposed in the Plan of Work, Indonesia - replace in accordance with the regulations, Standards and taking into account the Guidelines Netherlands/Ireland, meet or exceed environmental performance obligations Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Indonesia – delete and to meet all obligations under an exploitation contract according to criteria defined by the Council Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete; Facilitators' note: Annex III, Article 4 of the Convention requires the ISA's RRP to establish qualification criteria relating to 'financial and technical capabilities of the applicant'

(e)bis. Demonstrate that the applicant can or will be able to Nauru, TOML, BMJ Nauru Demonstrate that the applicant has or can demonstrate that it can fulfil the obligations Nauru, TOML, BMJ fulfil Nauru – lowercase the obligations Nauru, TOML, BMJ – delete to protect and preserve Satisfy the preliminary requirements to demonstrate the commitment of the Contractor in fulfilling their obligations to protect Indonesia - replace the Marine Environment in accordance with the Convention and the Agreement, and as listed out in Nauru as provided in Nauru, TOML, BMJ - replace the Rules rules, regulations Standards and Guidelines Indonesia and procedures Nauru, TOML, BMJ - replace of the Authority;

(f) Has demonstrated the applicant has or will have the financial capabilities to carry out the proposed Plan of Work Nauru, TOML, BMJ economic commercial financial viability of the mining project. Nauru, TOML, BMJ – delete

(g) Has demonstrated due diligence in relation to the accommodation of other activities in the Marine Environment. Facilitators' note: some more detailed original text here has been moved to/ blended with 13(4)(b).

Nauru, TOML, BMJ – delete para g entirely

1.bis. The Commission shall take into account all information pursuant to Regulation 12(4) and all applicable Standards and Guidelines when making its determinations under this Regulation.

2. In considering the financial capability of an applicant, the Commission shall determine in accordance with Standards, and taking into account consideration NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace Guidelines whether:

(a) The Financing Plan is compatible with proposed Exploitation activities; and

(b) The applicant is or will be Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets Costa Rica - delete capable of committing or raising NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Costa Rica - delete sufficient financial resources to cover the estimated costs of the proposed Exploitation activities as set out in the proposed Plan of Work, and all other associated costs of complying with the terms of any exploitation contract, including:

(i) The payment of any applicable fees and other financial payments and charges in accordance with these regulations in order to ensure that the project will benefit humankind as a whole NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete;

(ii) The estimated costs of implementing the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan and to restore and remediate the affected Marine Environment in case of a significant including the Mitigation Measures Indonesia;

(iii) Sufficient financial resources for the prompt execution and implementation of the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan, and effective response to an Incident; and

(c)(iv) Necessary access to—The applicant demonstrates that it will purchase insurance products that are appropriate to the financing of exposure to risk in accordance with Good Industry Practice Regulation 36, and applicable Standards, taking into account Guidelines.

(d) The applicant has proposed an Environmental Performance Guarantee whose amount and form is assessed by the Commission to be adequate, and in conformity with the requirements of Regulation 26 and the relevant Standard, and taking into account any Finance Committee report or Guidelines.

[(e) The applicant maintains an acceptable debt-to-equity ratio;][PEW] NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete

[(f) The terms of any loans used by the applicant to finance the proposed Exploitation adhere to Equator Principles, the performance standards of the International Financial Corporation or equivalent.][PEW] NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete

3. In considering the technical capability of an applicant, the Commission shall determine in accordance with applicable NORI, TOML, BMJ Standards and taking into account Guidelines whether the applicant has provided sufficient

information to demonstrate it has [or will have] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

(a) Certification to operate under internationally recognised quality control and management standards; [including on the assessment of the equipment, operational procedures and processes used in exploitation activities in relation to its environmental impact in accordance with Best Available Techniques, Best Environmental Practices and the relevant Standards, in particular those developed under regulation 45;][Netherlands/Ireland]

(a bis.) The necessary technical and operational capability to carry out the proposed Plan of Work in accordance with [Best Available Techniques,][Netherlands/Ireland] Good Industry Practice and Best Environmental Practices using appropriately qualified and adequately supervised personnel;

(b) The technology, knowledge, and procedures necessary to comply with the terms of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan, [and taking into account the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], including the technical capability to identify and monitor key environmental parameters and ecosystem components so as to detect any adverse effects, and to modify management and operating procedures as required to avoid [the potential threat of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Serious Harm];

(c) Established the necessary risk assessment and risk management systems to effectively implement the proposed Plan of Work in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques, Best Available Scientific Information, and Best Environmental Practices, and these regulations, including the technology and procedures to meet health, safety and environmental requirements for the activities proposed in the Plan of Work;

(d) The capability to respond effectively and [alt 1. promptly][alt 2. expeditiously] to Incidents, in accordance with the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan; and

(e) The capability [[and capacity]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to utilize and apply Best Available Techniques;

(f) A safety management system that meets the requirements of regulation 30 bis; and

(g) An Environmental Management System that meets the requirements of Regulation 46.

4. The Commission shall determine if the proposed Plan of Work [foreseeably contributes to realizing the benefits for humankind as a whole and complies] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] is consistent with the fundamental policies and principles contained in regulation 2, and;

(a) Is technically achievable and ~~economically commercially~~ viable;

(b) Reflects the economic life of the project;

(a~~e~~) Provides for the effective protection of human life, and health and safety of individuals engaged in Exploitation, in accordance with the rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority ~~[[and by any other competent international organizations]]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~.

(b~~d~~) Provides for Exploitation to be carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment, in line with **regulation 31 and** article 87 and 147 of the Convention, including *inter alia* navigation, the laying of submarine cables and pipelines, the right to maintain and repair existing submarine cables and pipelines, fishing and marine scientific research, in accordance with the relevant Standards and taking account of Guidelines. In making such determination, the Commission shall determine if the proposed Plan of Work has demonstrated due diligence in relation to the accommodation of other activities in the Marine Environment, **including** to:

(i) identify in-service and planned submarine cables and pipelines in, or adjacent to, the area under application using the publicly-available data and resources ~~as listed in~~ taking into account the Guidelines;

(ii) identify sea lanes in, or adjacent to, the area under application that are essential to international navigation;

(iii) identify areas of intense fishing activity **as may be defined in Standards or Guidelines** in, or adjacent to, the area under application; and

(iv) identify any other activities in or adjacent to the Contract Area in accordance with **Regulation 31, including marine scientific research activities, activities relating to marine genetic resources, and** ~~[any relevant]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ environmental protection measures and area-based management tools established ~~[or proposed by competent international organizations]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[by the Authority]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ; and

(iv) where other marine users are identified in relation to the area under application **whether listed in the Regional Environmental Management Plan or identified by some other means**, consult with those users to agree measures the Contractor will take to give reasonable regard to their activities ~~(such as an easement, or a mining exclusion zone within a reasonable radius);~~

(c~~e~~) ~~[[alt 1. Demonstrates that the Environmental Plans will secure]]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[alt 2. Provides under the Environmental Plans to secure]~~ ~~[alt 3. Ensures though the Environmental Plans will secure]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[alt 4. ]~~ ~~[Nauru – delete]~~ **Demonstrates that the draft Plan of Work and the accompanying plans and information will ensure** for the effective protection of the Marine Environment in accordance with the Convention and the Rules of the Authority ~~rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority, in particular the fundamental principles and the relevant policies under regulation as well as~~ **taking into account** the objectives and measures under the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan ~~[[~~, and taking into account the cumulative effects of all relevant activities, and climate

change]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. For this purpose, the Commission shall determine whether the Plan of Work and accompanying plans and information demonstrate that:

(i) the [draft] [application for a] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] Plan of Work is based on adequate environmental baseline data, in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into account relevant Guidelines;

[(ii) the Standards developed pursuant to regulation 45 will be complied with;

(iii) the objectives and measures of the applicable Regional Environmental Plan [will be fulfilled] [are / will be taken into account] [Argentina – suggests replacing];

(iv) the overarching goals and objectives set by the Authority [in its environmental policy] are complied with;

(v) the Plan of Work gives full effect to the precautionary principle [or approach as appropriate];]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete ii - v entirely]

[[vi) The effective protection referred to in sub-paragraph (e) implies that the activity will not cause, *inter alia*:

(A) Significant adverse effect on air and water quality;

(B) Significant changes in the atmosphere, the terrestrial environment, or the Marine Environment;

(C) Significant changes in the distribution, abundance or productivity or species of flora and fauna;

(D) Further jeopardy to endangered or threatened species or populations of said species;

(E) Degradation, or risk of degradation to [areas of] [IWG on UCH] special biological, scientific, archaeological, [or historical] [historical or cultural] [IWG on UCH] significance;

(F) Significant adverse effect on climate of weather patterns.]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete vi – sub-para F entirely]

[ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete brackets] (vi alt 1. or bis.) The ~~assessment whether the Environmental Plans~~ provide for the effective protection of the Marine Environment from harmful effects that may arise from the proposed activities ~~under sub-paragraph (e), shall include~~ by assessing whether the proposed Plan of Work:

(A) will not cause Environmental Impacts to any area designated by the Authority [[or other relevant authority]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] as a protected area in terms that prohibit such impact;

(B) [will not] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] give[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] rise to a non-negligible [alt. serious] risk of pollution, damage to flora and fauna, or other [harmful] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] to ecosystem integrity (i.e. ecosystem structure or function) [[in a manner that:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

[(i) impairs the ability of affected populations to replace themselves; or

(ii) degrades the long-term natural productivity of habitats or ecosystems; or

(iii) causes, on more than a temporary basis, significant loss of species richness, habitat or community types.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

(C) [will not] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [gives rise to a non-negligible [alt. serious] risk that it will] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] undermine the protection and conservation of other natural resources of the Area.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete bracket]

[(vi alt 2. or ter.) The activities proposed under the Plan of Work will meet the overarching environmental goal of sustaining marine (benthic and pelagic) ecosystem integrity including the physical, chemical, geological and biological environment, and contributing to restoring ecosystem integrity, as well as the following environmental objectives:

(A) Prevent loss of genetic diversity, species richness, habitat or community types, and structural complexity on a long-term basis;

(B) Maintain the ability of populations to replace themselves, including ensuring population connectivity and the preservation of suitable habitat;

(C) Prevent the degradation of ecosystem functions (e.g. the long-term natural productivity of habitats, elemental cycling, trophic relationships);

(D) Protect ecosystems from contamination by pollutants generated during any phase of the mining process;

(E) Maintain resilience to prevent regime shift, and to support recovery from cumulative impacts, including mining, that can affect source populations and communities, connectivity corridors, life-history patterns and species distributions; and

(F) Sustain ecosystem services, including carbon sequestration, recognizing that many are yet to be discovered.]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete vi alt 2 or ter - sub para F entirely]

5. For the purposes of determining effective protection of the Marine Environment under regulation 13 (4)(c)~~(e)~~ and ~~(f)~~, the Commission must take into account:

(a) Any Environmental Effects or impact on other activities of allowing the Exploitation activity;

(b) All proposed Mitigation and risk management measures;

(c) An evaluation of [harmful effects] [each potential instance of Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] individually, in combination, as well as cumulatively, including effects from other activities [in] [that impact] [Costa Rica - replace] the area under application.

(d) The effects on human health that may arise from Environmental Effects;

[(e) The importance of protecting the biological diversity and integrity of marine species, ecosystems and processes;

(f) The importance of protecting rare and vulnerable ecosystems and the habitats of threatened species;]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete paras e and f entirely]

(g) Traditional knowledge or cultural interests relevant to the area under application;

(h) The matters set out at Regulation 47(3)(b)46bis(2)(b);

(i) The assessment framework for Mining Discharges as set out in the Guidelines;

(j) Any relevant Standards and Guidelines developed in accordance with regulations 94 and 95.

[(k) Whether performance of the Plan of Work can be effectively monitored and controlled [by the Authority] [Nauru - delete], to minimise Environmental Effects, and ensure compliance with the Rules of the Authority.

[5 bis. The Commission shall determine whether the [draft plan of work] [application for a Plan of Work] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] and the accompanying plans and information demonstrate that the [proposed activities will not interfere with any cultural rights or interests] [applicant has considered relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities where available in planning its proposed activities] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [[have considered relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities where available or other cultural interests]. [IWG on UCH].]

[Nauru – delete 5k and 5bis entirely] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 5bis entirely]

6. When assessing a Plan of Work, the Commission shall apply the principles set out in regulation 44(1)(a)(i)-(vii)-(e).

[[7. In assessing a Plan of Work, the Commission shall determine whether the applicant is under the effective control of the sponsoring State, according to applicable Guidelines, and whether the sponsoring State has enacted domestic legislation covering activities in the Area that:

(a) is in force and applicable,



(b) provides available recourse through the domestic legal system in accordance with Article 235(2) of the Convention, and

(c) does not contain provisions that appear to exempt liability of the sponsored entity from a cause of action that may result from its conduct of activities in the Area.]]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 7 entirely]

### [Regulation 13.ALT [Germany]

#### Assessment of applicants and applications

1. In assessing both the applicant and the application, the Commission shall take into account all information pursuant to Regulation 12(4) and all applicable Standards and Guidelines [and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Pew] when making its determinations under this Regulation.

2. The Commission shall determine whether the applicant meets the following criteria:

- a. The applicant is a qualified applicant pursuant to regulation 5;
- b. The applicant has given the undertakings and assurances specified in regulation 7(2);

~~(b) bis The applicant has fulfilled all required documents, including any consideration to the comments received during the comment period and any revision to the Plan of Work, pursuant to Regulation 11; [Indonesia]~~

- c. The applicant and, if applicable its parent company, legal predecessor, senior management and controlling shareholders, have satisfactorily discharged their obligations to the Authority, including having a satisfactory record of past performance both within the Area and in other jurisdictions;

- d. [The applicant has demonstrated that it will meet the requirements in regulation 18bis.1.quin] [Russia - delete];

- e. The applicant has the financial [and technical] [, technical and operational] [Indonesia - replace] capabilities and capacity to carry out the Plan of Work, meet or exceed [health, safety, and] [Indonesia] environmental performance obligations and to meet all [obligations] [requirements] [Indonesia - replace] under an exploitation contract, [pursuant to the relevant Standard, in accordance with paragraphs 3 and 4 of this regulation] [as specified in Regulation 18 bis] [Indonesia - replace]; and

- f. The applicant is under the effective control of the sponsoring State in accordance with paragraph 5 of this regulation.

3. In considering the financial capability of an applicant, the Commission shall determine, in accordance with Standards and taking into account Guidelines, whether:

- a. The Financing Plan is compatible with proposed Exploitation activities;

- b. The applicant [is capable of committing [or raising]] [has] [Netherlands - replace] sufficient financial resources to cover the estimated costs of the proposed Exploitation activities as set out in the proposed Plan of

Work, and all other associated costs of complying with the terms of any exploitation contract, including:

i. The payment of any applicable fees and other financial payments and charges in accordance with these regulations [in order to ensure that the project will benefit humankind as a whole] [New Zealand - delete];

ii. The estimated costs of implementing the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan [including Mitigation measures] [Indonesia]; and

iii. Sufficient financial resources for the prompt execution and implementation of the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan, and effective response to an Incident;

c. The applicant demonstrates that it will purchase insurance products that are appropriate to the financing of exposure to risk in accordance with Regulation 36, and applicable Standards, taking into account Guidelines;

d. The applicant has proposed an Environmental Performance Guarantee whose amount and form is assessed by the Commission to be adequate, and in conformity with the requirements of Regulation 26 and the relevant Standard, and taking into account any Finance Committee report or Guidelines.

[e. The applicant maintains an acceptable debt-to-equity ratio; and] [Pew]

[f. The terms of any loans used by the applicant to finance the proposed Exploitation adhere to [Equator Principles, the performance standards of the International Financial Corporation or equivalent.] [Pew]

4. In considering the technical capability of an applicant, the Commission shall determine, in accordance with Standards and taking into account Guidelines, whether the applicant has provided sufficient information to demonstrate it has:

a. [Certification [and other supporting documentation demonstrating that the Contractor is able] [Indonesia] to operate under internationally recognised quality control and management standards] [Russia - delete];

b. The necessary technical and operational capability to carry out the proposed Plan of Work in accordance with Good Industry Practice and Best Environmental Practices using appropriately qualified and adequately supervised personnel;

c. The technology, [knowledge] [data and information] [Russia – suggests replacing], and procedures necessary to comply with the terms of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan, and the [relevant elements of the] [Pew] applicable Regional

Environmental Management Plan, including the technical capability to identify and monitor key environmental parameters and ecosystem components so as to detect any adverse effects, and to modify management and operating procedures as required to meet all environmental requirements;

- d. Established the necessary risk assessment and risk management systems to effectively implement the proposed Plan of Work in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques, Best Available Scientific Information, and Best Environmental Practices, and these regulations, including the technology and procedures to meet health, safety and environmental requirements for the activities proposed in the Plan of Work;
- e. The capability to respond effectively and promptly to Incidents, in accordance with the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan [including sufficient technical capability to respond unforeseen circumstances] [Indonesia];
- f. The capability and capacity to utilize and apply Best Available Techniques;
- g. A [human health and] [Indonesia] safety management system that meets the requirements of regulation 30 bis; and
- h. An Environmental Management System that meets the requirements of Regulation 46.

5. In considering whether the applicant is under the effective control of the sponsoring State, the Commission shall determine:

- a. [[insert wording based on outcome of intersessional work]] [the certificate of sponsorship obtained from the Sponsoring State has fulfilled the requirements set out in these Regulations, the Standards and Guidelines, and the domestic legislation of the Sponsoring State] [Indonesia];
- b. Whether the sponsoring State has enacted domestic legislation covering activities in the Area that:
  - i. is in force and applicable;
    - (i) bis incorporates the minimum qualifications and requirements for an entity wishing to conduct activities in the Area in order to obtain the certificate of sponsorship, in accordance with the Convention;
    - (i) ter includes provisions which outlines the obligations of contractors to report to the Sponsoring State or any form of monitoring and surveillance mechanism by the Sponsoring State to the sponsored entities;

(i) Provides grounds for terminating the certificate of sponsorship in cases of any violation to the Convention, the Agreement, these Regulations, and Standards; [Indonesia]

ii. provides available recourse through the domestic legal system in accordance with Article 235(2) of the Convention; and

iii. does not contain provisions that exempt liability of the sponsored entity from a cause of action that may result from its conduct of activities in the Area.

(b) bis In cases where the sponsored entity is not registered in the Sponsoring State or is not owned by the nationals of the Sponsoring State:

(i) Whether the State of nationality and/or the shareholders establish requirements for the sponsored entity to provide the Sponsoring State with necessary information and/or report on their activities in the Area, including any modification to the Plan of Work, any Incident or Emergency Events;

(ii) Whether the enforcement measures towards non complying sponsored entity are based on or at least possess the same standards as the national legislation of the Sponsoring State, including suspending the activities in the Area;

(iii) Whether the state of nationality of the sponsored entity and/or their shareholders are committed to ensure that the sponsored entity comply with the conditions imposed by the Sponsoring State in carrying out activities in the Area;

(iv) Whether the state of nationality of the sponsored entity and their shareholders acknowledged that the Sponsoring State is authorized to terminate the certificate of sponsorship. [Indonesia]

6. [If the applicant meets the criteria set out in paragraphs 1-5, the [New Zealand] Commission shall determine whether the application meets the following criteria:

a. The application is accompanied by a certificate of sponsorship;

b. The application is in conformity with these regulations, the applicable Standards, the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan and takes into account [the applicable] Guidelines;

c. The application provides for benefits for humankind, reasonable regard for other activities, effective protection of the Marine Environment, and protection of cultural rights or interests, in accordance with paragraphs 7 to 10 of this regulation.

7. In considering whether an application provides for benefits for humankind as a whole, the Commission shall determine:

- a. [Whether the Plan of Work will provide [optimum] [Russia – put brackets] revenue to the Authority, [and taking into account negative externalities caused by any damage to the Marine Environment] [Russia - delete], will benefit humankind as a whole;] [Nauru – delete para 7(a) entirely]
  - b. Whether the Plan of Work is consistent with the [fundamental policies and principles] [principles, approaches and policies] [Denmark - replace] contained in regulation 2;
  - c. Whether the Plan of Work provides for the effective protection of human life, and health and safety of individuals engaged in Exploitation, in accordance with the rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority [and by any other competent international organizations].
8. In considering whether an application provides for reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment, the Commission shall determine:
- a. Whether the Plan of Work provides for Exploitation to be carried out in line with regulation 31 and article 87 and 147 of the Convention, and in accordance with the relevant Standards and taking account of Guidelines;
  - b. Whether the Plan of Work has demonstrated due diligence in relation to the accommodation of other activities in the Marine Environment, including to:
    - i. identify in-service [and planned] [Russia - delete] submarine cables and pipelines in, or adjacent to, the area under application using the publicly-available data and resources taking into account the Guidelines;
    - ii. identify sea lanes in, or adjacent to, the area under application that are essential to international navigation;
    - iii. identify areas of intense fishing activity as may be defined in Standards or Guidelines in, above, or adjacent to, the area under application; iv. identify any other activities in or adjacent to the Contract Area in accordance with Regulation 31, including marine scientific research activities, activities relating to marine genetic resources, and environmental protection measures and area-based management tools established or proposed by competent international organizations; and v. where other marine users are identified in relation to the area under application whether listed in the Regional Environmental Management Plan or identified by some other means, consult with those users to agree measures the Contractor will take to give reasonable regard to their activities pursuant to Regulation 31.

iv. identify any other activities in or adjacent to the Contract Area in accordance with Regulation 31, including marine scientific research activities, activities relating to marine genetic resources, and environmental Protection measures and area-based management tools established or proposed by competent international organizations;

~~(iv) bis Identify any other activities as the exercise of sovereign rights of adjacent Coastal State, such as activities for the production of energy from the water, currents and winds; any establishment and use of artificial islands, installations and structures; and~~  
~~Indonesia~~

9. In considering whether an application provides for effective protection of the Marine Environment, the Commission shall determine:

a. Whether the Plan of Work demonstrates that it will meet the Authority's Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives under Regulation 44ter, the regional environmental objectives and measures under the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, ~~the Environmental Standards and Guidelines under Regulation 45,~~ ~~Indonesia~~ and the environmental thresholds in the relevant Standards, taking into account the cumulative effects of all ~~relevant~~ ~~Exploitation~~ ~~Russia – suggests replacing~~ activities, ~~as far as possible~~ ~~Russia~~ and climate change;

b. Whether the Plan of Work, complies with the principles set out in regulation 44(1);

c. Whether the Plan of Work demonstrates that:

i. ~~it is based on~~ ~~sufficient information and~~ ~~DOSI~~ adequate environmental baseline data, in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into account relevant Guidelines;

ii. it complies with the Standards developed pursuant to regulation 45;

iii. the Plan of Work gives full effect to the precautionary principle or approach as appropriate; ~~Indonesia – delete sub (i) to (iii) entirely~~

iv. ~~it will not cause~~ ~~harmful~~ ~~Indonesia~~ Environmental Impacts outside of the relevant Contract Area and ~~will not cause~~ ~~Environmental Impacts~~ ~~Indonesia - delete~~ to any area designated by the Authority [or other relevant authority] as a protected area in terms that prohibit such impact, and will not transfer harmful Environmental Impacts to the areas within

national jurisdiction] [Indonesia]; [Nauru – delete sub-para 9(c)(iv) entirely]

(iv) bis Whether the Plan of Work has identified the potential Environmental Impacts of the activities in the Area, including any potential adverse Environmental Effects, and its necessary measures to mitigate or manage such effects and risks through an Environmental Impact Assessment pursuant to Regulations 46 and 46ter, taking into account the environmental baseline data and cumulative effects; [Indonesia]

v. it includes Preservation References Zones and Impact Reference Zones in accordance with the criteria contained in Annex Xter;

vi. performance of the Plan of Work can be effectively monitored and controlled by the Authority, to minimise Environmental Effects, and ensure compliance with the Rules of the Authority;

vii. identifies and manages appropriately the [certainties,] [gaps and] [Russia – suggests replacing] uncertainties [or inadequacies] [Russia - delete] in the data or information available at the time of application; and viii. meets equivalent standards to relevant international rules with regards to any deliberate disposal of vessels, platforms or other man-made structures at sea.

d. [Whether the Plan of Work ensure[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] effective protection of the Marine Environment, in accordance with all applicable environmental requirements in the Convention, Agreement, and the Rules of the Authority, taking into account:

i. Any [Environmental Impacts and] [Russia] Environmental Effects [or impact on other activities] [Russia - delete] of allowing the Exploitation activity;

ii. All proposed Mitigation and risk management measures;

iii. [An evaluation of [harmful effects] [each potential instance of Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] individually, in combination, as well as cumulatively, including effects from other activities in [vicinity of] [Pew] the area under application;] [Russia - delete]

iv. The effects on human health that may arise from Environmental Effects;

v. The importance of protecting the biological diversity and integrity of marine species, ecosystems and processes;

- vi. The importance of protecting rare and vulnerable ecosystems and the habitats of threatened species;
- vii. Traditional knowledge or cultural interests relevant to the protection of the Marine Environment;
- viii. The matters set out at Regulation 47(3)(b);
- ix. The assessment framework for Mining Discharges as set out in the Guidelines; and
- x. Any relevant Standards and Guidelines developed in accordance with regulations 94 and 95. ~~[Indonesia – delete subpara (d) entirely]~~

10. In determining whether an application provides for the protection of cultural rights or interests, the Commission shall:

- a. Determine whether the application adequately identifies such cultural rights or interests;
- b. Demonstrates that the Plan of Work will not interfere with any cultural rights or interests; and
- c. ~~[adjust text based on the outcome of the intersessional WG on this topic].~~

#### **Regulation 14 [IWG IM]**

##### **Amendments to the proposed Plan of Work**

1. At any ~~reasonable~~ ~~[Pew - delete]~~ time prior to making its recommendation to the Council and as part of its consideration of an application under regulation 12, the Commission may:

(a) Request the applicant to provide additional information on any aspect of the application ~~within 30 Days of the date when the application is first considered~~ ~~prior to making a recommendation~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports keeping]~~ ~~[Pew- supports deleting]~~ ~~], while ensuring that any such request is necessary, proportionate and will not prevent the Commission from meeting the approval timeline set out in the relevant Standard~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~; and

(b) Request the applicant to amend its Plan of Work, or propose specific amendments for consideration by the applicant where such amendments are considered necessary to bring the Plan of Work into conformity with the requirements of these regulations.

2. Where the Commission makes a request under paragraph (1), the Commission shall provide to the applicant a brief justification and rationale for such a request.



The applicant must respond ~~within the timeframe requested by the Commission, which shall be at least 90 days, 90 Days following receipt of such [proposal a request] from the Commission.~~ ~~[Pew - delete]~~ ~~[within 90 Days following receipt of the request]~~ ~~[Nauru - replace]~~ by agreeing to the request, rejecting the request, or making an alternative proposal for the ~~[Commission's consideration]~~ ~~[Nauru - supports keeping].~~

~~3. The timeframe referred to in regulation 12(2) shall be extended by the timeframe determined by the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1) (2) [NOR, TOML, BMJ - replace].~~ ~~[Pew; Nauru - delete]~~

4. ~~The~~ ~~[alt 1. Secretary-General]~~ ~~[Pew; Nauru - supports]~~ ~~[alt 2. Commission]~~ shall publish any amendment, additional information, or revised application received pursuant to paragraph (2) ~~[at]~~ ~~[on]~~ ~~[Pew; Nauru - replace]~~ the ~~[Authority's]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ website~~],~~ and w~~h~~ere ~~[Pew- replace]~~ ~~[the Commission deems]~~ ~~[Pew]~~ these are significant, ~~[the Secretary-General]~~ ~~[Pew]~~ ~~].~~ In the event of any Material Change to the Environmental Plans, the Secretary-General ~~[Nauru - replace]~~ shall provide an opportunity for public consultation in accordance with regulation 11. ~~[Russia - delete]~~

~~4. Alt. The Secretary-General shall publish any amendment, additional information or revised application received pursuant to paragraph (2) on the Authority's website, and the Commission shall determine whether these are significant, in which case an opportunity for public consultation shall be provided in accordance with Regulation 11.]~~ ~~[Costa Rica]~~

~~4 Alt.2 The Secretary-General shall publish any amendment, additional information or revised application received pursuant to paragraph (2) on the Authority's website and, at the request of the Commission, shall provide an opportunity for public consultation in accordance with regulation 11.]~~ ~~[Italy]~~

5. The Commission shall ~~then in light of~~ take into account the applicant's response under paragraph ~~(1)~~ ~~(2)~~ ~~[Nauru - replace]~~ and any ~~[substantive and relevant]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ responses received from public consultation under paragraph (4) ~~[Russia - delete]~~ into account ~~[Nauru - delete]~~ in making its recommendations to the Council.

#### Regulation 15 [IWG IM]

##### Commission's recommendation for the approval or disapproval of a Plan of Work

~~1. Taking into account regulations 12(4) and [NORI, TOML, BMJ- delete] 13,~~ if the Commission determines that ~~[the applicant application meets]~~ ~~[the applicant and the application meet]~~ ~~[Costa Rica - replace]~~ the relevant requirements, it ~~[shall]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - supports "shall"]~~ ~~[alt. may]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ recommend approval of the Plan of Work to the Council.]

~~[Germany; New Zealand; Pew - delete para 1 entirely]~~

[1 alt 1.] The Commission may recommend approval of a proposed Plan of Work if the Plan of Work complies with all requirements stipulated in Regulation 12(4) and [France] 13 [and the Commission has sufficient information to determine that all requirements in Regulation 13 have been met.][Germany]

[Pew – delete 1 alt. 1 entirely]

[[1 alt 2.] If the Commission determines that the [applicant] [application] [Russia; Nauru – suggests replacing] meets the criteria set out in regulation ~~12(4)~~ and [Russia – keep / Nauru - delete] 13, it [shall] [may] [New Zealand – supports “may” / Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ – prefer “shall”] recommend approval of the Plan of Work to the Council.]] [New Zealand – remove brackets]

[Germany; Pew – delete 1 alt 2 entirely]

[1. Alt. 3] Subject to regulation 16, if the Commission determines that the application and the applicant meet the criteria set out in regulation 13, and the Commission has sufficient information to determine that all requirements in Regulation 13 have been met, it [may] recommend approval of the Plan of Work to the Council. [Pew]

1bis. The Commission shall accompany any recommendation for approval made under paragraph (1) with:

[a) a report in accordance with regulation 11(5)] [New Zealand – does not entail deletion of previous para 1 bis(a)]

(a) a summary of the deliberations of the Commission including what inputs have been taken into account and how these have been assessed, as well as divergences of opinion in the Commission, if any;

(a bis) a summary of any uncertainties inherent in the Plan of Work and how the applicant [is [proposed] [proposing]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [proposes] [UK - replace] to address [these] [them] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace];

(b) any conditions the Commission [considers appropriate to deal with adverse effects] [has determined that the Mitigation measures have been sufficient to deal with the Environmental Effects] [Indonesia - replace] of the proposed activities; and

(c) a draft Contract [indicating the proposed initial term pursuant to regulation 20] [Pew].

2. The Commission shall not recommend approval of a proposed Plan of Work if:

[(a) the Plan of Work does not comply with all requirements stipulated in Regulation 13;]] [Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – support]

[Germany; Pew – delete sub para a entirely]

[(a alt 1.) the Plan of Work does not comply with], or the Commission is unable to determine whether the Plan of Work complies with, [either alone or in

combination with other activities and impacts,]] [Germany; Pew] [Nauru - delete] all requirements stipulated in Regulation 13 [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [including because of scientific uncertainty [or inadequate information] [inadequate information or insufficient information] [DOSI - replace]] [Germany; Pew] [Nauru - delete] [especially if the proposed activities cause significant adverse effects [or Serious Harm] to the Marine Environment [without adequate Mitigation measures].] [Indonesia - replace];

[(a alt 2.) The Commission [is unable to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] determine[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] that the Plan of Work either alone or in combination with other activities and impacts [does not] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] ensure[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] effective protection of the marine environment, based on the criteria set out in Regulation 13(4) (c) (e) and (f), on the basis of Best Available Scientific Information, and applying the precautionary approach] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

[Germany; Pew – delete (a alt. 2) entirely]

[(a alt 3.) Pursuant to regulation 13(4)(c) (e) and (f), the Plan of Work fails to provide for the effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects that may arise from the proposed activities, or if the information is sufficiently uncertain or inadequate to determine, pursuant to regulation 13(4)(c) (e) and (f), that the Plan of Work provides for the effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects that may arise from the proposed activities.]

[Germany; NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete a alt 3 entirely]

(a alt 4.) The Commission determines that the Plan of Work either alone or in combination with other activities and impacts does not ensure effective protection of the marine environment, based on the criteria set out in Regulation 13 (4) (c), on the basis of Best Available Scientific Information.]

[Germany; Pew – delete a.a.lt 4 entirely]

(b) part or all of the area covered by the proposed Plan of Work is included in:

(i) ~~A Plan of Work for Exploration approved by the Council for the same Resource category for a different qualified applicant;~~ [A Plan of Work for Exploration approved by the Council for the same Resource category for a different qualified applicant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew] [and for which the Council has decided to maintain the operators preference and priority in accordance with Article 10 of Annex III] [France] [*Facilitators' Note, This wording had been deleted previously, but two written submissions in September 2023 request its reinsertion.*]

(ii) A Plan of Work approved by the Council for Exploration or Exploitation of other Resources if the proposed Plan of Work would be likely to cause undue

interference with activities under such approved Plan of Work for other Resources;

(iii) An area disapproved for Exploitation by the Council pursuant to article 162(2)(x) of the Convention; or

[(iv) an Area of Particular Environmental Interest or any other [protected] [Russia] site disapproved for exploitation by the Council, [or that sets a spatial or temporal protective measure] [Germany – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], as ~~determined~~ indicated in the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan;] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Russia - delete]] [Pew – delete (iv) entirely]

[(iv alt.) any area for which a spatial or temporal protective measure has been established by the ISA that is incompatible with the Plan of Work] [Pew]

[(v) any other area [designated] [identified] [IWG on UCH - replace] [by the Council] [Poland] for preservation for reasons of special biological, scientific, archaeological, historic, cultural, aesthetic or wilderness significance;]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete entirely]

(vi) A Reserved Area or an area designated by the Council to be a Reserved Area, except in the case of eligible applications under these regulations made in respect of a Reserved Area;

[(vii) An area that has not been subject to prior exploration activities;]

[Germany; Pew – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[(viii) An area not covered by a Regional Environmental Management Plan.] [Germany; Pew – remove brackets]

[(c) Such approval would undermine or contradict the [Authority's strategic environmental goals or objectives pursuant to DR 44ter or the] [Germany; Pew] regional goals, objectives or measures set out in the [applicable] [relevant] [Pew - replace] Regional Environmental Management Plan.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para (c) entirely]

[(c. bis) Such approval would undermine or contradict the binding goals, objectives, or measures set out in other global frameworks or agreements related to the protection of the marine environment] [Belgium]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete entirely]

[(d) Such approval would pose a reasonable risk of damage to an in-service or planned submarine cable or pipeline, or cause undue interference with the freedom to lay submarine cables and pipelines when considered in conjunction

with other approved Plans of Work or is otherwise unable to give reasonable regard to other marine users in the area under application.

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete entirely]

(e) There is inadequate [, insufficient,] [Germany; Pew] or substandard [Nauru -delete] environmental baseline information for the area covered by the proposed Plan of Work, or any part of that area [Nauru - delete].

[Germany; Pew – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete entirely]

2 bis. The Commission shall not recommend approval of a proposed Plan of Work if the applicant, its controlling shareholder or shareholders [Russia - delete] or its predecessor in law previously violated the general obligations of contractors in a non-negligible way.

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete entirely]

3. The Commission shall not recommend the approval of a proposed Plan of Work if it determines that:

(a) Such approval would permit a State party or entities sponsored by it to monopolize the conduct of activities in the Area with regard to the Resource category in the proposed Plan of Work in accordance with relevant Standards, taking into account relevant Guidelines; or [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para (a) entirely]

(b) The total area allocated to a Contractor under any approved Plan of Work would exceed:

(i) 75,000 square kilometres in the case of polymetallic nodules;

(ii) 2,500 square kilometres in the case of polymetallic sulphides; or

(iii) 1,000 square kilometres in the case of cobalt-rich ferromanganese crusts; or

(c) Such approval would permit a State party or entities sponsored by it to [M]m]onopolize [Russia] or significantly control the production of any single mineral or metal produced globally; or

[Germany – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete entirely]

4. If the Commission determines that it will not recommend approval of the Plan of Work [[alt 1.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete] for any reason] [Germany; Pew – remove brackets] [[alt 2. pursuant to paragraphs (1)-(3)]] [Germany – delete] [Russia - supports] the applicant does not meet the [criteria] [requirements] set out in [regulation s 12, 13 and 14][the regulations [NORI TOML, BMJ – delete]] [New Zealand; Pew - delete], [the Commission] [it]

[New Zealand – suggests replacing] shall [so] [Pew – suggests keeping] inform the applicant in writing, [by] [Pew – suggests keeping] provid[e][ing][Germany] the reasons [why][Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] any [criterion has] [any requirements set out in regulation 13 have not been met] [by the applicant] [Russia - delete] or why the Commission has been unable to make a determination [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany- delete] [Pew - keep] [for this determination] [New Zealand – suggests replacing], and shall provide the applicant with a further opportunity to make representations within 90 Days of the date of notification to the applicant. During this period the Commission shall not make a recommendation to the Council on the application.

5. [At its next available meeting,] [Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Tthe Commission shall consider any such representations made by the applicant when preparing its reports and recommendations to the Council, [alt 1. provided that the representations have been circulated at least 30 days in advance of that meeting] [Germany – delete brackets] [alt 2. [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] which it shall do within 30 days of its receipt of such representations]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete brackets] [Germany – delete] [which it shall do within 30 days of its receipt of such representations including through intersessional or virtual meetings if necessary] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]. [The Commission shall then consider the application afresh, in the light of the representations, in accordance with this Section 3.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports deleting]

[6. [Provided that the procedure referred to in Article 15, paragraph (4) and (5) has been completed, t] Tthe [France] Commission may refuse an application and return it to the applicant. The Commission must provide reasons for refusing an application, including a summary of the deliberations of the Commission specifying what [inputs] [considerations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] have been taken into account and how these have been assessed, as well as divergences of opinion within the Commission, if any.] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 6 entirely]

#### Section 4

##### Consideration of an application by the Council

##### Regulation 16 [IWG IM]

##### Consideration and approval of Plans of Work

1. The Council shall consider the reports and recommendations of the Commission [and any other relevant subsidiary body established in accordance with the Convention and the Agreement,] [Germany; Pew – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] relating to approval of Plans of Work in accordance with paragraph 11 [and paragraph 12] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] of section 3 of the annex to the Agreement, after due consideration, and within 60 [D]d]ays [Pew] unless the Council decides to provide for a longer period, the Council shall approve or disapprove the Plan of Work.

[[2. If the Council does not take a decision on a recommendation for approval of a Plan of Work within 60 days or such other time period as has been established by the Council, the Plan of Work shall be deemed to have been approved by the Council at the end of that period.]] [Germany; Costa Rica; Pew – delete] [Russia – remove brackets]

[[3. The Council shall disapprove a plan of work if any requirement of regulation [s] 13 [and 12(4)] [France] is not fulfilled.]]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 entirely]

[3. Alt. The Council shall disapprove a Plan of Work if the Commission, in assessing the application and applicants, failed to consider all the relevant conditions in accordance with Regulation 12(4)] [African Group]

3. [Alt.] [Bis] [Australia; Pew; Costa Rica – suggests replacing] The Council shall, when approving a Plan of Work, request the Secretary-General to ensure that the contract to be concluded incorporates [all] [any] [Nauru –replace] conditions [outlined in the [draft] [application for a] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] Plan of Work and the accompanying plans, as well as any additional conditions requested by the Commission or the Council] [recommended by the Commission under regulation 15(1bis)(b) and approved by the Council] [Nauru – suggests replacing].

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3alt entirely]

[[4. The Council shall consider the reports and recommendations of the Commission relating to approval of Plans of Work in accordance with paragraph 11 of section 3 of the annex to the Agreement.]]

[Germany – delete 16 alt entirely] [Russia – delete para 3, 3alt and 4 entirely] [Pew – delete para 4 entirely]

## Part III Rights and Obligations of Contractors

### Section 1 Exploitation contracts

#### Regulation 17 [President's Text] The exploitation contract

1. [Upon] [After] [Costa Rica - replace] the Council's approval of a Plan of Work [and upon Council's request] [Costa Rica] [and request from the Council] [Pew], the Secretary-General shall prepare an exploitation contract between the Authority and the applicant in the form prescribed in annex IX to these regulations.

2. The exploitation contract shall be signed on behalf of the Authority by the Secretary-General or duly authorized representative. The designated representative or the authority designated under regulation 5 (2) shall sign the exploitation contract on behalf of the applicant. The Secretary-General shall

notify all members of the Authority in writing of the conclusion of each exploitation contract.

3. The exploitation contract and its schedules is a public document, and shall be published ~~by the Secretariat~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~within~~ ~~PEW; Russia~~ ~~without~~ ~~undue~~ ~~Norway~~ ~~delay~~ ~~PEW – delete~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets~~ ~~Russia – delete~~ ~~7 days~~ ~~Norway, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete~~ ~~Russia; Pew - keep~~ in the Seabed Mining Register, except for Confidential Information, which shall be redacted.

## Regulation 18 [President’s Text]

### Rights and exclusivity under an exploitation contract

1. An exploitation contract shall confer on a Contractor ~~or the Enterprise~~ ~~Costa Rica - reinstate~~ the exclusive right to:

(a) Explore for the specified Resource category in accordance with ~~these Regulations and the approved Plan of Work~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~paragraph 7 below~~ ~~Germany -delete~~; and

(b) Exploit the specified Resource category in the Contract Area in accordance with ~~these Regulations and~~ ~~Russia~~ the approved Plan of Work ~~and regulations 18bis and 18ter~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete~~ ~~Costa Rica – remove brackets~~ and subject to prerequisites prescribed under regulation 25(6) ~~Costa Rica~~, provided that ~~exploitation activities~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ -remove brackets~~ ~~mining operations~~ shall only take place in approved Mining Areas and subject to prerequisites prescribed under regulation 25(6).

2. The Authority shall not permit any other entity to exploit or explore for the same Resource category in the Contract Area for the entire duration of an exploitation contract.

3. ~~Notwithstanding the right to conduct marine scientific research in areas beyond national jurisdiction, [T]he~~ ~~Germany~~ Authority, in consultation with a Contractor, ~~and with the cooperation of States Parties to the Convention,~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets~~ ~~Pew - delete~~ shall ensure, ~~to the extent possible,~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets~~ ~~China – delete~~ that no other ~~entity Contractor~~ ~~Pew – supports “Contractor”~~ operates in the Contract Area ~~whether~~ ~~Nauru~~ (a) ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ for a different category of Resources ; or ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ ~~or otherwise~~ ~~Nauru~~ ~~Pew - delete~~ (b) for any activity or purpose in the marine environment, or otherwise ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ in a manner which might interfere with the rights granted to ~~or operations of~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets~~ ~~Pew - delete~~ the Contractor.

~~3 Alt. The Authority, with the cooperation of States Parties to the Convention, shall ensure, to the extent possible, that no other entities operating in the Contract Area interfere with the rights granted to or operations of the Contractor.~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~

~~Norway – delete para 3 entirely~~ ~~Costa Rica – delete para 2 and 3 entirely~~



[3 bis. The Authority, with the cooperation of States Parties to the Convention, shall ensure, to the extent possible, that no other entities operating in the Contract Area interfere with the rights granted to or operations of the Contractor.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

4. An exploitation contract shall provide for security of tenure and shall not be [revised, suspended, or] [Australia - delete] terminated except in accordance with [Regulation 18.ter.] [Germany – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [the terms thereof] [the terms thereof] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [the terms set out in articles 18 and 19 of the Annex III of the Convention] [Russia].

5. An exploitation contract shall not confer any interest or right on a Contractor in or over any other part of the Area or its Resources [or any other part of the Marine Environment,] [Russia - delete] other than those rights expressly granted by the terms of the exploitation contract or these regulations [nor limit any freedoms of the high seas.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia - delete].

[5.bis. Adverse [Environmental] [i] [I]mpacts [and Effects] [PEW] from activities in the Area carried out under an Exploitation Contract must be limited to the Contract area.]

[Norway, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 5bis entirely] [Germany; Costa Rica; Pew – remove brackets]

6. The Contractor shall, subject to regulation 20, have the exclusive right to apply for [a renewal] [an extension] [Russia – suggests replacing] of its exploitation contract.

7. In relation to exploration activities in the Contract Area conducted under an exploitation contract [the applicable Exploration Regulations shall continue to apply] [Russia] [;] [Russia - delete]

[8. The Contractor:] [Russia]

(a) [The Contractor] [Russia - delete] [M] [m]ay [Russia] conduct Exploration activities within the Contract Area, in accordance with the proposed Exploration programme included in the Mining Workplan.] [Germany – remove brackets]

(b) [the applicable Exploration Regulations shall continue to apply and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ / Pew - delete] the applicable Exploration Regulations shall continue to apply as set out in the relevant [Standards and/or] [Guidelines]. In particular, + [The] [the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Contractor [Russia - delete] [M] [s]hall [Russia] continue to [show] exercise due diligence in conducting exploration activities in the Contract Area and shall [report] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], together with the reporting of such activities and it's the results of its Exploration activities to the Authority in accordance with the applicable Exploration Regulations, including under regulation 38 (2) (k) [and relevant Standards, taking account of Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

(c) The Contractor shall also take into account:

(i) any recommendations issued by the Commission pursuant to the Exploration Regulations, and

(ii) provisions of the Exploration Regulations that relate to the protection and preservation of the marine environment, and environmental baselines and monitoring.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub para c entirely] [Russia – delete subpara c(i) and merge c(ii) with the chapeau]

[(d) In order to [progress from Exploration] [proceed] [Russia – suggests replacing] to Exploitation of [i]n [Russia] a site within the Contract Area, where such Exploitation activity was not covered by the agreed Plan of Work, the Contractor must submit a new [c][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [s][S]tatement [PEW] and revised Plan of Work, in accordance with regulation [46.bis.] and which must be approved by the Authority in accordance with regulations [12 to 16].]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub para d entirely] [Russia – suggests renaming as para 7bis]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have received a proposal for the insertion of para 5.bis that relates to the mining impact being limited to the Contract area. I invite for discussions of this insertion.
- Based on several proposals, I have updated para 7.

#### [Regulation18 bis [President's Text]

##### Obligations of the Contractors.

1. Contractors shall comply with [the terms and conditions of their Exploitation Contract,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and the Rules of the Authority[, as well as the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan[,][Germany; Costa Rica] [as amended from time to time.]] [Norway, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Pew - keep] in a manner consistent with the Convention [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], the Agreement [and the Exploitation Contract]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], the Agreement, these Regulations, and the Standards and Guidelines [Indonesia - replace].

[1. Alt. A Contractor shall comply with the applicable obligations created by the provisions of Convention, the Agreement, these Regulations and other rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, the decisions of the organs of the Authority and the terms of its Exploitation contract with the Authority] [Russia]

1.bis. A Contractor shall carry out [the] [activities under a] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] proposed Plan of Work [in accordance with] [taking into account] [Russia – suggests replacing] [these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], Good Industry Practice, Best Available Scientific Evidence [Information] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] and Best Environmental Practices, using appropriately qualified and adequately supervised personnel [and shall continually identify and implement solutions that reflect the most up-to-date Best Available Scientific Information[, Best Environmental Practices] [Micronesia] and Best Available Techniques] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].

[1.ter. Contractors shall remain current in their implementation of Best Environmental Practices and Good Industry Practices, and shall continually identify and implement solutions that reflect the most up-to-date Best Available Scientific Evidence and Best Available Techniques.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete 1 ter entirely] [Costa Rica – remove brackets]

1.quat. Contractors shall comply with the national laws, regulations and administrative measures of the sponsoring State or States made pursuant to articles 139 and 153(4) of the Convention and article 4(4) of annex III to the Convention. [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

1.quin Contractors shall throughout the term of their contract, for the purposes of activities in the Area and ancillary activities, only use vessels flagged to registries of States that are [States Parties] [Member States] [UK - replace] to the Authority, and only use ports located in States that are [States Parties] [Member States] [UK - replace] to the Authority. In cases where the Contractor seeks to use flags or ports of non-member States of the Authority, the prior approval of the Council is required and is conditional upon receiving a written commitment from such non-member State or States to enforce the Rules of the Authority against the Contractor and to cooperate with the Authority for the purposes of securing compliance with the Rules of the Authority where required. [Germany] [Russia; Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ; UK Seabed Resources - delete]

(1 quin.1) Contractors shall throughout the term of their contract, for the purposes of Exploitation and ancillary activities, only use vessels flagged to registries of States that are member States of the Authority; and only use ports located in States that are member States of the Authority.[PEW]

2. [In accordance with the Exploitation Contract or the Parent Company Liability Statement, as the case may be] [Netherlands] [The contractors] [Contractors] [the contractor and its Managing Company] [China - replace] [Netherlands - replace], [their holding, subsidiaries, affiliated and Ultimate Parent companies, agencies and partnerships] [Netherlands - delete] shall [have responsibility or liability for any damage arising out of wrongful acts in the conduct of its] [Netherlands - delete] [(a) the Contractor's] [Netherlands] operations, [or (b) the operations of its subsidiaries or sub-contractors in the performance of the Plan of Work] [Netherlands] [account being taken of contributory acts or omissions by the Authority] [Netherlands - delete]. Liability in every case shall be for the actual amount of damage.] [China] [be held liable for the compliance of the Contract. Particularly, they shall be jointly and severally [and strictly] [Germany – remove brackets] liable for the obligation of compensating damages arising outside of permitted Exploitation Activities [or for unforeseen damage arising from permitted activities] [China – delete]. [Germany – remove brackets]

3. In the event that Contractors fail to comply with their payment obligations under these Regulations, [holdings and Ultimate Parent Companies] [their managing Company] [Netherlands – suggests replacing] shall be held responsible to effect such payments to the Authority on behalf of Contractors.

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete paras 2 & 3]

4. [Sponsor States shall take all legislative and administrative measures to assure that Contractors have all material, operative, and financial means to comply with the Contract and these Regulations and that no corporate limitation shall prevent Contractors, holding and Ultimate Parent Companies to compensate damages and make the payment required by the Contractors under the Contract and these Regulations.]

[4. The Contractor shall allocate sufficient resources and assign roles and responsibilities to implementation of their obligations under these Regulations.]  
[Norway]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete DR 18bis entirely]

#### Comments/remarks

- During the July 2023 meeting, the retention of the regulation was discussed, and several delegations and observers supported the inclusion of draft regulation 18 bis. I have thus retained it and updated it according to the proposals for refinement.
- I have deleted para 4, since this regulation relates to sponsoring state liabilities, and not the obligations of the Contractors.

#### Regulation 18 ter [President's Text]

##### Termination [or suspension] [UK] of an Exploitation Contract

#### 1. An exploitation contract can only be terminated:

- (a) by [all parties to the contract by][the][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew - replace] mutual consent [of the parties][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew];
- (b) [[by the][on]][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [By reason of termination of State sponsorship, [in accordance with][pursuant to][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – replace] regulation 21 [and without the Contractor having secured an alternative sponsorship] [Pew];
- (c) by the Contractor in accordance with the terms of the contract, as covered by section 10 of the Annex X to these regulations; [[and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]] [or] [Pew - replace]
- (d) by the Authority in accordance with the terms of the contract, as covered by section 12 of the Annex X to these regulations[[; or][.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [Pew – supports “or”]
- (e) [[by expiry of the term of the contract, without renewal.]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Costa Rica; Pew – remove brackets]

2. Any [[suspension or]] [PEW – delete] [Pew - keep] termination of a contract by the Authority shall be by written notice to the Contractor, through the Secretary-General, which shall include a statement of the reasons for taking such action. [Unless a different time period is indicated in these Regulations, t] [The [Pew] [[suspension or]] [PEW - delete] [Pew - keep] termination shall be effective 60 Days after such written notice, unless the Contractor within such period disputes the Authority's right to [[suspend or]] [PEW- delete] [Pew - keep] terminate the contract in accordance with Part XI, Section 5, of the Convention, in which case the contract shall only be [[suspended or]] [PEW – delete] [Pew - keep] terminated in accordance with a final binding decision in accordance with Part XI, Section 5, of the Convention.

[Russia – suggests deletion of references to “suspension” in para 2, or alternatively addition of provisions dealing with grounds for suspension]

[3. Nothing in this Regulation shall relieve a Contractor of any obligation or liability under its Exploitation Contract, and the Contractor shall remain responsible and liable to the Authority for the performance of its obligation under its Exploitation Contract, in the event of any termination.] [African Group]

**Comments/remarks**

- I have received several written proposals for a regulation that collates the circumstances under which a contract may be terminated, and I have thus inserted this new draft regulation 18 ter.

**[Regulation 19 [President's Text]**

**Joint arrangements**

1. Contracts may provide for joint arrangements between a Contractor and the Authority through the Enterprise, in the form of joint ventures or production-sharing, as well as any other form of joint arrangement, which shall have the same protection[s] [Australia] [against revision, suspension or termination] [Australia] as contracts with the Authority.

2. The Council shall enable the Enterprise to engage in seabed mining effectively at the same time as the entities referred to in article 153, paragraph 2 (b), of the Convention.]

[Germany – delete DR 19]

**[Regulation 19 Alt**

**Joint arrangements**

~~Before approving any contract with an entity referred to in article 153, paragraph 2(b), of the Convention, the Authority shall adopt Standards and Guidelines:~~

~~(a) providing for joint arrangements between a Contractor and the Enterprise, pursuant to article 11 of Annex III of the Convention; and~~

~~(b) in relation to financial terms, to further the objective of enabling the Enterprise to engage in seabed mining, pursuant to article 13(1)(e) of Annex III of the Convention.~~

[2bis. Before approving any contract with an entity referred to in article 153, paragraph 2(b), of the Convention, the Authority shall adopt Standards and Guidelines

a. providing for joint arrangements between a Contractor and the Enterprise, pursuant to article 11 of Annex III of the Convention;

and b. in relation to financial terms, to further the objective of enabling the Enterprise to engage in seabed mining, pursuant to article 13(1)(e) of Annex III of the Convention.] [Pew]

[Germany - support the inclusion of DR 19 Alt instead of DR 19] [Costa Rica: Pew – reinsert as an addition to 19]

#### Comments/remarks

- From the discussion in July 2023, I understood that most delegations and observers were in favour of the original wording of draft regulation 19. I thus suggest that we continue the negotiations based on that version.

#### Regulation 20 [President's Text]

##### Term and [renewal] [extension] [Russia – replace] of exploitation contracts

1. [Subject to the provisions of section 8.3 of the exploitation contract,] [the maximum initial term of an exploitation contract is 30 years] [from the commencement of Commercial Production] [Germany, Australia; Costa Rica – delete / NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [from execution of the contract – Germany; Australia; Russia; Pew] [from the date of contract execution] [Australia] [from the signature of the contract] [Costa Rica] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]. [Each renewal period shall be for] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] a maximum of [5] [Nauru – replace with 10 / NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace with 15] years. [Norway; Pew] [Russia - delete] [The Authority and the Contractor may agree to a shorter period in light, of the expected economic life of the Exploitation activities of the Resource category set out in the Mining Workplan [and the policies and objectives of the Authority cited in regulation 2.] [Germany] [The Authority and the Contractor may agree to a shorter period in light, of the expected economic life of the Exploitation activities of the Resource category set out in the Mining Workplan [and the policies and objectives of the Authority cited in regulation 2-].]

2. An application to [renew] [extent] [Russia- replace] an exploitation contract shall be made in writing addressed to the Secretary-General and shall be made no later than [one] [two] [Norway; Australia; Russia - replace] year before the expiration of the initial period [or [renewal] [extension] [Russia - replace] period], as the case may be, [Germany – delete] [Australia - delete] of the exploitation contract. [In such case the contractor must file a new plan of work] [Costa Rica]

[3. [When submitting an application to renew an exploitation contract,] [Australia] The [Contractor] [application to renew an exploitation contract shall include a revised Plan of Work in accordance with Regulation 7 as well as] [Pew] shall supply [a revised Plan of Work, a revision of all accompanying plans in accordance with Regulation 7, as well as any] [Australia] such documentation as may be specified in the Standards and Guidelines. [If the Contractor wishes to make any changes to a Plan of Work and such changes are Material Changes, the contractor shall submit a revised Plan of Work.] [Germany; Australia; Pew – delete] [Submission of a revised Plan of Work for the purposes of this regulation is deemed to be a Material Change under regulation 57.] [Australia] [The Contractor shall conduct a consultation process on the revised Plan of Work, with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulation 93bis] [Australia; Pew] [and Regulation 93ter] [Ireland]. [Costa Rica – delete all after first period]

[Russia – delete original para 3 entirely]

~~[3. Alt. The Contractor submitting an application to renew an exploitation contract shall supply a revised plan of work, including an updated EIA, as well as such documentation as may be specified in any applicable Standard and taking account of Guidelines.] [Russia – supports keeping] Submission of a revised Plan of Work for the purposes of this regulation is deemed to be a Material Change for the purposes of regulation 57.]~~

[3. Alt. The Contractor submitting an application to renew an exploitation contract shall supply a revised Plan of Work and a revision for all accompanying plans in accordance with Regulation 7 as well as such documentation as may be specified in any applicable Standard and taking into account Guidelines.][Germany]

[3bis. The updated Environmental Plans are subject to Stakeholders Consultation according to Regulation 11] [Russia]

4. The Commission shall consider ~~[such]~~ ~~[the]~~ [Russia - replace] application to ~~[renew]~~ ~~[extent]~~ [Russia - replace] an exploitation contract, along with any revised documents or responses prepared by the Contractor pursuant to Regulation 93bis(9) [Russia] ~~[in accordance with Part II, Sections 2 to 4 of these regulations]~~[Germany] ~~[at its next meeting]~~ [Russia - supports] ~~[within 30 days]~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] after submission of any revised plans or responses by the Contractor pursuant to regulation 11(2) ~~[and]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~, ~~[provided]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[and]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ ~~[the]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ documentation required under paragraph 3 ~~[or pursuant to Regulation 93bis(9)]~~ [Russia] ~~[has been circulated at least 30]~~ ~~[60]~~ [Russia - supports] Days prior to the commencement of that meeting of the Commission. ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~

[4bis. The Commission shall submit its report and recommendations to the Council regarding an application to extend an exploitation contract no later than 120 Days from the date of the completion of the requirements for review of updated Environmental Plans, in accordance with regulation 11, or from the date of the completion of the amendments to the revised or a new Plan of Work, in accordance with regulation 14, if any, whichever date occurs later.] [Russia]

5. In making its recommendations to the Council under paragraph 6 below, the Commission shall examine and assess applications in accordance with regulation ~~[13]~~ ~~[12]~~ [Germany; Pew], against the criteria contained in regulation ~~[12]~~ ~~[13]~~ [Germany; Pew], and take account of any report on the review of the Contractor's activities and performance under a Plan of Work under regulation 58, as well as any other relevant information from, inter alia, performance assessments, annual reports, ~~[and]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~ environmental reports ~~[inspection reports, compliance reports, monitoring and compliance data, third-party or whistle-blower complaints, and legal actions against the contractor.]~~ [Germany; Pew], ~~[legal actions against the contractor].~~

6. The Commission ~~[shall]~~ ~~[may]~~ [Germany; Pew] recommend to the Council the approval of an application to ~~[renew]~~ ~~[extent]~~ [Russia - replace] an exploitation contract, and an exploitation contract ~~[shall]~~ ~~[may]~~ [Germany] be renewed by the Council provided that:

~~[(a) The Resource category is recoverable annually in Commercial and Profitable Quantities from the Contract Area;]~~ ~~[Nauru, Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

(a)alt. ~~[[The term of renewal reflects the expected economic life of the mining project, taking into consideration such factors as the depletion of the ore, the useful life of mining equipment and processing facilities and commercial viability.]]~~ ~~[[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]]~~

(b) The Contractor is in compliance with the terms of its exploitation contract and the Rules of the Authority; ~~[[including the rules, regulations and procedures [and Standards] adopted by the Authority [from time to time] to ensure effective protection for the Marine Environment from harmful effects which may arise from activities in the Area];~~

~~[[b) bis. The cumulative environmental impact does not exceed the thresholds set by the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan as a result of the renewal, and that such renewal does not hinder the achievement of the strategic and regional environmental goals and objectives;]]~~

~~[[b)bis. The cumulative environmental impact does not exceed the thresholds set by the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan as a result of the renewal, and that such renewal does not hinder the achievement of the strategic and regional environmental goals and objectives;]]~~ ~~[[Germany]]~~

~~[[b)ter. The Contractor’s final report sufficiently demonstrates that the Contractor has met and complied with all environmental goals, objectives, and thresholds and can demonstrate that the PRZs and IRZs met their objectives, and that the Contractor’s application for an extension includes designation of suitable PRZs and IRZs for the extension period in accordance with Annex Xter.]]~~ ~~[[Germany]]~~

(c) The exploitation contract has not been terminated earlier;

~~[[c bis) The Contractor is able to demonstrate that all related contractual obligations, such as the requirement to maintain insurance coverage at all times during the conduct of Exploitation activities, will extend or continue to remain in force for the duration of the renewal period;]]~~ ~~[[Germany]]~~

(d) The Contractor has paid the applicable fee in the amount specified in appendix II;

~~[[e) — [The Council is satisfied that the requirements of regulation 13 will be met; and]]~~ ~~[[Russai - keep]]~~

~~[[e) alt. The overall duration of the Exploitation Contract, including renewal periods, does not exceed [x years]]~~ ~~[[Pew]]~~

(f) ~~[[The Sponsoring State has reconfirmed their sponsorship of the Contractor by reissuing their certificate of sponsorship.]]~~ ~~[[Germany – remove brackets]]~~

~~[[7. [Each][A] [Germany - replace] [renewal] [extension] [Russia - replace] period shall be a maximum of [10] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – delete] [15] [Germany – delete] years.]]~~ ~~[[for a maximum overall duration of the exploitation contract of 40 years.]]~~ ~~[[Germany]]~~

~~[[Norway; Pew – delete para 7 entirely]]~~

8. Any ~~[[renewal] [extension] [Russia - replace]]~~ of an exploitation contract shall be effected by the execution of an instrument in writing by the Secretary-General or duly authorized representative, and the designated representative or the authority designated under regulation 5 (2). The terms of a ~~[[renewed] [extended] [Russia - replace]]~~ exploitation contract shall be those set out in the



standard exploitation contract annexed to these regulations that is in effect on the date that the Council approves the [renewal] [extension] [Russia - replace] application.

~~9. Sponsorship is deemed to continue throughout the renewal period unless the Sponsoring State or States terminates its sponsorship in accordance with regulation 21.~~ [Russia - keep]

10. An exploitation contract in respect of which an application for renewal has been made [shall][may][Germany; Costa Rica - replace], despite its expiry date, remain in force [for a maximum of [three] months after its expiry date and only under extraordinary circumstances][Germany; Pew] [until such time as the renewal application has been considered and its renewal has been granted or refused.][Germany; Pew - delete]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have attempted to streamline the draft regulation and omit elements that are already covered in other draft regulations.

### Regulation 21 [President's Text]

#### Termination of sponsorship

1. Each Contractor that is not the Enterprise or a State Party shall ensure that it is sponsored by a State or States, as the case may be, throughout the period of the exploitation contract in accordance with article 153(2)(b) of the Convention and regulation 6, and to the extent necessary that it complies with regulations 6 (1) and (2).

~~[1.bis. A Contractor shall promptly notify the Authority if the Contractor's Sponsoring State or States terminates its sponsorship. The sponsoring State or States shall also promptly notify or confirm any termination of sponsorship to the Authority.]~~

[2.alt. Without prejudice to any terms, rights or obligations between a State and a Contractor under the terms of sponsorship, [as defined in this Regulations, if] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [if] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] a State [or States] [Italy] [may] [Pew - supports deleting] terminates its sponsorship [of a Contractor, it shall promptly] [within 7 working days / within 7 Days] [France; UK - replace]. [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets] [by providing to] [Pew - supports "provide"] the Secretary-General with a written notice describing the reasons for such termination and the date the termination is to take effect], [and no earlier than the following timeframe:] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove enclosing brackets]

(a) Termination due to a Contractor's material non-compliance under its terms of sponsorship: ~~termination to~~ takes effect [no earlier] [no later than] [6] months after the date of receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General;

(b) Termination due to reasons other than those listed in subparagraph (i) above: ~~termination to~~ takes effect no [earlier] [later] than 12 months after the date of

receipt of the notification by the Secretary-General[, unless the notification specifies a later date] [Nauru].] [Pew – delete everything after “effect”]

2.alt.bis. If the reasons for termination of sponsorship include [Contractor][PEW] [material] [Russia] non-compliance under its terms of sponsorship, the Contractor must [immediately] [NORI, TOML, BMJ -delete] [if instructed to by the Secretary-General based upon [their] [Russia - delete] determination [of the Compliance Committee] [Russia] that the reasons for termination justify suspension] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Russia – supports keeping / Costa Rica; Pew – supports deleting] suspend its [mining] [Exploitation] [Russia - replace] operations [exploitation activities] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew - replace] until the Council has considered the matter in accordance with [paragraph 6 below] [regulation 29ter] [Pew - replace].]

[Nauru – delete (i), (ii), and 2.alt.bis entirely]

3. In the event of termination of sponsorship, [due to reasons other than those listed in subparagraph 2 (i)] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] the Contractor [shall][may] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – replace], [within the period referred to in [sub]paragraph 2 (ii) before the previous State’s sponsorship ends,][Nauru – delete] [prior to the termination date referred to in paragraph 2 above] [Nauru] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew - support] obtain another Sponsoring State or States in accordance with the requirements of regulation 6, and in particular in order to comply with regulation 6 (1) and (2). Such State or States shall submit a certificate of sponsorship in accordance with regulation 6. The exploitation contract [terminates] [shall suspend] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] automatically if the Contractor fails to obtain a Sponsoring State or States within the required period [unless the Contractor has sought the Council’s consent to transfer its rights and obligations under the exploitation contract pursuant to regulations 23] [Costa Rica; Pew - delete]. [Any such suspension of an exploitation contract shall be lifted once a certificate of sponsorship is submitted in accordance with regulation 6.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

3.bis. In the event that the Contractor is able, within the relevant period, to obtain another Sponsoring State or States in accordance with sub-paragraph 3, the Authority shall deal expeditiously with any consents that are required as a result under regulations 23 or 24.

4. A Sponsoring State or States is not discharged from any obligations accrued while it was a Sponsoring State by reason of the termination of its sponsorship nor shall such termination affect any legal rights and obligations created during such sponsorship [consistent with the requirements of contractors, including as set forth in Annex III, Article 17.2(e) of the Convention] [Australia, PEW – delete].

5. The Secretary-General shall [promptly] [within 7 working days / within 7 Days] [France; UK - replace] notify, [as soon as practicable,] the members of the Authority of a termination or change of sponsorship.

6. After a Sponsoring State has given a written notice in accordance with paragraph 2 above, [due to reasons listed in subparagraph 2 (i),][PEW] the Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission, [which shall take account of the reasons for the termination of sponsorship, especially [in][where][Nauru – replace] the [case of][Nauru – delete] termination of [contract] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [that] [Nauru – delete] [sponsorship] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] also equates to a material breach of

[compliance with] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [the terms of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the exploitation contract [,][Nauru] [may] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [PEW – delete] [shall][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [consider its own investigations and compliance action under Part XI of these Regulations, on the basis of the information supplied by the terminating sponsoring State. The Council shall apply regulation 29 bis, and shall] [PEW] require the Contractor [pursuant to regulation 103 to take remedial action or other steps including] [Nauru] [take remedial action or other steps including, where justified under regulation 103, to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to suspend, [or][NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [PEW – delete] [continue the suspension of,] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] its [mining operations] [exploitation activities] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [(New para. 7) Such remedial action or suspension shall continue] [UK] [unless and][PEW] until [such time as [the Contractor has proved to the satisfaction of][PEW – delete] the Council [that the [material] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] breach of [compliance][NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [PEW – delete] [has satisfied itself that the Contractor is operating in compliance][PEW] [with][NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the exploitation contract has been addressed and a new certificate of sponsorship is submitted] [that it is operating in compliance with the Contract] [Costa Rica - replace].

7. [Nothing in this regulation shall relieve a Contractor of any obligation or liability under its exploitation contract, and the Contractor shall remain responsible and liable to the Authority for the performance of its obligations under its exploitation contract in the event of any termination of sponsorship.] [Russia – remove brackets]

8. [If a Sponsoring State terminates its sponsorship of a Contractor, this has no impact on the sponsorship of that Contractor by any other Sponsoring State except in circumstances where the sponsorship termination occurred due to the reason in subparagraph 2(i), [Where the reason for termination of sponsorship is due to the reason in subparagraph 2(i),] [Australia] any other Sponsoring State or States will also be deemed to have terminated sponsorship of the Contractor that is non-compliant under its terms of sponsorship.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia – remove enclosing brackets]

**Comments/remarks**

- I have proposed to delete para 1.bis. since the obligations to notify the Authority has already been placed on the Sponsoring State in para 2.alt.
- Para 8 has been proposed to contemplate for the situation where only one Sponsoring State terminates its sponsorship.

**Regulation 22 [President’s Text]**

**Use of exploitation contract as security**

1. The Contractor may, ~~[[solely for the purpose of raising financing to effect its obligations under an exploitation contract and only with the prior consent of the Sponsoring State or States and [of the Sponsoring State or States and][China – reinstate]~~ of the Council ~~[which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed]~~, based on the recommendations of the Commission], ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Australia; Pew - keep]~~ mortgage, pledge, lien, charge or otherwise encumber all or part of its interest under an exploitation contract.

2. ~~[[In seeking consent under this regulation,]]~~ ~~[Australia – supports deleting]~~ The Contractor shall, ~~[in its application for consent [and] [PEW] [when seeking the consent of the Council, and][Australia]~~ ~~in its annual reports submitted in accordance with regulation 38,]~~ disclose to the Council and Commission the terms and conditions of any such encumbrance referred to in paragraph 1 above and its potential impact on the activities under the exploitation contract in the event of any default by the Contractor.

3. As a condition to giving consent under this regulation, the Authority shall request evidence that the beneficiary of any encumbrance referred to in paragraph 1 above ~~shall agree~~ ~~agrees~~ ~~[UK – replace]~~ either, upon foreclosure, to undertake Exploitation activities in accordance with the requirements of the exploitation contract and these regulations, in which case the beneficiary must fulfil the requirement of paragraph 4 and 5 of regulation 23 or that such a beneficiary shall transfer the mortgaged property only to a transferee that fulfils the requirements of paragraphs 4 and 5 of regulation 23 as determined by the Commission.

~~[[4.~~ The Council may require that the beneficiary of the encumbrance referred to in paragraph 1 above:

(a) Shall subscribe to any internationally adopted standards for the extractive industries which are widely accepted including environmental and social governance standards, with reference to relevant Standards and Guidelines where relevant; ~~or and~~

(b) Shall be properly regulated through a national financial conduct authority in accordance with the Guidelines. ~~]]~~

~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4 entirely]~~ ~~[Australia; Pew – keep para 4 entirely]~~

5. A Contractor shall file with the Seabed Mining Register a summary of any agreement that results or may result in a transfer or assignment of an exploitation contract, part of an exploitation contract or any interest in an exploitation contract, including registration of any security, guarantee, mortgage, pledge, lien, charge or other encumbrance over all or part of an exploitation contract. Nothing in this regulation shall relieve a Contractor of any obligation or liability under its exploitation contract.

6. The Authority shall ~~[not be obliged to]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ ~~[not]~~ ~~[Australia; Pew]~~ provide any funds or issue any guarantees or otherwise become liable directly or indirectly in the financing of the Contractor's obligations under an exploitation contract.

## **Regulation 23 [OEWG]**

### **Transfer of rights and obligations under an exploitation contract**

1. A Contractor may transfer its rights and obligations under a ~~an exploitation~~ ~~Canada - delete~~ contract in whole or in part only with the prior ~~written~~ consent of the ~~[Sponsoring State], and the~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ Council ~~[, such consent]~~ ~~[decision]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~ ~~not to be unreasonably withheld]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets]~~ ~~[Russia - delete]~~, based on the recommendations of the Commission ~~[and with notification to the Sponsoring State]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~. ~~[The decision of the Sponsoring State should not be reasonably withheld]~~ ~~[Russia]~~

~~[A Contractor may transfer its rights and obligations under an exploitation contract in whole or in part only with the prior written consent of the Sponsoring State, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld, and the Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission.] [UK]~~

2. The Contractor and transferee shall jointly inform the Secretary-General of any application ~~[for consent]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ to transfer the rights and obligations under a ~~an exploitation~~ ~~Canada - delete~~ contract. The Secretary-General shall transmit that application to the Commission, which shall give its recommendation to the Council.

3. The Commission shall consider and ~~decide whether to~~ ~~[Costa Rica - delete]~~ recommend to the ~~Counsel]~~ ~~Council]~~ ~~[Nauru – replace]~~ ~~[to consent to]~~ ~~[regarding]~~ ~~[Costa Rica - replace]~~ the application for consent to transfer ~~[within 90 days of the date it receives the application.] [Nauru]~~ ~~[within 90 days of the date the Commission receives the relevant application.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[at its next available meeting, provided that the documentation has been circulated at least 30 Days prior to that meeting]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete / Russia - keep]~~.

~~[4. Before the Commission can make a recommendation to the Council for approval of a transfer]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ The Commission shall verify that the transferee:

- a. Meets the requirements of a qualified applicant as set out in regulation 5;
- b. Has submitted a certificate of sponsorship as set out in regulation 6;
- c. Has submitted a form of application as set out in regulation 7 ~~[if the Secretary-General considers that there is a Material Change to the Plan of Work];~~
- d. Has paid ~~all relevant fees and levies established by the Council, including~~ the administrative fee as set out in appendix II;

~~d bis Accepts to be bound by the Plan of Work and the Environmental Plans, applicable at the time of transfer;~~

~~[d ter Has provided written assurances of the Transferee's holding, subsidiaries, affiliated and ultimate parent companies, agencies and partnerships, as applicable, accepting responsibility as set out in regulation 18bis.]~~

~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

- e. Meets the criteria set out in regulation s ~~12 and 13(4);~~ ~~[and]~~
- f. Has deposited an Environmental Performance Guarantee as set out in regulation 26~~;~~ ~~and]~~ ~~[.]~~
- g. ~~has submitted ownership information to the Beneficial Ownership Registry.]~~ ~~[Germany – delete para 4 entirely]~~

~~[4 ALT: An application to transfer the rights and obligations under a~~ ~~an exploitation~~ ~~Canada - delete~~ contract shall be subject to the requirements under regulations ~~5 to 16.]~~ ~~[5, 6, 13, 15]~~ ~~[Russia – suggests replacing]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Russia – keep 4. Alt. with amendments]~~ ~~[Pew – keep 4 Alt.]~~

4. Bis. If at the time of the transfer a Material Change arises this should be addressed in accordance with Regulation 57.

5. The Commission shall not recommend approval of the transfer if it would:

- a. Involve conferring on the transferee a Plan of Work, the approval of which would be forbidden by article 6 (3) (c) of annex III to the Convention; or
- b. Allow the transferee to monopolize the conduct of activities in the Area [with regard to the Resource category covered by the exploitation] ~~Canada - delete~~ contract or the transferee would monopolize or significantly control the production of any single mineral or metal produced globally; or] ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~  
[b. alt.1 Allow the Transferee to obtain significant control or monopolize the exploitation activities in the Area, or Permit the Transferee, its holdings, subsidiaries, affiliated and ultimate parent companies to obtain significant control, market dominance or monopoly in the production of any single mineral or metal produced globally.] ~~Brazil~~  
[b. alt.2 be foreseen that neither the Managing Company of the Contractor nor the Managing Company of the Transferee will issue a Parent Company Liability Statement] ~~Netherlands~~
- c. If any circumstances under regulations 15(2) or (3) 15(3)(a) or 15(3)(c) ~~Russia - replace~~ are applicable.

6. Where the exploitation contract is subject to an encumbrance registered in the Seabed Mining Register, the Commission shall not recommend consent to the transfer unless it has received evidence of consent to the transfer from the beneficiary of the encumbrance.

6bis. A Contractor shall pay a Transfer Profit Share, which shall be levied on a pro rata basis by the Authority on gains made from the direct or indirect transfer of rights under an exploitation contract [in accordance with applicable Standard] ~~Russia.~~ ~~Germany - remove brackets~~

~~6 bis Alt. The Authority shall levy a Transfer Profit Share, on gain realized from the direct or indirect transfer of rights under a Contract.]~~ ~~Canada~~

~~6.ter. The Authority shall publish~~ ~~issue~~ ~~PEW- replace~~ a Standard for the effective operation of the Transfer Profit Share. ~~Germany - remove brackets~~ ~~Russia - delete~~

~~NORI, TOML - delete 6bis and 6ter entirely~~

~~6 ter Alt. The effective operation of the Transfer Profit Share referenced in the above paragraph shall follow the provisions included in the applicable Standard.]~~ ~~Canada~~

7. Where the Commission determines that the requirements of paragraphs 4, 5 ~~and 6~~ and 7 of this regulation ~~above~~ have been fulfilled, it shall recommend approval of the application for consent to the Council. In accordance with article 20 of annex III to the Convention, the Council shall not withhold consent to a transfer if the requirements of this regulation are complied with. Once the Council has received a recommendation from the Commission, the Council ~~will~~ ~~shall~~ ~~Canada - replace~~ inform the Contractor of the Council's decision within 30 Days. In the event an applicant for the transfer of an exploitation contract fails to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Commission that the requirements of paragraphs 4, 5, and 6 have not been fulfilled, the Commission shall not approve such transfer. In the event of any transfer arising out of a change of control of the Contractor where the Commission determines that the requirements of paragraphs 4, 5, and 6 have not been fulfilled, the related Exploitation Contract shall terminate automatically. ~~PEW~~

8. A transfer is validly effected only upon:

- a. Execution of the assignment and novation agreement between the Authority, the [transferor] [Canada - capitalize] and the transferee;
- b. Payment of the prescribed transfer fee pursuant to appendix II; and
- c. Recording by the Secretary-General of the transfer in the Seabed Mining Register.

[[d) Payment of the Transfer Profit Share in accordance with paragraph 7] [6bis] [Canada - replace] of this regulation and the relevant Standard.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [Pew - keep]

[e) Execution of a Parent Company Liability Statement by the Managing Company of the Transferee, unless: (i) the Contractor transfers its rights and obligations under an Exploitation Contract in part; and (ii) the Parent Company Liability Statement issued by the Contractor's Managing Company remains in full force and effect.] [Netherlands]

[e) alt. deposit of an Environmental Performance Guarantee as set out in regulations 26; and

[f) submission of ownership information to the Beneficial Ownership Registry] [Pew]

9. The assignment and novation agreement shall be signed on behalf of the Authority by the Secretary-General or by a duly authorized representative, and on behalf of the transferor and the transferee by their duly authorized representatives. [If the Managing Company of the Transferee issues a Parent Company Liability Statement, this shall be signed on behalf of the Transferee and its Managing Company by their duly authorized representatives.] [Netherlands]

~~10. [The terms and conditions of the transferee's exploitation contract shall be those set out in the standard exploitation contract annexed to these Regulations that is in effect on the date that the Secretary-General or a duly authorized representative executes the assignment and novation agreement.]~~

[10. The Exploration Regulations on Transfer of Rights and Obligations are hereby amended as set out in the provisions of this Regulation and all applicable Standards and relevant Guidelines.

11. These amendments supersede and replace the relevant Exploration Regulations on Transfer of Rights and Obligations. In the event of any inconsistency between the two sets of Regulations and applicable Standards, the Exploitation Regulations above shall prevail.] [Canada]

| <b>Explanation / Comment</b>  |
|---|
| <p><b>Paragraph 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two participants have proposed that the Sponsoring State must consent, rather than only being notified. <u>I propose to accept this drafting.</u></li> </ul> |
| <p><b>Paragraph 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participants in July agreed to paragraph 2 as drafted.</li> </ul>  |
| <p><b>Paragraph 3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participants in July agreed to paragraph 3 as drafted.</li> </ul>  |
| <p><b>Paragraph 4</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A participant has proposed a new subparagraph (d) ter. <u>I</u></li> </ul>   |

invite comments.

- A participant has proposed an alternative to paragraph 4. I invite comments.

***Paragraph 4 bis***

- Participants in July supported paragraph 4 bis as drafted.

***Paragraph 5***

- Two participants have proposed that “monopolize” should be defined (e.g. a transfer could be prohibited if it provides a transferee with over 75% of the value of production in the Area once at least two permitted areas have already entered production). I welcome proposals.
- One participant has proposed new language in paragraph 6 (new requirements on the Commission) to broaden the circumstances in which a transfer cannot be recommended for approval – such that conduct of activities in the Area cannot be monopolised but also global production of any single mineral or metal cannot be monopolised. This may be a complex assessment. I welcome proposals.
- One participant has proposed deletion of subparagraph b.

***Paragraphs 6 bis and ter***

- Some participants propose amending DR 23 with a view to integrating an obligation for the Authority to levy a Transfer Profit Share on gains over a certain threshold generated from the transfer (direct or indirect) of rights under an exploitation contract. To this end, two new paragraphs have been added after paragraph 6 of DR 23. The specific parameters and elements related to administering the Transfer Profit Share are proposed to be included in a Standard, which will facilitate subsequent reviews and/or adjustments as necessary. The participants contend that the proposal is consistent with Article 13 1(b) of Annex III of the Convention and Section 8 1(b) of the Annex to the Agreement given that the proposed Transfer Profit Share is comparable to Capital Gains Tax (CGT), which is widely implemented in landbased mining jurisdictions

***Paragraph 7***

- Participants in July supported Paragraph 7 as drafted.

***Paragraph 10***

- Participants in July supported the deletion of paragraph 10.

**Regulation 24 [President’s Text]  
Change of control**



[1. ——— For the purposes of this regulation, a “change in control” occurs where there is a change [in 50 per cent or more of] in the ownership of the Contractor, or of the membership of the joint venture, consortium or partnership, as the case may be, [that results in the holding of the beneficial ownership of 50% or more of the Contractor or the controlling interest in the Contractor by an entity that previously held a minority share or had no prior equity interest,] or a change in 50 per cent or more of the ownership of the entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee.]

[1.Alt. [[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete bracket] For the purposes of this regulation, a “change in control” occurs where there is a change resulting in [different][PEW] ownership of 50 percent or more of the Contractor, or of the membership of the joint venture, consortium or partnership, as the case may be, [.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [or a change resulting in [different][PEW] ownership of 50 percent or more of the entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Norway – delete 1Alt entirely]

2. Where there [is a / may be a][PEW] change [of control of the Contractor, [or there is a change of control in any entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee on behalf of a Contractor] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete], [PEW - delete] the Contractor shall, [as soon as reasonably practicable [but [no later than 24 hours] ] [PEW- insert brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [where practicable within 24 hours] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace], notify the Secretary-General [and the Sponsoring State] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [in advance][PEW- insert brackets] of such change of control, [but in any event within 90 Days thereafter and in the case of an entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee, no later than within 90 Days thereafter]. The Contractor shall provide the Secretary-General [and the Sponsoring State] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] with such details as he or she shall reasonably request of the change of control [[including whether or not the change of control affects the Contractor’s nationality or State of effective control,] [for the purposes of determining the Sponsoring State.] [ ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] On receipt of such notification and any further details pursuant to this paragraph, the Secretary-General shall [promptly] notify [within 7 Days] [IDG of Enterprise; UK - replace] the Commission and the Council. [ ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

3. After [considering information and documents and] [Russia] consulting the Contractor [and conducting any other due diligence procedures that are relevant to the contractor's qualification criteria] [PEW] [or entity providing the Environmental Performance Guarantee, as the case may be,] [PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Commission shall Secretary-General may:

(a) Determine whether that, following a change of control of the Contractor [or the entity providing the Environmental Performance Guarantee,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ -delete] the Contractor will continue to be able, to meet its obligations under the exploitation contract [or Environmental Performance Guarantee,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] in which case the contract shall continue to have full force and effect, [or][Australia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[(b) In the case of a Contractor, treat a change of control as a transfer of rights and obligations in accordance with the requirements of these regulations, in which case regulation 23 shall apply, [be it that, further to Regulation 23, the

party that will come to qualify as the Contractor's Managing Company shall issue a Parent Company Liability Statement effective as of the Change of Control] [Netherlands]; [or][Australia – delete] ]

[(c) In the case of an entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee, require the Contractor to lodge a new Environmental Performance Guarantee in accordance with regulation 26, within such time frame as the [Secretary-General] [Commission] [Russia - replace] shall stipulate[.];] [Australia] ]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-paras b and c entirely] [Russia – remove brackets]

(d) Confirm with the Sponsoring State, [through the Secretary-General,] whether its sponsorship continues, or require a written notice under regulation 21 bis. where sponsorship has terminated[.]; and][Australia]

[(e) Provide a report on any developments pertaining to this paragraph to the Council at its next meeting.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

[3.bis The Contractor, if applicable, shall provide the Secretary-General confirmation of the Sponsoring State that its sponsorship continues. On receipt such confirmation, the Secretary-General shall promptly notify the Commission and the Council. If the Sponsoring State decides to terminate its sponsorship, a written notice under regulation 21 is necessary. A Contractor shall obtain a sponsorship of another Sponsoring State or States in accordance with the requirements of regulations 6 and 21(3).] [Russia]

4. Where the [[Commission] [Secretary-General]] [Secretary-General] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] determines that, following a change of control, a Contractor may not ~~be able to~~ have the [[operational or]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] financial capability to meet its obligations under its exploitation contract [or its Managing Company will not have the capability to meet its obligations under the Parent Company Liability Statement] [Netherlands], the [[Secretary-General shall inform the Commission accordingly. The] [Commission]] [Secretary-General] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] shall submit a report of its findings and recommendations to the Council. [The Council shall consider the matter at its next meeting with a view to take a decision.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have received proposals for placing the tasks in paras 2, 3 and 4 with the Commission instead of the Secretary-General. I have done that, but would like to remind delegations that these tasks merely has an administrative nature.

## Section 2

### Matters relating to production

#### Regulation 25 [President's Text]

#### Documents to be submitted prior to production

1. At least 12 months prior to the proposed commencement of [production in a Mining Area] [Commercial Production] [Sustained Large-scale Recovery Operations] [Pew – replace with one of the two alternatives provided], the Contractor shall provide to the Secretary-General a Feasibility Study prepared in accordance with [Annex XY and] [Germany; Pew] Good Industry Practice [and the [relevant] [applicable] [Pew - replace] Standard,] [PEW] [the applicable Standard] [Russia - replace].] [and] [Russia - replace] taking into [account] [consideration] [Russia; Pew - replace] the applicable Guidelines [as well as the results of the test mining study pursuant to Regulation [48bis], paragraph 2 or 3, as applicable, and in accordance with Annex [IV ter]].] [as well as the results of the [test] [Pilot] [Germany - replace] mining study pursuant to Regulation [48bis] [48ter] [China - replace], paragraph 2 or 3, as applicable, and in accordance with Annex [IV ter]] [Germany – reinstate].] and the Secretary General shall submit this matter to the Commission [Pew - delete]. [Provided the procedure under regulation 93bis has been completed,] [Pew] [If] [Pew - delete] the Commission [considers] [shall review the Feasibility Study and determine whether] that any Material Change needs to be made to the Plan of Work [Where, as a result of the review Material Change to Plan of Work is needed] [Pew], [the Contractor] [it should promptly inform the Contractor, which] [Italy - replace] shall prepare and submit to the Commission [through the [Secretary-General]] [Authority] [Russia - replace] [Pew - delete] a revised Plan of Work [accordingly] [Pew - delete].] [Pew – suggests moving to 1ter with amendments]

[1bis. The Contractor shall conduct consultation on the Feasibility Study with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulations 93 bis.] [Pew]

~~[2. Where, as part of a revised Plan of Work, the Contractor delivers a revised Environmental Impact Statement, Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plan under paragraph 1 above, regulation 57 (2) shall apply mutatis mutandis to such Environmental Plans [if the modification to the Environmental Plans constitutes a Material Change], and such Environmental Plans shall be dealt with in accordance with the procedure set out in regulation 11.]~~

~~[2.alt. Regulation 57 shall apply to a revised Plan of Work submitted by the Contractor under paragraph 1.]~~

[3. Provided that, where applicable, the procedure under regulation 11 has been completed, the Commission shall, [within 30 days of its receipt of the documentation] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [at its next meeting, provided that the documentation has been circulated at least 30 Days before the meeting] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], examine and assess the Feasibility Study and any revised Plan of Work supplied by the Contractor under paragraph 1 above [in accordance with regulations 12 and 13 and any relevant Standard,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] and in the light of any comments made by members of the Authority, Stakeholders and the Secretary-General.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] on the Environmental Plans.]

[Germany – delete para 3 entirely]

~~[3-bis. An application to renew an exploitation contract shall be accompanied by updated Environmental Plans to be reviewed in accordance with the provisions of regulation 11.]~~

4. If the Commission determines that the revised Plan of Work, including any amendments thereto dealt with in accordance with regulation 57~~4~~, continues to meet the requirements of regulations 12 and 13, it shall recommend to the Council the approval of the revised Plan of Work. [If the Commission determines that it does not meet said requirements, the procedure established in Regulation 14 (b) will be applied.]

[Germany – delete para 4 entirely]

5. The Council shall consider the report and recommendation of the Commission relating to the approval of the revised Plan of Work in accordance with paragraph 11 of section 3 of the annex to the Agreement.

[Germany – delete para 5 entirely]

6. The Contractor [may] [shall] [Pew; African Group - replace] not commence Commercial Production in any part of the Area covered by the Plan of Work until either:

(a) The Commission has determined that no Material Change to the Plan of Work needs to be made [in accordance with regulation 57 (2) [and this has been approved by the Council]] [Germany] [Nauru - delete]; [pursuant to paragraph 1ter;] [Pew - replace] or

(b) In the event that a Material Change is made, the Council has given its approval to the revised Plan of Work pursuant to paragraph [5] [2 Alt.] [Pew - replace] above [Regulation 57] [Pew]; and the [Authority has confirmed lodgement of] Contractor has lodged an Environmental Performance Guarantee in accordance with regulation 26.

#### Comments/remarks

- In para 1, I have deleted the reference to test mining. Several delegations have stated that this reference is redundant since it already will be contained in the Feasibility Study.
- I have deleted para 3 bis, as this regulation deals with renewal, and is already covered by draft regulation 20.

### Regulation 26 [President's Text]

#### Environmental Performance Guarantee

1. A Contractor shall lodge an Environmental Performance Guarantee in favour of the Authority [and no later than [30 days before] [PEW] the commencement date of Commercial Production in the Mining Area] [on execution of the contract] [Australia; Canada - replace].

2. The required form and amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee shall be [assessed and recommended by the Commission and] determined [by the Council] [Australia; Pew -keep] [at the time it considers the application for a Plan of Work for Exploitation] [PEW] according to the applicable Standards and take [account of the applicable Guideline] [into

consideration Guidelines] [Pew - replace], and shall reflect the forecasted costs required for]:

(a) The premature closure of Exploitation activities;

(b) The [implementation of the Contractor's Closure Plan] [PEW] decommissioning and final closure of Exploitation activities, including the removal of any Installations and equipment; and] [PEW – delete]

(c) The post-closure monitoring and management of residual Environmental Effects. [implementation of the Contractor's Closure Plan and Emergency Response and Contingency Plan] [Pew – delete sub-para (a) to (c) and replace with text provided]

[(d) The implementation of the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan pursuant to Regulation 33, or otherwise.

(e) The delivery of the Contractor's Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

(f) Remediating or compensating any environmental damages arising from Contractor activities that were not predicted and permitted in the Plan of Work, on the basis of the principle that whoever produces pollution should cover the costs their pollution imposes on others.

4 (e) At each renewal of an exploitation contract.

4 (f) At any time that the Environmental Performance Guarantee, or any part of it, is used or drawn upon by the Authority.][PEW]

3. The amount of an Environmental Performance Guarantee may be provided by way of instalments over a specified period [or a Performance Security provided by the qualified commercial bank] [China]. [[In such cases, commercial production may only commence once the full amount has been provided.]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [but no later than 30 days before the commencement date of Commercial Production in the Mining Area] [Pew]

~~[3 bis. The Environmental Performance Bond shall take the form of a letter of credit or surety bond guaranteed by a financial institution with a long-term credit rating of AA- or better from Fitch Ratings, Moody's or Standard & Poor and meeting the other financial criteria provided for in the Standard.]~~

[[[3bis. The Environmental Performance Bond shall take the form of a letter of credit or surety bond guaranteed by a financial institution with a long-term credit rating of AA- or better from Fitch Ratings, Moody's or Standard & Poor and meeting the other financial criteria provided for in the Standard.]] [Germany – reinstate] [Australia - delete]

4. The amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee shall be reviewed and updated [every five years]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Australia - supports] [annually by the Contractor]:

(a) Where the Closure Plan is updated in accordance with these regulations; or

(b) As the result of:

- (i) A performance assessment under regulation 52;
- (ii) A modification of a Plan of Work under regulation 57; or
- (iii) A review of activities under a Plan of Work under regulation 58;

[(iv) [After consultation with a Contractor,] [Australia – supports keeping] the Authority considers that the likely cost of the activities outlined in (2) have substantially increased;] and [Pew - delete]

(c) At the time of review by the Commission of a final Closure Plan under regulation 60. [Pew]

[(d) Inflation and other market or economic conditions impact on the amount of the guarantee that must be held.] [Australia – supports keeping]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete sub-para d entirely]

(d) Alt. At each renewal of the Exploitation Contract;

(e) Any time that the Environmental Performance Guarantee, or any part of it, is used or drawn upon, and

(f) At least every [five] years to consider whether the likely cost of the activities outlined in (2) have substantially increased, taking into account inflation and other market or economic conditions that may impact the amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee that must be held.] [Pew]

5. A Contractor shall, as a result of any review under paragraph 4 above, recalculate the amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee within 60 Days of a review date and submit this calculation to the Secretary General for forwarding to the Commission for their review. [The Commission, in consultation with the Finance Committee,][PEW] shall promptly assess and make appropriate recommendations to the Council, which shall determine the revised amount. Within 30 days, the Contractor shall and lodge a revised guarantee in favour of the Authority.

6. The Authority shall hold such guarantee [for the necessary duration][PEW] in accordance with [these Regulations, and][PEW] its policies and procedures, which shall provide for:

(a) The repayment or release of any Environmental Performance Guarantee, or part thereof, upon compliance by the Contractor of its obligations that are the subject of the Environmental Performance Guarantee; or

(b) The forfeiture of any Environmental Performance Guarantee, or part thereof, where the Contractor fails to comply with such obligations. [Pew]

[(c) Payments by the Contractor to return the Environmental Performance Guarantee to its original amount if the Environmental Performance Guarantee is used by the Authority.][PEW]

(c) Alt. The replenishment of any Environmental Performance Guarantee, or part thereof, by the Contractor should the Authority need to make recourse to the Environmental Performance Guarantee. [Pew]

7. The requirement for an Environmental Performance Guarantee under this regulation shall be applied in a uniform and non-discriminatory manner.

8. The lodging of an Environmental Performance Guarantee does not relieve the Contractor of its obligations that are subject of this regulation. Refusal or reluctance on the part of the Contractor to fulfil such obligations shall be subject to the relevant compliance measures under these Regulations. [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] The provision of an Environmental Performance Guarantee by a Contractor does not limit the responsibility and liability of the Contractor under its exploitation contract in the amount of such guarantee. [NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove bracket] Should the Authority be compelled to make recourse to the Environmental Performance Guarantee due to any non-compliance by the Contractor of its obligations that are the subject of the Environmental Performance Guarantee, the Contractor remains liable to the Authority for any direct, incidental or additional costs incurred by the Authority.

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete enclosing brackets]

#### Comments/remarks

- I had received a proposal from a group to rename the Environmental Performance Guarantee to a “Decommissioning Bond” to clarify and highlight its purpose. During the meeting in July 2023 the proposal did not gain much support, and I have therefore refrained from changing the original naming.
- I have suggested to delete para 3.bis, as this content already is covered by the Commissions guidelines on this matter. Furthermore, if more regulation is needed, I would suggest placing it in standard and/or guidelines.
- [Pew – suggests moving para 3bis to Standards, not to Guidelines]
- [The African Group suggests replacing the name “Environmental Performance Guarantee” with “Decommissioning Bond”]

#### Regulation 27 [OEWG]

##### Commencement of Commercial Production ~~production~~

1. Where the requirements of regulation 25 are satisfied and the Contractor has lodged an Environmental Performance Guarantee in accordance with regulation 26, the Contractor, consistent with Good Industry Practice, shall make reasonable efforts to bring ~~the~~ each Mining Area into Commercial Production in accordance with the Plan of Work.

[2. Once Commercial Production has begun, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Secretary-General of the date of commencement of Commercial Production. Upon notification, the Secretary-General shall notify members of the Authority, in particular coastal states in close proximity to the Mining Area, that Commercial Production has begun and the location of the Mining Area.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[2.bis. Once the Contractor determines that it is engaging in sustained large-scale recovery [Sustained Large-scale Recovery] [Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] operations which yield a quantity of materials in excess of the thresholds specified in the Standards [60% of the Contractor’s annual design capacity over a 90 day period]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace], the Contractor shall promptly notify the Secretary-General of the proposed date of commencement of Commercial Production together with supporting documentation and other evidence as specified in the Standards. The Secretary-General shall transmit the notification and supporting documentation and evidence to the Commission, which shall consider the proposal and supporting materials and approve or reject the Contractor's proposed date.

3. Promptly following approval or rejection by the Commission, the Secretary-General shall, as applicable, confirm the date of commencement of Commercial Production to the Contractor, or notify the Contractor of the rejection and invite the Contractor to re-submit its proposed date of commencement of Commercial Production under Regulation 27(2).

4. Upon confirmation, the Secretary-General shall notify [m][M]embers [Russia] of the Authority, in particular coastal states [[in close proximity] [adjacent] to the [Mining Area][Contract Area]] [referred to in article 142 of the Convention [Russia - replace], that Commercial Production has begun and the location of the Mining Area(s).

5. The date of commencement of Commercial Production, will be the date confirmed to the Contractor according to Regulation 27(3).]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete paras 2bis – 5 entirely] [Russia – remove brackets from para 2bis to 5]

[ALT to 2 - 5

[2 The commencement of Commercial Production shall be based on the maintenance of a certain level of production capacity for a specified number of days in accordance with the relevant Standard.

[2.Alt. 2alt. The commencement of Commercial Production shall be based on the timing of transportation of Resources recovered from the Mining Area out of the Contract Area in accordance with the relevant Standard.] [Canada]

3 Any failure on the part of the Contractor to comply with this regulation and the relevant Standard may be considered under the General anti-avoidance rule established pursuant to Regulation 77 and other applicable Rules, Regulations, and Procedures.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[4. The definition of commencement of Commercial Production as provided for pursuant to this Regulation shall apply to exploitation activities in the Area, without prejudice to activities in other areas of the seabed and subsoil thereof.] [Canada]

#### Explanation / Comment

- In July participants supported the text as drafted.
- One participant has now proposed replacing paragraphs 2 – 5 with paragraphs ALT 2 and ALT 3, and moving the deleted paragraphs, with some amendments (including to guard against stockpiling), to the Standards. I invite comments.
- In response to comments from a number of participants regarding the need for specificity with respect to Commercial Production, in February I proposed new text on commencement of Commercial Production here at



Regulation 27 that: (i) provides greater specificity and an objective standard of assessment, to be included in Standards, and (ii) allows for verification and confirmation by the Authority. I would welcome further proposals by participants on what the “thresholds” or parameters to be included in the Standards would be, including comments on the proposed thresholds now in the Standard.

- I note that if the definition of Commercial Production in the Schedule to the Regulations is amended, this text may require consequential harmonization amendments.

## Regulation 28 [President’s Text]

### Maintaining Commercial Production

1. Except for circumstances described in regulation 33, t [T]he Contractor [Pew] shall maintain Commercial Production in accordance with the exploitation contract and the Plan of Work annexed thereto including the Mining Workplan and any amendments made from time to time, [NORI, TML, BMJ] and these regulations, and taking into account [Russia] market conditions. A Contractor shall, consistent with Good Industry Practice, manage the recovery of the Minerals removed from the Mining Area at rates contemplated in the Mining Workplan, as may have been updated on the basis of [PEW] in the Feasibility Study included in the Mining Workplan [Pew - replace] contemplated in the Mining Workplan, including any amendments made from time to time [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace].

2. Save for a situation covered by regulation 29, [T][t]he [PEW] Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General and the Sponsoring State or States if it:

(a) fails to comply with the level of Commercial Production set out in the [PEW] Plan of Work maintain Commercial Production [Pew - replace]; or

(b) determines that it will not be able to adhere to the level of Commercial Production set out in the [PEW] Plan of Work in future , in which case the Contractor shall request a modification of the Plan of work, in accordance with regulation 57, or the Authority shall consider taking relevant compliance actions aimed to address the failure to adhere to the Plan of Work [PEW] maintain Commercial Production in future [Pew - replace].

2bis. In accordance with Regulation 29bis, the Secretary-General shall transmit the notification made under paragraph (2) and any supporting documentation to the [LTC/Compliance Committee] for review and to make a recommendation to the Council. [Pew]

3. Notwithstanding paragraph 1 above, the Contractor shall immediately reduce or [Russia; Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] suspend Exploitation activities [PEW] production [PEW - delete] whenever such reduction or [PEW - delete] suspension is required to protect the Marine Environment from Serious Harm or a threat of Serious Harm Germany, PEW - delete [Russia; Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - keep] or to protect human health and safety to protect the Marine Environment from Serious Harm or a threat of Serious Harm, to protect human health and safety Germany, PEW - delete or to protect human remains , objects or sites of archaeological or historical nature or Underwater Cultural Heritage [IWG on UCH - replace] [Nauru; NORI

TOML, BMJ - delete]. [Where the situation in question falls within regulation 33, the Contractor shall follow that regulation and the process it prescribes. In any other circumstances, a[A][PEW] Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General and the Sponsoring State or States of such a[n unplanned] [NORI, TOML, MBJ] [reduction or][PEW – delete] suspension of production [that is expected to last for a significant period of time] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] as soon as is practicable and no later than [[72] [24]] [Nauru – supports 72] hours [3 months] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] after production is [reduced or][PEW – delete] suspended[, and Regulation 29 bis shall apply][PEW].

4. A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General [and Sponsoring State][China] as soon as it recommences any [Commercial Production] mining activities, and no later than 72 hours after such recommencement, and, where necessary, shall provide to the Secretary-General [and Sponsoring State] [China] such information as is necessary to demonstrate that the issue triggering a reduction or suspension has been addressed. The Secretary-General shall notify the Council that production has recommenced. ]

[Pew – delete para 3 and 4 entirely]

#### Regulation 29 [President's Text]

##### Reduction or suspension in production [~~due to market conditions~~]

1. Notwithstanding regulation 28, a Contractor may temporarily reduce or suspend production [due to market conditions [or other factors]][Germany-delete] but shall notify [in writing] [Russia] the Secretary-General [and the Sponsoring State] [Russia] thereof [and provide the rationale for such a reduction or suspension][Germany; Russia supports] [as soon as practicable [thereafter] [no later than 14 Days from the date of the reduction or suspension] [Russia – suggests replacing]]. [~~no later than one month from the date of the reduction or suspension~~]. Such reduction or suspension may be for a period of up to 12 months.

2. If the Contractor proposes to continue the reduction or suspension for more than 12 months, the Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing, at least [30 Days] prior to the end of the 12-month period, giving its reasons for seeking a further reduction or suspension of that length of time. [~~If business practices are suspended due to global economic conditions or force majeure, the contractor shall be allowed to maintain a longer suspension,~~] [The Commission shall [in consultation with the Economic Planning Commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ -remove brackets], upon determining that the reasons for the reduction or suspension are reasonable, including where the prevailing economic conditions make Commercial Production impracticable, [of for other circumstances beyond the Contractor's control] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [decide on] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [recommend approval of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] the [reduction or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] suspension [requested by the Contractor] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [to the Council. The Council shall, based on the recommendation of the Commission, decide on the reduction or suspension requested by the Contractor] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. The Contractor may apply for more than one suspension [or reduction] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]. [~~During the period when the Contractor reduces or suspends production, the annual fixed fee or royalties paid by the Contractor shall be exempted or deducted appropriately~~]. [Germany – delete].

[3. In the event of any suspension in mining activities, the Contractor shall continue to monitor and manage the Mining Area in accordance with the Closure Plan. Where suspension continues for a period of more than 12 months, the Commission may require the Contractor to submit a final Closure Plan in accordance with regulation 60.] Where the Contractor elects to suspend all production for more than five consecutive years, the Council may [~~suspend~~] [~~terminate~~] the exploitation contract following consultation with the Contractor, and the Contractor [~~may~~] [~~shall~~] be required to implement the final Closure Plan.

4. A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General as soon as it recommences any mining activities, and no later than 72 hours after such recommencement, and, where necessary, shall provide to the Secretary-General such non-market information as is necessary to demonstrate that the issue triggering a reduction or suspension has been addressed. The Secretary-General shall notify the Council that production has recommenced. ]

[Germany – delete paras 3 & 4 entirely]

#### ~~[Regulation 29 Alt.~~

##### ~~Reduction or suspension in production due to market conditions~~

~~[1. In pursuance of regulation 2(2)(a) relating to the efficient conduct of activities, and the avoidance of unnecessary waste, and to ensure that the resources are being mined optimally in accordance with the Mining Work Plan, a Contractor shall, in accordance with Best Industry Practices:~~

~~(a) Avoid inefficient mining practices;~~

~~(b) Minimize the generation of waste in the conduct of exploitation in the Area~~

~~2. A Contractor shall include in its annual report under Regulation 40 such information and Reports as the Secretary General requests, in accordance with the Standards and Guidelines, to demonstrate that the Contractor is meeting the obligations in paragraph 1 above.~~

~~3. If the Secretary General becomes aware that Contractor is not meeting the obligations in paragraph 1 above, by way of written notice to the Contractor, request a review of mining and processing activities carried out under the Plan of Work. The Contractor shall implement any modifications to bring the Mining Workplan and any mining and processing practice into conformity with Best Industry Practices.~~

~~4. Members of the Authority shall, to the best of their abilities, assist the Secretary General through the provision of Data and information in connection with this regulation where processing, treatment and refining of ore from seabed mining occur under their jurisdiction and/or control.]~~

#### Comments/remarks

Pew suggests deleting entire Regulation 29, and incorporate relevant elements into Regulation 28 / 29bis.

#### Regulation 29 bis [Germany]

## Procedure for suspensions in Exploitation activities

1. Any time that [If] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] there is a suspension of Exploitation activities [mandated by the Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] under these Regulations, the Secretary-General shall notify the Council and publish notice on the website of the Authority when activities have been suspended, which shall include the rationale for the suspension, and when the activities have recommenced.

2. Where [the Authority requires] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] a suspension of Exploitation activities [is required for any reason by the Authority] [in accordance with these regulations] [Nauru - replace] [for contractual breach in accordance with these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], the [Authority] [Council, upon recommendation of the Commission] [Russia - replace] will provide the Contractor with a suspension notice to specify [the reason for the suspension,] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] what operations under the Plan of Work must cease, and which, if any, may continue, and any other relevant terms and conditions for the suspension.

3. During a suspension of Exploitation activities [for any reasons] [mandated by the Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]:

(a) a Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General as soon as it intends to recommence any or all of the suspended activities no later than [72 hours] before such commencement, and, where necessary, shall provide to the Secretary-General such information as is necessary to demonstrate that the issue triggering a suspension has been addressed; or

(b) a Contractor shall report to the Secretary-General on at least a monthly basis with regards to the reasons for continuing the suspension, providing such information as is necessary to justify that the issue triggering a suspension continues.

4. [If the suspension was required by the Authority, t] [T]he Secretary-General [NORI, TOML, BMJ] shall supply all information received pursuant to paragraph (3)[(b)] [Nauru] to the Commission for [its] [Nauru] review and to make a recommendation to the Council. The Council shall, based on the recommendation of the Commission [Nauru] determine [when] [if] [Nauru - replace] the relevant Exploitation activities should recommence, giving the Contractor no less than 60 Days' written notice where resumption of activities is required.

5. In making its review under paragraph (4), the Commission shall [consult with the Contractor and] [Nauru] take into account the recommendations of the Economic Planning Commission where applicable, and shall examine whether the reasons for the suspension are reasonable, and whether a continued suspension or a commencement of activities, would be in the best interests of humankind [is appropriate] [Nauru] in the circumstances.

6. Throughout the duration of any suspension in Exploitation activities, the Contractor shall continue to monitor and manage the Mining Area in accordance with the relevant section of the Closure Plan.

7. Where a suspension in Exploitation activities continues for a period of more than 12 months, the Commission may require the Contractor to submit a final Closure Plan in accordance with regulation 60.

8. [In cases of where the Exploitation activities were suspended by the Authority and w] [W] here [NORI, TOML, BMJ] the Council requires recommencement of Exploitation activities after a suspension [under this regulation] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete], and the Contractor does not comply with that requirement, this shall be treated as a serious violation of a fundamental term of the contract and these regulations, and the Authority shall take appropriate compliance action.

9. In the event that a Contractor elects to suspend all Commercial Production for more than five consecutive years, the Council may after discussion with the Contractor decide that Commercial Production has ceased, and require the Contractor to implement the final Closure Plan.

[10. The procedures under this regulation shall also apply mutatis mutandis to reductions [that result in failure to maintain Commercial Production]] [Pew]

#### Comments/remarks

- I did note support for the deletion of draft regulation 29 Alt during the meeting in July 2023, and I have therefore deleted this alternative.
- I have received a proposal for including a new draft regulation on possible contract termination due to extended suspension in production. I would like to recall that termination is already covered several places in the regulations and the exploitation regulation and would like to open for discussion of the need for including of such a regulation.

### Section 3

#### Safety of life ~~land property~~ at sea

#### Alt. Safety, labour and health at sea

#### Regulation 29 ter (previously 32) [President's Text]

##### Risk reduction principles

1. [The Contractor shall work to prevent or to limit the] [Indonesia] Harm or danger [or risk] [Indonesia] of harm to people, the [marine] [Nauru] environment or material assets [shall be] [prevented or limited] [avoided or minimised] [Nauru - replace] [Indonesia - delete] in accordance with the Regulations and any appli[c]able Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines. [Contractors shall also ensure that reasonable and practicable measures are taken to protect the environment, including compliance with applicable environmental thresholds.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] The Contractor shall work to [further] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] reduce the risk [of incidents] [of accidents, Incidents and other hazards] [Nauru - replace] [Pew - delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - supports keeping "of Incidents"] as much as reasonably practicable, to the point where the cost of further risk reduction would be [grossly] [Nauru; Pew - reinstate / NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] disproportionate to the benefits of such reduction.

2. The reasonable practicability of risk reduction measures shall be kept under review in the light of new knowledge and technology developments and Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques [ , Best Available Scientific

~~Information,~~ ~~Indonesia~~ and Best Environmental Practices. In assessing whether the time, cost and effort would be grossly disproportionate to the benefits of further reducing the risk, consideration shall be given to best practice risk levels compatible with the operations being conducted.

3. A Contractor shall maintain the necessary risk assessment and risk management systems in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques, ~~Best Available Scientific Information,~~ ~~Indonesia~~ and Best Environmental Practices and shall report annually to the Secretary-General on such systems in accordance with Regulation 38(2)(h).

#### Comments/remarks

Draft Regulation 29ter has been added, which was previously Draft Regulation 32. Comments received by delegations have been included here.

### Regulation 30 [President's Text]

#### Safety, labour and health standards

1. The Contractor shall ensure at all times that:

(a) All vessels, ~~crewed submersibles~~ ~~Pew~~ and Installations ~~operating and~~ ~~Pew – supports deletion~~ engaged in Exploitation activities are in good repair, in a safe and sound condition in accordance with the requirements, specifications and preventive or corrective maintenance plans of the respective manufacturers, ~~in satisfactory condition and are fit for the service for which the vessels and Installations are intended, without danger to the vessels, Installations, or persons on board~~ ~~Indonesia - replace~~, and adequately ~~crewed~~ ~~manned~~ ~~Pew – supports “crewed”~~, and comply with paragraphs 2 and 3 below; and

(b) All vessels ~~including crewed submersibles,~~ ~~PEW~~ and Installations ~~engaged~~ ~~employed~~ ~~Pew – supports “engaged”~~ in Exploitation activities have an appropriate class designation and shall remain in class for the duration of the exploitation contract.

(c) ~~The Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan annexed to the Plan of Work~~ ~~Russia - delete~~ ~~are kept up-to-date and effectively implemented.~~ ~~For the avoidance of doubt, any changes made to the Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan for the purpose of this sub-paragraph are not Material Changes.~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~.

2. The Contractor shall ensure compliance with the ~~relevant~~ ~~applicable~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Russia; Pew – replace~~ ~~applicable~~ ~~and mandatory~~ ~~Russia~~ international rules and standards established by competent international organizations ~~or general diplomatic conferences concerning the safety of life at sea~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~, the pollution of the Marine Environment by vessels, the prevention of collisions at sea, the training of seafarers, maritime labour conditions, ~~as adopted by the Maritime Labour Convention~~ ~~Pew – supports deletion~~ and the treatment of crew members, as well as ~~the Rules of the Authority.~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets~~ ~~any~~ ~~the~~ ~~rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority on these matters.~~ ~~Russia – keep~~

[2 bis. For the purposes of paragraph 2, international maritime safety and navigational rules shall apply to all ships on all voyages engaged in activities in the Area.][PEW]

3. In addition, Contractors shall:

(a) Comply with the relevant national laws relating to vessel standards and crew safety of their flag State in the case of vessels, or their Sponsoring State or States in the case of Installations; and

(b) Comply with the national laws of its Sponsoring State or States in relation to any matters that fall outside of the jurisdiction of the flag State, such as worker rights for non-crew members and human health and safety that pertains to the mining process rather than to ship operation.

4. The Contractor shall provide copies of valid certificates required under [relevant international shipping conventions] [international rules and standards established by competent international organizations] [Indonesia - replace] to the Authority upon request.

5. The Contractor shall ensure that:

(a) All of its personnel, before assuming their duties, have the necessary experience, training and qualifications [and safety equipment] [in accordance with their capacity, duties, and responsibilities,] [Indonesia - replace] and are able to conduct their duties safely, competently [and] [proven by certificate issued] [Indonesia - replace] in compliance with [applicable international rules and standards established by competent international organizations.] [Indonesia] the Rules of the Authority and the terms of the exploitation contract;

(b) [Implementation of the] [Environmental Plans, and] [Russia - delete] the Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan shall include awareness-raising programmes for personnel about the duties arising from those plans, and a programme] [An occupational health, safety and environmental awareness plan is put in place] to inform all personnel engaged in Exploitation activities as to the occupational [and environmental] [Russia - delete] risks which may result from their work and the manner in which such risks are to be dealt with; and

(c) [Certificates and] [Indonesia] Records of the experience, training and qualifications of all of its personnel [with data aggregated by gender] [PEW] are kept and made available to the Secretary-General upon request.

~~6. When conducting its operations, a Contractor shall [develop], implement and maintain a safety management system, taking account of the relevant Guidelines.~~

### [Regulation 30 bis. [President's Text]

#### Human health and safety management system

1. When conducting its operations, a Contractor shall develop, implement [and maintain a] [maintain, and periodically evaluate a health and] [Indonesia - replace] safety management system, taking account of the relevant Guidelines.

2. A Contractor's safety management system shall:

(a) Be capable of delivering site-specific safety objectives [, identifying site-specific risks and its management measures,] [Indonesia] and meeting

performance requirements specified in the Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan;

(b) Cover occupational health and safety and process safety [Indonesia - delete], including with regards the selection or design of assets, facilities, equipment and materials;

(c) Permit effective reporting to the Authority in connection with health and [Indonesia] safety performance;

(d) Be independently verified annually by an internationally recognized provider of verification services acceptable to the Authority, in accordance with relevant Standards;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

(e) Promote inclusivity and gender equality; and [Russia - delete]

(f) Be in accordance with Good Industry Practice and internationally recognised standards.

3. A proposed [material] [Russia] [change] [Material Change] to a Contractor's safety management system, that has the potential to also constitute a Material Change to the Contractor's implementation of its Plan of Work,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] shall be treated the same as a modification of a Plan of Work, pursuant to regulation 57 mutatis mutanda.] [Nauru – delete entire para 3]

4. Compliance with this Regulation is a fundamental term of the contract, for the purposes of Regulation 103.]

#### Comments/remarks

- During the meeting in July 2023, I got the impression that most delegations and observers were in favour of the alternative heading, and I have thus retained it.
- The content of para 6 has been placed in the newly proposed draft regulation 30 bis concerning human health and safety management system.

## Section 4

### Other activities in users of the Marine Environment

#### Regulation 31 [President's Text]

[Reasonable regard for other activities and infrastructure] [Singapore - delete] in the Marine Environment] [Accommodation of activities in the Area and in the marine environment] [China - replace]

1. Contractors shall, [consistent with any relevant [Standards and taking into account any relevant] Guidelines,] [Russia - delete] carry out [exploration and] exploitation] [PEW - delete] [Indonesia - delete] [activities] [exploitation] [Russia - replace] under an exploitation contract with reasonable regard for other activities and infrastructure] [Singapore - delete] in the Marine Environment, in accordance with article[s 87 and] [Russia; Singapore - delete] 147 of the Convention [these Regulations, any applicable Standards and Guidelines,] [Indonesia] [the Plan of Work] and the approved Environmental Management



and Monitoring Plan] [Pew - delete], [Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Germany – remove brackets] [Argentina - delete] and Closure Plan] [Pew - delete] and taking into account the Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Argentina] [and any applicable international rules and standards established by competent international organizations] [Germany; Pew] [Argentina; Singapore - delete] [Russia – delete all after “Convention”].

Alt. 1. [Contractors shall, consistent with the [Standards and taking into account the] relevant Guidelines, carry out Exploitation under an exploitation contract with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment in accordance with article 147 of the Convention and the [and structures] approved Environmental Management and Monitoring] Plan [of Work, the applicable Regional Environmental Management] [and Closure] Plan and any applicable international rules and standards established by competent international organizations, and relevant national laws and regulations of Sponsoring States and flag States.]

1.bis. [Each Contractor shall] exercise due diligence to ensure that it does not cause damage to] [carry out exploitation activities under an Exploitation Contract with reasonable regard to] [China - replace] [known] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Australia; Pew - delete] submarine cables or pipelines or interfere with other activities uses of the sea in the Contract Area [or the surrounding Marine Environment] [Germany, PEW].] [Russia - delete] In particular, the Contractor shall:

(a) comply with [the] [any] [USA - replace] measures [it agreed] [in accordance with any agreement] [India - replace] with the [responsible organisations overseeing, or] [Germany] operators] [persons] [USA - replace] undertaking other [activities in the Contract Area] [or the surrounding Marine Environment] [Germany, PEW] [uses of the sea] [including operators of] [Pew] and of submarine cables and pipelines] to reduce the risk of damage to any in-service cables and pipelines] [Germany] ; and] [Russia - delete]

(a.bis) identify current and planned [, if possible,] [Russia] uses or activities in the Marine Environment transiting, overlapping, or proximate to the Contract Area through publicly available data and resources and any other reasonable means, including but not limited to marine scientific research, [existing] [Russia] submarine cables or pipelines, fishing, navigation, activities related to marine genetic resources[, and environmental protection measures and area-based management tools established or proposed by competent international organizations].:] [Germany] [Russia - delete]

(a.ter) coordinate [through the Secretary-General or] [Russia] directly with the responsible organisations for, or operators of, these activities in the Marine Environment in order to reduce the risk of interference [in the Contractor’s activities including to provide information on the safety zones, as well as to reduce the risk of interference with those uses as a result of the Contractors’ activities] [Russia] [and damage to any structure or the Marine Environment] [Russia - delete]; and] [Russia] [Germany]

quat Undertake measures to reduce the risk of damage to any in-service cables and Pipelines, including the measures it agreed with the operators undertaking other uses of the sea] [Russia]

(b) ensure that any [activities] [actions] [Germany – replace] it [conducts] [takes] [Germany - replace] will not interfere with the route of a planned submarine cable or pipeline[, recognized sea lanes essential to

international navigation, or areas of intense fishing activity][Germany].  
[Russia; Pew - delete]

[(b)alt. Attempt to, to the extent possible, negotiate with the organisations responsible for, users of, or operators of, submarine cables or pipelines, recognized sea lanes, or areas of intense fishing activities with the aim of finding mutually acceptable solutions to minimise interference as between such activities and the Contractor's activities in the Area.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[(d) A Contractor shall maintain onboard any mining vessel or installation an Incident Register] [Pew]

[1.bis.alt. Each Contractor shall exercise due diligence to ensure that it does not interfere with other uses of the sea in the Contract Area. In particular, the Contractor shall:

(a)identify current and planned uses of the sea transiting or proximate to the Contract Area through publicly available data and resources and any other reasonable means [(b-1) — coordinate directly with the operators undertaking other uses of the sea in order to reduce the risk of interference with those uses as a result of the Contractor's activities].

(b)coordinate directly with the operators undertaking other uses of the sea in order to reduce the risk of interference with those uses as a result of the Contractor's activities.

(c)comply with the measures it agreed with the operators undertaking other uses of the sea to reduce the risk of damage to any in-service cables and pipelines; and

(d)ensure that any actions it takes will not interfere with the route of a planned submarine cable or pipeline].

[Singapore – delete entire para 1bis]

[2. Alt. [To further the due and reasonable regard obligations in Article [s 87 and] [Russia - delete] 147 of the Convention, the [Secretary-General] [Authority], in conjunction with member States, shall facilitate early-stage coordination [and cooperation] [Germany] between the Contractors and the proponents of the other [known][Norway] activities in the marine environment. [including through the identification of other marine users] [. Other marine users could be identified] [Russia – suggests replacing] in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, which shall be periodically updated][Germany – remove brackets]. [Where the relevant other activities involve competent international, regional, or sectoral bodies, the Authority shall, in conjunction with member States, cooperate with such bodies to [coordinate] [inform on Contract] [Russia - replace] activities [and, where possible, to coordinate activities] [Russia] in the Marine Environment.] [Germany]]

[Singapore – delete entire para 2]

[2. bis The Authority shall get in contact with relevant international organisations or operators of activities in the Marine Environment in order to reduce the risk of interference in the Contractor's activities including by providing information on the safety zones, and in order to reduce the risk of interference in the navigation, fisheries activities or maintenance of cable and pipelines.] [Russia]

[3. The Authority and member States shall, in accordance with Articles 87 and 147 of the Convention, ensure that other activities in the marine environment are conducted with reasonable regard for activities in the Area and with due regard for the rights of Contractors and Sponsoring States under the Convention. This includes member States ensuring that ships flying their flag are not used to, and their natural and juridical persons do not, interfere with or undermine the rights granted to or operations of Contractors.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[3. Other activities in the marine environment shall be conducted with reasonable regard for activities in the Area.] [China]

**Comments/remarks**

- From the negotiations in July 2023, I understood that most delegations supported the original para 1, and I have attempted to further streamline the provision in accordance with proposals received and attempted to bring it more in line with the wording used in article 147 of the Convention.
- Several delegations suggested to delete para 1.bis.alt. and continue the negotiations based on para 1.bis, and I have thus updated the text accordingly.

**[Regulation 31 bis**

**Reducing risk of damage to submarine cables and pipelines**

1. The Contractor shall endeavour to reduce the risk of damage to submarine cables or pipelines, including, as appropriate, through:

a) Complying with the measures that the Contractor has agreed with the operators of submarine cables or pipelines in the Contract Area to reduce the risk of damage to any in-service submarine cables and pipelines;

b) Identifying current and planned uses or activities relating to submarine cables or pipelines in the Marine Environment transiting, overlapping, or proximate to the Contract Area through publicly available data and resources and any other reasonable means;

c) Coordinating directly with the responsible organisations for, or operators of, submarine cables or pipelines in the Marine Environment;

d) Promoting awareness of Exploitation activities, including but not limited to using geospatial alert systems; and

e) Other measures in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines.]

**Comments/remarks**

The inclusion of Draft Regulation 31bis has been suggested by Singapore after the first Part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

## Section 5 Incidents and notifiable events

### Regulation 32 [President's Text]

#### Risk [reduction principles] of Incidents [Norway - replace]

1. [Harm or danger of harm to people, the environment or material assets shall be prevented or limited in accordance with the regulations and any relevant Standards, and taking into account any relevant Guidelines. The] [A][a] [Norway] Contractor shall [work to further][Norway] reduce the risk [of Incidents][Norway - delete] as much as reasonably practicable, to the point where the cost of further risk reduction would be [grossly] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] disproportionate to the benefits of such reduction, [in accordance with any relevant Standards and taking into account any relevant Guidelines][Norway - delete].
2. The reasonable practicability of risk reduction measures shall be kept under review in the light of new knowledge and technology developments and Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices. In assessing whether the time, cost and effort would be grossly disproportionate to the benefits of further reducing the risk, consideration shall be given to best practice risk levels compatible with the operations being conducted.
3. A Contractor shall maintain the necessary risk assessment and risk management systems in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices and shall report annually to the Secretary-General on such systems in accordance with regulation 38(2)(h).

#### Comments/remarks

Draft Regulation 32 is now Draft Regulation 29ter. There relevant comments have been included under DR 29ter.

### Regulation 33 [President's Text]

#### Preventing and responding to Incidents

1. The Contractor shall [suspend][PEW] [not proceed or continue with][PEW -delete] [not carry out] [Russia - replace] Exploitation [activities and follow the procedures set forth in regulation 29bis] [Pew] if it is reasonably foreseeable [[or likely]][China; NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew - delete] that [proceeding or continuing] [carrying out] [Russia - replace] would cause [or contribute to] [Russia - delete] an Incident, or [reduce or][Norway; Pew - include / NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] prevent [or prevent reducing or] [Russia - suggests replacing] the effective management of such Incident.

[1bis. A Contractor shall maintain on board any mining vessel or Installation an Incident Register.] [Pew]

2. The Contractor shall, upon becoming aware of an Incident:
  - (a) Notify its Sponsoring State [or States.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete / Pew - keep] [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected] [Micronesia - supports keeping / NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew - delete] and the Secretary-General [without undue delay][Norway; Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ;

Pew] [at the earliest time possible immediately, but no later than 24 hours] [Norway; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Pew - keep] from the moment the Contractor becomes aware of the Incident;

— [(a) Alt. Notify its Sponsoring State or States, [relevant adjacent Coastal States] [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected] and the Secretary-General immediately, as soon as reasonably practicable but no later than 24 hours from the time the incident occurred;] [Pew – supports deletion]

(b) Immediately implement, where applicable, the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan approved by the Authority for responding to the Incident;

(c) Undertake promptly, and within such time frame as stipulated, any instructions [received] [issued] [Russia - replace] from the Secretary-General in consultation with the Sponsoring State or States, flag State, [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports keeping] [coastal State] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports deleting] or relevant international organizations [States that have legitimate interests in accordance with article 142 of the Convention] [Russia - replace], as the case may be;

(d) Take [any other measures necessary] [all other measures necessary and reasonable] [Pew - replace] in the circumstances to limit the adverse effects of the Incident; and

(e) Record the Incident in the Incidents Register, which is a register to be maintained by the Contractor on board a mining vessel or Installation to record any Incidents or notifiable events under regulation 34. [; and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [Pew; UK – delete everything after “Register”, and putting relevant definitions in the Schedule]

(f) Following resolution of an Incident, provide the [Secretary-General and its Sponsoring State or States] [Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] with an Incident report which details the Incident and any corresponding data on its nature, scale, and impacts, the Contractor’s response, [and lessons learned] [Russia – delete / Russia; UK – replace with “findings”] [and any proposed measures to minimise or reduce the risk of similar incidents occurring in the future] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports keeping].

[2bis. The Secretary-General upon notification of an Incident shall notify States, and any other marine users, who may be at risk of being affected.][PEW]

3. The Secretary-General shall promptly report any Contractor that fails to comply with this regulation to its Sponsoring State or States, [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected] and the flag State of any vessel involved in the Incident for consideration of the institution of legal proceedings under national law.

[4. The Secretary-General shall report such Incidents and measures taken to the Commission and the Council at their next available meeting.]

[PEW – delete para 4 entirely]

[[Alt.4.bis. The Secretary-General shall

(a) before issuing instructions under this regulation, request instruction from the Compliance Committee, and consult with the Sponsoring State or State, and other relevant State or international

organisations, insofar as it is feasible to do so taking account of the urgency in the situation;

(b) follow any relevant Standards and Guidelines on the issue of instructions under this regulations:

(c) report such Incidents and measures taken to the Commission and the Council at their next available meeting.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Alt 4.bis entirely]

5. The Secretary-General shall publish copies of Incident reports at the Authority's website[, [subject to ensuring that confidential information is protected]] [Norway – delete].

[X]. When the Secretary-General has been notified by a contractor or otherwise becomes aware of an Incident or other matter related to a contractor's activities in the Area that has caused or is likely to cause Serious Harm to the Marine Environment or harm to human life or safety, the Secretary-General shall cause a general notification of the Incident or matter to be issued, shall notify in writing the contractor and the sponsoring State or States, and shall report immediately to the Legal and Technical Commission, to the Council and to all other members of the Authority. A copy of the report shall be circulated to competent international organizations and to concerned subregional, regional and global organizations and bodies. The Secretary-General shall monitor developments with respect to all such Incidents or matters and shall report on them as appropriate to the Commission, the Council and all other members of the Authority.

[X]. Pending any action by the Council, the Secretary-General shall take such immediate measures of a temporary nature as are practical and reasonable in the circumstances to prevent, contain and minimize serious harm or the threat of Serious Harm to the marine environment, harm to human life, or damage to submarine cables, pipelines or Installations. Such temporary measures shall remain in effect for no longer than 90 days, or until the Council decides at its next regular session or a special session, what measures, if any, to take pursuant to paragraph [X] of this regulation.

[X]. Any immediate measures of a temporary nature issued by the Secretary-General are binding upon all parties they are directed to. Member States shall take all measures to achieve compliance with such immediate measures and refrain from interfering with or undermining their effects while they are in force. In particular Member States shall take all measures reasonably available to them to ensure that their natural and juridical persons and ships flying their flag comply with an immediate temporary measure.

[X]. After having received the report of the Secretary-General, the Commission shall determine, based on the evidence provided to it and taking into account the measures already taken by the contractor, which measures are necessary to respond effectively to the Incident or matter and shall make its recommendations to the Council.

[X]. The Council shall consider the recommendations of the Commission.

[X]. The Council, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission, the report of the Secretary-General, any information provided by the contractor and any other relevant information, may issue emergency orders, which may include orders for the suspension or adjustment of operations or other orders

directed at entities undertaking activities in, operating in, or undertaking actions related to or connected with activities in the Area, as may be reasonably necessary to prevent, contain and minimize serious harm or the threat of serious harm to the marine environment, harm to human life, or damage to submarine cables, pipelines or Installations.

[X]. If a contractor or any other relevant entity operating in the Area does not promptly comply with an emergency order, the Council shall take by itself or through arrangements with others on its behalf, such measures as are necessary to prevent, contain and minimize serious harm or the threat of serious harm to the marine environment, harm to human life, or damage to submarine cables, pipelines or Installations.

[X]. Member States shall take all measures reasonably available to them to ensure that their natural and juridical persons and ships flying their flag comply with an emergency order.]

#### Comments/remarks

Paragraph identified by [X] have been proposed by NORI, TOML, BMJ before the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

### Regulation 34 [President's Text]

#### Notifiable events

1. A Contractor shall immediately notify its Sponsoring State [or States, [States adjacent to the contract area likely to be affected]] [Micronesia – supports keeping] [other relevant stakeholders]] [Pew - delete] and the Secretary-General of the occurrence of any of the Notifiable Events [listed in appendix I to these regulations] [Pew - delete].
2. The Contractor shall, as soon as reasonably practicable, but no later than 24 hours after the Contractor becomes aware of any such Notifiable Event,
  - (a) provide written notification to the Secretary-General of the event, including a description of the event, the immediate response action taken (including, if appropriate, a statement regarding the implementation of an Emergency Response and Contingency Plan) and any planned action to be taken, and
  - (b) Record the Notifiable Events in the Incidents Register,
3. Upon receipt of notification under paragraph [(2)] [2] [Pew - replace], the Secretary-General shall consult with the Sponsoring State or States, States adjacent to the contract area [likely to be affected]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Pew – supports keeping] and [other regulatory authorities as necessary], and shall [seek the instructions of the] [Nauru – delete] [provide a copy of the notification to the Commission and the] [Nauru] Compliance Committee/Council [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [shall seek instructions of the Compliance Committee / Council] [Pew - replace].
4. The Contractor shall ensure that all [relevant] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] regulatory authorities are notified and consulted, as appropriate.
5. Where a complaint is made to a Contractor concerning a matter covered by these regulations, the Contractor shall record the complaint and shall report it to the Secretary-General within seven Days of the complaint being received.

5bis. The Secretary-General shall report such Notifiable Events and measures taken to the Commission and the Council at their next available meeting  
Russia

**Comments/remarks**

- Several delegations have suggested to delete the reference to “other relevant stakeholders”, as this reference is unclear and creates uncertainty.
- The interrelations between draft regulations 33 and 34 needs to be assessed against the regulations handled in the IWG on ICE, I suggest that it is something that is handled in plenary after the consolidated negotiating text has been prepared.

**Regulation 35 [President’s Text]**

**Human remains and objects and sites of an archaeological or historical nature**

1. [The Contractor shall immediately cease exploitation activities within [X] radius of any finding of Underwater Cultural Heritage in the Contract Area] [United Kingdom] The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing [within 24 hours of] [as soon as reasonably practicable after] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] any finding in the Contract Area of [any human remains of an archaeological or historical [and paleontological] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; DOSI; Sustainable Ocean Alliance] nature, or any object or site of a similar nature] [Underwater Cultural Heritage] [United Kingdom], and its location, including the preservation and protection measures taken. The Secretary-General shall transmit such information, within 7 Days of receiving it to [the Sponsoring State or State, to the State from which the remains, object or site originated, if known, to the] [the Council, the Sponsoring State, the State from which the Underwater Cultural Heritage originated (if known), the] [United Kingdom] Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization and to any other competent international organization. Such human remains, object or site in the Contract Area should be disposed of for the benefit of mankind as a whole or preserved, so that no further Exploration or Exploitation shall take place, within a reasonable radius, to be determined by the Authority in consultation with the Contractor, after taking into account the views of the State from which the remains or objects originated. [If the Council decides that exploration or exploitation cannot continue, the Contractor shall be compensated, including but not limited to the vicarious areas of equivalent size or value elsewhere or appropriate waiver of fees.] [No decision shall be taken by the Council about the disposal, protection or preservation of a wreck entitled with sovereign immunity and associated human remains without the consent of the Flag State.] [United Kingdom]
2. [As part of its decision-making process in paragraph 1, the Authority shall take into account the work of [all organs of] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] the Authority [and [the work] [the views of the Director-General] [Singapore - replace] of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] with respect to underwater cultural heritage, [[particularly as defined in Article 1(a) of the 2001 Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete].] [In its decision-making process under Paragraph 1, the Authority shall consider the relevant work and guidelines of the United Nations Educational,



Scientific, and Cultural Organization, particularly as defined in Article 1(a) of the 2001 Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage] [African Group - replace]

[3. Contractors and applicants shall consult and cooperate in good faith with Indigenous peoples through their own representative institutions in order to obtain their free, prior and informed consent before taking any action that may affect them or their intangible Underwater Cultural Heritage, we take this from the United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples, Article 19. The Authority shall, at all times ensure the protection and safeguarding of intangible Underwater Cultural Heritage.] [The Ocean Foundation]

[3. The Authority shall work with relevant States and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization to compile a record of proposals relating to the protection of any finding of Underwater Cultural Heritage referred to in paragraph 1. Subject to paragraph 5 below, the Council shall decide, not later than 90 days after the first Council meeting following its receipt of a notification in accordance with paragraph 2, whether, and if so, how the Underwater Cultural Heritage found shall be protected for the benefit of humankind as a whole. The Council's decision shall include a determination as to whether, and if so, where within the radius in which exploitation had immediately ceased following the finding, exploitation may re-commence.

4. The Contractor shall not be entitled to compensation for any measures required by this regulation.

5. As part of the decision-making process in paragraphs 1 -3, the Authority shall take into account the work of the Authority and the work of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization with respect to underwater cultural heritage, particularly as defined in Article 1 (a) of the 2001 Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage.

6. In relation to the finding by a Contractor of a shipwreck which has sovereign immunity, no decision shall be taken about the disposal, protection or preservation of the shipwreck and associated human remains without the consent of the flag State.] [United Kingdom]

#### **[Regulation 35Alt] [Spain]**

1. Exploitation activities in the Area shall be conducted in a way that does not negatively affect human remains and/or cultural heritage.

2. The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing within 24 hours of any discovery of suspected human remains and/or cultural heritage in the Contract Area, and their location. The notification shall include the provisional mitigation and preservation measures taken by the Contractor to avoid any interference with these human remains and/or cultural heritage and their natural context.

3. Following the discovery of any such human remains and/or cultural heritage, and in order to avoid their disturbance, no further exploitation shall take place, within a reasonable radius, until the Council adopts a decision in accordance with paragraph 5. Pending any action by the Council, the Secretary-General may suggest to the Contractor further provisional measures to preserve the human remains and/or cultural heritage and their natural context taking into consideration [the applicable relevant guidelines] [generally accepted underwater archaeological standards].

4. The Secretary-General shall transmit in writing within 48 hours the information concerning the discovery and the provisional measures suggested to the contractor, if any, to all States, the President of the Council, the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, as well as to any other international organization and other stakeholders having asked the Authority to be notified in such cases.

5. After ascertaining the views of Member States, particularly those with preferential rights under Article 149 of the Convention, and the Contractor, within sixty 60 days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, the Council shall make a decision as to whether or not exploitation activities shall be terminated within an area surrounding the discovered human remains and/or cultural heritage. The Council may suggest to the Member States any other measure to preserve the human remains and/or cultural heritage and their natural context taking into consideration [the applicable relevant guidelines] [generally accepted underwater archaeological standards].

6. In taking such a decision, the Council shall also take into account the views of non Member States, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization and of the other mentioned international organizations in paragraph 4, as well as of any mentioned stakeholders if so decided by the Council.

7. The Council shall forward to the Authority's database all information used in making its decision under paragraph 5. Access to such information shall be decided by the Council under Part IX on 'Information-gathering and handling' of this Regulation.]

[No decision shall be taken by the Council about the disposal, protection or preservation of a wreck entitled to sovereign immunity and associated human remains without the consent of the flag State] [United Kingdom]

#### **[Regulation 35 alt [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ]**

##### **Human remains and Underwater Cultural Heritage**

1. Exploitation activities in the Area shall be conducted in a way that does not negatively affect [known] human remains or underwater cultural heritage.

2. A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing within 24 hours of any discovery of suspected human remains or underwater cultural heritage in the Contract Area, and their location. The notification shall include any provisional mitigation and preservation measures taken to avoid any interference with these human remains or underwater cultural heritage and within a reasonable radius thereof.

3. Following the discovery of any such human remains or underwater cultural heritage, and in order to avoid their disturbance, no further exploitation shall take place, within a reasonable radius, based on the type of resource and as informed by the applicable Standard and taking into consideration the Applicable Guidelines, until the Commission adopts a decision in accordance with paragraph 5. Pending any action by the Commission, the Secretary-General may suggest to the Contractor further provisional measures to preserve the human remains or underwater cultural heritage and their natural context taking into consideration the Applicable Guidelines.

4. The Secretary-General shall transmit in writing within 48 hours the information concerning the discovery and the provisional measures suggested to the

contractor, if any, to all Members of the Authority, the President of the Council, the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, as well as to any other relevant international organization or other stakeholders having asked the Authority to be notified in such cases.

4 alt bis. Any State party may declare its interest in being consulted on how to ensure the effective protection of the human remains or underwater cultural heritage. Such a declaration, shall be transmitted to the Secretary-General within ten (10) days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, and shall be based on a verifiable link to the human remains or underwater cultural heritage concerned, particular regard being paid to the preferential rights of States of cultural, historical or archaeological origin. The sponsoring State and the flag State of the vessel from which the exploitation is being carried out shall be considered interested States.

4 alt ter. Within fifteen (15) days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, a consultative meeting of the interested States referred to in the previous paragraph shall be convened to include the contractor, the Secretary General, the Director General of the UNESCO and accredited observers.

4 alt quater. Within fifteen (15) days of the conclusion of the consultative meeting, the interested States shall make one of the following recommendations to the Commission:

(a) that the contractor may continue with its exploitation activities;

(b) that further investigation is necessary to inform an appropriate recommendation, in which case, the consultative meeting shall have an additional fifteen (15) non-extendable days for its deliberations;

(c) in the case of human remains, that the remains shall be preserved under [relevant] [best] [[generally accepted underwater] archaeological standards or practices; or

(d) that other protection measures shall be applied to human remains or underwater cultural heritage.

5. After ascertaining the views of Member States, particularly those with preferential rights under Article 149 of the Convention, and all other interested parties identified in paragraph 4 alt ter, and taking into consideration the relevant Guidelines, the Commission shall, at its next meeting and in any case within 60 days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, make a determination with respect to the discovery of suspected human remains or underwater cultural heritage. The determination of the Commission may include one or more of the following matters:

(a) confirmation of the nature of the discovered human remains or underwater cultural heritage;

(b) a determination of any buffer zones;

(c) a requirement for the Contractor to provide additional information or share additional data with the Authority;

(d) a determination as to the termination of exploitation activities within a clearly defined area surrounding the discovered human remains or cultural heritage; or

(e) any other matter that the Commission determines to be appropriate and necessary in the circumstances and in light of the applicable Guidelines.

The Commission may also suggest to the Member States any measure to preserve the human remains or underwater cultural heritage and their natural context taking into consideration the Applicable Guidelines.

5 bis If the Commission determines that exploitation activities cannot continue, the Contractor shall be compensated, including but not limited to the vicarious areas of equivalent size or value elsewhere or through an appropriate waiver of fees in accordance with the Applicable Standard.

6. The Commission shall forward all information used in making its determination under paragraph 5, including the location of the human remains or underwater cultural heritage to the Secretary-General for inclusion in the Authority's database.

### **Regulation 35alt**

#### **Chance discovery of human remains and Underwater Cultural Heritage**

1. Exploitation activities in the Area shall be conducted in a way that does not affect human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage.
  2. The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing within 24 hours of any chance discovery of suspected human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage in the Contract Area, and their location. The notification shall include the provisional mitigation and preservation measures taken to avoid any interference with these human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage and their archaeological and natural context and within a reasonable radius thereof.
  3. Following the discovery of any such human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage, and in order to avoid their disturbance, no further exploitation shall take place, within a reasonable radius, based on the type of resource and as informed by relevant Standards and taking into consideration relevant Guidelines, until the [Council][Commission] adopts a decision in accordance with paragraph 5. Pending any action by the [Council][Commission], the Secretary-General may suggest to the Contractor further provisional measures to preserve the human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage and their archaeological and natural context taking into consideration [the applicable relevant guidelines][generally accepted underwater archaeological standards][the recommendations of the Committee on Underwater Cultural Heritage].
  4. The Secretary-General shall transmit in writing within 48 hours the information concerning the discovery and the provisional measures suggested to the contractor, if any, to all Members of the Authority, the President of the Council, the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, as well as to any other relevant international organization or other stakeholders having asked the Authority to be notified in such cases.
- 4 alt. The Secretary-General shall transmit such information in writing, within two (2) days of receiving it:
- (a) to all States parties;
  - (b) to the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and to any other competent international organization; and

(c) to all accredited observers.

4 alt bis. Any State party may declare its interest in being consulted on how to ensure the effective protection of the human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage. Such a declaration, shall be transmitted to the Secretary-General within ten (10) days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, [and shall be based on a verifiable link to the human remains or Underwater Cultural Heritage concerned,] with particular regard being paid by the declaring State to its preferential rights as a State of cultural, historical or archaeological origin. [The sponsoring State and the flag State of the mother-vessel from which the exploitation is being carried out shall be considered interested States.]

4 alt ter. Within fifteen (15) days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, a meeting of the interested States referred to in the previous paragraph shall be convened to include the contractor, the Secretary-General, the Director General of the UNESCO and accredited observers. [Only States parties shall have the right to vote, but the views of the Contractor, the Director General of the UNESCO and accredited observers shall be taken into account.]

4 alt quater. Within fifteen (15) days of the convened meeting, the meeting of the interested States shall make to the [Council][Commission] one of the following recommendations:

(a) that the contractor may continue with their exploitation activity;

(b) that further investigation should be necessary to suggest an appropriate recommendation, in which case, the convened meeting shall have an additional fifteen (15) non-extendable days to do so; or

(c) in the case of human remains, that the remains shall be preserved under [relevant][best][generally accepted underwater] archaeological standards or practices, with a proposal made to the Council to create an [Area of Particular Environmental Interest] [Area of Particular Cultural Interest]; or,

(d) that other protection measures shall be applied to human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage.

5. After ascertaining the views of Member States, particularly those with preferential rights under Article 149 of the Convention, within sixty 60 days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, the Council shall make a decision on the termination of exploitation activities within an area surrounding the discovered human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage. The Council may also suggest to the Member States any measure necessary for the preservation and protection of the human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage and their archaeological and natural context taking into consideration [the applicable relevant guidelines][generally accepted underwater archaeological standards][the recommendations of the Committee on Underwater Cultural Heritage].

5alt. After ascertaining the views of Member States, particularly those with preferential rights under Article 149 of the Convention, and all other interested parties identified in paragraph 4 alt ter, and taking into consideration the relevant Guidelines, the Commission shall, at its next meeting and in any case within 60 days of the notification of the discovery by the Secretary-General, make a determination with respect to the discovery of suspected human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage. The determination of the Commission may include one or more of the following:

- (a) a confirmation of the nature of the discovered human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage;
- (b) a determination of the buffer zones;
- (c) a requirement for the Contractor to provide additional information or share additional data with the Authority;
- (d) a determination as to the termination of exploitation activities within a clearly defined area surrounding the discovered human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage; or
- (e) any other matters that the Commission determines to be appropriate and necessary in the circumstances and in light of the applicable Guidelines.

The Commission may also suggest to the Member States any measure to preserve the human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage and their natural context taking into consideration the applicable Guidelines.

[5bis. If the Commission determines that exploitation activities cannot continue, the Contractor shall be compensated, including but not limited to the vicarious areas of equivalent size or value elsewhere or appropriate waiver of fees in accordance with the applicable Standard.]

6. *(IF PARA 4 RATHER THAN PARA 4 ALT AND REST OF SERIES IS CHOSEN)*

In taking such a decision, the Council will also take into account the views of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization and of other international organizations mentioned in paragraph 4, as well as the views of any other mentioned stakeholders or non-Member States of the Authority if so decided by the Council.

7. The [Council][Commission] shall forward all information used in making its decision under paragraph 5, including the location of the human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage, to the Secretary-General for inclusion in the Authority's database. Access to such information shall be decided by the Council under Part IX on 'Information-gathering and handling' of this Regulation.

7 bis No decision shall be taken by the Council about the disposal, protection or preservation of a wreck entitled to sovereign immunity and associated human remains without the consent of the flag State.

**Comments/remarks**

- An alternative text for DR 35 has been submitted by Spain to the intersessional working group in July 2024 and discussed during Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.
- Another alternative for DR35 has been submitted by Nauru and NORI, TOML, BMJ after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.
- A third alternative has been proposed following the work of the IWG on UCH after part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

**Regulation 35bis [PEW]**

(1) The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General in writing within 24 hours of any finding in the Contract Area of any human remains of an archaeological or historical and paleontological nature, or any object or site of a similar nature, and its location, including the preservation and protection measures taken.

(2) Upon receipt of a notification under paragraph (1), the Secretary-General shall transmit such information, within 7 Days to the Sponsoring State or State, to the State from which the remains, object or site originated, if known, to the Director General of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization and to any other competent international organization.

(3) While consideration is given to management of the remains, site or object found, the Contractor shall suspend activities within a reasonable radius and for a necessary time, to be determined by the Authority in consultation with the Contractor, after taking into account the views of the State from which the remains or objects originated.

(4) The Authority, after consultation with the persons listed in paragraph (2), shall instruct the Contractor how to preserve or dispose of any human remains, object or site found in the Contract Area with the aim that such preservation or disposal shall be for the benefit of mankind as a whole.

(5) [If the Council decides that exploration or Exploitation cannot continue, the Contractor shall be compensated, including but not limited to the vicarious areas of equivalent size or value elsewhere or appropriate waiver of fees.]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have received a proposal to retain the last sentence, since the delegation considers it an appropriate compensation mechanism.

## Section 6 Insurance obligations

### Regulation 36 [President's Text]

#### Insurance

1. A Contractor shall obtain and thereafter at all times maintain, and cause its subcontractors to obtain and maintain, in full force and effect, insurance with financially sound insurers satisfactory to the Authority, of such types, on such terms and in such amounts in accordance with [the relevant] [any applicable] [Nauru; Costa Rica - replace] Standard[s][Nauru - delete] and Guidelines [and taking into account any applicable Guideline][Nauru] and [Nauru - delete] applicable international maritime practice [Pew - delete], consistent with Good Industry Practice [and taking into consideration the applicable Guideline] [Nauru].

1.bis. The insurance required under paragraph 1 shall:

(a) be proposed at the time of applying for approval of a Plan of Work of exploitation to allow the Commission and Council to assess the satisfactoriness of the proposed insurance [policy] [policies] [Bangladesh - replace] [Pew - delete] against this Regulation and the [relevant] [applicable] [Pew - replace] Standard and [taking into account the relevant] [Pew] Guidelines;

(b) be in effect [from the start date of [the Contract] [Commercial Production] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]] [as at the point in time that the Contractor's vessel departs port for the Area for the purpose of conducting Exploitation activities] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace], until such time as the Environmental Performance Guarantee has been released back to the Contractor in full by the Authority; and

~~(e)~~ [(c)] [Germany] cover all [potential] [Australia - delete] [harms] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] to people, property, natural resources, and environment that may occur, wherever located, [or howsoever caused, as a result of] [directly caused by] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] the Contractor's [activities] [actions] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] in the Area.].

[Nauru - delete sub-para (c) entirely]

[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove enclosing brackets from 1.bis]

~~(c)alt (c) cover the financial consequences of any liability that the Contractor may incur as a result of harm caused to third parties, property, the environment and blue economy, attributable to the exercise of its activities in the Area, whatever the cause and location.] [France]~~

2. Contractors shall include the Authority as an additional assured. A Contractor shall [use its best endeavours to] [Netherlands - delete] ensure that all insurances required under this regulation shall be endorsed to provide that the underwriters waive any rights of recourse, including subrogation rights against the Authority in relation to Exploitation.

3. The obligation under an exploitation contract to maintain insurance as specified in these Regulations and the relevant Standards~~and Guidelines~~ is a fundamental term of the contract. Should a Contractor fail to maintain the insurance required under these regulations, the [Contractor shall immediately suspend Exploitation activities pursuant to Regulation 29bis. The] [Pew] [Compliance Committee] [Germany - remove brackets] Secretary-General [upon being notified of such a suspension,] [Pew] shall [issue a compliance notice ~~order~~ under] [consider what additional compliance action is needed, if any, pursuant to] [Pew - replace] regulation 103. [3. Bis] [France][The Contractor must [safely] [Germany] suspend mining operations as soon as it no longer fulfils the obligation to maintain insurance]. [The Secretary-General shall notify the Council immediately [at its next available meeting] of such failure, and the corrective measures taken by the Contractor.] [PEW - delete] [The Secretary-General shall keep the Council informed on such cases] [Germany - replace] [Pew - delete]

4. A Contractor shall not make any material change to or terminate any insurance policy related to its Exploitation activities in the Area without the prior consent of the [[Council]] [Commission] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [Secretary-General] [Nauru - suggests reinstating].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete entire para 4]

5. A Contractor shall notify the [[Compliance Committee][Commission][Council] through the] [PEW] Secretary-General [as soon as practicabl[e] [y] possible] [PEW] immediately [without any delay] [Netherlands - replace] if the insurer terminates the policy or modifies the terms of insurance [, in which case paragraphs (3) or (4) shall apply, as relevant][PEW].

6. A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General [as soon as practicable possible] immediately upon receipt of claims made under its insurance.



7. [A Contractor shall provide the Secretary-General at least annually with evidence of the existence of such insurance in accordance with regulation 38 (2) (i).] [A Contractor should include evidence of the existence of insurance in accordance with Regulation 38 in its annual report to the Authority and shall inform the Secretary-General immediately of any change of insurer.] [United Kingdom - replace]

[8. The insurance policies must provide coverage for:

a. environmental liabilities, including pollution and restoration costs;

b. third-party liabilities, including bodily injury, property damage and economic loss;

c. operational risk, including accidents and equipment failures.

9. The Authority shall regularly review the adequacy of the insurance requirements and adjust them, as necessary, to ensure that they reflect current industry standards and risk associated with deep sea mining activities.] [African Group]

#### Comments/remarks

- Several delegations suggested to only refer to standards since this is a vital document for the exploitation activities.
- I have received the newly proposed 1.bis from a delegation. Whilst I think the content is valuable, I would suggest for it to be placed in the standards, and I invite for discussions thereof.
- Some delegations asked for the retention of para 2 since it concerns the protection of the Authority. I have therefore refrained from omitting it.

## Section 7 Training commitment

### Regulation 37 [President's Text]

#### Training Plan

1. The Contractor shall [continuously] [African Group] conduct and carry out the training of personnel of the Authority and developing States on an ongoing basis in accordance with the approved Training Plan commitment under schedule 8 to the exploitation contract, these regulations and any training [Standards, taking account of relevant] Guidelines.

2. The Contractor, the Authority and the Sponsoring State or States may, from time to time, as necessary, revise and develop the Training Plan by mutual agreement, taking into account [the shortage of any skills [and requirements of the industry in the undertaking of activities in the Area and the training Guidelines]] [, any requirements of the industry in the understanding of activities in the Area, as well as the special needs of developing States, in particular geographically disadvantaged States and landlocked states, and applicable standards, taking into consideration guidelines.] [African Group - replace] [the special needs of developing States, in particular geographically disadvantaged

States and landlocked States and the training applicable Standards, taking into consideration Guidelines] [Pew - replace].

3. Any mutually agreed modification of or amendment to the Training Plan shall become part of schedule 8 to the exploitation contract. ] [Pew - delete]

~~4. [In the case of specific training on Mitigation and the prevention of pollution from the Area, participation of representative of the adjacent coastal State should be ensured.]~~ [Micronesia - retain]

5. The Contractor shall, in the training plan, include measures to ensure the protection of the health, safety and rights of trainees and demonstrate how gender equality, inclusivity, non-discrimination and diversity are implemented in the contractor's approach to training opportunities] [African Group]

(5) The Contractor shall in the Training Plan:

(i) include measures to ensure protection of the health, safety and rights of trainees, and

(ii) demonstrate how gender equality, inclusivity, non-discrimination, and diversity are implemented in the Contractor's approach to training opportunities.] [Pew]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have received several suggestions from delegations to delete para 4 since the Convention does not contain any provisions or indirect obligations to train representatives of adjacent coastal states.

#### **Regulation 37bis**

##### **Transfer of Technology**

[placeholder pending further discussion: The Contractor shall adhere to and implement the commitments set out in the Plan of Work for the transfer of technology, in line with the applicable Standards, and taking into account Guidelines.] [Pew]

## **Section 8 Annual reports and record maintenance**

### **Regulation 38 [OEWG]**

#### **Annual report**

1. A Contractor shall, within 90 Days of the end of each Calendar Year, submit an annual report to the Secretary-General, ~~in such format as may be prescribed from time to time in the relevant Guidelines, covering regarding~~ its activities in the Contract Area and reporting on compliance with the terms of the exploitation contract.

2. Such annual reports shall be in accordance with relevant Standards and Guidelines and include:

(a) Details of [the Exploitation work] [Exploitation activities] [Pew - replace]

- carried out during the Calendar Year, including ~~equipment used~~ ~~Pew~~ maps, charts and graphs illustrating the work that has been done and the data and results obtained, reported against ~~and noting variance from~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete~~ the approved Plan of Work;
- (b) The quantity and ~~quality~~ ~~dry metal content~~ of the Resources ~~recovered~~ ~~extracted~~ during the period and the ~~volume~~ ~~tonnage~~ ~~in dry metric tons and wet metric tons~~ of Minerals and metals ~~produced~~ ~~recovered~~, marketed and sold during the Calendar Year, reported against the ~~Plan of Work~~ ~~Mining Workplan~~;
- (c) ~~Details of the equipment used to carry out Exploitation, and in operation at the end of the period~~, ~~if different from the Plan of Work~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete~~; ~~Pew - delete~~
- (d) An annual financial report, in conformity with internationally accepted accounting principles and certified by a duly qualified firm of public accountants, of the actual and direct Exploitation expenditures, which are the capital expenditures and operating costs of the Contractor in carrying out the programme of activities during the Contractor's accounting year in respect of the Contract Area, together with an annual statement of the computation of payments paid or payable ~~by the Contractor~~ to the Authority ~~and Sponsoring States~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru~~, ~~governments, state enterprises, and other contractors, as well as payments and other forms of financial benefit received by the Contractor from Sponsoring States~~, ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – delete~~ and reported against the Financing Plan;
- ~~(e) Health and safety information, including details of any accidents or Incidents arising during the period and actions taken in respect of the Contractor's health and safety procedures; Information on compliance with health, labour and safety standards~~ ~~reported against the Health and Safety Plan~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~;
- ~~(e) bis Details of any~~ ~~accidents~~ ~~Notifiable Events~~ ~~Pew - replace~~ ~~or Incidents arising during the period~~ ~~including a description of the necessary corrective actions that have been taken into account to return to normal;~~ ~~Spain~~
- (f) Details of training carried out ~~in accordance with~~ ~~reported against~~ ~~Pew - replace~~ the Training Plan:
- (g) The actual results ~~and data~~ ~~Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets~~ ~~Nauru - delete~~ obtained from environmental monitoring programmes, including observations, measurements, evaluations and the analysis of environmental parameters, reported against ~~the Authority's Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives in Regulation 44ter, the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan including its Regional Environmental Objectives,~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~, ~~where applicable, any criteria~~ ~~and~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ ~~Nauru – remove brackets~~ ~~environmental~~ ~~Nauru~~ ~~thresholds included in the applicable Standards, and against the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,~~ ~~and taking into account environmental~~ ~~goals and~~ ~~objectives pursuant to~~ ~~these Regulations,~~ ~~the Regional Environmental Management Plan where applicable~~ ~~Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete~~ ~~technical Standards and indicators, including environmental objectives and standards, pursuant to the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan and the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan~~, together with details of any response actions implemented under the plan ~~and the~~ ~~Pew - replace~~ actual costs of compliance with the plan ~~as well as changes made to the Contractor's Environmental Management~~

System] [Pew];

[(g)bis a statement indicating whether and how the results obtained from environmental monitoring programmes help to reduce knowledge gaps, particularly with respect to environmental impacts of activities in the Area [and help to support the identification and improvement of Environmental Practices] [France];

[(g)ter details of all revenues and operating costs associated with activities in handling and processing, including carbon emissions, to the degree available to support transparent identification of BEP.]] [Germany – remove brackets]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete (g)ter entirely]

[(g)ter alt Details on the actions taken yearly for the reduction of the following environmental footprints: air pollution, discharges of waste-water and generation of waste.] [France]

[(g) quat: Details of all operating costs associated with environmental measures.] [France]

- (h) A statement that all risk management systems and procedures have been followed and remain in place, together with a report on exceptions and the results of any verification and audit undertaken internally or by independent competent persons, [appointed or employed by the Contractor] [Pew - delete];
- (i) Evidence that insurance is maintained, including the amount of any deductibles and self-insurance, together with the details and amount of any claims made or amounts recovered from insurers during the period;

[(i)(bis) Details of any new permits, licences, approvals, certificates, and clearances, not issued by the Authority, which are relevant to the lawful performance of the Exploitation Contract, that were obtained by the contractor (or which terminated) during the reporting period;] [Pew]

- (j) [Details of any [material] changes made in connection with subcontractors engaged by the Contractor during the Calendar Year; ]

[(j)bis Details about any changes made to the Contractor's business structure or collaborations, including but not limited to their subcontractors, holding [company] [Pew], subsidiaries, affiliates and ultimate parent companies, agencies and partnerships;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete (j)bis]

- (k) The results of any Exploration activities, including [environmental data and] [Pew] updated data and information on the grade and quality of Resources and reserves identified in accordance with [the International Seabed Authority Reporting Standard for Reporting of Mineral Exploration Results Assessments, Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves [and] [Pew - delete] applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines];

- (l) A statement that the Contractor's Financing Plan [has been adhered to and] [Pew] is adequate for the following period; and

- (m) Details of any [Material Change in the reporting period as well as] [Pew] [proposed] [significant] modification to the Plan of Work [and the reasons for such modifications] [Pew - delete].

- (n) [Details of any changes made to the Contractor's Environmental Management System in accordance with Regulation 46 [including information to demonstrate the continual and systematic assessment of the adequacy of the Environmental

Management System and its improvement [Nauru]: [Pew- delete]

- (o) Details of any [engagement and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] consultations carried out with coastal States, other marine users, or any other Stakeholders, including pursuant to Regulation [s] [Pew - delete] 31;
- (p) A summary of any complaints or whistleblowing reports received [by the Contractor] [Pew] during the reporting period and details of how these have been dealt with;
- (q) A summary of any performance assessments pursuant to regulation 52, or review of activities pursuant to regulation 58 during the reporting period;
- (r) A summary of how the Contractor has dealt with any inspection reports, inspector instructions, compliance notices, monetary penalties or any other regulatory [monitoring] [inspection] [Pew] [compliance] [Nauru] or enforcement action taken by the [ISA] [Authority] [Nauru – replace] or the Sponsoring State [or States] [Nauru] in relation to contractor compliance during the reporting period;
- (s) Evidence that the Environmental Performance Guarantee has been paid or maintained in accordance with the [contract terms] [Rules of the Authority] [Nauru] [Exploitation contract] [Pew - replace].
- (t) A summary report of the discharges registered in accordance with regulation 50(5).
- (u) The [indicative] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] planned date of Closure, and an explanation of any changes to the date, if applicable, in accordance with regulation 59] [Germany – remove brackets from sub-para n - u]

[(2)bis. [The Secretariat shall arrange for the effective management of the submitted information in order to overcome existing gaps in knowledge concerning the marine ecosystems including their sensitivity and resilience, the determination of environmental quality standards and appropriate exploitation equipment.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete 2bis]

[2 bis ALT The Commission shall review annual reports received, and shall prepare and submit to the Council a summary report which shall record any trends or findings from the review, and any related recommendations for the Council’s consideration. The report [should] [shall] [Pew - replace] include any information relevant to the formulation by the Authority of rules, regulations and procedures concerning protection of the [marine environment] [Pew - capitalize] and [human] [Pew] [health and] [Nauru] safety.]

[Germany – delete 2.bis and 2.bis.alt entirely]

[2(ter). In reviewing annual reports, the Commission shall prepare for the Council a report that summarises trends or findings from the annual reports, including but not limited to any knowledge and information relevant to the continuous improvement of the [Authority’s rules,][Germany] regulation, [procedures][Germany] and management of activities in the Area, with a particular emphasis on information relevant to better understanding marine ecosystems[,][Germany] [and][Germany – delete] the impacts of activities in the Area on such ecosystems[, as well as safety and mining equipment] [Germany].][Germany- remove brackets from 2 (ter)] [Pew – delete entire para 2ter]

3. Annual reports shall be published in the Seabed Mining Register, except for Confidential Information, which shall be redacted. [To this end, Contractors

shall structure the annual reports such that any Confidential Information can be clearly identified and extracted.]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Two participants have proposed new subparagraphs in paragraph 2. They include references to reports or documents that are required to be reported by contractors in different parts of the regulations, that are not included in this list of annual reporting requirements. I invite comments.
- One participant previously proposed an additional paragraph between 2 and 3, with the following explanation: Standards and/or Guidelines for the Annual Report and the Annual Financial Report will be needed. Guidelines are likely to be needed for more than just formatting of the Annual report. Standards and Guidelines could, among other areas, incorporate evolving best practices regarding financial disclosure in the extractives sector. These could, for example, specify internationally accepted accounting principles to be used (i.e., Generally Accepted Financial Practices (GAAP) or International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)), the definition of what constitutes a “direct Exploitation Expenditure”, and the definition of a “payment and other forms of financial benefit” (e.g., subsidies, deductions, etc.). Contractor payments to contractors (including the Enterprise), State enterprises, States, and Sponsoring States should be disclosed publicly in line with terrestrial mining best practices. This is in line with International standards, like the Extractives Industries Transparency Initiative (EITI), and national best practices, such as the Extractives Sector Transparency Measures Act (ESTMA) in Canada which requires that certain businesses involved in the commercial development of oil, gas and minerals report the payments they make to governments in Canada and abroad. Payments to the contractor from Sponsoring States should also be disclosed. This information will be needed to determine the effective tax rate for contractors and to enable reviews of the system of payment.
- One participant has proposed alternative drafting to 2 bis (2 bis ALT), which is intended to be a broader formulation. I invite comments.
- Some participants proposed that Regulation (2)bis is out of place in the current section, which otherwise deals exclusively with a Contractor’s annual report. They suggest removing this provision and placing it elsewhere in the Regulations. I invite proposals as to placement.
- I invite comments on the new paragraph 2.ter that has been proposed.
- Thresholds for information disclosure requirements may need to be defined. I invite proposals.
- Necessary amendments are needed to DR 89 regarding confidentiality. I invite proposals.
- Necessary amendments may be needed to DR 83 Recording in Seabed Mining Registry. I invite proposals.
- “State enterprises” is referred to in AGXI/A/S6(1)(d)(ii). However, something more definitive may be needed into the Schedule or Standards/Guidelines. Payments to Sponsoring States will be important for determining a nodule transfer price in the future. I invite proposals.

## Regulation 39 [OEWG]

### Books, records and samples

1. A Contractor shall keep ~~[[at a place agreed between the Contractor and the Compliance Committee,] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and make available for inspection and audit in accordance with these regulations.]]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~ a complete and proper set of books, accounts and financial records, consistent with internationally accepted accounting principles, which must include information that fully discloses ~~[all revenue and] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ actual and direct expenditures ~~and] [Pew] [liabilities] [Germany – remove brackets]~~ for Exploitation, including capital expenditures and operating costs and such other information as will facilitate an effective audit of the Contractor's expenditures and costs.

~~1.bis~~ The Contractor shall keep the books, account, and records pursuant to paragraph 1 ~~[at a place agreed between the Contractor and the [Compliance Committee]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], and shall make them available for inspection and audit in accordance with these regulations. ] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets from 1.bis]~~

2. A Contractor shall maintain maps, geological, mining and mineral analysis reports, production records, processing records, records of sales or use of Minerals, ~~[records of port inspections, customs records, processing plant receipt data or records.]] [Germany – remove brackets]~~ environmental data, archives and samples and any other data, information and samples connected with the Exploitation activities in accordance with ~~[Standards and taking into account Guidelines] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] and] [Pew] [(the Authority's data and information management policy)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].~~

3. ~~To the extent practical, a~~ ~~[To the extent practical,] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [A][a] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – lower case]~~ Contractor shall keep, in good condition, a representative portion of samples or cores, as the case may be, of the Resource category, ~~from each sample collection period identified in the ~~relevant~~ Standard[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] and [Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], together with biological samples, obtained in the course of Exploitation until the termination of the [exploitation contract]] [Germany – delete] [Closure Plan]]] [Germany – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [satisfactory implementation of the Closure Plan] [Russia - replace].~~ Samples shall be maintained taking into account the relevant Guidelines, which shall provide the option for the Contractor to maintain them itself or to have such maintenance performed on its behalf in whole or in part by a third party.

4. Upon request of the [Secretary-General,] ~~[Inspectors, or Compliance Committee,] [Germany – remove brackets]~~ the Contractor shall deliver to the Secretary-General for analysis a portion of any sample or core obtained during the course of Exploitation activities.

5. A Contractor shall, subject to reasonable notice, permit full access by the [Secretary-General,] ~~[Inspectors, or Compliance Committee,] [Germany – remove brackets]~~ to the data, information and samples.

#### Explanation / Comment

- Accurate samples are integral to the correct calculation of royalties. The collection and storage of samples will be

essential to accountability, royalty calculation, and auditing. Removing the words “to the extent practicable” will allow for a stronger obligation, commensurate with the level of obligation ascribed to the keeping of other records (the other record keeping obligations are not qualified by the inclusion of the words “to the extent practicable”).

- One participant suggested that the BBNJ Article 10 will be relevant.
- One participant proposed that these provisions should be merged (and aligned) with DR74 (‘Proper books and records to be kept’) which covers similar matters.
- The Regulation as currently drafted references the Guidelines for the purposes of detailing storage requirements for the samples; however, it should also link to the draft Guidelines in the present Chair’s text for the purposes of how many samples should be collected, how often they should be collected, at what points/times during the loading of a Shipment samples should be collected, and other relevant matters. One participant proposes removing the reference to Guidelines.

#### *Paragraph 2*

- One participant queried whether the Authority’s data management strategy is about management of the ISA’s data rather than contractor data management, and has proposed a change accordingly.

#### *Paragraph 3*

- Some participants support “closure plan” as the appropriate end point. These participants proposed the use of “exploitation contract” rather than “Closure Plan”. They also expressed concern that the current text of Regulation 39 may lack clarity, and suggest clarifying the purpose of sample collection in Regulation 39 (i.e. samples retained for knowledge purposes or samples collected for assaying to determine royalty payment). Alternatively, they suggest setting clear guidelines in the accompanying Standard and Guidelines.

## **Section 9 Miscellaneous**

### **Regulation 40 [President’s Text]**

#### **Prevention of corruption**

1. A Contractor shall not **make** **offer or promise** **Germany - replace** **nor attempt to make** **Costa Rica** any gift or reward **or personal favour** **Germany** **directly** **Netherlands** to **(i)** **Netherlands** any officials, agents or employees or **C****c**ontractors **African Group; Germany; Pew** or subcontractors of the Authority or **(ii)** **Netherlands** other individuals operating under the auspices of the Authority to induce or reward such persons for any acts undertaken in accordance with their duties **under these regulations**



[under the rules of the Authority] [Germany - replace] [, nor shall a Contractor make any gifts or rewards indirectly for the benefit of these individuals] [Netherlands].

[1. Bis A contractor should not make nor attempt to make any gift or reward to representatives of Member States participating in any body of the authority which could induce or reward any action or decision taken or to be taken by said person.] [Costa Rica]

[1. Bis Any act in contravention of Paragraph 1 shall be deemed a serious and wilful violation of the fundamental tenet of these Regulations and exploitation contract, and the Secretary-General, upon becoming aware of any such act or relevant allegation, shall refer the information immediately to the Compliance Committee for their consideration, including possible action pursuant to Regulation 103, and shall notify the sponsoring State [- save for in the event that the Compliance Committee is implicated in the act or allegation, in which case the Secretary-General shall refer the matter to the Ombudsperson.] [Pew]] [African Group]

[1. Bis A contractor shall not encourage, instruct or allow any other person or government to offer, promise or make any such gift or personal favour referred to in paragraph 1] [Germany]

[1. bis A Contractor shall not make gifts or rewards directly to the Authority, to procure a benefit that it would not be entitled to under the Exploration contract or Exploitation Contract.

1. ter Gifts or rewards as referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2 above shall not be made by persons other than the Contractor acting on behalf of the Contractor or for the Contractor's benefit.

1. quater Contractors shall publish an anti-corruption policy setting out how they manage corruption risk, including how they collect and take risk-based steps to use beneficial ownership data of joint venture partners, subcontractors and suppliers in their processes.] [Netherlands]

2. The Contractor acknowledges and agrees that it is subject to the anti-bribery and anti-corruption provisions of the jurisdictions in which the Contractor is a national or by whose nationals it is effectively controlled and shall conduct its activities under the exploitation contract in accordance with its obligations under such anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws, [including in accordance with the OECD Recommendation on Guidelines on Anti-Corruption and Integrity in State-Owned Enterprises].

[2. bis Any act in contravention of paragraphs 1, 1bis, 1ter or the anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws listed in paragraph 2 shall be deemed a serious and willful violation of the fundamental terms of these Regulations and the Exploitation Contract.

2. ter Upon becoming aware of any information that a contravention as described in paragraph 2bis has taken place or is taking place, the Secretary-General, an Inspector, or the Sponsoring State, as applicable, shall refer the information immediately to the [Compliance Committee] for their consideration, including possible action pursuant to Regulation 103. The Secretary-General or an Inspector, as applicable, shall also send such notification to the Sponsoring State.] [Netherlands]

[3. If there is any indication or reason to believe that this regulation has been contravened, the Compliance Committee shall take the matter up for urgent consideration, including to determine if any measures against the Contractor under Regulation 103 would be appropriate, as well as whether to recommend to the Council that an investigation be carried out against all person or persons involved, including those involved in making and those in receipt of such offer, promise or actual gift or reward or personal favour. The Secretary General shall gather and forward all available and potential information and evidence in support of such allegation to the Compliance committee. The Secretary General shall also notify the relevant sponsoring State, who shall cooperate with the Authority as well as consider further action pursuant to its national legislation.] [Germany]

[3. The contractor acknowledges and agrees to adhere to all applicable anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws and regulations in the jurisdictions where it operates or is controlled. This includes but it's not limited to compliance with one local and national anti-corruption laws and then international best practices.] [African Group]

[4. This provision shall equally apply to applicants and prospective contractors. If the Authority determines that this provision has been contravened, the application for the approval of a plan of work shall be dismissed or the approval shall be reversed in instances where approval has already been granted, as the case may be.] [Germany]

#### Comments / Remarks

- [The Interim Director-General of the Enterprise during Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session suggested better defining gift or reward. The following language was submitted: “gift or reward could include cash, travel, entertainment, sponsorship or any benefit that could be perceived as influencing a decision”.]

#### Regulation 41 [President’s Text]

##### Other Resource categories

1. The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General [within 30 Days] [immediately] [Netherlands - replace] if it finds, within its Contract Area, Resources other than the Resource category to which the exploitation contract relates. [This notification shall include a detailed description of the resources found.] [Spain] [The notification must include a detailed report of the discovered resources, including their estimated quantity, quality, and potential economic value] [Secretary-General] The Secretary-General shall inform the Council about such notification during the next [regular session] [available meeting] [United Kingdom - replace] of the Council.

~~2. — [If the contractor presents an interest in] [T] [t]he exploration for and exploitation of such finds must be the subject of a separate application to the Authority, in accordance with the relevant Rules of the Authority.~~

2.Alt. The [eventual] [Costa Rica] exploration for and exploitation of resources referred to in paragraph 1 of this Regulation shall be the subject of a separate application to the Authority [by any interested party] [Germany].

[2.Alt.2 If a contractor wishes to explore a new category of resources that is not covered by the exploitation contract, the contractor shall make a separate application to the Authority for a contract expressly covering those activities and resources.] [African Group; Pew supports]

[2.Alt.3 Any exploration for and exploitation of resources referred to in paragraph 1 of this regulation shall be the subject of a separate application to the Authority] [United Kingdom]

[3. The application must include a detailed exploration and exploitation plan, an Environmental Impact Assessment, compliance with all relevant regulations and standards, a timetable for the proposed activities] [African Group]

[4. Until the separate application is approved, the Contractor shall take necessary measures to avoid any exploitation of the newly discovered resources. Any interim exploration activities must be non-intrusive and comply with environmental protection standards.] [African Group]

#### Comments/remarks

- Alt.2 received most support during the meeting in July 2023, and I have thus retained it and suggest deleting the original para 2.

### Regulation 42 [President's Text]

#### Restrictions on advertisements, prospectuses and other notices

**1.** No statement shall be made in any prospectus, notice, circular, advertisement, press release or similar document issued by the Contractor, or ~~or with its implied permission, in which it is stated or suggested~~ [Spain] ~~to the knowledge~~ [PEW – delete] with the express or implied permission of the Contractor, or in any other manner or through any other medium, claiming or suggesting, ~~Spain - delete~~ whether expressly or by implication, that the Authority has or has formed or expressed ~~an~~ [PEW] opinion over the ~~likelihood of a future award of an Exploitation contract, or the~~ [PEW] commercial viability of Exploitation in the Contract Area.

[Alt. No statement shall be made in any

(a) prospectus, notice, circular, advertisement, press release or similar document issued by an applicant or Contractor, or with the express or implied permission of an applicant or Contractor, or in any other manner or through any other medium, or

(b) communication or publication from or by, or with the express or implied permission of, any representative, or purported representative of the Authority unless issued pursuant to these Regulations or express authority from the Assembly or Council, claiming or suggesting, whether expressly or by implication, that the Authority has or has formed or expressed an opinion over the commercial viability of Exploitation in the Contract Area or that any future decision at the discretion of the Authority, with relevance to an applicant or Contractor, will be exercised in a particular way.] [Pew]

[2. If there is any indication or reason to believe that this regulation has been contravened, the Compliance Committee shall take the matter up for urgent consideration, including to determine if any measures against the Contractor under Regulation 103 would be appropriate, as well as whether to recommend

to the Council that an investigation be carried out against all person or persons involved. The Secretary-General shall gather and forward all available and potential information and evidence in support of such allegation to the Compliance Committee. The Secretary-General shall also notify the relevant sponsoring State, who shall cooperate with the Authority as well as consider further action pursuant to its national legislation.

3. This provision shall equally apply to Applicants and prospective Contractors. If the Authority determines that this provision has been contravened, the application for the approval of a plan of work shall be dismissed, or the approval shall be reversed in instances where approval has already been granted, as the case may be. [Germany]

#### **Regulation 43 [President's Text]**

##### **Compliance with other laws and regulations**

1. Nothing in an exploitation contract shall relieve a Contractor from its lawful obligations under any national law to which it is subject, including the laws of a Sponsoring State and flag State. ~~[Contractors shall comply with all laws and regulations, whether domestic, international, or other, that apply to its conduct of activities in the Area.]~~

2. Contractors shall maintain the currency of all permits, licences, approvals, certificates, ~~[insurance policies.]~~ [Germany – remove brackets] and clearances not issued by the Authority and that may be required to lawfully conduct Exploitation activities in the Area. ~~[Contractors must conduct regular reviews to ensure that all necessary documents are up to date and valid.]~~ [African Group] ~~[Contractors shall comply with all laws and regulations, whether domestic, international, or other, that apply to its conduct of activities in the Area.]~~ [Spain]

3. Contractors shall notify the Secretary-General promptly when a permit, licence, approval, certificate, ~~[policy]~~ [Germany – remove brackets] or clearance connected with its activities in the Area is terminated, ~~[changed]~~ [Germany – remove brackets] or suspended ~~[and provide detailed information regarding the reasons for and implications of such changes]~~ [African Group]. ~~[The Secretary-General shall upon notification confer with the relevant States to determine how the termination, changes or suspensions may impact the Contractors activities in the Area. The Secretary-General shall then report any information provided by the Contractor and relevant States to the Compliance Committee for their consideration of whether any regulatory action is warranted or additional information from the Contractor or relevant State is required.]~~ [Pew]

## **Part IV Protection and preservation of the Marine Environment**

### **Section 1 Obligations relating to the Marine Environment**

#### **Regulation 44 [IWG ENV] General obligations**

1. The Authority, Sponsoring States, the Enterprise, Contractors and flag States and States competent for vessels, installations, structures and other devices flying their flag or of their registry or operating under their authority shall each within their plan, adopt, implement and update all measures necessary for ensuring effective protection of the Marine Environment, including but not limited to rare or fragile ecosystems as well as the habitat of depleted, threatened or endangered species, [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] from harmful effects directly [or indirectly] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] resulting from Exploitation in the Area. in accordance with the Convention, the Agreement, the Rules of the Authority, Standards and taking into account Guidelines including those referred to in Regulation 45, [international law] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan. To this end:

(a) In adopting and keeping under periodic review rules, regulations and procedures, as well as the Standards and Guidelines in accordance with the Convention and the Agreement, the Authority shall:

(i) Apply the precautionary approach and [the] [an] ecosystem-based approach to the assessment, –management and [prevention] [avoidance] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] of risk of [harm] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] to the Marine Environment from Exploitation in the Area,

(ii) Apply the Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices taking into account the applicable guideline,

(iii) [Ensure] [Integrate] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Integrate Best Available Scientific information, traditional and indigenous knowledge in decision-making, including all risk assessments and management undertaken in connection with environmental assessments, acknowledging knowledge gaps, and uncertainties and the management and response measures taken under or in accordance with Best Environmental Practices; and

(iv) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation in the Area including through Stakeholder participation in accordance with the relevant Standard and the prompt public release of environmental data and information, including [as well as] sampling methodologies and associated metadata, at regular intervals and in an accessible format through the Authority's website, including in accordance with Regulations 92 and 92bis.

(iv)bis Take into account the approach that the polluter should bear the cost of pollution, [endeavour to] [and] [Ireland – replace] [Australia – delete] promote practices whereby those engaged in exploitation activities bear the cost of meeting the pollution prevention and control requirements for the authorized activities, having due regard to the public interest.

~~(iv.ter) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation, including through the participation and consultation of Potentially Most Affected Coastal States and other Stakeholders, as well as the prompt public release of environmental data and information at regular intervals and in an accessible format through the Authority's website.~~

[(v) omitted]

~~(vi) —Ensure to minimize the direct or indirect damage or the likelihood of damage from one part of the environment to another or transform one type of pollution into another as stated in article 195 of the Convention. This is especially related to avoiding persistent and bio-accumulative toxic, persistent and bio-accumulative substances effects.~~

~~(vi Alt.) In implementing the regulations, the Contractor shall not transfer, directly or indirectly, damage or hazards, or the likelihood of damage or hazards, from one part of the environment to another, or transform one type of pollution into another, as stated in article 195 of the Convention, and shall not use toxic, persistent and bio-accumulative substances.~~

(b) In taking all necessary measures to ensure that the Contractor carries out Exploitation in the Area in conformity with the terms of its contract and its obligations under the Rules of the Authority related to the effective protection for the Marine Environment from harmful effects, the Sponsoring State shall, assist the Authority to implement, the measures set out under paragraph (a)(i) to (vi) above.

(c) In taking all necessary measures to prevent, reduce and control pollution and other hazards to the Marine Environment and its ecosystem structure, function and resilience, including the adjacent coastlines, and of interference with the ecological balance of the Marine Environment which includes ecosystem [integrity][NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [structure, function and resilience] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] arising from its Exploitation in the Area, the Enterprise and Contractors shall [implement, mutatis mutandis, the measures set out under paragraph (a)(i) to (iii) above and] demonstrate accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation, including through Stakeholder participation and the prompt public release of environmental data and information on their respective activities at regular intervals and in an accessible format [consistent with best scientific practices [and the need for sufficient information.][DOSI]]. In so doing, the Enterprise and Contractors, shall apply a priority order to avoid, minimize, Mitigate, [and if feasible] remediate, and restore [harm to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Marine environment and adapt the necessary measures according to [newly] obtained information and [sufficient][DOSI] data [and information][DOSI].

[2. In adopting laws and regulations, in accordance with the Convention, to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the Marine environment from Exploitation undertaken by vessels, installations, structures, [robots] and other devices flying their flag or of their registry or operating under their authority, as the case may be, States shall implement, *mutatis mutandis*, the measures set out under paragraph 1(a)(i) to (vi) above.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

The parties shall:

(a) Apply the precautionary approach, and [the] [an] ecosystem-based [management] approach to the assessment and management of risk of harm to the Marine Environment from Exploitation in the Area;

(b) Apply the Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices [and ensure the availability of sufficient information][DOSI];

(c) Integrate Best Available Scientific information in decision making, including all risk assessments and management undertaken in connection with environmental assessments, acknowledging knowledge gaps and uncertainties

and the management and response measures taken under or in accordance with Best Environmental Practices ~~and the need for sufficient information~~ ~~[DOSI]~~; and

(d) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation in the Area, including through Stakeholder participation and the timely public release of relevant environmental data and information at regular intervals and in an accessible format through the Authority's website.

(e) Take into account the ~~approach~~ ~~principle~~ that the polluter should, ~~in principle~~, bear the cost of pollution, ~~endeavour to~~ ~~and~~ ~~Ireland, Australia - replace~~ promote practices whereby those engaged in exploitation activities bear the cost of meeting the pollution prevention and control requirements for the authorized activities, having due regard to the public interest.

(f) In implementing the regulations, act so as not to transfer, directly or indirectly, damage or likelihood of damage from one part of the environment to another or transform one type of pollution into another as stated in article 195 of the Convention. This especially related to the previous reference to avoiding toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances.

(g) Ensure that Exploitation ~~in the Area~~ ~~Australia~~ under an exploitation contract ~~Australia - delete~~ is carried out with reasonable regard for climate mitigation ~~and to minimise impacts on the ocean's capacity to function as a climate sink~~ ~~Australia~~ and ecosystems in the area, such as carbon burial and sequestration and nutrients recycling. ~~Australia - delete~~

3. The Legal and Technical Commission shall make recommendations on the implementation of paragraphs 1 and 2 above.

4. No regulation in this Part shall be interpreted as preventing Sponsoring States, the Enterprise and Contractors from taking, individually or jointly, more stringent measures in accordance with codified and customary based international law with respect to the prevention, reduction and where practicable elimination of detrimental effects on the marine environment.

## [\[Regulation 44 Alt](#)

### [General Obligations](#)

1. ~~The Authority, sponsoring States, the Enterprise, Contractors, flag States, port States~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~Australia - retain~~ and the State of registry of the vessel ~~France - replace~~ and the States of registry ~~of or having authority over installations, structures and other devices~~ ~~Russia - delete~~ ~~Nauru - insert brackets~~ ~~where they are members of the Authority~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~Australia; Indonesia - delete~~ ~~Member States including flag State, the Enterprise, Contactors and the Sponsoring State~~ ~~Russia - replace~~ ~~within their respective competence~~ ~~Pew~~ shall take necessary measures to ensure effective protection of the Marine Environment from ~~harmful effects~~ ~~Serious Harm~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace~~ which may arise ~~directly~~ ~~or indirectly~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~ ~~Australia; France; Indonesia - delete~~ ~~DOSI - keep both directly and indirectly~~ from Exploitation ~~in the Area~~ ~~Pew - delete~~, in accordance with ~~the~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ ~~the Convention, the Agreement, these~~ ~~Indonesia~~ Regulations ~~and~~ ~~as well as~~ ~~Russia - replace~~ Standards and ~~the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan,~~ ~~Micronesia~~

taking into account Guidelines referred to in regulation 45 [Pew - delete] and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan [Micronesia - delete] and to this end shall, as applicable in their respective areas of competence [Pew - delete]: [In adopting and keeping under periodic review rules, regulations and procedures, as well as the Standards and Guidelines in accordance with the Convention and the Agreement, the Authority shall:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

(a) Apply the precautionary approach [principle or precautionary approach as appropriate] [Germany; Netherlands; Pew; Indonesia] [principle] [France - replace] and the [(a)bis Apply an] [Netherlands] ecosystem-based [management] [Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Germany – delete; Pew - retain] approach to [the [prevention,][Germany] assessment[, and][Germany] management [of risk] [IMMS] [and] [Russia – delete] [in order to prevent and reduce] [Russia] [France; Spain - retain] [prevention] [Germany - delete] [avoidance - Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [the reduction] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] of [Indonesia - delete] [risk of] [IMMS – delete / NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - keep] [Russia – delete] [assessment, Mitigation and management of risk of] [Pew] [harm] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; IMMS – replace] [Germany - supports] to the Marine Environment [from Exploitation in the Area] [Pew - delete] [Netherlands – delete all after “approach”];

(b) Apply [the Best Available Techniques and] [Pew - delete] Best Environmental Practices [and ensure the availability of sufficient information] [DOSI] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Netherlands; Spain - delete] [contribute to develop and complement such techniques and practices] [France - replace];

[(c) [Apply [scientific-based] [science-based] [United Kingdom - replace] approach and] [Russia] [I] [i]ntegrate [Russia] [use the] [Netherlands - replace] Best Available [Science and] [Netherlands] Scientific [Information] [Evidence][Norway, (Nauru & Russia lower case) – replace] [and traditional knowledge] [Germany] [and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and [of] [Micronesia] local communities] [Micronesia] [IWG on UCH – remove brackets] [in decision-making] [Russia - delete] (c)ter. Use relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities in decision-making, where available;] [Netherlands – replace and move after proposed (c)bis];] [Pew – delete para 1(c) entirely]

[(c)bis. Ensure the availability of sufficient science and scientific information for the purpose of decision-making;] [Netherlands]

(d) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks [from Exploitation in the Area] [Pew - delete], including but not limited to [s][S]takeholder [public] [African Group - replace] consultation and [Pew - delete] public access to environmental information [, public participation, and access to justice;] [Pew];] [Germany].

(e) [Apply the polluter pays principle [having due regard to the public interest] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Take into account the approach that the polluter should bear the cost of pollution, endeavour to promote practices whereby those engaged in exploitation activities bear the cost of meeting the pollution prevention and control requirements for the authorized activities, having due regard to the public interest;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ];] [Russia – delete] [IMMS - delete] [France; Netherlands; Pew; Spain - delete] and



(f) [Elaborate and implement measures to] [Russia] [E][e]nsure [Russia – lowercase] that [damage or hazards] [harmful changes] [Indonesia - replace] [to the] [marine environment] [Pew - capitalize] [Russia] are not transferred [from one part of] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [, directly or indirectly, from one area] [of the environment] [Spain - delete] to another or from] [Germany] [to] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [the marine environment] [Russia – delete] [to another] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] and that [Germany – delete] one type of pollution [is not transformed][Germany – delete] into another one, and to prevent, reduce and control interference with the ecological balance of the marine environment] [ACOPS][, and shall not use] [Germany] [Special attention should be paid][Russia] [This is especially related] [Russia – delete] to avoiding] [Germany – delete] toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances [as set out in] [Russia].

[(g) apply the mitigation hierarchy to] [avoid] [prevent] [Russia - replace], [minimize,] [mitigate, and, should it become feasible in the future, remediate and restore] [restore and offset] [Spain - replace] the Marine Environment from harm] [reduce, remediate and offset, as applicable, impacts on the Marine Environment] [IMMS; NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [caused by] [Exploitation] [Spain; Indonesia] activities in the Area;][Germany] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [avoid, reduce, and, if possible, offset likely significant adverse effects on the environment and, should it become feasible in the future,] [France - replace] [Netherlands; Pew – delete entire subpara 1(g)]

(h) Ensure that Exploitation in the Area under an Exploitation Contract is carried out with reasonable regard for climate [change] [Spain] mitigation and to [minimise impact on] [safeguard] [Spain - replace] the ocean's capacity to function as a [climate sink] [United Kingdom – replace with “carbon sink” or “sink of greenhouse gases”] [Spain – replace with “carbon sink”].]

[(i) Apply the mitigation hierarchy to avoid, minimize, mitigate, and, should it become feasible in the future, remediate and restore the Marine Environment from harm caused by activities in the Area];][IMMS; NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru; Spain; Indonesia – supports deleting, as it's a duplication of sub-para (g)] [Pew – delete both subpara 1(g) and 1(i) entirely]

(j) Undertake experimentations or experiments and research into the definition of measures to compensate the impact, measures to remediate and restore the marine environment from harm caused by activities in the Area] [France]

2. The Legal and Technical Commission shall make recommendations [to the Council][Nauru] on the implementation of paragraphs 1 above as required.

3. [No regulation in this Part] [Nothing in these Regulations] [Pew - replace] shall be interpreted as preventing [sponsoring][Germany; Pew; Indonesia – delete] [Member][Germany] States [from applying environmental or other laws and regulations, or] [Pew], the Enterprise and Contractors from taking, individually or jointly, more stringent] [Pew - delete] measures [in accordance with international law with respect to the prevention, reduction and owhere practicable elimination of] [detrimental effects on] [harmful effects to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [that are more stringent than those in the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority relating to the protection of] [Pew - replace] the [m][M]arine [e][E]nvironment.[Germany – capitalize]

3. Alt Nothing in these Regulations shall be interpreted as preventing States from applying environmental or other laws and regulations, or the Enterprise and contractors from taking measures that are more stringent than those in the

rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority relating to the protection of the marine environment] [Germany]

[4. Exploitation in the Area and obligations relating to the Marine Environment shall be interpreted and applied in a manner that does not undermine relevant legal instruments and frameworks and relevant global, regional, subregional and sectoral bodies and that promotes coherence and coordination with those instruments, frameworks and bodies.] [Brazil]

[4. No application for a plan of work shall be granted which does not protect and safeguard intangible Underwater Cultural Heritage.] [The Ocean Foundation]

#### [Regulation 44Alt.1 - China]

1. The Authority, sponsoring States, the Enterprise, Contractors, flag States and the States of registry of or having authority over installations, structures and other devices shall within their respective competence take necessary measures to ensure effective protection of the Marine Environment from harmful effects which may arise directly or indirectly from Exploitation in the Area, in accordance with Regulations, Standards and taking into account Guidelines referred to in regulation 45 and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan and to this end shall, as applicable in their respective areas of competence:

(i) Apply the precautionary approach and the ecosystem-based management approach to the assessment management and prevention of risk of harm to the Marine Environment from Exploitation in the Area;

(ii) Apply the Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices;

(iii) Integrate Best Available Scientific Evidence in decision-making;

(iv) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation in the Area  
(vi) Ensure that damage or hazards are not transferred to the marine environment and that one type of pollution is not transformed into another one. This is especially related to avoiding toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances.

2. No regulation in this Part shall be interpreted as preventing sponsoring States, the Enterprise and Contractors from taking, individually or jointly, more stringent measures in accordance with codified and customary based international law with respect to the prevention, reduction and where practicable elimination of detrimental effects on the marine environment.]

#### [Intersessional working group]

[1. The Authority, sponsoring States, the Enterprise, Contractors, flag States, [port States] [and the States of registry of or having authority over installations, structures, robots, and other devices] [where they are members of the Authority] shall take necessary measures to ensure effective protection of the Marine Environment from harmful effects which may arise [directly or indirectly] from Exploitation in the Area, in accordance with Regulations as well as Standards and taking into account Guidelines referred to in regulation 45 and the relevant

Regional Environmental Management Plan and to this end shall, as applicable in their respective areas of competence:

(i) Apply the precautionary approach and an ecosystem-based approach to [the assessment management and prevention of risk of harm] ~~[[in order to prevent and reduce of risk of harm] [avoidance of risk of harm] [the prevention, assessment, and management of risk of harm]]~~ ~~[Spain - delete]~~ to the Marine Environment from Exploitation in the Area;

(ii) Apply the Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices ~~[[and ensure the availability of sufficient information]]~~ ~~[Spain - delete]~~;

(iii) [Apply scientific-based approach and] [integrate] [ensure] Best Available Scientific [Information] [Evidence] [and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities] in decision-making;

(iv) Ensure accountability and transparency in the assessment, evaluation and management of Environmental Effects and risks from Exploitation in the Area, [including but not limited to stakeholder consultation and public access to environmental information];

~~[(iv) bis Apply the polluter pays [principle] ~~[[approach] [having due regard to the public interest]]~~ ~~[Spain - delete]~~; and~~

(vi) Ensure that damage or hazards are not transferred [from one part of] the marine environment [to another] and that one type of pollution is not transformed into another one. This is especially related to avoiding toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances.

~~[vi alt. Elaborate and implement measures to ensure that damage or hazards to the marine environment are not transferred to the marine environment and that one type of pollution is not transformed into another one. Special attention should be paid This is especially related to avoiding toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances as set out in [...]~~

~~[vi alt bis. Ensure that damage or hazards are not transferred, directly or indirectly, from one area ~~[[of the environment] ~~[Spain - delete]~~~~ to another or from the marine environment and that one type of pollution is not transformed into another one, and shall not use . This is especially related to avoiding toxic, persistent and bio accumulative substances].~~

(vii) new Ensure that Exploitation in the Area under an exploitation contract is carried out with reasonable regard for climate ~~[change] ~~[Spain]~~~~ mitigation and ~~[to minimise impacts on] ~~[safeguard] ~~[Spain - replace]~~~~~~ the ocean's capacity to function as a ~~[[climate] ~~[carbon] ~~[Spain - replace]~~~~~~ sink.

(viii) new Apply the mitigation hierarchy to avoid, minimize, ~~[[mitigate] ~~[restore] ~~[Spain - replace]~~~~~~, ~~[[and, should it become feasible in the future, remediate and restore] ~~[Spain - delete]~~~~ the Marine Environment from harm caused by ~~[exploitation] ~~[Spain]~~~~ activities in the Area;

2.The Legal and Technical Commission shall make recommendations [to the Council] on the implementation of paragraphs 1 above as required.

3. No regulation in this Part shall be interpreted as preventing [sponsoring] [Member] States, the Enterprise and Contractors from taking, individually or jointly, more stringent measures in accordance with international law with respect to the prevention, reduction and where practicable elimination of detrimental effects on the Marine Environment.]

**Explanation / comment**

- After our last meeting, several alternative suggestions have been put forward in respect of draft regulation 44, including suggestions from the Intersessional Working Group on Regulation 44. After going through the different proposals, I suggest continuing the negotiations based on the proposal by the Intersessional Working Group on Regulation 44 (called “option 2” by the intersessional working group), as I believe it represents many of the points and considerations raised by participants during our previous meetings.
- I have retained the original draft regulation 44 and have updated it according to proposals received during the July meeting and incoming proposals. During our last meeting, I noted that there were no clear views on whether point “vi” or “vi alt” in paragraph 1, litra a should be used. I propose deleting both versions of point “vi” as I believe “litra g” in paragraph 1, to a large extent, covers the same.

**Regulation 44bis [IWG ENV]  
Regional Environmental Management Plans**

1. The Commission shall [only] [Netherlands, Germany, Costa Rica, Norway, Australia, Belgium, Canada, Portugal, Federated States of Micronesia, Finland, African Group, PEW] consider an application for a Plan of Work [only if a] [Ireland] -[if a] [[based on the adopted]] [Ireland, Germany, PEW – delete] [if a] [Netherlands, Germany, Costa Rica, Norway, Australia, Belgium, Canada, Portugal, Federated States of Micronesia, Finland, African Group, PEW] Regional Environmental Management Plan [~~has been adopted~~] [has been adopted] [Netherlands, Germany, Costa Rica, Norway, Australia, Belgium, Canada, Portugal, Federated States of Micronesia, Finland, African Group, PEW] by the Council for the particular area and type of resource concerned [in line with the Council approved procedures and template] [Pew].

2. [In the event that an application for a Plan of Work is submitted for an area where no such Regional Environmental Management Plan exists, the drafting of a Regional Environmental Management Plan applicable to the area in concern shall be prioritised [and adopted] [PEW – delete] without any undue delay, taking into account Section [2] [1] [Nauru - replace], Article 15 b/c of the 1994 Agreement.] [PEW – delete] [Netherlands, Germany, Costa Rica, Australia, Belgium, Canada, Portugal, Federated States of Micronesia, Finland and the African Group; Brazil; Indonesia – delete] [China - keep] [Once adopted, the Commission shall assess whether any revision to the submitted Plan of Work is needed, especially the submitted Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan, in accordance with Regulation 14.] [Indonesia]

[3. The Regional Environmental Management plans shall include regionally specific environmental goals and objectives. Such regional environmental goals and objectives shall guide the definition of thresholds for every region.] [DOSI]

## **[Regulation 44 ter [IWG ENV] [Germany]**

### **Environmental goals and objectives**

1. In performing their roles and obligations under the Convention, the Agreement, and all relevant Rules of the Authority, Contractors, the Enterprise, the Authority and its organs, and Sponsoring States shall be guided by the Authority's Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives, set out in paragraphs 6 and 7.

2. The Council shall ensure that the Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives pursuant to paragraphs 6 and 7 are operationalized through regionally and mineral specific environmental objectives [including] [United Kingdom] in Regional Environmental Management Plans.

3. The Council shall ensure that the Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives pursuant to paragraphs 6 and 7 and the regionally and mineral specific environmental objectives [in Regional Environmental Management Plans] [United Kingdom - delete] pursuant to paragraph 2 are further operationalised through environmental thresholds, developed pursuant to Regulations 45(2) and 94, prior to the assessment of the first application for a Plan of Work for exploitation.

4. Contractors, [applicants] [, the Enterprise, Sponsoring States] [Spain - replace], the Council and the Commission shall ensure that a proposed Plan of Work reflects and contributes to the achievement of the Authority's [Strategic] [United Kingdom - delete] Environmental Goals and Objectives [, including those] [United Kingdom] pursuant to paragraphs 6 and 7 as well as the relevant regionally and mineral specific environmental objectives pursuant to paragraph 2.

5. The Authority shall keep its Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives under periodic review and ensure amendments to reflect advances in scientific research and knowledge [and new contributions from Indigenous Peoples and from local communities] [Micronesia]. Where the Authority's Environmental [Goals and] [United Kingdom] Objectives are revised, the Commission shall:

(a) inform Contractors and Sponsoring States and discuss whether any modification of a Plan of Work is required pursuant to regulation 57; and

(b) recommend to the Council any necessary amendments to other relevant instruments, including Standards, Guidelines, and Regional Environmental Management Plans.

6. The Authority's [strategic] [overarching] [IMMS - replace] environmental goal[s] are to sustain [and contribute to restoring] [United Kingdom] marine (benthic and pelagic) ecosystem integrity, including the physical, chemical, geological and biological environment [, and contributing to restoring ecosystem integrity] [United Kingdom - delete] [is to maintain ecosystem integrity on a regional scale] [IMMS - suggests replacing].

7. The Authority's strategic environmental objectives are to:

(a) ~~Prevent loss of~~ ~~non-negligible loss of biodiversity, including~~ ~~United Kingdom - replace~~ of ~~Maintain~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ genetic diversity, species richness ~~and evenness~~ ~~United Kingdom~~, habitat or community types, and structural complexity ~~on a regional scale~~ ~~IMMS~~;

(b) ~~Maintain~~ ~~Mitigate impacts to~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ the ability of populations to replace themselves, including ~~ensuring population connectivity and the preservation~~ ~~the conservation~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ of suitable habitat;

(c) ~~Prevent~~ ~~Mitigate~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ significant changes in the distribution, abundance or productivity or species of ~~flora and fauna~~ ~~species~~ ~~United Kingdom - replace~~ ~~,~~ as applicable ~~IMMS~~;

(d) ~~Prevent~~ ~~Mitigate, to the extent this is reasonable~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ further jeopardy to endangered or threatened species or populations of said species ~~,~~ as applicable ~~IMMS~~;

(e) ~~Prevent the degradation of~~ ~~Maintain~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ ~~Sustain~~ ~~United Kingdom - replace~~ ecosystem functions (e.g. the long-term natural productivity of habitats, elemental cycling, trophic relationships) ~~on a regional scale~~ ~~IMMS~~;

(f) ~~Prevent~~ ~~Mitigate~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ non-negligible risks of contamination by pollutants, damage to ~~flora and fauna~~ ~~species~~ ~~United Kingdom~~, ~~where applicable,~~ ~~IMMS~~ or other harmful effects to ecosystem integrity ~~on a regional scale~~ ~~IMMS~~ during any phase of the mining process;

~~(g) Prevent significant changes in the atmosphere, climate and weather patterns, the terrestrial environment, or the Marine Environment;~~ ~~IMMS - delete~~

(j) Prevent significant adverse effect on air and water quality;

~~(h) Maintain resilience to prevent regime shift, and to support recovery from cumulative impacts, including mining, that can affect source populations and communities, connectivity corridors, life-history patterns and species distributions; and~~ ~~IMMS - delete~~

(i) Sustain ecosystem services, including carbon sequestration, recognizing that many are yet to be discovered.

(k) ~~Prevent~~ ~~Mitigate~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ non-negligible risks ~~that will undermine~~ ~~to ensure~~ ~~IMMS - replace~~ the protection and conservation of the natural resources of the Area and the prevention of damage to the ~~flora and fauna~~ ~~species~~ ~~United Kingdom~~ of the Marine Environment;

(l) Prevent degradation, or ~~reduce the~~ ~~Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ; IWG on UCH~~ risk of degradation to special biological, scientific, archaeological, or historical significance of the Area or the Marine Environment ~~;~~ and

(m) Preserve ~~,~~ ~~This shall include the preservation of~~ ~~United Kingdom - replace~~ vulnerable and unique marine ecosystems.]

~~(n) prevent, reduce and control...interference with the ecological balance of the marine environment~~ ~~ACOPS~~]

~~Nauru; IMMS; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete DR 44ter entirely~~ ~~Pew; Spain – retain DR44ter~~

## Regulation 45 [IWG ENV] Development of environmental Standards and Guidelines

1. Environmental Standards and Guidelines developed under this regulation shall have the ~~aim to ensure~~ ~~purpose of ensuring~~ the effective protection of the Marine Environment from ~~harmful effects~~ ~~Serious Harm~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace~~, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention.

2. The Council shall, based on the recommendations of the Commission, adopt ~~E~~~~e~~~~nvironmental~~~~PEW~~ Standards ~~in accordance with regulation~~~~s~~ ~~Germany, Russia – delete~~ 94 ~~and 95~~ ~~Germany, Russia, PEW – delete~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete / Spain - retain~~, inter alia on the following subject matters:

(a) Baseline ~~investigations~~ ~~environmental studies~~ ~~Russia - replace~~ ~~environmental studies investigations~~ ~~Spain - replace~~;

(b) Environmental quality objectives;

~~(c) Resource and region-specific~~ ~~I~~~~i~~~~ndicators~~~~PEW; Spain supports~~ and quantitative environmental thresholds, including but not limited to: ~~the indicators and quantitative environmental thresholds.~~ ~~Nauru - replace~~

~~(i) biodiversity status and ecosystem structures, functions and services;~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete~~

~~(i)bis Physical properties of water (temperature, salinity, turbidity);~~ ~~Russia~~

~~ter Chemical properties of water;~~ ~~Russia~~

~~quat. Chemical properties of sediments;~~ ~~Russia~~ ~~Centre for Polar and Deep Ocean Development – delete subparagraphs 2(i)bis, 2(i)ter and 2(i)quat. entirely~~

~~(ii) sediment~~ ~~Russia – delete~~ plume ~~characteristics (in particular, composition and characteristics of dissolved and suspended matter, plume dispersion, toxicity, composition, re~~ ~~sedimentation~~ ~~Russia~~ ~~rates);~~ ~~Russia~~ ~~properties such as~~ ~~turbidity, depositional footprint and chemical composition~~ ~~Spain - delete~~, ~~dispersion and dilution, resettlement, temperature~~ ~~and~~ ~~toxicity.~~ ~~and chemical composition~~ ~~Russia – delete~~

~~(iii) Physico-chemical Characteristics of seawater and sediment,~~ ~~including~~ ~~water chemistry and temperature~~

~~(iv) light emissions;~~

~~(v) noise and vibrations emissions~~ ~~and~~ ~~PEW – delete~~

~~(vi) habitat~~ ~~disturbance~~ ~~removal~~ ~~and~~ ~~PEW.~~

~~Russia – delete vi.~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete ii – vi~~

~~(vii). Greenhouse gas emissions~~ ~~PEW~~ ~~Nauru – delete / Spain - retain~~

~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para (c) entirely~~

~~(c)Alt. (c) Resource and region specific~~ ~~geological, physical, chemical and biological indicators and associated quantitative threshold values, including but not limited to:~~

~~i. Toxicity~~

~~ii. Turbidity and settling of resuspended sediments~~

~~iii. Underwater noise~~

~~iv. Light pollution~~

- v. Habitat loss
- vi. Greenhouse gas emissions
- vii. biodiversity status and ecosystem structures, functions and services  
 Joint proposal of The Kingdom of the Netherlands, Portugal, Germany, Ireland, Belgium, and The Pew Charitable Trusts

(d) Monitoring procedures

(e) Mitigation [m][M]easures[;] [Russia] [., including restoration measures] [Germany, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete; Australia - retain]

(f) [Minimum] [t]echnical [Netherlands, Ireland; Spain– remove brackets] [[and operational]] [Netherlands, Ireland – delete / Spain - retain] requirements for environment[al][Netherlands, Ireland] protection with regard to [all] the equipment[, operational procedures and processes][Netherlands, Ireland; Spain] used for the Exploitation activities[, including criteria for the assessment methodology to be used][Netherlands, Ireland; Spain]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para (f) entirely]

(g) [Procedures for the management and a][A]ssessment [Spain] of accidental events and natural hazards leading to environmental emergencies as well as environmentally hazardous discharges and residual effects of such emergencies, including preparation and implementation of emergency response and contingency plans.

(h) Procedural and substantive requirements relating to submissions or reports required by these regulations, including but not limited to: Plans of Work, Environmental Management Systems, [Environmental Impact Assessments,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report,] [Russia] [Environmental Risk Assessments,] Environmental Impact Statements, Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans and Closure Plans.

3. [In the event that an application for a Plan of Work is submitted and the environmental Standards and Guidelines have not been adopted, the Council shall prepare and adopt any outstanding environmental Standards with 12 months of its receipt of the application.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [[The Authority shall not approve any Exploitation [activities]-unless the [necessary] [China] environmental Standards [[and Guidelines]] [Nauru, Germany – delete] have been adopted [by the Council] [African Group].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [The development and adoption of Standards shall be prioritised and adopted by the Council without undue delay.] [Nauru]

4. In addition to the environmental Standards, Guidelines on environmental matters may be developed, in accordance with regulation 95.

5. [The application of this Regulation shall be without prejudice to the function of the [Council][Commission] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; France – replace] to develop other Standards [[and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Guidelines] [Russia – delete] on the protection [to the Marine Environment] [Indonesia] [and conservation] [Russia – delete] of the natural resources of the Area and the prevention of damage to the flora and fauna of the Marine Environment [Indonesia - delete] ., taking into account the development of the exploitation activities in the Area.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]



[5.Alt The application of this regulation shall be without prejudice to the function of the Council, upon recommendation of the Commission, to adopt standards for the purpose to ensure the effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention] [African Group]

[5.Alt.2 The application of this Regulation shall be without prejudice to the permission of Council upon recommendation of the Commission to adopt standards for the purpose to ensure the effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention] [Germany]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Ireland – delete]

[6] [Russia] Environmental Standards and Guidelines shall be [regularly] [periodically] [Russia] reviewed and updated in response to advancements in scientific knowledge and experience [and] [new contributions from] [Indigenous Peoples and] [Germany – delete] [from] [Micronesia] local communities [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [traditional knowledge] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].] [Russia – delete]

[Germany – remove brackets from para 5]

[Norway – delete entire Draft Regulation 45]

[Article 45 Alt omitted]

#### Explanation / comment

- During our last meeting we reviewed the draft from the intersessional working group on regulation 45. I proposed to use this work as basis going forward and noted consensus among participants during the meeting for this approach. Although I noted a few participants preferring the former provision (Regulation 45.Alt), I propose to delete Regulation 45.Alt going forward to focus on finalizing this regulation on the base of the outcome from the intersessional working group. This deletion has also been suggested in a submission by a participant, which I fully support. I invite for views on this. The following points therefore relate to incoming submissions pertaining to regulation 45 as proposed by the Intersessional Working Group.
- I have received a submission from a participant to insert new paragraph 3 which refers to the Regulation (45) being without prejudice to the function of the Council to develop other Standards and Guidelines. I believe that this proposal can be inserted (merged with) the existing paragraph 5 which I have attempted. I invite for a discussion on this.

#### Regulation 46/ [Regulation 50bis] [Norway] [IWG ENV] Environmental management system

1.A Contractor shall develop, implement and maintain an Environmental Management System, [with the purpose of] [preserving and] [Russia – delete] protecting the Marine Environment from the impacts of the activities in the

Area] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Russia – remove brackets] in compliance with the [ [Convention, the Agreement, and] [PEW - delete] the Rules of the Authority [.] [Russia – replace] ] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [Russia – remove brackets] [, applicable – Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [as well as] [Russia] [Standard[s] [Nauru – delete] and] [PEW - delete] taking account of the relevant [applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Guideline[s] [Nauru – delete] and [the need for sufficient information] [DOSI] in accordance with [Best Available Science and Scientific Information] [Best Environmental Practices, and] Good Industry Practice [as established by the Council on the recommendation of the Commission.] [Russia] [and internationally recognized standards.] [Russia – delete] [Norway – delete]

2. An Environmental Management System shall, inter alia:

(a) Deliver the Authority’s environmental objectives in the Contract area including those reflected in the applicant’s Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, and ~~taking into~~ the [applicable] [relevant] [Nauru – replace] Regional Environmental Management Plan [relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, including through the applicant’s Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan] [United Kingdom - replace] [as well as any additional objectives as set by the Contractor or Sponsoring State] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

~~(a)bis (a)bis Be subject to continual and systematic assessment and improvement, taking into consideration the applicable Guideline;~~ [Nauru]

(b) Be reviewed [to reflect the [any] [Nauru] development of the Rules of the Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and undergo [triennial] [at five-year intervals] [Russia] [periodical] [PEW, Germany, Nauru, Russia – delete] [periodic] [Nauru] [annual] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany – remove brackets] audit[s] [Nauru – delete] by [an independent] [a] [Indonesia - replace] recognized and accredited international or national organization, in accordance with applicable Standards [taking into account applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] and Guideline[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [, the Convention, the Agreement, and other relevant international law] [Nauru, PEW – delete] [Russia -delete] [The periodical review mechanism shall be included in the Environmental Management System] [Indonesia]; and

(c) Facilitate effective reporting to the Authority [and the Sponsoring State] [Indonesia] in connection with environmental performance, pursuant to Regulations 33, 34, 38, 39, and 52 [and in accordance with Regulation 92 and 92 bis] [United Kingdom].

~~[(d) Include the results of the audit[, and any] [Russia – delete] in the Contractor’s annual reports and the performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan under Regulation 52.] [Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para d] [Germany – remove brackets]~~

~~2.Alt. An Environmental Management System shall refer to the following iterative process to:~~

~~a) establish environmental objectives and processes necessary to deliver results in accordance with the Authority’s environmental objectives in the Contract Area, including those reflected in the applicant’s Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan;~~

b) implement and monitor the processes as planned and report the results to the Secretary General; the reporting is reflected in the delivery of the annual reports pursuant to Regulation 38, including details of any accidents or incidents and notifiable events;

c) evaluate the performance of the environmental management system by fulfilling the requirements in Regulation 52 and by seeking confirmation of the [annual] assessment through an independent audit, undertaken every three years by a recognized and accredited international or national organization, in accordance with applicable Standards;

d) take actions to continually improve the performance of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and report these actions in the next annual report submitted to the Secretary-General pursuant to Regulation 38. [France]

3. [All] [The results of any audit and all] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] changes made to a Contractor's Environmental Management System, [for example resulting] [including][Nauru - replace] from [the output of management][Nauru] [management] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] reviews [and][or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] audits, [for any development of the Rules of the Authority][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [PEW - delete], shall be reflected in the Contractor's annual reports and in the performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan under Regulation 52. A proposed [material][Germany, PEW - delete] change to a Contractor's Environmental Management System shall be treated the same as a modification of a Plan of Work, pursuant to Regulation 57.

[3. Alt. A Contractor shall, in its annual reports and in the performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan under Regulation 52 demonstrate the continual and systematic assessment of the adequacy of the Environmental Management System and its improvement, including through the output of management reviews and audits.] [Nauru]

#### Explanation / comment (2)

Proposals received after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included under Draft Regulation 46, which is now Draft Regulation 50bis.

#### Explanation / comment

- Regulation 46 has been amended in accordance with the proposals received.
- In paragraph 2 b), one participant has suggested that the reference to the reoccurring review of the Environmental Management System should be "annual" instead of "periodical". I have placed both words in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant submitted a new paragraph 2 d) which I support and have inserted. I invite for views on this.

**[Regulation 50 bis  
Environmental Management System**

1. A Contractor shall have in place, implement and maintain an Environmental Management System in accordance with the relevant Standard taking into account the relevant Guidelines, for the purpose of monitoring, [controlling,][managing,] and continuously improving its environmental performance, including through implementing the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.

2. The Environmental Management System shall be detailed in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan in accordance with Regulation 7 paragraph 3 bis (h). A Contractor shall ensure that its Environmental Management System supports the Contractor in its performance of the Plan of Work to deliver the Authority's environmental objectives, including those reflected in the [relevant] Regional Environmental Management Plan, and deliver the Contractor's environmental commitments under its Exploitation Contract and its schedules [including compliance with the environmental performance standards], and facilitate effective reporting to the Authority in connection with environmental performance, pursuant to Regulations 33, 34, 38, 39, and 52.

3. [The Contractor shall assess and maintain the currency and adequacy of its Environmental Management System][An Environmental Management System shall be subject to continual and systematic improvement] during the term of its Exploitation Contract, including [through frequent] management review [and audit] under Regulation 50 bis (4), performance assessment under Regulation 52[, or any modification to the Plan of Work under Regulation 57]. In conducting such an assessment, the Contractor shall assess the ability of the Environmental Management System to implement effectively the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,

4. The Contractor shall ensure that its Environmental Management System shall be reviewed and undergo periodic audits by an independent recognized and accredited international or national organization, in accordance with applicable Standards. The results of the audit and any changes made to a Contractor's Environmental Management System shall be included in the Contractor's annual reports.

5. A Contractor shall, in its annual reports and in the performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan under Regulation 52 demonstrate the continual and systematic assessment of the Environmental Management System and its improvement, including through the output of management reviews and audits under paragraphs 3 and 4.]

#### **Explanation / comment (2)**

The above text for DR50bis – previously DR46 – has been proposed by the intersessional working group on Environmental Management and Monitoring after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session. It must be read in conjunction with the proposals made for DR49 – previously DR46bis – DR50 – previously DR46ter – DR51, DR52 and a new DRX (still to be numbered, and which has been placed after DR50).

[Section 3 Environmental Monitoring] [Norway]

**Regulation 46 bis** / **[Regulation 49] [Norway]** [IWG ENV]  
**Environmental monitoring**

1.A Contractor shall, pursuant to its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan required under Regulation 48 and ~~[Norway – delete]~~ in accordance with the ~~[applicable] [Russia]~~ Standard[s]~~[Russia]~~ [on environmental monitoring programmes and other applicable Standards] ~~[Norway, Russia – delete]~~, and taking ~~[into] [Russia]~~ account ~~[of] [Russia – delete]~~ the ~~relevant~~ ~~[applicable] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[g][G]uidelines~~ ~~[Nauru, Norway - capitalize]~~ observe, ~~measure,~~ ~~[measure]~~ ~~[Nauru, Russia]~~ evaluate and analyse, ~~[applying scientific approach as well as]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ ~~[in accordance with]~~ ~~[Russia – delete]~~ Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, ~~[Environmental Impacts and Environmental Effects on the Marine Environment]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ ~~[the [impact of its activities against the][Nauru] [impact of its activities as compared to the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ environmental thresholds contained in the ~~[plan and the applicable][Nauru]~~ Standards, ~~[Russia – delete]~~ and ~~[the][Nauru]~~ ~~[risks [to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [or][Nauru]~~ Environmental Effects on ~~[and environmental risks to]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ the Marine Environment ~~[Russia – delete]~~ ~~[of such Impacts and Effects]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ arising from Exploitation. ~~[Surveillance] [Monitoring] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [Norway – delete]~~ shall be conducted ~~[continuously]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ during all stages of the mining operation[s until completion of a Closure Plan] ~~[Russia]~~, to determine whether ~~[it is][they are]~~ ~~[Russia - replace]~~ having or likely to have harmful effects on the Marine Environment ~~[until satisfactory [completion][implementation] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] of a Closure Plan] [Russia – delete]~~.

1. Alt. A Contractor shall pursuant to its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines, ~~[measure,]~~ evaluate, and analyse, in accordance with Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, ~~the impact of its activities against the environmental thresholds contained in the Standards, and the risks to Environmental Effects~~ on the Marine Environment arising from Exploitation, ~~including against environmental baselines and environmental thresholds. To this end, the Contractor shall in accordance with this Section 3:~~

- (a) Prepare and submit an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;
- (b) Develop, implement and maintain an Environmental Management System and Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;
- (c) Monitor and report on ~~theits~~ compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and
- (d) Conduct performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan. **]**

**[Nauru - Para 1. Alt., suggested by Nauru after Part I of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session, includes provisions from paragraph 2, which is at the same time suggested deleted.]**

**[1bis. A Contractor shall, pursuant to its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan required under Regulation 48 and in accordance with the Standard on environmental monitoring programmes and other applicable Standards, and taking account of the relevant guidelines establish and implement**

an environmental monitoring programme to observe, measure, evaluate and analyse, in accordance with Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices, Best Available Techniques, and the need for sufficient information about the risks to Environmental Effects on the Marine Environment arising from Exploitation. The environmental monitoring program shall be conducted during all stages of the mining operation, to determine whether contractor activities are having or are likely to have harmful effects on the Marine Environment until satisfactory completion of a Closure Plan.] [DOSI]

[2. The Contractor shall establish and implement an environmental management and monitoring programme in accordance with the approved [(environmental monitoring plan) [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia, Portugal, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan]] [Nauru – delete] [Russia – remove brackets] and in accordance with [the] [Russia – delete] [applicable] [Russia] Standard[s] [Russia] [on (environmental)] [Nauru] Monitoring Programmes [Russia – delete] and [taking into account applicable Guidelines.] [Russia] [, pursuant to paragraph (e) of regulation 3] [Nauru] [cooperate with, the [Authority] [Commission]] [Nauru – replace] and the Sponsoring State or States as well as share [non-confidential] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] findings and results of such programmes with the Authority for [(wider dissemination) [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia, Portugal, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] public access].] [Russia delete]

[2.Alt. omitted]

[2bis. The Contractor shall cooperate with, the Authority and the Sponsoring State or States as well as share findings and results of such programmes with the Authority for wider dissemination.

2ter. The Contractor shall provide to the Secretary-General environmental data and information for public release in the required standardized format in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into account applicable Guidelines at a regular basis. Format of such data and information and periodicity of its release are determined by Standards.

2quat. The Secretary-General shall release publicly received environmental data and information in accordance with the applicable Standards and taking into account the applicable Guidelines. The Secretary-General informs the Sponsoring State(s) on the public release.] [Russia]

[3. ~~In addition to the Monitoring conducted by the Contractor pursuant to Paragraph 2t~~The [Germany – reinstate] Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall ~~cover all stages of the mining life cycle, and on submission for approval~~ [Germany – reinstate] contain a monitoring programme for at least the [first [five]] [Germany – delete] [seven] [Germany – remove brackets] years of [the mining project, [Germany – reinstate] commercial production] to be conducted ~~by independent experts and~~ [Germany – reinstate] in compliance with the applicable Standards and taking account of the ~~relevant~~ guidelines.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3 entirely]

[3 .Alt. omitted]

4. The Contractor shall [provide information on the implementation and results of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the environmental monitoring programme referred to in paragraph 2] [Russia]

[report annually in writing] [Russia – delete], [as a part of its information on implementation of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,] [Russia] in accordance with [the Regulation 46ter paragraph (4)] [Russia] [these regulations] [Russia - delete], [in its annual report] [Russia] to the Secretary-General [on the implementation and results of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the environmental monitoring programme referred to in paragraph 2,] [Russia – delete] in accordance with Regulation 38, paragraph 2(g) [for evaluation by the Legal and Technical Commission] [Russia]. [The [Secretary General Contractor] shall [release publicly submit to the Secretary General]- [submit to the Secretary General] environmental data and information in the required standardized format, [in real time[, where practicable]] [Nauru] [, or] [Ireland – delete] at [monthly intervals] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal - remove brackets] [[Nauru – remove bracket] [at least] [Nauru] [or] [Ireland] [annually]] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – delete] [][Nauru – remove bracket], [if possible] [consistent with best scientific practices] [Nauru – insert brackets], [environmental data and information in the required standardized format], and in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into account the applicable Guidelines. The Secretary General shall release the [environmental] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – delete] data and information publicly in accordance with regulation 92bis. The Secretary-General shall transmit annual reports to the Commission for its consideration pursuant to article 165 of the Convention and publish them pursuant to Regulation 38(3).] [Russia – delete]

[Norway – delete paras 2- 4 entirely]

[2 (alt). In accordance with this Section 3, the Contractor shall

- (a) prepare and submit an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;
- (b) develop, implement and maintain an Environmental Management System;
- (c) Monitor and report on the compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and
- (d) Conduct performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.

3(alt) Monitoring shall be conducted during all stages of the mining operation, to determine whether it is having or likely to have harmful effects on the Marine Environment until satisfactory completion of a Closure Plan.] [Norway]

[[5][4] [Norway - replace]. In implementing paragraph 1, the Sponsoring State [or States] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] and Contractor shall consult, with any adjacent coastal State [across whose limits of national jurisdiction lie] with a view to avoiding infringement of their rights and legitimate interests, in accordance with Regulation 4.]

[Russia – delete para 5 entirely]

[5bis. In implementing paragraph 1, the Sponsoring State or States and Contractor shall maintain targeted and proactive consultations with any adjacent coastal States and other potentially most affected coastal States in accordance with Regulation 93.ter with a view to avoiding infringement of their rights and legitimate interests, in accordance with the Convention.] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal]

## Text included in the Consolidated Text

### Regulation 49 (previously Regulation 46 bis) [IWG ENV]

#### Environmental [Management and] [Nauru] monitoring

[1. A Contractor shall in accordance with the Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines, [measure,] evaluate and analyse, in accordance with Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, the environmental [thresholds] [environmental parameters and their threshold levels] [India - replace] contained in the Standards, and the risks to Environmental Effects on the Marine Environment arising from Exploitation. [To this end, the Contractor shall in accordance with this Section 3:

(a) Prepare and submit an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

(b) Develop, implement and maintain an Environmental Management System and Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

(c) Monitor and report on their compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and

(d) Conduct performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.] [Nauru]

[2. In accordance with this Section 3, the Contractor shall:

[ (a) Measure the environmental parameter in a continuous and long term basis.] [India – suggest placing this requirement before current para 2(a)]

(a) Prepare and submit an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

(b) Develop, implement and maintain an Environmental Management Plan;

(c) Monitor and report on the compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan [in accordance with art. 51(b)(c)] [Spain]; and

(d) Conduct performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan [, in accordance with art. 52.2] [Spain].] [Nauru - delete]

3. Monitoring shall be conducted continuously during all stages of the Exploitation activities until completion of a Closure Plan, to determine whether [they] [the activities] [Ireland - replace] are [having] [causing] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] or likely to [have harmful effects on] [cause Serious Harm to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] on the Marine Environment.

[3. Alt. Monitoring shall be conducted continuously during all stages of the Exploitation activities until five years after the completion of a Closure Plan, to determine whether they are having or are likely to have harmful effects on the Marine Environment.] [Brazil]

[4. In implementing paragraph 1, the Sponsoring State and Contractor shall consult, with any adjacent coastal State with a view to avoiding infringement of their rights and legitimate interests, in accordance with Regulation 4.

[4. Alt. In implementing paragraph 1, the Sponsoring State or States and Contractor shall maintain targeted and proactive consultations with any adjacent coastal States and other potentially most affected coastal States in accordance with Regulation 93 ter with a view to avoiding infringement of their rights and



legitimate interests, in accordance with the Convention.] [China – delete both paragraph 4 and 4.alt entirely]

[5. In addition to the monitoring program conducted by the Contractor, the Authority shall organise for independent experts to monitor the effects of activities in the Area for the first seven years of commercial production. This independent monitoring program shall be financed by the Contractor. The Commission shall evaluate and compare the results of both monitoring programmes to verify monitoring data, prepare a report to the Council with its findings and support the Contractor in establishing a robust monitoring program.] [Germany]

#### Explanation / comment (2)

Proposals received after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included under Draft Regulation 46bis, which now corresponds to Draft Regulation 49.

#### Explanation / comment

- I have received several proposals for amending regulation 46 bis which I have tried to incorporate these as appropriate. It should be noted that in paragraph 4 bis that the submission of environmental data and information should be “annually” instead of “monthly”. I have placed these words in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.
- In general, recalling the fruitful discussion on this regulation during our last meeting, several participants pointed towards the need for streamlining this regulation, including merging some of the paragraphs. Some participants furthermore suggested to merge paragraphs from this regulation (46 bis) with paragraphs from the following regulation (46 ter) and perhaps even merging the two provisions entirely. However, we did not reach a clear consensus on this during the meeting, nor whether the different alternative paragraph proposals (“paragraph 2alt” and “paragraph 3 alt”) should be accepted or deleted as there were different views on this.
- I propose to keep paragraph 2 and 3 (and thus omit paragraphs 2 alt and 3 alt) going forward as they represent the rules which most participants have commented on and made suggestions to alter. I invite for a discussion on this.

#### Regulation 49

##### Environmental Management and Monitoring

1. A Contractor shall [continuously][continually] monitor and manage the [Environmental Impacts and] Environmental Effects [and risks] of its activities on the Marine Environment[, in accordance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan].

2. A Contractor shall monitor the [Environmental Impacts and] Environmental Effects [and risks] of its activities on the Marine Environment [to determine whether they are having or are likely to have harmful effects on the Marine Environment] to assess compliance with the [Environmental Impact Assessment and] Environmental Impact Statement and Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plans [and to avoid risk of serious harm to the Marine Environment]. Such monitoring shall include a comparison of monitoring data against environmental threshold values and a comparison between monitoring data and the effects predicted in the Environmental Impact Statement, to measure, analyse, and document the actual effects on the Marine Environment.

3. [Continuous][Continual] monitoring shall be conducted until completion of a Closure Plan.

4. The Contractor shall Mitigate and manage Environmental Impacts and Environmental Effects [and risks] to ensure that these are consistent with the [threshold values,] Standards and the Exploitation Contract and its schedules [including the predictions made in the Environmental Impact Statement].

5. If the Contractor identifies harmful effects on the Marine Environment that breach the terms and conditions of its Exploitation Contract or the relevant rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, including the applicable Standards, [taking into [account relevant]][considering the Applicable] Guidelines, the Contractor shall determine whether the matter is an Incident or Notifiable Event and proceed in accordance with Regulation 33 or 34.

#### Explanation / comment (2)

The above text for DR49 – previously DR46bis – has been proposed by the intersessional working group on Environmental Management and Monitoring after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session. It must be read in conjunction with the proposals made for DR50 – previously DR46ter – DR50bis – previously DR46 – DR51, DR52 and a new DRX (still to be numbered, and which has been placed after DR50).

#### Regulation 46 ter [Regulation 50] [Norway] [IWG ENV] [Preparation of] [Nauru] Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

1. Each applicant or Contractor [for Exploitation] [Nauru – delete] shall prepare an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan in accordance with this regulation [and Annex VII] [Nauru – delete].

2. The purpose of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan is to manage and [confirm] [validate] [India - replace] that observed [Environmental Impacts and] [Russia] Environmental Effects [[and effects on Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH] [are consistent with predicted Environmental Effects [[and effects on Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH] from the Environmental Impact Assessment and does not breach any of the Rules of the Authority, including] [PEW] [meet][PEW - delete] [the

applicable][Nauru] Standards on environmental [quality] [Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] objectives[, the quantitative environmental thresholds,][Germany] [indicators and quantitative environmental thresholds] [PEW] [, the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Spain] [and [the Standards on] [Germany] [environmental performance] [Russia – delete] [requirements] [Russia] for the mining operation][PEW]. The plan shall address any issues that arise [from] [under] [Russia] the Environmental Impact Statement and will set out commitments and procedures on how [to monitor, Mitigate, and manage] [, manage and compensate, if needed] [Spain][PEW] the [Environmental Impacts and] [Russia] Environmental Effects [and risks] [Nauru] [of Exploitation][PEW] [of the mining operation will be [measured,][Nauru] monitored[, managed][Nauru] and [mitigated] [reduced] [Russia – replace] [,][Nauru] [PEW – delete] including on [Underwater Cultural Heritage,] [IWG on UCH] pollution control and Mining Discharge in Regulations [49] [53bis] [Norway - replace] and [50][53ter] [Norway – replace].

[3. The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall include all elements and matters prescribed by the Authority in Annex VII to these regulations and shall:

[(a) Be based on the Environmental Impact Assessment and the Environmental Impact Statement;

(b) Be prepared [in accordance and consistent with][Russia – delete] [taking into] [Russia] the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan,

(c) Be prepared in accordance and consistent with the applicable Standards developed in accordance with Regulations 45 and 94 [and the need for sufficient information][DOSI] and taking account of the applicable Guidelines, as well as Good Industry Practice, Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices and Best Available Techniques;

(d) Be prepared in accordance and consistent [with other plans in these regulations, including] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Closure Plan and the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan;]

[Norway – delete sub paras a-d]

[(e) [a] [Norway – replace] Incorporate [environmental objectives, including] [Russia] site-specific environmental objectives [as established by relevant Regional Environment Management Plan,] [Russia] and environmental performance standards, which are [compatible with and] [Russia – delete] designed to achieve the environmental policy and objectives of the Authority [and] [ensuring that] [Spain - replace] are compatible] [Russia] [and][with] [Russia] applicable Standards;

[(f) [b] [Norway – replace] Incorporate measurement criteria, thresholds of the Authority defined in the in accordance with the applicable Standard and reflect its methodology to determine whether the environmental [quality] [Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] objectives are being met and that the operation is compliant with applicable environmental Standards and other [the][PEW] Rules of the Authority,

[(g) [c] [Norway – replace] Incorporate any recommendations made by the Commission, and approved by the Council, in its consideration of the Environmental Impact Statement, including [commitments] [measures] [Russia] and procedures on;

(i) how the environmental impacts [Environmental Impacts and] [Russia] Environmental Effects of Exploitation [, including impacts and effects on Underwater Cultural Heritage,] [IWG on UCH] the mining operation will be monitored [in accordance with] [Russia] [in accordance with Regulation 46bis,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] in accordance with Regulation 46bis, [in] [Norway] [the] [Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan] [Russia - delete] [applicable] [Russia] [EMMP Standard [s][Russia]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ -delete] [and] [the][any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] applicable [Monitoring] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Standard [s][NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Russia - delete] [and taking into account the applicable Guidelines] [Russia], [PEW - delete]

(ii) how the Mitigation measures, including pollution control and Mining Discharge in regulations [49] [53bis] [Norway - replace] and [50][53ter] [Norway - replace], will be implemented,

(iii) [Monitoring indicators to show] [Spain] how the effectiveness of such measures will be [Russia - delete] monitored [and evaluated,] [Russia] [and demonstrate whether mitigation measures are suitable and implemented effectively:] [Spain], [, including in relation to Underwater Cultural Heritage:] [IWG on UCH]

(iv) how Preservation Reference Zones and Impact Reference Zones, designated in accordance with Annex Xter, will be utilised and implemented,

(v) what the management actions and responses will be to the monitoring results and new knowledge [including newly discovered Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH]

(vi) what management and reporting systems will be adopted and followed [, including in relation to Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH], and [what reporting frequency will be followed to appropriately monitoring the effectiveness of such measures, and] [Spain];

(vii) how continual improvement will be promoted, including by testing assumptions and predictions made in the Environmental Impact Statement, improving environmental knowledge, and reducing residual uncertainties remaining from the environmental impact assessment process [, including in relation to Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH].]

[Germany - delete brackets enclosing para 3]

[3bis] [~~The Contractor shall conduct monitoring for the entire duration of exploitation~~] [Germany - reinstate]. In addition to the ~~Monitoring required to be environmental monitoring programme~~ performed by the Contractor, the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall contain a supplementary monitoring programme for at least the first seven years of [c][C]ommercial [p][P]roduction [PEW - capitalize] [mining operations,] [Germany, PEW - delete] [~~to be conducted by competent independent experts and~~] [Germany - reinstate] in compliance with the applicable Standards. [Norway, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] The Contractor shall [implement its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, including its environmental monitoring programme, from the effective date of the contract until the satisfactory completion of its Closure Plan] [PEW]

conduct monitoring for the entire duration of the mining operation and comply with any post-closure monitoring requirement] [PEW – delete] according to Regulations 59-61 and the applicable Standard.]

[Nauru, Russia – delete para 3bis entirely]

[3. bis Alt. The applicant or Contractor shall [endeavour to] [Spain - delete] engage with [potentially directly affected] Stakeholders and in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter,] Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines, during the development of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.]

4. The Contractor shall provide information on the implementation [and compliance] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan pursuant to Regulations 51 and 52[, including the implementation and results of the environmental monitoring programme referred to in Regulation 46bis. paragraph 2,] [Russia] in its annual report [to the Secretary General] [Russia] in accordance with regulations 38, paragraph 2(g), [and 46bis, paragraph 4,] [Russia – delete] for evaluation by the Legal and Technical Commission[,][.] [Russia - replace] [as well as environmental data and information for publicly release, in an accessible format, consistent with Best Scientific Practices monitoring data and information at a regular basis and where practicable in real-time or on a monthly basis.]] [Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [PEW – delete]

[Nauru, Norway – delete para 4 entirely]

5. [The][A][Nauru – replace] Contractor shall allocate sufficient resources and assign [clear] [Nauru] roles[,][Nauru] [and][Nauru–delete] responsibilities [and management reporting] [Nauru] [to][in the][Nauru - replace] implementation of[, and compliance with][Nauru] [the][its][Nauru – replace] Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan[,][Nauru] [.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [in relation to][ commensurate with] [Nauru – replace] the relevant risks and impacts [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [of the Exploitation activity][Nauru].]

[PEW – insert brackets around para 5 entirely]

[Norway – delete para 5 entirely]

#### Explanation / comment (2)

Proposals received after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included under Draft Regulation 46ter, which now corresponds to Draft Regulation 50.

#### Explanation / comment

- I have received several proposals for amending regulation 46 ter which I have tried to incorporate these as appropriate.
- One participant has submitted an alternative to this regulation, however consensus of the process and the amount of support and proposed alterations for the current version of regulation 46ter, I have omitted this proposed alternative..

- As stated in my comments to previous regulation 46 bis, several participants also pointed towards the need for streamlining regulation 46 ter during our last meeting. This included general suggestions to merge paragraphs from this regulation (46 ter) with paragraphs from the previous regulation (46 bis) and perhaps even merging the two provisions entirely. However, we also did not reach a clear consensus on this during the meeting.
- I agree that this regulation (and the previous, regulation 46 bis) needs streamlining. After careful considerations I propose that the more detailed paragraphs 3 could perhaps better be placed in the *Draft guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans* which can be found at [The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](http://The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority (isa.org.jm)). I have therefore suggested this re-location in the accompanying Matrix which I introduced in my opening statement. I refer to the Matrix for the details on this proposed move and have for now placed paragraph 3 in a square bracket.
- Furthermore, I must stress that this proposal from my side is without any attempt to pre-empt or prejudice the discussions amongst participants on how best to address this. It is merely in my capacity as facilitator of these proceedings that I seek to envision how to resolve the challenge of streamlining regulation 46 ter (and regulation 46 bis). I invite for a discussion on this.

## **[Regulation 50**

### **Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan**

1. The purpose of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan is to set out how a Contractor shall meet its management and monitoring obligations under Regulation 49.

[2. Alt 1. The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall include all elements and matters prescribed in Annex VII to these Regulations and shall:

(a) Incorporate project specific environmental objectives and environmental performance standards, [including environmental threshold values] which are designed to achieve the environmental policy and objectives of the Authority [including those set out in Regulation 44ter] and [are compatible with] applicable Standards and [taking into account] the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan;

(b) Incorporate appropriate measurement criteria, in accordance with the applicable Standard and reflect its methodology to determine whether the environmental objectives [and environmental performance standards] are being met and that the operation is compliant with the Exploitation Contract and its schedules and the relevant rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority;

(c) Incorporate measures and procedures on;

(i) How the [Environmental Impacts and] Environmental Effects of Exploitation will be monitored;

(ii) How the Mitigation and Management measures, including pollution control and Mining Discharge in Regulations 53 bis and 53 ter will be implemented and how the effectiveness of such measures will be monitored

and evaluated];

(iii) How spatial and temporal measures, including Preservation Reference Zones and Impact Reference Zones, will be utilised and implemented;

(iv) How, if the monitoring results in new knowledge, the Contractor will take such knowledge into account;

(v) A description of the Environmental Management System and

(vi) How continual improvement will be achieved, including by testing assumptions and predictions made in the Environmental Impact Statement, improving environmental knowledge, and reducing uncertainties remaining from the Environmental Impact Assessment.]

[2. Alt 2: The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall be in accordance with the Authority's environmental policy and objectives [including those set out in Regulation 44ter] and [are compatible with] applicable Standards and [taking into [account][consideration]] the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, the relevant Guidelines, and be based on the Environmental Impact Statement, and shall include all elements and matters prescribed by the Authority in Annex VII to these Regulations, and shall

(a) Set project specific environmental objectives and environmental performance standards.;

(b) Set measurement criteria and methodology;

(b)bis [How spatial and temporal measures, including Preservation Reference Zones and Impact Reference Zones, will be utilised and implemented];

(c) Commit to specific measures and procedures on:

(i) Monitoring the [Environmental Impacts and] Environmental Effects of Exploitation;

(ii) Mitigation and management, including pollution control and Mining Discharge in Regulations 53 bis and 53 ter;

(iii) [Monitoring the effectiveness of monitoring and management, as the relevant measures and procedures are implemented];

(iv) Taking corrective action and responding to monitoring results and new knowledge with the aim of continual improvement;

(d) Describe what monitoring data and reports will be submitted to the Authority, including details of: frequency, format, medium, and data integrity standards.

(e) Provide a description of the Environmental Management System, ]

[3 A draft Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan or proposal by a Contractor to amend an existing plan shall be subject to Stakeholder consultation in accordance with Regulation 93bis. Coastal states shall be engaged in accordance with Regulation 93ter].

4. The Contractor shall assess and maintain the currency and adequacy of its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan including its continual improvement during the term of its Exploitation Contract, including as a result of management review and audit under Regulation 50 bis, and performance

assessment[s] under Regulation 52[, and any modification to the Plan of Work under Regulation 57]. In conducting such an assessment, the Contractor shall assess the efficacy, timeliness, relevance and accuracy of flow of information and data derived from implementation of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, and the efficacy of management measures taken.

#### **[Regulation X**

#### **Reporting on Environmental Monitoring and Management**

1. The Contractor shall report annually in writing, to the Secretary-General on the implementation and results of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan in accordance with Regulation 38, subparagraph 2(g).

2. The Contractor shall submit to the Secretary General environmental data and information at required intervals, to the required data integrity quality, and in the required standardized format as set out in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

3. The Secretary General shall publish the environmental data and information publicly in accordance with Regulation 92bis. The Secretary-General shall transmit annual reports to the Commission for its consideration and publish them pursuant to Regulation 38:

#### **Explanation / comment (2)**

The above text for DR50 – previously DR46ter – and for a new draft Regulation (still to be numbered) has been proposed by the intersessional working group on Environmental Management and Monitoring after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session. It must be read in conjunction with the proposals made for DR49 – previously DR46bis – DR50bis – previously DR46 – DR51 and DR52.

## **Section 2**

### **The Environmental Impact Assessment Process**

#### **[Regulation 47 [IWG ENV]**

#### **Environmental Impact Assessment Process**

1. An applicant or Contractor shall carry out an Environmental Impact Assessment Process on ~~shall be organized~~ the potential effects on the Marine Environment of the proposed operations and activities.

2. The Environmental Impact Assessment ~~Process~~ shall:

(a) Be based on relevant baseline data that captures temporal, (seasonal and interannual) and spatial variation in accordance with relevant Standards and taking into account relevant Guidelines and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan,

(b) Be carried out by qualified competent, ~~[independent]~~ ~~[Russia – delete]~~ experts,

(c) Include an environmental risk assessment and ~~[a survey of the seabed to identify Underwater Cultural Heritage]~~ ~~[China, Russia – delete]~~ that takes into consideration the region as a whole taking into account the objectives and



measures of the relevant and applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan,

(d) Provide for Stakeholder consultation in accordance with Regulation 93bis, relevant Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines,

(e) Be subject to an independent scientific assessment prior to the submission of the proposed Environmental Impact Statement to the Authority,

(f) Take into account the results from test mining, ~~if applicable~~ in accordance with Regulation 48bis,

(g) Be conducted in accordance with the terms of reference developed during the scoping process, and

(h) Identify scientific and other knowledge gaps or data uncertainties, and the degree to which these influence the assessment.

3. The Environmental Impact Assessment ~~Process~~ ~~must~~ ~~[shall]~~ ~~[Russia – replace]~~ follow certain procedural steps ~~to having the plan of work assessed~~ and entail the following elements:

(a) A scoping Stage and scoping report in accordance with Regulation 47ter to identify and risk assess the anticipated activities and potential impacts associated with the proposed mining operation which are relevant to the Environmental Impact Assessment.

(b) An Environmental Impact Assessment, documented and reported by an Environmental Impact Statement to describe the impacts on the Marine Environment ~~[and Underwater Cultural Heritage]~~ and predict the nature and extent of the ~~[Environmental Impacts and]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ Environmental Effects of the mining operation including residual impacts, also considering other existing and foreseen mining operations. [This description of the impacts mentioned] includes assessing:

(i) The intensity or severity of the impact at the specific site being affected;

(ii) The spatial extent of the impact relative to the availability of the habitat type affected;

(iii) The sensitivity/vulnerability of the ecosystem to the impact;

(iv) The ability of an ecosystem to recover from harm, and the rate of such recovery;

(v) The extent to which ecosystem functions may be altered by the impact; and

(vi) The timing and duration of the impact relative to the period in which a species needs the habitat during one or more of its life history stages affected for its long survival.]

(c) The Identification of measures envisaged to monitor, prevent, minimize control, mitigate ~~[or, if possible, offset]~~ ~~[and manage]~~ ~~[Russia – delete]~~ ~~[Environmental Impacts and]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ Environmental Effects ~~[and risks]~~ ~~[Russia – insert brackets]~~ to as low as reasonably practicable, while within acceptable levels in accordance with environmental Standards, including through the development of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,

(d) The Identification of measures envisaged to remediate, restore, rehabilitate (where possible) the Marine Environment, including through the development and preparation of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,

(e) An analysis of reasonable alternatives to the planned activity ~~under the jurisdiction or control of a State Party~~, including the no-action alternative,

(f) The preparation and submission to the Authority of ~~the an~~ Environmental Impact Statement to document and report the results of the Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with Regulation 47bis, the applicable Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines,

(g) Publication and review by the Commission of the Environmental Impact Statement, and publication of the report and recommendation by the Commission to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11 – 15.

(h) A decision by the Council to approve, or not approve, the proposed activities or proposed modification to the Plan of Work that was the subject of the Environmental Impact Assessment, including any conditions imposed upon an approval, which decision shall be recorded and published in accordance with Regulation 16, and

(i) A proactive consultation by an applicant or Contractor with Stakeholders at all stages, in accordance with relevant Standards and taking account of Guideline [ , which includes:

(i) Providing Stakeholders with access to up-to-date and comprehensive information about the proposed activities and environmental data and impacts,

(ii) Using best efforts to obtain Stakeholder comments on the draft scoping report and draft environmental impact statement for a reasonable period.

(iii) Provide a reasonable opportunity for Stakeholders to raise enquiries and to make known their views,

(iv) Make publicly available Stakeholder comments received during the consultation process, including on the applicant or Contractor's own website, and

(v) Record and address, in the scoping report and Environmental Impact Statement respectively, any substantive and relevant Stakeholder comments received. ]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete DR 47 entirely]

## Version included in the Consolidated Text

**Regulation 46** ~~7-alt.~~ [previously 47 Alt.][IWG ENV]

### Environmental Impact Assessment Process

1. [An applicant or] [The] [Indonesia - replace] Contractor shall carry out an Environmental Impact Assessment [on the potential [impacts and] effects on the Marine Environment of the proposed operations and activities] [ , in accordance with the Regulation, Standards, and taking into account the Guidelines] [Indonesia - replace].

1. Alt. An applicant or contractor shall carry out an Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with the Regulations, Standards and taking into account the Guidelines] [Indonesia]

2. The purpose of an Environmental Impact Assessment under this Regulation] [Indonesia - delete] shall be to [identify and inform the Authority's assessment of an application of a Plan of Work under Regulations 13 to 16, or a Contract's continued adherence to these Regulations and] [Indonesia - delete] predict [and evaluate the] [Indonesia - delete] potential Environmental Impacts, [effects and risks] [anticipated from] [of] [Indonesia - replace] the proposed activities [on the marine environment] [Indonesia - delete] and identify necessary measures to Mitigate [, minimise] [Australia] or manage such effects and risks] [identify, predict, evaluate and mitigate the potential Environmental Impacts anticipated from the proposed activities] [France - replace], to enable the Authority to assess the potential adverse Environmental Effects [and risks], with the aim to] [Indonesia - delete]:

[2. Alt. The purpose of an environmental impact assessment shall be to identify and predict potential environmental impacts, effects and risks of the proposed activities and identify necessary measures to mitigate or manage such effects and risks with the aim to:] [Indonesia]

(a) inform the decision-making] [France – suggest placing proposed wording before current para (a)]

(a) Ensure effective Protection for the ~~M~~marine ~~E~~environment from harmful effects which may arise from such proposed activities;

(b) Ensure that activities in the Area are carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment [and that relevant cumulative effects on the marine environment are considered] [Ireland];

(c) [~~[[Avoid-Serious] Prevent]] [Australia – supports “prevent”] harm] prevent adverse Environmental Effects] [Indonesia - replace] to the Marine Environment arising out of the proposed activities;~~

(d) Ensure, in accordance with [~~article 142-of]~~ the Convention [~~and Regulation 4]~~, that the Sponsoring State [~~or States]~~ and the Contractor, [~~with respect to resource deposits in the Area which lie across limits of national jurisdiction,~~] conduct the Environmental Impact Assessment with due regard to the rights and legitimate interests [~~and duties]~~ of [~~adjacent affected]~~ coastal States and any other potentially most affected coastal State by maintaining, [~~timely,~~ [Australia] targeted and proactive] consultations in accordance with Regulation 93 ter and a system of prior notification to avoid infringement of their rights and legitimate interests]; [and] [Indonesia - delete]

[(d) bis Ensure that Mitigation measures are identified in accordance with the potential Environmental Impacts and risks of the proposed activities; and] [Indonesia]

(e) Ensure that the proposed activities are carried out in accordance with [the Convention, the Agreement], the R-rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority; [~~general International Law, including the Convention]~~ [and other international and regional seas Conventions] [Spain] and the applicable Standards and taking into consideration ~~account the relevant applicable~~ Guidelines as well as, Best Available Scientific Information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques.

3. The Environmental Impact Assessment [Process] shall:

(a) Be based on ~~relevant and sufficient~~ ~~[Russia]~~ ~~and representative~~ ~~[United Kingdom]~~ ~~sufficiently collected and available~~ baseline data ~~based on sufficient scientific information~~ ~~[Costa Rica]~~ ~~[that captures temporal, (seasonal and interannual) and spatial variation]~~ in accordance with ~~relevant applicable~~ Standards and ~~Regional Environmental Management Plan,~~ ~~[Netherlands]~~ taking into ~~consideration~~ ~~account~~ ~~relevant~~ Guidelines and the objectives and measures of the ~~relevant applicable~~ Regional Environmental Management Plan ~~[Netherlands - delete];~~

~~[(a)bis Be based on a Scoping Report;]~~ ~~[Indonesia - delete]~~

~~(a)bis alt include a scoping phase to produce a scoping report in accordance with Regulation 47~~ ~~[United Kingdom]~~

(b) Be carried out by ~~[competent/qualified,]~~ ~~[independent]~~ ~~competent, qualified and independent~~ ~~[Australia]~~ experts;

(b) bis Be based on the ~~best available~~ ~~[science and]~~ scientific information ~~[Indonesia - capitalize],~~ ~~Best Environmental Practices, and, Best Available Techniques]~~ ~~[Indonesia]~~ and, ~~[if applicable, taking into account where available,]~~ ~~[where available]~~ ~~[Micronesia; IWG on UCH]~~ relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and ~~[of]~~ ~~[Micronesia]~~ local communities;

~~(b)bis alt Be based on the best available scientific information, best environmental practices, and best available techniques, if applicable, taking into account relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous peoples and local communities]~~ ~~[Indonesia]~~

~~[(c) Include an Environmental Risk Assessment~~ ~~[and a survey of the seabed to identify Underwater Cultural Heritage,]~~ that takes into consideration the region as a whole ~~taking into account the objectives and measures of]~~ ~~in accordance with]~~ ~~[Netherlands - replace]~~ the relevant ~~[and applicable]~~ Regional Environmental Management Plan; ~~[Indonesia - delete]~~

~~[(c) bis) Include an underwater survey of the specific parts of the contract area where exploitation activities are proposed to be undertaken, to identify human remains or [underwater] cultural heritage, including intangible [underwater] cultural heritage, that are associated with the proposed activities;]~~ ~~[Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~

~~[(c)bis (c bis) Include an underwater survey to identify human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage that are located in or otherwise associated with the areas of the proposed Exploitation activities;]~~ ~~[IWG on UCH]~~

(d) Provide for ~~proactive~~ ~~[France]~~ Stakeholder consultation ~~at all stages]~~ ~~[France]~~ in accordance with Regulation 93 bis, ~~applicable~~ ~~relevant~~ Standards and taking into ~~consideration~~ ~~account the relevant]~~ ~~[France – retain and delete “consideration”]~~ Guidelines;

~~[(e) Be subject to an independent ]scientific]~~ ~~[Micronesia - delete]~~ assessment prior to the submission of the proposed Environmental Impact Statement to the Authority; ~~[France; Indonesia - delete]~~

(f) Take into account the results from Test Mining, if applicable, in accordance with Regulation 48 ~~ter bis~~;

(g) Be conducted in accordance with the terms of reference developed during scoping in accordance with Regulation 47 ~~bis ter~~;

(h) Identify scientific and other knowledge gaps or data uncertainties, ~~the sufficiency of information]~~ ~~[DOSI]~~ and ~~assess]~~ the degree to which these influence the assessment; and

(i) Be an iterative process where specific stages [of the activities] are revisited and may be updated in the light of new information or new activity at a later stage.

~~[(i)bis Include consideration of cumulative impacts from other activities carried out near the proposed Exploitation Area] [Indonesia]~~

4. The Environmental Impact Assessment [process] must follow certain procedural steps and entail the following elements:

(a) A scoping Stage and scoping report in accordance with Regulation 47 bis to identify and risk assess the anticipated activities and potential impacts associated with the proposed Exploitation which are relevant to the Environmental Impact Assessment;

~~[(a)alt. A scoping Stage and scoping report to identify key environmental and any associated impacts, such as economic, social, cultural and human health impacts, including potential cumulative impacts and impacts in areas within national jurisdiction, as well as alternatives to the proposed activity, if any, to be included in the environmental impact assessments that shall be conducted in this Regulation.] [Indonesia]~~

(b) A stage for assessment [and evaluation] [United Kingdom] of Environmental Impacts [in accordance with Regulation 47:] including:] [on the following:] [Indonesia - replace]

~~[(i) — An update to the environmental risk assessment, as developed during scoping, describing the likely impacts on the marine environment and [objects of an archaeological historical nature Underwater Cultural Heritage] and predict the nature and extent of the [Environmental Impacts and] Environmental Effects [and risks] of the Exploitation including residual impacts, [also considering] cumulative [impactseffects], including existing and foreseen mining operations, other activities and natural phenomena.~~

~~[(ii) — An evaluation of [significant and] harmful effects on the [marine] environment and ecosystem services, [based founded] on [a scientific based approach, including] clear and transparent assessment criteria and a robust evidence base, [using applying] bBest Available [science and] sScientific iInformation [and where applicable, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities];~~

~~[(iii) — The presentation and evaluation of potential mitigation measures, and subsequent statement of management and monitoring commitments [together with to inform preparation of the Environmental Management and Monitoring PlanEMMP], to [monitor] mitigate, [manage], avoid and minimize [harmful] effects [to the marine environment], and monitor residual impacts;~~

~~[(i) The intensity or severity of the impact at the specific site being affected;~~

~~[(ii) The spatial extent of the impact relative to the availability of the habitat type affected;~~

~~[(iii) The sensitivity/vulnerability of the ecosystem to the impact;~~

~~[(iv) The ability of an ecosystem to recover from harm, and the rate of such recovery; [and]~~

~~[(v) The extent to which ecosystem functions may be altered by the impact; ; [and]~~

~~[(vi) An analysis of reasonable alternatives to the proposed activities in the Area;~~

(vii) Identification of measures to monitor, mitigate, and manage Environmental Effects and risks to as low as reasonably practicable, while within acceptable levels in accordance with environmental Standards, including through the development and preparation of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

(viii) An Environmental Risk Assessment and analysis of the result of the Environmental Risk Assessment, including identification of risks requiring particular focus. [Indonesia]

(c) A stage on the preparation and submission to the Authority of the Environmental Impact Statement to document and report the results of the Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with Regulation 47bis, the applicable Standards and taking into consideration ~~account the~~ [relevant] Guidelines;

(d) The [development,] ~~[United Kingdom - delete]~~ publication and review by the Commission of the Environmental Impact Statement, and publication of the [Commissions] report and recommendations [by the Commission] to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11-15;

(e) A decision by the Council to approve, or not approve, the proposed activities or proposed modification to the Plan of Work that was the subject of the Environmental Impact Assessment, including any conditions imposed upon an approval, which decision shall be recorded and published in accordance with Regulation 16, and

~~[(f) A proactive consultation by an applicant or Contractor with Stakeholders at all stages, in accordance with [the applicable] ~~relevant~~ Standards and taking [into] consideration ~~account of~~ Guidelines. [France - move this part of para 4(f) to para 3(d)bis, delete the rest]. which includes:~~

~~(i) — Providing Stakeholders with access to up to date and comprehensive [environmental data and] information [relating to/about] the proposed activities [their and environmental data and] impacts;~~

~~(ii) — Using best efforts to obtain Stakeholder comments on the draft scoping report and draft environmental impact statement for a reasonable period.~~

~~(iii) — Provide a reasonable opportunity for Stakeholders to raise enquiries and to make known their views;~~

~~(iv) — Make publicly available Stakeholder comments received during the consultation process, including on the applicant or Contractor's own website, and~~

~~(v) — Record and address, in the scoping report and Environmental Impact Statement respectively, any substantive and relevant Stakeholder comments received.]~~

[5. After its elaboration, the Environmental Impact Assessment [Process] shall be subject to:

a) an independent scientific assessment prior to the submission of the proposed Environmental Impact Statement to the Authority;

(b) The [development,] publication and review by the Commission of the Environmental Impact Statement, and publication of the [Commissions] report and recommendations [ ] to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11 15;

(c) A decision by the Council to approve, or not approve, the proposed activities or proposed modification to the Plan of Work that was the subject

of the Environmental Impact Assessment, including any conditions imposed upon an approval, which decision shall be recorded and published in accordance with Regulation 16.] [France]

#### Comments

- Regulation 47 Alt. gained most support during the third part of the twenty-eight session. Therefore, that version has been retained.
- Several sub-paragraphs have been suggested replaced to the Standard and Guidelines and is currently placed in the suspense document.

### Regulation 47 alt. [IWG ENV]

#### Environmental Impact Assessment Process

1. An applicant or Contractor shall carry out an Environmental Impact Assessment on the potential [impacts and] [Russia] effects [and risks] [Switzerland] on the Marine Environment of the proposed operations and activities.

2. The purpose of an [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] [under this regulation][Nauru – delete] shall be to [identify,][Nauru; Spain] [[and] [Spain] [inform the Authority’s assessment of an application of a Plan of Work under regulations 13 to 16, or a contract’s continued adherence to these Regulations]] [PEW; Spain] [Nauru - delete] [and] [Spain] [predict [and evaluate the potential][Nauru; Spain] environmental [impacts] [effects and risks]] [Nauru – replace] [Spain - delete] [anticipated from][of][Nauru – replace] the proposed activities, [on the marine environment, and identify necessary measures to mitigate or manage [such effects and risks] [them] [Spain] [Nauru] to enable the Authority to assess the potential [residual] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] adverse Environmental Effects. [PEW – delete] [and risks]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Spain - delete] with the aim to:

(a) Ensure effective protection for the [m][M]arine [e][E]nvironment [PEW – capitalize] from [harmful effects] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] which may arise from such proposed activities,

(b) Ensure that activities in the Area are carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment.

(c) [Avoid] [Prevent][Germany – replace] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - keep] [the risk of] [PEW] Serious Harm to the Marine Environment arising out of the proposed activities.

(d) Ensure, in accordance with [article 142 of the Convention and Regulation 4][the Convention] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – replace], that the Sponsoring State [or States] [Nauru, Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal] and the Contractor, [with respect to resource deposits in the Area which lie across limits of national jurisdiction,] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – delete] conduct the environmental impact assessment with due regard to the rights and legitimate

interests [and duties] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – delete] of [adjacent] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal] affected coastal States [and any other potentially most affected coastal States] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal] by maintaining [targeted and proactive] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal] consultations [and a system of prior notification to avoid infringement of their rights and legitimate interests] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal – delete] [in accordance with Regulation 93.ter] [Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal], and

(e) Ensure that the proposed activities are carried out in accordance with [the Convention, the Agreement,] [Russia] the Rules of the Authority, [general International Law,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] including [Nauru – delete] the Convention [Russia – delete] [other relevant legal instruments and frameworks and relevant global, regional, sub-regional and sectorial bodies] [Brazil] and the applicable Standard[s] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ] and taking into account the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru] Guidelines as well as, Best Available Scientific Information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques

3. The Environmental Impact Assessment [Process] [Norway, Germany, Denmark, Ireland, Micronesia and Portugal] shall:

(a) Be based on [sufficient and] [DOSI] [relevant] [Nauru – delete] [and sufficient] [Germany] environmental baseline data that captures temporal, (seasonal and interannual) and spatial variation in accordance with [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru – replace] Standards and taking into account [relevant] [the applicable] [Nauru] Guidelines and the objectives and measures of the [applicable] [relevant] [Nauru] Regional Environmental Management Plan,

[3(a) bis Be based on a scoping report,] [Nauru] [United Kingdom; Canada - delete]

(b) Be carried out by [qualified,] [competent] [PEW – replace] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [persons or] [Nauru] [independent] [Russia – delete] experts [or competent individuals] NORI, TOML, BMJ,]

[Norway – delete sub para b entirely]

(b)bis Be based on the best available [science and] [Nauru; Micronesia] scientific information, and, [if applicable,] [Russia] [Micronesia - delete] [where available,] [Micronesia - supports] [Russia – delete] [taking into account] [Russia] [Micronesia - delete] relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities.

(c) Include an environmental risk assessment, [including identifying any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and a survey of the seabed to identify] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Underwater Cultural Heritage [Nauru, Russia – delete] [that takes into consideration the region as a whole] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] taking into account the objectives and measures of the relevant [and applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Regional Environmental Management Plan,



\_\_\_\_\_ (d) Provide for Stakeholder consultation in accordance with Regulation 93bis, relevant Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

\_\_\_\_\_ (e) Be subject to an independent scientific assessment prior to the submission of the proposed Environmental Impact Statement to the Authority. [Norway, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete e entirely]

\_\_\_\_\_ (f) Take into account the results from test mining, if applicable, in accordance with Regulation 48bis.

\_\_\_\_\_ (g) Be conducted in accordance with the terms of reference developed during scoping in accordance with Regulation 47ter 4(o), and [Norway; United Kingdom; Canada – delete]

\_\_\_\_\_ (h) Identify scientific and other knowledge gaps or data uncertainties, [the sufficiency of information,] [DOSI] and [assess][Nauru] [how] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [the degree to which] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] these influence the assessment.

\_\_\_\_\_ (i) be an iterative process where specific stages [of the activities] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] are revisited and may be updated in the light of new information or new activity at a later stage

4. The Environmental Impact Assessment [process][PEW – delete] must follow certain procedural steps and entail the following elements:

\_\_\_\_\_ (a) A [scoping Stage and scoping report] [stage for Scoping Report] [United Kingdom; Canada - replace] in accordance with Regulation 47bis [to identify and risk assess the anticipated activities and potential impacts associated with the proposed Exploitation which are relevant to the Environmental Impact Assessment] [United Kingdom; Canada - delete].

\_\_\_\_\_ (b) A stage for [an] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] assessment of environmental impacts [in accordance with Regulation 47bis][Norway] [including:][Norway – delete]

\_\_\_\_\_ (i) An update to the environmental risk assessment, as developed during scoping, describing the likely impacts on the marine environment and [objects of an archaeological and historical nature] [Russia] [Underwater Cultural Heritage] [Russia – delete] and predict the nature and extent of the [Environmental Impacts and] [Russia] Environmental Effects [and risks][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] of [the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Exploitation [including residual impacts, [also considering] [Nauru – delete] cumulative [impacts] [effects] [Russia – replace] [, including existing and foreseen mining operations, other activities][Nauru – delete] and natural phenomena] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

\_\_\_\_\_ (ii) An evaluation of [significant and] [Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [likely] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] harmful effects on the [marine] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ (upper case)] [e][E]nvironment [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] and ecosystem services, [founded][based] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] on [scientific-based approach,

including] [Russia] clear and transparent assessment criteria and a robust evidence base, [using][applying][Russia-replace] [b][B]est [a][A]vailable [Russia – capitalize]. [science and] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [s][S]cientific [i][I]nformation [Russia – capitalize] [and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities][Micronesia];

(iii) The presentation and evaluation of potential mitigation measures, and subsequent statement of management and monitoring commitments ([together with] [to inform preparation of] [Nauru] the E[nvironmental] M[anagement and] M[onitoring] P[lan] [Nauru]), to [monitor],[PEW] [m][M]itigate [PEW – capitalize], [and manage] [PEW] [avoid and minimize] [harmful effects to the Marine Environment] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [effects] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], and monitor] [PEW – delete] residual impacts;

[Norway – delete sub-paras i-iii entirely]

[(c) A stage on the preparation and submission to the Authority of the Environmental Impact Statement to document and report the results of the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment[PEW- capitalize] in accordance with Regulation 47bis, the applicable Standards and taking into account the [relevant][applicable][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Guidelines.]

[Norway – delete sub para c entirely]

[c][d][Norway – replace] The [development.] [[Norway] publication and review by the Commission of the Environmental Impact Statement, and publication of the [Commission’s] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] report and recommendation[s][Nauru] [by the Commission][Nauru – delete] to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11 – 15

[d][e] [Norway – replace] A decision by the Council to approve, or not approve, the proposed activities or proposed modification to the Plan of Work that was the subject of the Environmental Impact Assessment, including any conditions imposed upon an approval, which decision shall be recorded and published in accordance with Regulation 16, and]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para e entirely]

[(f) A proactive consultation by an applicant or Contractor with Stakeholders at all stages, in accordance with [relevant][the applicable][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] Standards and taking [into][Nauru] account [of] [the applicable] [Nauru – replace] Guideline[s][Nauru], which includes:

(i) Providing Stakeholders with access to up-to-date and comprehensive [environmental data and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] information [about] [relating to] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] the proposed activities and [environmental data and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [their] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] impacts,

(ii) Using best efforts to obtain Stakeholder comments on the draft scoping report and draft environmental impact statement for a reasonable

period [in accordance with regulation [ ] and the applicable Standard] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].

[(iii) Provide a reasonable opportunity for Stakeholders to raise enquiries and to make known their views.]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete iii]

(iv) Make publicly available Stakeholder comments received during the consultation process, including on the applicant or Contractor’s own website, and

(v) Record and address, in the scoping report and Environmental Impact Statement respectively, any substantive and relevant Stakeholder comments received]

[Norway – delete sub-para (f) entirely]

#### Explanation / comment

Overall comments:

- I have received a joint textual proposal for how to revise section 2. I thank the participants for their hard work and appreciate the submission of joint proposals.
- I propose that the joint textual proposal will form the basis for the regulations of this section as they (the regulations) are more streamlined and well-placed, which was something many participants asked for during our last meeting. Furthermore, I encourage participants to familiarize themselves with the joint textual proposal that has submitted as it entails the thoughts and reasoning of the group for their proposed changes as well as suggestions for parts of the regulations to be moved to relevant Standards and Guidelines.
- The joint textual proposal suggest the structure of Section 2 as follows:
  - “**Reg 47:** *Environmental Impact Assessment Process: outlines EIA purpose, including high-level requirements, and the steps included in the process (from scoping to decision).*
  - **Reg 47bis** *Scoping Report: outlines requirements for scoping phase and Report, including submission and decision.*
  - **Reg 47ter:** *Environmental Impact Assessment: outlines requirements for conducting an Environmental Impact Assessment*
  - **Reg 48:** *Environmental Impact Statement: outlines requirements for content of Environmental Impact Statement*
  - **Reg 48bis:** *New Environmental Impact Assessment and [Revised] [additional] Environmental Impact Statement: requirements for when a new Environmental Impact Assessment and a [new/revised/additional/supplementary] Environmental Impact Statement is required.”*

Specific comments relating to Regulation 47:

- In relation to this draft regulation (47) I propose that the joint textual proposal will be the base which we work with going forward. I have inserted their proposal as “Regulation 47 alt.”.
- I note that several participants have submitted proposals with changes to regulation 47 which I have attempted to incorporate to the extent possible.
- I noted suggestions to remove the detailed content in Regulation 47.alt paragraph 3 litra b) point i-vi and litra i) point i-v, which I support. Moreover, these points could be moved to the Standard and Guideline on The Environmental Impact Assessment Process, which can be found on the ISA’s website ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](http://isa.org.jm)) which I have also suggested in the accompanying Matrix I introduced earlier. I have therefore suggested this re-location in the accompanying Matrix which I introduced in my opening statement. I have for now placed the mentioned provisions (points) in paragraph 3 b) and i) in square brackets. I invite for views on this.
- One participant has suggested the insertion of an alternative litra c in paragraph 3 of Regulation 47 which I have tried to merge with the existing litra c. I invite for views on this.
- One participant submitted a proposal to merge regulations 47 and the following regulation 47.bis. However, I believe the joint proposal covers this and have therefore omitted this incoming proposal.

**Explanation / comment (2)**

Draft Regulation 47alt. has been renumbered in the consolidated Text as Draft Regulation 46. For clarity, proposals received for DR 46 after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included in DR 47alt. of the Compilation Document.

**Regulation 47 bis [IWG ENV]**

**Environmental Impact Assessment**

1. An applicant or Contractor shall carry out an Environmental Impact Assessment [of proposed Exploitation in accordance with the Rules of the Authority.](#)
2. The purpose of an Environmental Impact Assessment ~~under this regulation~~ shall be to predict environmental impacts anticipated from the proposed activities, to enable the Authority to assess the potential adverse Environmental Effects, with the aim to:
  - (a) Ensure effective protection for the marine environment from harmful effects which may arise from such proposed activities,
  - (b) Ensure that activities in the Area are carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment,

(c) Avoid Serious Harm to the Marine Environment ~~arising out of the proposed activities~~

(d) Ensure, in accordance with article 142 of the Convention and Regulation 4, that the Sponsoring State and the Contractor, with respect to resource deposits in the Area which lie across limits of national jurisdiction, conduct the environmental impact assessment with due regard to the rights and legitimate interests and duties of affected coastal States by maintaining consultations and a system of prior notification to avoid infringement of their rights and legitimate interests, and

(e) Ensure that the proposed activities are carried out in accordance with the Rules of the Authority, ~~general International Law, including~~ the Convention and the applicable Standards and taking into account the ~~relevant applicable~~ Guidelines as well as, ~~Good Industry Practice,~~ Best Available Scientific Information], Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques

3. A Contractor shall ~~periodically, and in accordance with Regulation 48bis~~ review, and when needed revise, previously performed Environmental Impact Assessments. This include reviewing cumulative effects of activities covered by the assessment whenever a material change in the mining operation has occurred, there is relevant new information or when the review indicates that such changes warrant a revision.

#### Regulation 47 bis alt. (47 ter) [IWG ENV]

##### Environmental Impact Assessment

1. The applicant or Contractor shall, in accordance with the Standards, and taking into account the Guidelines, undertake an impact assessment [as described in regulation [47alt(4)], and][PEW] based on the Terms of Reference agreed in the Scoping report], to describe the impacts on the marine environment and Underwater Cultural Heritage and to predict the nature and extent of the Environmental Effects of the mining operation, including residual impacts, on the marine environment and Underwater Cultural Heritage, also considering cumulative impacts, including existing and foreseen mining operations, other activities and natural phenomena.][PEW – delete] This includes assessing:

(i) The intensity or severity of the impact at the specific site being affected;

(ii) The spatial extent of the impact relative to the availability of the habitat type affected;

(iii) The sensitivity/vulnerability of the ecosystem to the impact;

(iv) The ability of an ecosystem to recover from harm, and the rate of such recovery;

(v) The extent to which ecosystem functions may be altered by the impact; and

(vi) The timing and duration of the impact relative to the period in which a species needs the habitat during one or more of its life history stages affected for its long survival.

2. In [U]ndertaking [PEW] the impact assessment, the applicant or Contractor shall complete:

(a) An analysis of reasonable alternatives [remaining post Scoping] [PEW] to the planned activity under the jurisdiction or control of a State Party, including the no-action alternative,

(b) Identification of measures envisaged to [monitor,] [M]m [mitigate] [PEW] and manage [prevent, minimize, control,] [PEW- delete] Environmental Effects and risks to as low as reasonably practicable, while within acceptable levels in accordance with environmental Standards, including through the development and preparation of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

(c) An environmental risk assessment, which adds to the preliminary environmental risk assessment required during scoping by regulation 47bis (4j).

(d) An analysis of the results of the environmental risk assessment, including identification of [high priority] [PEW] risks requiring particular focus, including in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.

(e) A proactive consultation by an applicant or Contractor with Stakeholders at all stages, in accordance with relevant Standards and taking account of Guideline, which includes:

(i) Providing Stakeholders with access to up-to-date and comprehensive information about the proposed activities and environmental data and impacts,

(ii) Using best efforts to obtain Stakeholder comments on the draft scoping report and draft environmental impact statement for a reasonable period.

(iii) Provide a reasonable opportunity for Stakeholders to raise enquiries and to make known their views,

(iv) Make publicly available Stakeholder comments received during the engagement ~~consultation~~ process, including on the applicant or Contractor's own website, and

(v) Record and address, in the scoping report and Environmental Impact Statement respectively, any substantive and relevant Stakeholder comments received.]

[Norway – delete sub-para e entirely]

### Text discussed during Part I of 29th Session

#### Regulation 47 ~~bis- alt.~~ [IWG ENV]

**[Environmental Impact Assessment] [Assessment of Environmental Impacts] [Centre for Polar and Deep Ocean Development - replace]**

1. The applicant or Contractor shall, in accordance with the Standards, and taking into ~~consideration~~ ~~account~~ ~~the~~ Guidelines, undertake an impact assessment, ~~[as described in Regulation 46 (4).]~~ [Nauru - retain] based on the ~~[Terms of Reference]~~ [terms of reference] [United Kingdom; Canada - replace] ~~[agreed]~~ [Nauru - retain] in the Scoping ~~r~~ [R]eport [United Kingdom; Canada - replace]; ~~[to describe the impacts on the marine environment and Underwater Cultural Heritage and to predict the nature and extent of the Environmental Effects of the mining operation, including residual impacts, on the marine environment and Underwater Cultural Heritage, also considering cumulative~~

~~impacts, including existing and foreseen mining operations, other activities and natural phenomena~~ [Nauru – supports deleting].] This includes assessing:

- (a) The intensity or severity of the impact at the specific site being affected;
- (b) The spatial extent of the impact relative to the availability of the habitat type affected;
- (c) The sensitivity ~~/~~ [and] [United Kingdom - replace] vulnerability of the ecosystem to the impact;
- (d) The ability of an ecosystem to recover from harm, and the rate of such recovery; [and]
- (e) The extent [to which] [interference with the ecological balance of the marine environment, including] [ACOPS - replace] ecosystem functions may be altered by the impact; [and]

~~[(e)bis (e bis) The extent to which human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage may be altered or otherwise affected by the impact] [IWG on UCH]~~

~~[(f) The timing and duration of the impact relative to the period in which a species needs the habitat during one or more of its life history stages affected for its long survival.] [Nauru – supports deletion]~~

2. [In] Undertaking the impact assessment, the applicant or Contractor shall complete:

(a) An analysis of reasonable alternatives ~~[remaining post Scoping]~~ to the planned activity [under the jurisdiction or control of a State Party] [United Kingdom - delete], including the no-action alternative;

(b) Identification of measures envisaged to ~~[prevent, minimize, control,]~~ [monitor,] mitigate and manage Environmental Effects and risks to as low as reasonably practicable, while within acceptable levels in accordance with environmental Standards, including through the development and preparation of an Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan ~~[as well as an Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan] [IWG on UCH];~~

(c) An Environmental Risk Assessment, which adds to the preliminary Environmental Risk Assessment required during scoping by ~~[this Regulation]~~ ~~Regulation 47bis (4j)~~ [Regulation 47bis(3)(b)] [United Kingdom - replace];

(d) An analysis of the results of the Environmental Risk Assessment, including identification of ~~[high priority]~~ risks requiring particular focus, including in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

~~[(e) Provide for engagement with potentially directly affected Stakeholders and in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter], applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines; and] [Spain; China - delete]~~

~~[(e) bis Provide for consultation with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulation 93 bis, applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines. A proactive consultation by an applicant or Contractor with Stakeholders at all stages, in accordance with relevant Standards and taking account of Guideline, which includes:~~

~~(i) Providing Stakeholders with access to up-to-date and comprehensive information about the proposed activities and environmental data and impacts;~~

~~(ii) Using best efforts to obtain Stakeholder comments on the draft scoping report and draft environmental impact statement for a reasonable period.~~

~~(iii) Provide a reasonable opportunity for Stakeholders to raise enquiries and to make known their views;~~

~~(iv) Make publicly available Stakeholder comments received during the engagement consultation process, including on the applicant or Contractor's own website, and~~

~~(v) Record and address, in the scoping report and Environmental Impact Statement respectively, any substantive and relevant Stakeholder comments received.~~

**Comment**

Regulation 47 bis Alt gained most support during the third part of the twenty-eight session and has thus been retained and the numbering has been updated to Regulation 47.

**Explanation / comment**

- Please see my overall comments stated in the comment box to Regulation 47.

Specific comments relating to the draft regulation on Environmental Impact Assessment;

- In relation to this draft regulation on “Environmental Impact Assessment” I propose that the joint proposal submitted will be the base which we work with going forward. Inserted as “Regulation 47 bis alt (ter)”
- The joint proposal mentioned above contained a proposal for this regulation on “Environmental Impact Assessment” to be inserted as “47 ter” but it has been inserted here (regulation 47 bis) for participants to compare with the previous provision on “Environmental Impact Assessment”, i.e. “Regulation 47.bis”.
- This means that the proposed order is not aligned with the order suggested in the joint textual proposal. (The groups “Regulation 47 bis” on Scoping will be discussed under “Regulation 47 ter”, and the groups “Regulation 47 ter on Environmental Impact Assessment will be discussed under “Regulation 47 bis” in the following.)
- Again, I support the joint proposal, including the above-mentioned proposed restructuring and re-numbering of the Regulations. Thus, if consensus can be reached during the meeting, the regulations



will follow the order as proposed in the joint textual proposal. (See my comments to regulation 47 for more on the proposed layout).

- I note that some participants have submitted proposals with changes to the previous regulation on “Environmental Impact Assessment” which I have attempted to incorporate to the extent possible.

#### **Explanation / comment (2)**

Proposals received after the first Part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included in Draft Regulation 47bis – which is now Draft Regulation 47. To this end, the version of the Regulation used in the Consolidated Text has been included in the Compilation Document.

### **Regulation 47 ter [IWG ENV] Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report**

1. An applicant or Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Secretary-General a scoping report in accordance with this regulation and in the format prescribed in Annex IV.

2. An application or Contractor shall use Environmental Impact Assessment scoping to identify and prioritize the main activities and potential impacts associated with the proposed [Exploitation mining operation](#) in order to focus the Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Impact Statement on the key environmental issues.

[3. In undertaking the Environmental Impact Assessment scoping process the applicant or Contractor shall:

(a) Review available data and knowledge, and propose additional data to be collected and studies needed to complete an Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with these regulations,

(b) Undertake a preliminary impact analysis and Environmental Risk Assessment which will be updated as the Environmental Impact Assessment proceeds,

(c) Proactively identify Stakeholders in accordance with relevant Standards and taking into account any Guidelines, and

(d) Identify and evaluate feasible alternative means of carrying out the project that will be examined in the environmental impact assessment.]

[4. An Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report shall include the following:

(a) A brief description of the proposed Exploitation [activities](#) and any ancillary features, including what is known or anticipated about where the mining will occur within a Contract Area and the mining machinery to be used,

(b) A description and overview of tentative timelines and deadlines for the proposed Exploration and any associated activities,

(c) A description of what is known about the environmental setting, [including Underwater Cultural Heritage](#) [\[China – delete\]](#), for the project (Contract Area and regional setting),

(d) A description of information for the project that is not yet known but must be, or should be known, including baseline data, and a plan for gaining that information prior to commencement of the [Exploitation activities](#),

(e) A summary of existing environmental baseline studies, and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of indigenous peoples and local communities including a description of methodology for collecting and analyzing the baseline data,

(f) A summary of gaps in environmental baseline including description of methodology for collecting and analyzing additional baseline data to inform the Environmental Impact Assessment.

(g) A description of the technical, spatial and temporal boundaries for the Environmental Impact Assessment,

(h) A list of any assumptions relied upon and identification and quantification of the uncertainties at this stage of the Environmental Impact Assessment, how they are being addressed, and assessment of their implications to the Environmental Risk Assessment findings,

(i) A preliminary impact analysis which categorizes the important issues into high-risk, medium-risk and low-risk for the Environmental Impact Assessment to address and evaluates the need for further information, taking into account the Environmental Risk Assessment,

(j) An Environmental Risk Assessment, which includes:

(i) The identification of potential hazards,

(ii) The environmental consequence for each identified potential impact(s) (the magnitude of the impact(s), the duration of the impacts, and the receptor characteristics, [and the likelihood of the consequence occurring](#)).

(iii) A description of the Cumulative Environmental Effects of the project, combined with other authorized, anticipated, or expected activities, actions, or natural phenomena,

(iv) The likelihood of the consequence occurring,

(v) The confidence levels of experts, in order to account for uncertainty and a precautionary approach,

(vi) A description of the methodology employed in the Environmental Risk Assessment,

(k) A description of the results of the Environmental Risk Assessment, including identification of high priority risks for local and regional ecosystem functioning over short and long term, requiring particular focus in the subsequent impact assessment [phase-stage](#) of the Environmental Impact Assessment,

(l) A preliminary Stakeholder list that proactively identifies likely Stakeholders, and an indicative schedule and methodology for engagement with key Stakeholders throughout the Environmental Impact Assessment process, taking into account [privacy concerns related to ~~to not to publish the publication of~~](#) personal information of identified stakeholders,

(m) A report of consultations undertaken during scoping.

(n) A consideration of reasonable alternative means of carrying out the project that will be examined in detail in the Environmental Impact Assessment, including a no-action alternative, and any others that have been not carried forward for further analysis at this stage, and the reasons for that selection,

(o) A draft Terms of Reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment, which identifies the activities and studies planned for the Environmental Impact Assessment, and any additional baseline data that will be required,

(p) An explanation for how the activities and studies planned for the Environmental Impact Assessment will be sufficient to determine likely environmental impacts, and to propose Mitigation and management strategies and monitoring methodology,

(q) A brief description of the socioeconomic and sociocultural aspects of the project, including sociocultural uses of the project area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities),

(r) A note describing and explaining any divergence from relevant ISA Guidelines.]

5. Upon receipt of a scoping report from an applicant or Contractor, the Secretary-General shall:

(a) Make the report available on the Authority's website, with an invitation for members of the Authority and Stakeholders to submit comments in writing within a period of [90 days];

(b) Following the close of the comment period under paragraph (1)(a), provide any comments received to the applicant or Contractor [within 2 weeks] [Russia] for their response within [60 Days];

(c) At the expiry of the timeframe specified in paragraph (1) (b), provide the Commission with the scoping report, any stakeholder comments received, and any responses to those comments from the applicant or Contractor.

6. The Commission shall consider a scoping report submitted in accordance with this regulation, and any comments and responses received, in accordance with any relevant applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines. Based on this review, the Commission shall, within 60 days following the receipt of the report and any comments or responses under paragraph (5)(c), approve a scoping report, disapprove it or make recommendations to the applicant or Contractor regarding the proposed Environmental Impact Assessment, accompanied by a detailed rationale.

7. The Commission's recommendations under the previous paragraph [paragraph 6] may include recommendation:

(a) To revise the environmental risk assessment or other aspects of the scoping report based on different methodology or inputs,

(b) To amend the proposed terms of reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment, or

(c) To re-submit a revised scoping report for further Stakeholder consultation and Commission review, in the case where uptake of any of the Commission's recommendations are likely to lead to a Material Change in the Scoping Report.

8. The applicant or Contractor shall take into account the Commission's recommendations under this regulation, [or any recommendations or scoping reports concluded prior to the adoption of these Regulations and in accordance with an Exploration Contract], [and agree to the final contents of the Scoping Report with the Commission] before proceeding with an Environmental Impact Assessment process based on an adaptative management criteria to address uncertainty. Furthermore, the applicant or Contractor shall agree the final contents of the Scoping Report with the Commission either under these Regulations or pursuant to other applicable Regulations adopted by the Authority or in accordance with an Exploration Contract.

**Regulation 47 ter (bis) alt. [IWG ENV]**  
**Scoping Report**

1. [The][An][Nauru] applicant or Contractor [ , as the case may be,] [PEW] shall prepare and submit to the Secretary-General a scoping report in accordance with this regulation [ , the applicable Standard and taking into account the applicable Guideline] [Nauru]. [and in the format prescribed in Annex IV][Nauru – delete].

2. [An][The] [PEW] applicant or Contractor [ , as the case may be,] [PEW] shall use [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] scoping to identify and prioritize the main activities and potential impacts associated with the proposed [Exploitation][PEW] [mining operation][activities] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [PEW - delete], in order to focus the Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Impact Statement on the key environmental issues.

3. In undertaking the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] scoping [process][PEW – delete], the applicant or Contractor [ , as the case may be,] [PEW] shall:

(a) Review available data and knowledge, and propose additional data to be collected and studies needed to complete an Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with these regulations,

(b) Undertake a preliminary impact analysis and environmental risk assessment which will be updated as the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] proceeds,

(c) Proactively i[de]ntify [Nauru] Stakeholders in accordance with [relevant][ the applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standards and taking into account any [relevant][applicable] [Nauru] Guidelines,

(d) Identify and evaluate feasible alternative means of carrying out the project that will be [further][PEW] examined [as] [in][PEW – replace] the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] [proceeds][PEW]. and

(e) Use the best available science and scientific information and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities.

4. A ~~n~~ ~~e~~ ~~E~~nvironmental ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize]~~ Impact Assessment ~~][PEW – delete]~~ ~~S~~ ~~s~~coping ~~R~~ ~~r~~eport ~~][PEW – lower case]~~ shall include the following:

(a) A brief description of the proposed ~~][Exploitation]~~ ~~][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~][activities]~~ ~~][PEW – delete]~~ ~~][and any ancillary features]~~ ~~][Nauru – delete]~~ ~~][including what is known or anticipated about where mining will occur within a Contract Area and the mining machinery to be used]]][PEW]~~

~~4(a)bis]~~ ~~][Nauru]~~ ~~](b)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~][A preliminary environmental risk assessment,]~~ ~~][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~

~~](b)]~~ ~~](c)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - REPLACE]~~ A description and overview of tentative timelines ~~][and deadlines]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ for the proposed environmental baseline studies and Environmental Impact Assessment ~~][conducted under the Exploration contract and any associated activities,]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~

~~](c)]~~ ~~](d)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace]~~ A description of what is known about the environmental setting, including ~~][any]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ Underwater Cultural Heritage, for the project (Contract Area and regional setting),

~~](d)]~~ ~~](e)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ A description of data gaps, potential data gaps or data with a ~~][large]~~ ~~][high degree of]~~ ~~][Nauru – replace]~~ ~~][high level of]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace]~~ uncertainty associated with it for the project, ~~][including environmental baseline data, and a plan describing the methodology for collecting and analyzing that information prior to commencement of Exploitation activities and to inform the Environmental Impact Assessment]]][PEW]~~

~~](e)]~~ ~~](f)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ A summary of existing environmental baseline studies, and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of indigenous peoples and local communities

~~](f)]~~ ~~](g)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ A description of the technical, spatial and temporal boundaries for the Environmental Impact Assessment,

~~](g)]~~ ~~](h)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ A ~~][brief]~~ ~~][PEW – delete]~~ description of the socioeconomic and sociocultural aspects of the project ~~][including sociocultural uses of the project area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities),]~~ ~~][PEW]~~

~~](h)]~~ ~~](i)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ ~~][A description of a]~~ ~~][A]~~ ~~][ny]~~ ~~][PEW]~~ assumptions and how they are being addressed, and assessment of their implications to the environmental risk assessment findings,

~~](i)]~~ ~~](j)]~~ ~~][NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ A preliminary impact analysis which categorizes the important issues into high-risk, medium-risk and low-risk for the Environmental Impact Assessment to address and

evaluate[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] the need for further information, [taking into account] [based on] [Nauru - replace] the environmental risk assessment, [[which includes:

(i) The identification of potential hazards,

(ii) The environmental consequence for each identified potential impact(s) (the magnitude of the impact(s), the duration of the impacts, and the receptor characteristics), and the likelihood of the consequence occurring

(iii) A description of the cumulative effects of the project, combined with other authorized, anticipated, or expected activities, actions, or natural phenomena,

(iv) The confidence levels of experts, in order to account for uncertainty and a precautionary approach, and

(v) A description of the methodology employed in the environmental risk assessment.]] [PEW]

[(j) A preliminary environmental risk assessment,] [Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

(k) A description of the results of the environmental risk assessment, including identification of high priority risks for local and regional ecosystem functioning over short and long term, requiring particular focus in the subsequent impact assessment [phase][stage][PEW - replace] of the Environmental Impact Assessment,

(l) A preliminary Stakeholder list that [proactively] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] identifies likely [key] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Stakeholders, and an indicative schedule and methodology for engagement with [key][such] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] Stakeholders throughout the Environmental Impact Assessment process, [taking into account privacy concerns related to the publication of personal information of identified stakeholders] [PEW]

[(m) A report of consultations undertaken during scoping.] [Norway - delete]

(n) A consideration of reasonable alternative means of carrying out the project that will be examined in detail [in][as][PEW - replace] the Environmental Impact Assessment [proceeds][PEW], including a no-action alternative, and any others that have [been][PEW - delete] not [been][PEW] carried forward for further analysis at this stage, and the reasons for that selection,

(o) A draft Terms of Reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment, which identifies the activities and studies planned for the [subsequent impact assessment stage of the Environmental Impact Assessment][PEW] [Environmental Impact Assessment][PEW - delete], and any additional baseline data that will be required,

(p) An explanation for how the activities and studies planned for the [subsequent impact assessment stage of the Environmental Impact Assessment][PEW] [Environmental Impact Assessment] will be sufficient to determine likely environmental impacts, and to propose Mitigation [measures]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ] and management strategies and monitoring methodology.

(q) A note describing and explaining any divergence from [relevant ISA][Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [applicable Standards or applicable][Nauru] Guidelines.

5. Upon receipt of a scoping report from an applicant or Contractor, the Secretary General shall:

(a) Make the report available on the Authority’s website, with an invitation for members of the Authority and Stakeholders to submit comments in writing within a period of 90 days;

(b) Following the close of the comment period under paragraph [(1)][Nauru- delete] (a) [above][Nauru], provide any comments received to the applicant or Contractor [within [2 weeks][14 days][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]] [Nauru- remove brackets] for [their][its][Nauru] response [within [60 Days] [Nauru – remove brackets] [Norway – delete] [without undue delay][Norway];

(c) [At the expiry of the timeframe specified in paragraph (1) (b),] [Norway – delete] [after receiving the Contractor’s response to the comments,][Norway] provide the Commission with the scoping report, any stakeholder comments received, and any responses to those comments from the applicant or Contractor.

6. The Commission shall consider a scoping report submitted in accordance with this regulation, and any comments and responses received, in accordance with [any [relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]] [the applicable] [Nauru-replace] [relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standards and taking into account [the applicable][Nauru] Guidelines. Based on this review, the Commission [shall][Nauru – delete] [may, within 2 60 days of its receipt of the scoping report][Nauru] [, within 60 days following the receipt of the report and any comments or responses under paragraph (5)(c),] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [approve a scoping report, [disapprove] [reject] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] it or][Nauru – delete] make recommendations to the applicant or Contractor regarding the proposed [scope of the][Nauru] [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize], accompanied by a detailed rationale [for such recommendations.][Nauru].

7. The Commission’s recommendations under the previous paragraph [paragraph 6] may include [a] [PEW]recommendation[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]:

(a) To revise the environmental risk assessment or other aspects of the scoping report based on different methodology or inputs,

(b) To amend the proposed terms of reference for the environmental impact assessment, or

[(c) To re-submit a revised scoping report for further Stakeholder consultation and Commission review, in the case where uptake of any of the Commission’s recommendations are likely to lead to a Material Change in the [S][s]coping [R][r]eport PEW – lower case].]

[Nauru – delete sub para c entirely]

8. The applicant or Contractor shall, before proceeding with an environmental impact assessment [pursuant to regulation 47ter] [PEW] [process][PEW - delete]:

(i) take full account of the Commission's recommendations under this regulation [or any recommendations or scoping reports concluded prior to the adoption of these Regulations and in accordance with an Exploration contract; and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ],

[(i)bis submit a revised scoping report, including any amended terms of reference.] [Nauru]

(ii) [agree] [consult with the Commission concerning] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] the final contents of the proposed terms of reference in the Scoping Report [with the Commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [either under these Regulations or pursuant to other applicable Regulations adopted by the Authority or in accordance with an Exploration Contract] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].]

[Nauru – delete (ii)]

### Text included in the Consolidate Text

#### Scoping Report [Centre for Polar and Deep Ocean Development; United Kingdom; Canada - delete]

1. [An] applicant or Contractor, shall [undertake scoping and] [United Kingdom; Canada] prepare and submit to the Secretary-General a [scoping report] [United Kingdom; Canada - capitalize] [and the draft Terms of Reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment] [Indonesia] in accordance with this Regulation, [Annex IIIbis] [United Kingdom; Canada] [the applicable Standard and taking into consideration Guidelines].

2. An applicant or Contractor, shall [use] [undertake] [United Kingdom; Canada] [Environmental Impact Assessment] [Indonesia - delete] scoping to identify and prioritize [the main activities and] [United Kingdom; Canada - delete] potential impacts [of the activities] [United Kingdom; Canada] associated with the proposed Exploitation activities, [activities] [United Kingdom; Canada - delete], in order to focus the Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Impact Statement on the key environmental issues [key environmental and any associated impacts, such as economic, social, cultural and human health impacts, including potential cumulative impacts and impacts in areas within national jurisdiction, as well as alternatives to the proposed activities, if any, to be included in the environmental impact assessments that shall be conducted under this Regulation. The result of the Scoping shall be used by the applicant or Contractor to derive the Terms of Reference for Environmental Impact Assessment.] [Indonesia - replace].

3. In undertaking the [Environmental Impact Assessment] [Indonesia - delete] scoping [process] [United Kingdom; Canada - delete], the applicant or Contractor, shall:



(a) Review [environmental baseline data and other] [Indonesia] available data and knowledge, [identifying any gap in existing data and knowledge,] [Indonesia] and propose additional data to be collected and studies needed to complete an Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with these Regulations;

(b) Undertake a preliminary impact analysis and Environmental Risk Assessment which will be updated as the Environmental Impact Assessment proceeds;

(c) Identify [potentially directly affected] [potentially affected] [Australia - replace] Stakeholders in accordance with [the applicable] Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines;

(c) bis [Endeavour to engage] [Consult] [Indonesia - replace] with potentially directly affected Stakeholders, and in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter,] Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines;

(d) Identify and evaluate feasible alternative means of carrying out the [project] [proposed activities] [Indonesia - replace] that will be [further] examined in the Environmental Impact Assessment; and

(e) Use the best available science and scientific information and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities [.] ; and [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]

[e bis) Review the Best Available Scientific Information and, where available, the relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities and conduct consultations with the relevant Stakeholders to identify, to the extent possible, potential areas containing human remains or [underwater] cultural heritage, including intangible [underwater] cultural heritage, that are associated with the proposed Exploitation activities. [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[(e bis) Review the Best Available Scientific Information and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities and conduct consultations with relevant Stakeholders to identify, to the extent possible, potential areas containing human remains and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage that are located in or otherwise associated with the areas of the proposed Exploitation activities] [IWG on UCH]

[(f) identify terms of reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment]

[(g) prepare a report on the outcomes of scoping described above including the terms of reference ('Scoping Report').] [United Kingdom; Canada]

5. Following submission of a scoping report in accordance with this Regulation, the applicant or Contractor shall conduct a consultation process on the Scoping Report, with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulation 93 bis.

6. The Commission shall consider a [scoping report] [United Kingdom; Canada - capitalize] submitted in accordance with this Regulation, and taking into account the consultation submission received under Regulation 93 bis (8), the applicant or Contractor's written response prepared under Regulation 93 bis (9), any additional information provided by the Secretary-General, and in accordance with [the applicable] Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines. [Based on this review, the Commission shall [either] [United Kingdom; Canada] approve a [scoping report] [United Kingdom; Canada -

~~capitalize~~, disapprove it or make recommendations to the applicant or Contractor regarding the proposed scope of the Environmental Impact Assessment, accompanied by a detailed rationale [for such recommendations] under paragraph 7] [United Kingdom; Canada].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]

7. The Commission [may] [shall, within 60 days following its receipt of the report and any comments received as part of the consultation process referred to in paragraph 5.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] recommend that the applicant:

[(a) Revise the Environmental Risk Assessment or other aspects of the scoping report based on different methodology or inputs;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]

~~[(a)alt That the applicant revise the preliminary Environmental Risk Assessment, terms of reference or other aspects of the Scoping Report] [United Kingdom; Canada]~~

[(b) Amend the proposed terms of reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment;

(c) Revise a Scoping Report and submit the report for further consideration; or] [United Kingdom; Canada – delete both sub (b) and (c)]

[(d) Consult] [(b) Further consultation] [United Kingdom; Canada] under Regulation 93 bis on any revised [scoping report] [United Kingdom; Canada - capitalize], particularly if the recommendations are likely to lead to a Material Change in the Scoping Report.

[(e) proceed with the preparation of the Environmental Impact Assessment based on the terms of the reference contained in the Scoping Report.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru]

8. The applicant or Contractor shall, before proceeding with an Environmental Impact Assessment [pursuant to Regulation 47]:

(a) Take full account of the Commission's recommendations under this Regulation [(or any recommendations or scoping reports concluded prior to the adoption of these Regulations and in accordance with an Exploration contract)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets];

[(b) Submit a revised scoping report, including any amended terms of reference]; and

(c) Agree the final contents of the proposed terms of reference in the Scoping Report with the Commission.

~~[8.Alt. The applicant or Contractor must obtain the Commission's approval of the Scoping Report under paragraph 6 before proceeding with the next steps of the Environmental Impact Assessment [pursuant to Regulation 47].] [United Kingdom; Canada]~~

**Explanation / comment**

- Please see my overall comments in the comment box to Regulation 47.

Specific comments relating to the draft regulation on Scoping Report;

- In relation to this draft regulation on “Scoping Report” I propose to continue the negotiations based on the joint textual proposal that has been submitted. Inserted as “Regulation 47 ter (bis) alt”
- The joint textual proposal contained a suggestion that this regulation on “Scoping report” to be inserted as “47 bis” but it has been inserted here (regulation 47 ter) for participants to compare with the previous provision on “Scoping Report”, i.e. “Regulation 47.ter”.
- If consensus can be reached during the meeting, the regulations will follow the order as proposed by the group. (See my comments to regulation 47 for more on the proposed layout).
- I note that the very detailed regulations in Regulation 47 ter paragraph 3 and 4 could be moved to the Standard and Guideline on “Environmental Impact Assessment Process” (section on “Scoping”) which can be found on the ISA’s website ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](http://isa.org.jm)) which I have also suggested in the accompanying Matrix I introduced earlier. They are placed in square brackets, and I invite for views on this.

**Explanation / comment (2)**

The text of Regulation 47ter (now Regulation 47bis) included In the consolidated text has been added here. Proposals received after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included therein.

**Regulation 48 [IWG ENV]****Environmental Impact Statement**

1. An applicant or Contractor shall prepare an Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with this regulation, [the applicable Standards and take account of the applicable Guidelines](#). Such an Environmental Impact Statement shall be considered by the Authority in accordance with Part II or Regulation 57 and is required for an application for a plan of work pursuant to Regulation 7(3)(d).

2. The purpose of the Environmental Impact Statement is to document and report the results of the Environmental Impact Assessment carried out in accordance with Regulations [47 and 47bis](#) and to provide the International Seabed Authority, its member States and other stakeholders with unambiguous documentation of the potential Environmental Effects based on the Best Available Scientific Information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, and Good Industry Practice on which the Authority can base its decision, and any subsequent approval that may be granted.

3. The Environmental Impact Statement shall be in a form prescribed by the Authority and must:

(a) Include a prior Environmental Risk Assessment prepared during the environmental impact assessment,

(b) Describe the results of the Environmental Impact Assessment including of the methodology used and evaluation of the identified environmental impacts,

(c) Demonstrate that the ~~re is sufficient information to assess~~ [DOSI] proposed ~~activities and mining operations and that these~~ [DOSI] activities and mining operations are in accordance with all ~~relevant~~ environmental Standards and the Authority's environmental objectives and take into account the requirements of the ~~relevant~~ Regional Environmental Management Plan, environmental baseline data as well as any additional objectives as set by the Contractor and any results of the performed test mining study, where applicable,

(d) Identify substantive and relevant comments received through public consultation on the Environmental Impact Assessment and explain how each comment has been incorporated or otherwise addressed,

(e) Be prepared in clear language and in an official language of the Authority together with an English-language version, where applicable,

(f) Include a non-technical summary of the main conclusions and information provided to facilitate understanding of the nature of the activity by Stakeholders

~~(g) [Be peer reviewed by competent independent experts, before submission and include a] ~~d~~[D]escription of the experts, their qualifications, and the results of their review.] [China – delete]~~

4. The Environmental Impact Statement should, but not limited to, entail the following elements, ~~which are~~ described in greater detail in [Annex IV/ Standard]: the Guidelines:

(a) An executive summary to provide an overview of the project and a summary of the content of the Environmental Impact Statement for non-technical readers, including a description of the proposed project, its objectives, alternatives analysed, anticipated benefits, anticipated impacts and measures to minimize these, consultation efforts and linkage to the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan and the Closure Plan,

(b) An introductory section containing information on the project background and history, project viability and proponents as well as a description of the report, including its scope and structure and overview of the stakeholder consultation process and consultations,

(c) An outline of applicable national and international legislation, procedures and policies, and other applicable standards, principles and guidelines, for example the Convention including the 1994 Agreement [relating, relevant rules from the International maritime Organization and International Law in general],

(d) A description of the proposed project including information on location, associated activities, required infrastructure, mineral resources (type, size, shape, tonnage, volume, grade), technologies and (mining-)equipment to

be used, project scale overview (spatial, temporal, operational depth), transport and handling of materials, on-site processing, commissioning, construction and operating standards, design codes, health and safety aspects, workforce, decommissioning and closure, other considered alternatives and a timetable for the entire operation,

(e) A description of methodologies for describing collecting and analyzing baseline and 'test mining' data and assessing the potential environmental impact and Environmental Effects from the proposed operations and alternatives considered. Marine Environment, the Environmental Effects of the proposed project and [collecting baseline data],

(f) A description of the existing physiochemical and geological oceanography, including information on prior research/Exploration studies, meteorology, seabed and sub-seabed characteristics, natural hazards, noise, light and greenhouse gas emissions,

(g) A description of the existing biological environment, including information on prior research/Exploration studies, on biological properties and communities and ecosystem that could be impacted by proposed activities in the area, also taking into consideration studies and research on this,

(h) A description of the existing human activities socioeconomic and sociocultural environment in the area, containing information on fisheries, marine traffic, submarine cables, tourism, ongoing scientific research, sociocultural use, and sites of cultural or historical significance,

(i) An assessment of environmental impacts and effects on the physical, chemical and geological environment and proposed Mitigation, including description of the impact source, potential impact categories and pathways, as well as receptors and impacts, any potential Cumulative Environmental Effects, unavoidable residual impacts and effects that may remain, and the extent to which any potential impacts and effects may occur in areas under a State's national jurisdiction,

(j) An assessment of environmental impacts and Environmental Effects on the biological environment and proposed Mitigation, including description of key the impact source, potential impact categories and pathways, receptors and impacts and cumulative operation effects, any potential Cumulative Environmental Effects, unavoidable residual impacts and effects that may remain, and the extent to which any potential impacts and effects may occur in areas under a State's national jurisdiction,

(k) An assessment of impacts on the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment and proposed Mitigation, including description of potential impact categories and pathways and impact identification of existing use (fisheries, marine traffic, submarine cables, tourism, ongoing scientific research, sociocultural use, area-based management tools), sites of cultural or historical significance, ecosystem services ~~gender~~ impact on gender and residual impacts,

(l) A [n-outline] description of hazards arising from natural, accidental and discharge events, for example related to extreme weather, natural hazards, accidental events, maritime safety, emergency response, handling waste and blast ballast water, and the measures taken to prevent or respond to such events and conduct an assessment of residual impacts,

(m) A summary of key issues in the Environmental Impact Statement and how they will be addressed in the Environmental Management, and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plan.

(n) A description of responsible product stewardship related to the intended use of the mineral-bearing ore once it leaves the Area, including how the Contractor will minimize effects on health, safety, environmental as well as socioeconomic and sociocultural impacts,

(o) A summary of consultations that have taken place with Stakeholders, and how their comments have been addressed in the environmental impact assessment and stakeholder engagement and methods,

(p) A summary description of the study team outlining the people involved in the environmental impact assessment studies and in writing the Environmental Impact Statement,

(q) A list of glossaries, abbreviations, references, and appendices.

5. The Environmental Impact Statement of every project Plan of Work, including any revisions, should be available on the official website of the International Seabed Authority in the interests of transparency. of the whole process

#### Regulation 48 alt. [IWG ENV]

**[Preparation and submission of the] [Centre for Polar and Deep Ocean Development]**

#### Environmental Impact Statement

1. An applicant or Contractor [, as the case may be,][PEW] shall prepare an Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with this regulation [and Annex IV, the applicable Standards and taking into account the applicable Guidelines] [Nauru] [the applicable Standard and taking account of the Guideline] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Annex IV, relevant Standards and take into account Guidelines] [United Kingdom - replace]. [Such] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [an] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [The] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; United Kingdom] Environmental Impact Statement [shall] [will] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] be considered by the Authority in accordance with Part II or Regulation 57 and is required for an application for a plan of work pursuant to Regulation 7(3)(d).

2. The Environmental Impact Statement shall document and report the results of the Environmental Impact Assessment carried out in accordance with Regulation 47 [ter] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] and shall provide the [International Seabed][Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Authority, its member States and other Stakeholders with [unambiguous][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [clear] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] documentation of the potential Environmental Effects based [on the Best Available Scientific Information,][PEW; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Best Environmental Practices, [and Best Available Techniques,][PEW; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] and Good Industry Practice [on which the Authority can base its decision, and any subsequent approval that may be granted][Norway; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete].

3. The Environmental Impact Statement shall be in a form prescribed [by the Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] in the [relevant] [applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] Standard [and in accordance with the

relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [taking into account the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [taking into consideration the applicable] [Nauru - replace] Guideline[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [, and shall] [Norway, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] :

(a) Detail the results of the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] including the methodology used, available data and knowledge including the environmental baseline data, [Indonesia] [the sufficiency of the information,][DOSI] [and evaluation] [description] [Indonesia - replace] of the identified environmental impacts [and proposed Mitigation measures; [Indonesia]

(b) Demonstrate that the proposed Exploitation is in accordance with all [relevant] [applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] environmental Standards and the Authority’s environmental objectives and [in accordance with the requirements of] [taking into account] [Nauru – replace] the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, environmental baseline data as well as any additional objectives as set by the Contractor and any results of the performed test mining study, where applicable,

[(b)bis A description of applicable national and international legislation, procedures and policies, and other applicable standards, principles and guidelines, for example the Convention including the 1994 Agreement relating and the Agreement under the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of Marine Biological Diversity of Areas beyond National Jurisdiction (BBNJ Agreement), relevant rules from the International maritime Organization and International Law in general, [Brazil]

(c) [Describe outreach and consultations undertaken and] [PEW] Identify [substantive [and relevant] [Nauru]] [Australia - delete] comments received through public consultation on the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [PEW – capitalize] and explain how [each][such] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] comment[s][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [has] [have] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] been incorporated or otherwise addressed,

(d) Be prepared in clear [and non-technical] [United Kingdom - delete] language and in an official language of the Authority together with an English-language version, where applicable,

[(d) bis When the Material Change of the proposed Plan of Work require changes in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan (EMMP), due to the impacts identified in the revised Environmental Impact Assessment; or] [Indonesia]

[(e) Be peer reviewed by competent independent experts, before submission,] [Norway, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

3. bis The applicant or Contractor shall [endeavour to] [Australia - delete] engage with potentially [directly] [Australia; Indonesia - delete] affected Stakeholders, and in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter] applicable Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines, during the development of the Environmental Impact Statement.

4. The Environmental Impact Statement shall, [but not limited to,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] entail the [following] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] elements, [which are] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] described in [the applicable Standard and taking into account the Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [greater detail in [Annex IV/ Standard]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]:

(a) An executive summary to provide an overview of the project and a summary of the content of the Environmental Impact Statement for non-technical readers,

(b) A description of the proposed project [[description of the proposed project including information on location, associated activities, required infrastructure, mineral resources (type, size, shape, tonnage, volume, grade), technologies and (mining-)equipment to be used, project scale overview (spatial, temporal, operational depth), transport and handling of materials, on-site processing, commissioning, construction and operating standards, design codes, health and safety aspects, workforce, decommissioning and closure, a timetable for the entire operation project proponents as well as a description of the report, including its scope and structure and overview of the stakeholder consultation process and consultation]] [PEW]

[(b)bis A description of applicable national and international legislation, procedures and policies, and other applicable standards, principles and guidelines, for example the Convention including the 1994 Agreement relating, relevant rules from the International maritime Organization and International Law in general.] [PEW]

[(b)ter A summary of the Commission's recommendations on the scoping report and the agreed terms of reference for the applicant's Environmental Impact Assessment submitted to the Commission, and justification for any deviation either from those terms of reference, or from the Commission's recommendations.] [PEW]

(c) [A description of] [PEW] Methodologies [[for collecting and analyzing baseline and 'test mining' data and assessing the potential environmental impact and Environmental Effects from the proposed operations and alternatives considered.]] [PEW]

(d) A description of the existing oceanographic, physiochemical and geological environment,

(e) A description of the existing biological environment, [[including information on prior research/Exploration studies, biological properties and communities and ecosystem that could be impacted by proposed activities]] [PEW]

(f) A description of the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment, including existing human activities [[on fisheries, marine traffic, submarine cables, tourism, ongoing scientific research, sociocultural use, and sites of cultural or historical significance] [PEW].

(g) An assessment of [environmental] [PEW] impacts on the physical, chemical and geological environment and proposed Mitigation, [[including description of the impact source, potential impact categories and pathways, receptors and impacts, any potential Cumulative Environmental Effects, unavoidable residual impacts and effects that may remain, and the extent to which any potential impacts and effects may occur in areas under a State's national jurisdiction.]] [PEW]



(h) An assessment of [environmental] [PEW] impacts and Environmental Effects on the biological environment and proposed Mitigation, [[including description of the impact source, potential impact categories and pathways, receptors and impacts, any potential Cumulative Environmental Effects, unavoidable residual impacts and effects that may remain, and the extent to which any potential impacts and effects may occur in areas under a State's national jurisdiction.] [PEW]

(i) An assessment of impacts on the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment and proposed Mitigation, [[including description of potential impact categories and pathways and impact identification of existing use (fisheries, marine traffic, submarine cables, tourism, ongoing scientific research, sociocultural use, area-based management tools, sites of cultural or historical significance, ecosystem services), impact on gender and residual impacts,] [PEW]

[(i bis) An assessment of any uncertainties associated with assessments detailed in paragraph 4 subparagraphs (g), (h), and (i) under this regulation, including the implications of those uncertainties for the Environmental Impact Assessment and its findings, measures taken to reduce uncertainties in those findings to as low as reasonably practicable and manage any remaining uncertainties,] [PEW]

(j) A[n][PEW - delete] [outline] [description] [PEW - replace] of hazards arising from natural, accidental and discharge events, for example related to extreme weather, natural hazards, accidental events, maritime safety, emergency response,

(k) A[n outline][PEW - delete] [description][PEW] of waste management,

(l) A summary of key issues in the Environmental Impact Statement and how they will be addressed in the Environmental Management, and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plan,

[(m) [An overview of the downstream supply chain] [Nauru] [A description of responsible product stewardship][Nauru - delete] related to the intended use of the mineral-bearing ore once it leaves the [Contract] [Nauru] Area, [including how the Contractor will minimize effects on health, safety, environmental as well as socioeconomic and sociocultural impacts,][Nauru - delete]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete (m) entirely]

(n) A [summary][description] [PEW - replace] of [the nature, extent, participation and outcomes of][PEW] consultation[s that have taken place with Stakeholders, and how their comments have been addressed in the environmental impact assessment] [PEW] [and stakeholder engagement and methods][PEW - delete],

[(o) A summary of the study team outlining the people involved in the environmental impact assessment studies and in writing the Environmental Impact Statement,] [PEW]

5. The Environmental Impact Statement of every project, including any revisions, [should] [shall] [Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] be [made] [Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ] available on the [official] [Authority's] [Nauru - replace] website [of the] [International Seabed Authority]

[by the Secretary-General][PEW] in the interests of transparency of the whole process in accordance with regulation 9][ Nauru – delete] 2.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

**Explanation / comment**

- Please see my overall comments in the comment box to Regulation 47.

Specific comments relating to the draft regulation on Regulation 48;

- In relation to this draft regulation (48) I propose that the negotiations continue based on the joint textual proposal. This version has been inserted as “Regulation 48 alt.”
- Some participants have submitted proposals with changes to the original regulation 48 which I have attempted to incorporate to the extent possible.
- In paragraph 3 g) of Regulation 48, one participant has proposed to delete the reference to the Environmental Impact Statement being peer reviewed by competent independent experts, before submission. I have placed this in square brackets and invite for views on this.
- In paragraph 4 c, one participant has proposed to delete the reference to rules from the International maritime Organization and International Law in general. It has been placed in square brackets. I propose that these references are retained but invite for a discussion on this.
- It has been proposed to restructure paragraph 4 litra e, which entails the reference to “collection of baseline data” being deleted. This has been placed in square brackets and I invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant submitted a proposal for an alternative paragraph 3. However, I believe the joint textual proposal covers this, and I have therefore omitted this incoming proposal.

**[Regulation 48 bis [IWG ENV]**

**New Environmental Impact Assessment and Revised Environmental Impact Statement**

1. A Contractor shall conduct a new Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with regulation 47ter [PEW] and submit [a revised] [an additional] [PEW - replace] Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with regulation 57 when:

(a) A Material Change to an existing Plan of Work is proposed which is likely to increase the cause adverse Environmental Effects caused by the activities, that are unable to be mitigated by the measures identified in the previous Environmental Impact Assessment.

(b) A Material Change in the Marine Environment is detected through monitoring or other data sources which would call for a new or reviewed Environmental Impact Statement,

(c) ~~An activity~~ The Material Change described in the Plan of Work is predicted to exceed the impact thresholds set out in the Standards on environmental thresholds, as well as the impacts identified in the previous Environmental Impact Assessment;

(d) A relevant Standard, ~~and this activity, and or~~ predicted impact has not already been addressed by an Environmental Impact Statement,

(e) Otherwise deemed necessary by the Commission, in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines, e.g. when changes to an existing Plan of Work is proposed other than the type described under sub-paragraph (1)(a) or [when the Commission considers that the Environmental Impact Statement from the Revised Environmental Impact Assessment is not appropriate under Regulation 7 para. (5), or] [if relevant Standards and/or thresholds have been substantially revised, or] when the Commission requests an applicant to ~~change~~ amend its proposed Plan of Work during the application stage under Regulation 14, or

(f) When the Material Change of the proposed Plan of Work require changes in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, due to the impacts identified in the revised Environmental Impact Assessment;]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 48bis entirely]

#### **Regulation 48 bis alt.** [IWG ENV]

**[New Environmental Impact Assessment and Revised [additional] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Environmental Impact Statement] [Revision for change or new or increased effect or risk] [Nauru - replace]**

1. [If a Contractor becomes aware that any of the circumstances listed in paragraph 2 below have not been addressed by either an [environmental impact assessment or an environmental management and monitoring plan] [Environmental Impact Assessment or an Environmental Plan] [Pew - replace], it shall promptly notify the Secretary-General in writing including:

(a) a detailed description of the circumstance;

(b) details of the potential effect on or risk to the marine environment; and

(c) details of any environmental impact assessment conducted or to be conducted, or proposed modification to the environmental management and monitoring plan [or Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan] [IWG on UCH].] [Nauru] [A Contractor shall conduct a[n][Norway] [new][additional] [Norway - replace] Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with regulation 47ter and submit an additional revised Environmental Impact Statement [when][where] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace];] [Nauru – delete]

**[2.] A Contractor shall conduct an [additional new] Environmental Impact Assessment in accordance with Regulation 47 ter and submit an [additional] revised Environmental Impact Statement [where] [Pew - delete]**

[2. The circumstances contemplated by paragraph 1 are:] [Nauru; Pew supports]

(a) A [Material][Nauru; Australia – delete] [C][c]hange [Nauru] to an existing Plan of Work is proposed which is likely to [significantly] [Nauru] increase the adverse Environmental Effects [or risks] [Nauru] caused by the activities [and is not covered by paragraph 3 of regulation 57] [Nauru].

(b) A [Material][significant] [Nauru - replace] [Australia - delete] [C][c]hange [Nauru] in the Marine Environment [compared to baseline data] [Nauru] [and which is not the result of natural variability or natural changes in the Marine Environment] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] is detected through monitoring or other data sources [which would call for] [a new or reviewed][a revised] [Norway] Environmental Impact Statement, [delete -Nauru] [;] [Nauru].

[(b bis) prepare a revised Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan] [IWG on UCH]

(c) An activity described in the Plan of Work is predicted to [consistently and persistently] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] exceed the impact thresholds set out in the Standards on environmental thresholds [in a manner that results in demonstrated non-compliance with these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [;][;][Nauru – replace]

(d) [A relevant][The requirements of an applicable][Nauru – replace] Standard, activity or-predicted [significant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Australia - delete] impact has not already been addressed by an Environmental Impact Statement, or [environmental management and monitoring plan;] [Nauru]

(e) [Otherwise] [A review of existing Environmental Impact Assessment or Environmental plans is otherwise] [Pew - replace] deemed necessary by the Commission [or Council, in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines] [Nauru - delete] [including] [Pew] [following its review of a Contractors' activities contained in an annual report submitted pursuant to regulation 38 or review of a plan of work pursuant to regulation 58.] [Nauru]

[(3) The Secretary-General shall transmit the information received from the Contractor under paragraph 1 above to the Commission. The Commission shall assess the information and determine whether the Contractor shall:

(a) undertake an environmental impact assessment and prepare a revised environmental impact statement; or

(b) prepare a revised environmental management and monitoring plan.

[3. Alt. (3) The Secretary-General shall transmit the information received from the Contractor under paragraph 1 above to the Commission. The Commission shall assess the information and determine whether the Contractor shall undertake an Environmental Impact Assessment and propose a revised Environmental Impact Statement or other modification to the plan of work in accordance with Regulation 57.] [Pew]

[(4) For the avoidance of doubt, any Environmental Impact Assessment and revision to an Environmental Impact Statement conducted pursuant to this regulation shall be subject to the full processes prescribed in these Regulations.] [Pew – suggests as new para 4, as following paragraphs are suggested deleted]

[(4) Where required by the Commission [under paragraph 3] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], the Contractor shall submit a revised environmental impact statement

or revised environmental management and monitoring plan [or Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan] [TWG on UCH] to the Commission for review.

(5) Where the Commission determines that any change to the statement or plan constitutes a material change, the procedure set out in regulation 11 shall apply.] [Nauru]

[5. Where the Commission determines that any change to the statement or plan constitutes a Material Change, the procedure set out in Regulation 11] [57] [Norway - replace] shall apply.

6. In the course of conducting a new Environmental Impact Assessment and preparing a revised Environmental Impact Statement as required by any Material Change, a Contractor shall endeavour to engage with potentially directly affected Stakeholders, and in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter], the Standards, and taking into consideration the Guidelines.

7. The Contractor shall also conduct a consultation regarding the revised Environmental Impact Statement in accordance with Regulation 93 bis.] [Pew - delete paragraphs 4 to 7 entirely]

[8. For the avoidance of doubt, the Contractor may continue its operations in accordance with its approved Plan of Work, Environmental Impact Statement and Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, while preparing any revisions in accordance with paragraphs 3 through 7 and while the Commission is considering any such revisions.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

[Spain – delete DR48bis entirely and include relevant provisions in DR57]

**Explanation / comment**

- Please see my overall comments to the submitted work in the comment box to Regulation 47.

Specific comments relating to the draft regulation on Regulation 48 bis;

- In relation to draft regulation 48 bis I propose that the joint textual proposal will be the base which we work with going forward. This is listed as “Regulation 48 bis alt.”
- Several participants have submitted proposals with changes to regulation 48 bis” (the original version) which I have attempted to incorporate to the extent possible.
- In litra e, two different proposals suggest listing additional examples relating to when the Commission could find it necessary to require the contractor to produce a new Environmental Impact Assessment and Revised Environmental Impact Statement. Both proposals have been inserted but placed in individual square brackets. I invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant suggested inserting a new litra “d bis” relating to “when the Material Change of the proposed Plan of Work require changes in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, due to the impacts identified in the revised Environmental Impact Assessment”. However, I believe this suggestion should be placed

as an individual (i.e. new) litra, wherefore this has been inserted as a new “litra f”. I invite for views on this.

#### Regulation 48 ter [IWG ENV]

#### [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] mining

1. Subject to this Regulation, an applicant ~~or~~ ~~[China - delete]~~ a contractor ~~[Japan]~~ shall conduct a “~~test~~ ~~[Pilot]~~ ~~[China - replace]~~ mining” ~~[prior]~~ to ~~[Norway - delete]~~ ~~[before starting any commercial~~ ~~[mining]~~ ~~[Production]~~ ~~[China - replace]~~ under an ~~[Norway]~~ ~~[submitting an application for a Plan of Work for]~~ ~~[Norway - delete]~~ ~~Exploitation~~ ~~[Japan - delete]~~ ~~[contract]~~ ~~[Norway]~~ ~~[Indonesia - delete]~~ ~~and~~ ~~[Spain]~~ ~~[before starting commercial~~ ~~mining under an Exploitation contract]~~ ~~[Japan]~~. Information gathered through “~~test~~ ~~[Pilot]~~ ~~[China - replace]~~ mining” shall be compiled in a ~~test~~ ~~[Pilot]~~ ~~[China - replace]~~ mining report ~~[in accordance with Annex IV]~~ ~~[China - delete]~~, be in accordance with ~~[and take into account]~~ ~~[Norway, Nauru, Japan, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[the~~ ~~[relevant]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[applicable]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ Standard ~~and~~ ~~[take into account the]~~ ~~[Norway, Nauru, Japan, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[Spain - delete]~~ ~~[relevant]~~ ~~[Norway]~~ ~~[applicable]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ Guideline ~~[.]~~ ~~[Norway]~~ ~~[and]~~ shall ~~[to]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ inform ~~[on the]~~ ~~[an]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~Environmental Plans application for a Plan of Work for Exploitation~~ ~~[Norway - delete]~~ ~~pursuant to Regulation 11~~ ~~[Japan - delete]~~ ~~[and its evaluation by the Commission]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ ~~[if applicable]~~ ~~[Russia]~~. ~~[The purpose of the “test-mining” is to validate that the equipment and the effects of the activity, in particular with regard to the protection of the environment, operates in accordance with the Contract/Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work.]~~ ~~[Norway]~~ ~~[China - delete]~~

2. “Test mining” means an *in situ* testing ~~[that doesn't have harmful effects on the marine environment]~~ ~~[Spain]~~ ~~[sufficiently scaled to provide sufficient data]~~ ~~[United Kingdom]~~ of the integrated system of all ~~relevant~~ equipment ~~(e.g. collector, raiser and release techniques)~~ and ~~[all related]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ process steps ~~([e.g.] [including the] [Nauru - replace] collector, [raiser] [riser] [Nauru - replace] and release techniques)~~ for ~~an~~ ~~[exploitation activities]~~ ~~[Exploitation]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ in a contract area ~~under~~ ~~[such]~~ ~~[appropriate]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ technical, spatial and temporal conditions ~~[.]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ ~~which~~ ~~[allows]~~ ~~[the]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ “test mining” ~~to provide~~ ~~[to provide]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[for the provision of]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[PEW - delete]~~ ~~[provides]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ evidence ~~[that there is no harmful effects on the marine environment and]~~ ~~[Spain]~~ ~~[to support the]~~ ~~[information provided by an applicant in its application for a]~~ ~~[Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Impact Statement of a]~~ ~~[Spain - replace]~~ ~~Plan of Work for Exploitation, and to assist the Commission~~ ~~[and the Council]~~ ~~[Germany, PEW]~~ in its evaluation of the application ~~[.]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[Nauru - delete]~~ ~~[for a Plan of Work]~~ ~~[Spain - delete]~~ ~~[against criteria contained in regulation 13, including demonstrating]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ ~~[against the criteria contained in Regulation 13 and 15.]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ ~~[to ensure demonstrate]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ that the proposed mining equipment is technically ~~and operationally~~ ~~[appropriate]~~ ~~[feasible]~~ ~~[Nauru - replace]~~, ~~and that assumptions regarding impacts on~~ ~~[whether]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML,~~

BMJ] the Marine Environment [is][Nauru – delete] effectively protected from [harmful effects] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]. [in accordance with article 145 of the Convention,] [Nauru] can be validated. [Monitoring][Nauru] [D][d]ata [Nauru – lower case] collected during test mining can be used to validate numerical models and predict including the cumulative effects, [in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention][Nauru – delete] [PEW – delete] and that the effects could be monitored. “Test mining” should also be undertaken [in order to][with a view to] [Nauru - replace] optimiz[e][ing][Nauru – replace] the integrated system with regard to its potential effects on the Marine Environment.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [Germany – delete]

[Norway – delete para 2 entirely] [Nauru, Germany – remove brackets enclosing para 2]

[2.alt. The [purpose of][Norway – delete] test mining [shall contribute to ensuring][Norway] [is to ensure] [that][the] [Norway] [the proposed mining equipment and activity are technically appropriate and that] [Japan] effective protection of the marine environment from harmful effects [is ensured][Norway - delete]. Test mining projects shall as a general rule provide evidence that appropriate equipment is available to ensure the effective protection of the Marine Environment in accordance with Article 145.]

[Nauru, Germany, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 2 alt entirely]

[2.alt.1 ‘Test mining’ means an in situ testing of the integrated system of all relevant equipment (e.g. collector, raiser and release techniques) and all related process steps for an exploitation activities under such technical, spatial and temporal conditions (which allows to provide evidence to ensure that the proposed mining equipment is technically appropriate, that the Marine Environment is effectively protected from harmful effects, including the cumulative effects as far as possible, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention and that the effects could be monitored.)][Norway]

[2.alt.2 “Pilot Mining” is conducted by a Contractor in its preparation for commencement of Commercial Production, and to assist the Commission in its evaluation of the Feasibility Study] [China]

[2.bis. The purpose of the “test-mining” is to validate that the equipment and the effects of the [exploitation] [Spain] activity, in particular with regard to the protection of the environment, [do not harm the marine environment and] [Spain] operates as described in the Environmental Impact Statement / [of a] [Spain - replace] Plan of Work [for exploitation] [Spain].] [Norway]

[2.bis.alt The purpose of the “Pilot Mining” is to validate that the proposed mining equipment is commercially and technically appropriate and the effects of the activity, in particular with regard to the Protection of the environment, operates as described in the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work.] [China]

[3. “[Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] mining” in the Area requires a prior approval by the [Commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; China supports] Authority [consistent with the criteria in Regulation 13(1).] [Nauru, PEW – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and shall be carried out with reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment, in accordance with articles 87 and 147 of the Convention, and in accordance with the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standard and taking into account

[the][any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [relevant][applicable] [Nauru] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [consideration] [Spain - replace] Guideline[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and][or][Nauru – replace] Recommendations [issued by the Commission under the Exploration Regulations] [Nauru] [China - delete], in particular to ensure [that the Marine Environment is effectively protected from] [effective protection for the marine environment from] [China - replace] [harmful effects] [Nauru; China; Pew; Spain – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [s][S]erious [h][H]arm [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize], [including the cumulative effects] [Nauru – delete] [China - delete], in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. [The Exploration Regulations/ Standards /Guidelines /Recommendations on Test Mining are hereby amended as set out below and in the SGR. These amendments supersede and replace the relevant Exploration RSGR on test mining. In the event of any inconsistency between the two sets of RSGR on Test Mining, the Exploitation RSGR shall prevail.

... provide Exploration Test Mining amendments here ...] [ACOPS]

[Norway – delete para 3 entirely]

[3.alt ‘Test mining’ requires a prior approval by the Authority in the form of an Exploration or Exploitation contract, and shall be carried out in accordance with the relevant (Rules of the Authority) (alternative text: Rules of the Authority including the relevant Standards and taking into account the relevant Recommendations and Guidelines), (in particular to ensure that the Marine Environment is effectively protected from harmful effects, including the cumulative effects, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention.)] [Norway]

4. [“]Test [m][M]ining[”] [Nauru – insert quotations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] does not have to be undertaken if the [information] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [evidence pursuant [contemplated by] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [P][p]aragraph [Nauru – lower case] [1][2][PEW; NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] has been provided through other [“test-mining”] [“Test-Mining”] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] [undertaken] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] [nby] [Norway –delete][Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete “n”] the applicant, by other contractors, or [in the context of] [under] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] another approved Plan of Work for exploration or exploitation. [In such a case,][Where] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] the applicant [relies on such information, it][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] shall compile [the information] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] [in its “T][t]est-[M][m]ining” [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] report] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [the information [in its “test-mining” report] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [already available] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] and explain] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [together with an explanation as to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] why this [information] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] is sufficient [evidence] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [for the purposes of paragraph 2.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [China – delete para 4 entirely]

[4bis] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [t][T]he [NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] Commission shall [in its review of an] [application] [request] [Nauru - supports] assess whether the [evidence] [information provided by the applicant in its [M][m]est [M][m]ining [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] report] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] pursuant to [P][p]aragraph [NORI, TOML, BMJ – lowercase] [1][2][PEW-replace] [4]



[NORI, TOML, BMJ- replace] [above] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [has been demonstrated] [NORI, TOL, BMJ – delete] [demonstrates the requirements set out in paragraph 2] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [in its review of the application] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [request][Norway, Germany] [is sufficient to demonstrate compliance with the requirements set out in paragraph 2 above] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] and [shall] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] report [accordingly] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11-15.

[4.bis. The Commission shall, in its review of an application assess whether the information provided by the applicant in its test mining report pursuant to paragraph 1 above is sufficient to demonstrate the requirements set out in paragraph 2 above, and shall report accordingly to the Council pursuant to Regulations 11-15] [Nauru]

[5. [Before Commercial Production may commence in accordance with Regulation 25] [PEW] After the approval of a Plan of Work, a validation monitoring system shall be established by the contractor, in line with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, in order to monitor whether the requirements of the Plan of Work are complied with. In case of non-compliance, Regulation 52 will apply.]

[Norway, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 5 entirely]

[5.alt After the “test mining”, the Contractor shall submit to the Commission a test-mining report. The test mining report shall provide information on the findings from the test-mining, in accordance with the relevant Standards taking into account the relevant Guidelines. The test-mining report shall provide the Commission with sufficient information to review the results in light of the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work.] [Norway]

[6. [The][Any][Nauru – replace] gains from mineral resources which have been collected during ‘Test’ [Pilot] [China - replace] mining’ shall be paid to the Environmental Compensation Fund, as established by Regulation 54.][To this end, and prior to the commencement of Commercial Production, a contractor shall provide the Authority with a test mining royalties report containing the information specified in the applicable Standard in respect of any minerals collected during ‘test mining’. Royalties in respect of mineral resources that have been collected during ‘test mining’ shall be paid at the time the contractor makes its first payment of royalties after the date it commences Commercial Production.] [Nauru]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 6 entirely]

[6 alt. Prior to the commencement of Commercial Production, the contractor shall provide the [Authority] [Secretary-General] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] with a test mining royalties report containing the information specified in the [applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standard[s] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and [taking into account any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Guidelines in respect of any minerals collected [and sold] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] during ‘test mining’. Royalties in respect of mineral resources that have been collected during ‘test mining’ shall be paid at the time the contractor makes its first payment of royalties after the date it commences Commercial Production.]

[Nauru – merge para 6 alt with para 6] [Germany – delete 6.alt entirely]

[6.bis The Commission shall, without undue delay, review the findings of the test-mining study in light of the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work. If the findings of the “test mining” are in accordance with the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work, the Commission shall notify the Contractor, and the Contractor may commence commercial production in accordance with the Contract.] [Norway]

[7. If a [m][M]aterial [c][C]hange [PEW – capitalize] has been determined in accordance with Regulation 25 and 57 (2), the [relevant organ of the Authority] [Commission] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] [Council] [China - replace] shall [consider and] [China - delete] determine whether and on which aspects an [y][Nauru] additional “Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] mining” ~~has~~ may have to be undertaken [based on the recommendation of the Commission] [China] in order to provide sufficient information [pursuant][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to [satisfy the requirements of] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] paragraph (2) [Nauru – delete brackets]. In this case, paragraphs (1) [Nauru – delete brackets] and (3) [Nauru – delete brackets] [above] [Nauru] apply.] [PEW enclose para 7 in brackets]

[Norway – delete para 7 entirely]

[7.alt If a material change has been determined in accordance with Regulation 25 and 57 (2), the Commission shall consider and determine whether the Contractor needs to make revisions in their equipment and the relevant documents provided to the Authority. The Commission may also consider whether and on which aspects an additional “test mining” should be undertaken in order to provide sufficient information pursuant to paragraph (2). In this case, paragraphs (1) and (3) apply.] [Norway]

[8. After the [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] Mining, the Contractor shall submit to the Commission a [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace]-mining report. The Test Mining report shall provide information on the findings from the [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] mining, in accordance with the Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines. The test-mining report shall provide the Commission with [sufficient] [required] [China - replace] information to review the [results] [findings] [China - replace] in light of the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work. [The Commission shall, without undue delay, review the findings of the Pilot Mining study and make recommendations to the Council.] [China]

9. The [Commission] [Council] [China - replace] shall, without undue delay, [review] [consider] [China - replace] the findings of the [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] -mining study in light of the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work [based on the recommendation of the Commission] [China]. If the findings of the [Test] [Pilot] [China - replace] Mining are in accordance with the Environmental Impact Statement/Plan of Work, the [Commission shall notify the Contractor, and] [the Council shall make an affirmative decision and notify the Contractor through the Secretary General. Thereafter] [China - replace] the Contractor may commence Commercial Production in accordance with the Contract.]

#### Explanation / comment

- In paragraph 1, one participant has suggested to delete the word “prior” regarding whether test mining should be done before

submitting an application for Plan of Work. I have placed it in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.

- The Intersessional Working Group on “Underwater Cultural Heritage” has submitted a proposal for an alternative wording of paragraph 2. This has been inserted as “paragraph 2 alt.” I thank the group for its hard work and propose that the groups work will be used as basis for paragraph 2 in regulation 48 ter going forward as it is a clear, streamlined paragraph. However, as I also believe it is important to retain the level of detail in paragraph 2, I propose to relocate this section to the relevant standard or guideline, e.g. the “draft standard and guidelines for the environmental impact assessment process” which can be found on the ISA’s website ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)). I have suggested this in the accompanying Matrix. I invite for views on this.
- In paragraph 3 it suggested to change the reference to effectively protecting the Marine Environment against “harmful effects” to protecting it against “serious harm”. I propose to keep the original wording (“harmful effects”) as it covers a broader term, but I have put it in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.
- An alternative for paragraph 6 has been submitted and is inserted as paragraph 6 alt. However, I believe the current paragraph 6 is adequate clear and precise and I therefore instead propose to move paragraph 6 alt to the relevant guideline, e.g. the “draft standard and guidelines for the environmental impact assessment process” which can be found on the ISA’s website ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)). I have suggested this in the accompanying Matrix. I invite for views on this.

### Section 3

#### Pollution control and management of waste

##### Regulation 49 [IWG ENV]

##### Pollution control

1. A Contractor shall take ~~all~~ ~~necessary~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace]~~ ~~the necessary~~ ~~[the necessary]~~ ~~[Ireland]~~ ~~all the necessary~~ ~~[Brazil]~~ and appropriate measures to protect ~~and preserve~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ the Marine Environment ~~and the coastlines~~ ~~from [harmful effects]~~ ~~[Serious Harm]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention, ~~[including]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ by preventing, reducing and controlling pollution and other hazards, ~~[[including marine litter and underwater noise,]]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Brazil – remove brackets]~~ ~~[that arise]~~ ~~[directly or indirectly resulting]~~ ~~[Brazil - replace]~~ from its activities in the Area. This is to be done ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ in accordance with its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan ~~and the Convention,~~ ~~the Agreement,~~ and all relevant Rules of the Authority ~~the relevant applicable~~ ~~Regional Environmental Management Plan,~~ and taking account ~~of the~~ ~~Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ the applicable Standards ~~and taking into account the]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML,~~

BMJ] [or][NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Guidelines and the relevant applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan. [If a potentially polluting wreck is discovered and it is an object of an archaeological and historical nature, then the duty to protect such heritage must also be considered consistent with Article 149 of the Convention.] [China, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

#### Regulation 49 alt

1. A Contractor shall take [all the] [Australia – delete] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] necessary [and appropriate][Nauru, Australia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] measures to protect [and preserve] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Marine Environment[, including [the][Nauru] [and] [protecting] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] coastline[s]] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [from harmful effects] [Australia] [from harmful effects, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention,] [Germany] by preventing, reducing and controlling pollution [and other hazards, including marine litter [greenhouse gas emission,] [PEW] and underwater noise, [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [arising] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [directly resulting] [Nauru] from its activities in the Area]. This is to be done in accordance with [Nauru] [pursuant to] [Nauru] its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan[,][Nauru] [and all][the][Nauru – replace] relevant Rules of the Authority, [the relevant applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan,] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Argentina - delete] [the applicable Standards and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] taking [into] [Nauru] account [of][Nauru – delete] [the applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Guidelines [and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan][Nauru; Argentina] [Best Available Scientific information, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, the environmental thresholds contained in the Standards, the need for sufficient information, and the risks to Environmental Effects on the Marine Environment arising from Exploitation] [DOSI - replace].

#### **Explanation / comment**

On Draft Regulation 49

Proposals received after the first and the second Part of 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included in Draft Regulation 49 – which is now Draft Regulation 53bis.

#### **Explanation / comment**

Overall comments to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes:

- As I also stated in my introduction, we managed to go through regulations 44 – 48 ter during our last meeting in July, wherefore changes to these regulations submitted before that meeting have been accepted. However, as the following regulations (and annexes) were not discussed in July, the changes proposed to these (submitted before the last meeting) are still visible in track change alongside my comments to these.
- Furthermore, submissions which have been sent by participants before this meeting pertaining to these regulations (49-61 plus

annexes) have also been incorporated to the extent possible and I have added comments to these when relevant.

Specific comments to Regulation 49:

- The Intersessional Working Group on “Underwater Cultural Heritage” has submitted a proposal for an alternative wording of the regulation. This has been inserted as “Regulation 49 alt.” I thank the group for its hard work and propose that the groups work will be used as basis for Regulation 49 going forward. Alternatively, the two versions could be attempted merged. I invite for views on this.
- To Regulation 49, I noted during our last meeting that some participants requested the insertion of a reference to Article 145 of the Convention relating to protection of the marine environment, including coastlines. This has been included.
- It has been suggested to change the reference to protecting the Marine Environment against “harmful effects” to protecting it against “serious harm”. I propose to keep the original wording (“harmful effects”) as it covers a broader term, but I have put both words in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant submitted a proposal to include a reference to “coastline” while other participants now have proposed deleting it. It has been placed in square brackets. I note that this is not defined in the Schedule and invite for a discussion on whether this should be included.
- During our last meeting it was also discussed whether the explicit reference to “marine litter” and “underwater noise” should be kept. I noted support for keeping this. However, I also noted that several participants during our meeting requested general language, e.g. by referring to protecting the marine environment from harmful effects according to art. 145. This has therefore not been deleted but placed in square brackets. I invite for a discussion on this matter.
- One participant proposed to delete the reference to polluting wrecks and Article 149 of the Convention. However, I noted support for this wording during our last meeting and have therefore kept it. I invite for a discussion on this.

#### **Regulation 50 [IWG ENV]**

##### **[Restriction on Mining Discharges [Brazil - delete]**

1.A Contractor shall not dispose, dump or discharge into the Marine Environment any Mining Discharge, except where such disposal, dumping or discharge is permitted in accordance with:

(a) The assessment framework for Mining Discharges as set out in the applicable [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standard;

(b) The [Plan of Work and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and

(c) [Relevant] [Nauru] [I][i]nternational[ly] [Nauru] [agreed] [applicable] [applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures [as set out in the applicable Standard.][Nauru]. [established by the International Maritime Organization] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] regulations set out by the International Maritime Organization.]

[PEW – delete sub para c entirely]

[c.bis. these regulations.] [PEW]

2. Paragraph 1 [notwithstanding, a Contractor may nonetheless make such a] [PEW] [above shall not apply if such][PEW - delete] [a][PEW] disposal, dumping or discharge into the Marine Environment [where it] [PEW] is necessary for the safety of the vessel or Installation or the safety of human life, provided that such disposal, dumping or discharge is conducted so as to [prevent][Germany] all [minimize the likelihood possibility of] [Germany – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - keep] [Serious H][h]arm [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] to [human life][ Germany, Australia, PEW] [and][Australia] human life and prevent Harm to [and harm to][PEW] [and to] [Germany] the Marine Environment. If [Serious] Harm [NORI, TOML, BMJ – keep “Serious Harm”] to the Marine Environment occurs as a result of disposal, dumping or discharge, the Contractor shall [, upon safe working conditions being restored,][PEW] monitor, [and] Mitigate [and remediate] [manage][PEW] and manage [Germany] the impacts of such [harm] [Serious Harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], and shall report forthwith about such disposal, dumping or [discharge] to the Authority.] [This constitutes a Notifiable Event under regulation 34 and Appendix 1.] [Germany, PEW] [Such disposal, dumping or discharge shall constitute a notifiable event under regulation 34 and Appendix 1.] [Australia]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 2 entirely]

[2.Alt. Paragraph 1 [above shall not apply if such][PEW - delete] [notwithstanding may nonetheless make such a] [PEW] disposal, dumping or discharge into the Marine Environment is necessary for the safety of the vessel or Installation or the safety of human life, provided that such disposal, dumping or discharge is conducted so as to minimize the likelihood of harm to human life and [prevent Harm][Nauru – delete] to the Marine Environment.]

[Germany, Australia; – delete 2.alt entirely] [Brazil – delete everything after “Discharge” (chapeau para 1)]

3. The disposal, dumping or discharge into the Marine Environment of any Mining Discharge [that is not permitted in accordance with paragraphs 1 [and 2][Australia – delete] above] [Brazil - delete] is considered an unauthorized Mining Discharge and constitutes a Notifiable Event under regulation 34 and Appendix 1.

4. [The applicant or][A] [Nauru – replace] contractor [must maintain] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [also] [Nauru – delete] [shall] [Nauru] keep [NORI TOML, BMJ – delete] a register of [mining] [Nauru] discharges.[.][Nauru] [to be updated at least [weekly] [monthly,] where possible, allowing to it be consulted in real] that shall be [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] report[ed] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – deleted] [discharges] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] annually] [Nauru – delete] [A summary report of such register shall be included in a contractor’s annual report] [Nauru] to the Authority [under regulation 38.][Nauru] [as part of [the mandatory] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [its] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] annual report [under regulation 38] [NORI, TOML,

BMJ] [that must be prepared throughout the operation] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]. [Nauru - delete]

[[4. Alt. The applicant or Contractor must continuously monitor its Mining Discharges and maintain a register that is reported to the Authority least weekly in addition to the mandatory annual report pursuant to Regulation 38.]] [Nauru - delete]

[4.bis The applicant or contractor must also keep a register of discharges to updated immediately after any discharge event.] [Germany]]

[Brazil – delete para 4 and 4bis entirely]

#### Explanation / comment

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- One proposal included a request for referencing relevant international law in para 1. I have attempted to merge that proposal with the existing *litra c* in the paragraph and this by referencing the relevant wording of the Convention.
- One participant has submitted an alternative to paragraph 2. This is inserted as paragraph “2.Alt.”. I invite for comments on this.
- One participant had submitted a request to refer to the Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping Wastes and Other Matters, 1972 and the 1996 Protocol (the “London Convention”). I propose to not include such a reference. Both the London Convention and the London Protocol explicitly exclude deep seabed mining activities from their scope of application. In particular, the London Protocol, article 1(4)(3) excludes from the definition of “Dumping”, the disposal or storage of wastes or other matter directly arising from, or related to the exploration, exploitation and associated offshore processing of seabed mineral resources. Furthermore, it should be recalled that UNCLOS provides a specialised regime for the conduct of activities in the Area and the protection of the marine environment. The overriding provisions of part XI and XII of UNCLOS places the obligation on the Authority to adopt rules, regulations and procedures in this respect, and no other authority or organization is mentioned or tasked in this respect. Finally, one should remember that several delegations to UNCLOS are not contracting parties to the London Convention, so also for that reason it would be doubtful to include such a reference.
- In paragraph 4 (previously para 5), it has been proposed to change the interval on how often the applicant or contractor must update the register of discharges from “weekly” to “monthly”. These suggestions are placed in square brackets. However, after given it careful consideration, I would – in my capacity of Facilitator – suggest deleting the phrase “to be updated at least [weekly] [monthly,] where possible” as the focal point of the provisions is the following reference to reporting annually to the Authority on any discharges. It is placed in double square brackets. Alternatively, I could also propose a reference to the register

being updated “immediately” after a discharge event. I invite for a discussion on this.

**Explanation / comment (2)**

Proposals received after the first part of 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included in Draft Regulation 50 – which is now Draft Regulation 53ter.

## Section 4 Compliance with Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans and performance assessments

### Regulation 51 [IWG ENV]

#### Compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

1. A Contractor shall, in accordance with these regulations, implement and adhere to its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan ~~and these regulations~~, and shall:

(a) Monitor continuously in accordance with the applicable Standard ~~s~~ and taking into consideration Guidelines on the environmental effects of its activities on the marine environment ~~United Kingdom~~, on Environmental Monitoring ~~Nauru, PEW - delete~~ ~~release~~ ~~and~~ ~~PEW~~ submit environmental monitoring data ~~publicly~~ ~~Nauru - delete~~, in accordance with regulation 46 ~~terbis~~, paragraph 4 ~~PEW - delete~~ ~~at least on a monthly basis~~ ~~PEW~~ in an accessible format consistent with best scientific practice, ~~in real-time~~ ~~where possible or at monthly intervals~~ ~~PEW - delete~~ on a monthly basis and report annually under regulation 38 (2) (g) on ~~Norway - delete~~ the Environmental Effects of its activities ~~on the Marine Environment~~ ~~in the Area~~ ~~India - replace~~ Monitor continuously in accordance with the applicable Standard on environmental monitoring the environmental effects of its activities on the marine environment ~~Germany - replace~~ monitor contingently in accordance with the applicable Standard on environmental parameters ~~India~~ ~~in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into account relevant Guidelines~~ ~~PEW~~, including a comparison between baseline data and monitoring data, ~~as well as a comparison between baseline data and threshold values~~ ~~including an integrated comparison between the baseline data, monitoring data and the threshold balance~~ ~~India - replace~~, to document the actual effects on the Marine Environment ~~and~~ ~~the Contractor shall~~ ~~African Group - replace~~ manage all such effects as an integral part of its Exploitation activities as set out in the relevant Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines referred to in regulation 45 ~~PEW - delete~~ ~~Nauru - delete~~ ~~as this includes comparing baseline data and monitoring data as well as comparing baseline data with threshold values~~ ~~African Group~~;

(b) Report annually in writing, to the Secretary-General ~~,~~ as well as to the Sponsoring State, ~~Indonesia~~ on the implementation and results of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan in accordance with Regulation 38, paragraph 2(g). The ~~Contractor~~ shall ~~submit to the Secretary General~~ environmental data and information in the required standardized format, in real



time or at ~~monthly intervals~~ ~~annually~~ ~~at the established interval~~ ~~Spain - replace~~ ~~as practically possible~~ ~~India~~, consistent with best scientific practices, and in accordance with the applicable Standards, and taking into account the applicable Guidelines. The Secretary General shall release the environmental data and information publicly in accordance with regulation ~~90 and~~ ~~Spain~~ 92bis. The Secretary-General shall transmit annual reports to the Commission for its consideration pursuant to article 165 of the Convention and publish them pursuant to Regulation 38(3).

(c) Provide ~~detailed~~ ~~African Group~~ information on the implementation and compliance of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan in its annual report in accordance with regulations 38, paragraph 2(g), for ~~through~~ ~~African Group~~ evaluation by the Legal and Technical Commission,] ~~Norway~~

~~(b)~~~~(d)~~~~Norway~~ ~~Apply best endeavours to improve~~ Implement all applicable mitigation and management measures to ensure the effective protection of the Marine Environment from harmful effects, as set out in the ~~plan,~~~~Nauru~~ ~~relevant~~ ~~applicable~~~~Nauru~~ Standards ~~, inter alia those referred to in regulation 45,~~~~Nauru - delete~~ and taking into account ~~relevant~~ ~~applicable~~ ~~Nauru~~ Guidelines ~~referred to in regulation 45;~~ and]

~~[NOR, TOML, BMJ - delete sub para a-b entirely]~~

~~(c)~~~~(e)~~~~Norway~~ Monitor compliance with, assess, and maintain the currency and adequacy of ~~the~~~~its~~~~Nauru - replace~~ Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and ~~its~~~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~ Environmental Management System during the term of its exploitation contract including ~~in accordance with the applicable Standards and taking account of the Guidelines, as a result of~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ ~~through~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~ ~~as a result of~~ ~~Nauru~~ management ~~or audit~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ review ~~or audit~~~~Nauru~~ under regulation 46~~(3)~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ ~~or~~~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ~~, performance assessment under regulation 52, ~~or any~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ ~~and with~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~ ~~or any~~~~Nauru~~ modification to the Plan of Work under regulation 57 ~~where required~~~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~.

~~(c)bis~~ Provide written notification without undue delay to the Sponsoring States and the Secretary General, in accordance with Regulations 33 and 34, in case of a discrepancy noted between the predicted Environmental Impacts and Effects from the Environmental Impact Assessment and the Environmental Impacts and Effects actually observed on the ground. The notification shall include the monitoring data and a proposal of corrective actions, in accordance with the ~~Emergency Response and Contingency Plan.~~ ~~France~~

(d) Implement all applicable Mitigation and management measures ~~of the EMMP~~ ~~India~~ to ensure the effective Protection of the Marine Environment from ~~harmful effects~~ ~~Serious Harm~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace~~, ~~and to ensure that exploitation activities are conducted in a way that does not negatively affect Underwater Cultural Heritage~~ ~~IWG on UCH~~ as set out in the ~~plan and~~ ~~applicable~~ Standards and taking into account ~~applicable~~ Guidelines; and

(e) Monitor compliance with, assess, and maintain the currency and adequacy of ~~its~~ Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and its Environmental Management System during the term of its Exploitation Contract, including as a result of management review ~~or audit~~ under Regulation 50 bis, ~~or any~~ performance assessment under Regulation 52, and with modification to the Plan of Work under Regulation 57.

(e)bis Provide information on how the mitigation and management measures identified in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan are capable in responding to the environmental impacts and environmental effects from unforeseeable incident, if any. [Indonesia]

**Explanation / comment**

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- A submission proposed to delete the reference in point a to publicly submitting the monitoring data. I have placed this in square brackets and invite for views on this.

**[Regulation 51 /IWG ENV]**

**[Assessment of] Compliance with Environmental Management and Monitoring obligations**

1. The Commission shall review the data submitted by the Contractor [monthly/annually] pursuant to regulation X(2)[ upon receipt].

2. [The Contractor shall review the implementation of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan [on a regular basis]. Such review shall include:

(a) The efficacy, timeliness, relevance and accuracy of flow of information and data derived from monitoring the Exploitation activities and its impacts on the Marine Environment, and Impact Area, [including the Mining Area]; and

(b) The accuracy of the findings of the Environmental Impact Assessment as set out in the Environmental Impact Statement.]

3. If the Commission considers that [the environmental] monitoring data submitted pursuant to regulation X(2), or its quality, indicates that the Contractor does not meet its obligations, the Commission shall refer the matter to the Compliance Committee without undue delay. The Secretary-General shall notify the Contractor, the Sponsoring State, and the Council that the matter has been referred.

4. Where, as the result of the review by the Commission under Regulation 52 paragraph 7, the Commission concludes that a Contractor has failed to comply with [the terms and conditions of][any commitment in] its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, the Commission shall refer the matter to the Compliance Committee. The Secretary-General will notify the Contractor, Sponsoring State and Council that the matter has been referred.

5. The Compliance Committee shall assess any matter referred to it under this Regulation paragraph 4 and 5 and take any necessary actions consistent with regulation 102 and 103. [This may include:

(a) Requesting the Commission to provide further information as to the facts and circumstances giving rise to the referral of this matter; [redacted]

(b) Convening, with the support of the Secretary-General, a process to liaise with the Contractor [and to agree any corrective and timebound action]; [redacted]

(c) Exercising the powers conferred upon the Committee under paragraph 1 of Regulation 103; or, [redacted]

(d) Inviting the Council's attention to the matter.]

**Explanation / comment (2)**

The above text for DR51 has been proposed by the intersessional working group on Environmental Management and Monitoring after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session. It must be read in conjunction with the proposals made for 49 – previously DR46bis – DR50 – previously DR46ter –

DR50bis – previously DR46 –, DR52 and a new DRX (still to be numbered, and which has been placed after DR50).

## Regulation 52 [IWG ENV]

### [Review of the] [Norway – delete] Performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

1. A Contractor shall conduct performance assessments of [their][its] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan [in accordance with this Regulation] [PEW]. The Commission shall review the performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan [undertaken [by a competent and independent auditor hired] [Norway – delete] by a Contractor] [Norway – delete] in accordance with the [relevant][applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOL, BMJ – replace] Standard[s][Nauru – delete] and taking account of the [relevant][applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Guidelines. [In conducting such a performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, the Contractor shall ensure assess: [Nauru – delete]

(a) The compliance of the mining operation with the mitigation and management measures included in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, as a part of the approved Plan of Work;

(b) The continued appropriateness and adequacy of the plan, including the management conditions and actions attaching thereto;

(c) ~~The conformity of the plan with [the][PEW – delete] plan [measures included in] [takes into account] [Argentina - replace] the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and take into consideration [PEW – delete] with the [Germany – delete] applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan [including any revisions or updates to the Regional Environmental Management Plan that [may be adopted from time to time] [might have been adopted] [Spain - replace] [PEW], if any~~

(d) The accuracy of the findings of the [e][E]nvironmental [i][I]mpact [a][A]ssessment [Norway, PEW – capitalize] as set out in the Environmental Impact Statement.

(e) [The][Nauru, PEW - delete] [That][Nauru] [Any relevant][PEW] changes in knowledge, technology, mining patterns, monitoring techniques [and] [.] [IWG on UCH] detection capabilities [., and newly identified Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH] [that were not taken into account in developing or previously updating the EMMP which are relevant][PEW] are reflected [according to Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices][Nauru];

(f) The [ability of the Environmental Management System effectively to implement the EMMP, including the][PEW] outcomes of management reviews of the environmental management system [are][PEW – delete] conducted under regulation 46(2)(e); and

(g) Information and data derived from monitoring [at][Nauru – replace] the [mine site and][Nauru – delete] impact area [including the mining area][Nauru]

as well as from any Exploitation by other Contractors [Nauru] is provided [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete].

[(g)alt. The efficacy, timeliness, relevance and accuracy of flow of information and data derived from monitoring the Exploitation and its impacts on the Marine Environment.] [PEW]

[(g)(bis.1) The completeness of documentation and reporting on Underwater Cultural Heritage finds and impacts, including efficacy and sufficiency of protocols for reporting new discoveries of Underwater Cultural Heritage]; [IWG on UCH]

[(g)bis The implementation report of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, as well as the comments and evaluation from the Commission in accordance with Regulation 48 above.] [PEW - enclose g.bis in brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete (g)bis]

[(g)ter Any finding of the Inspectors, especially those findings that indicate the non-compliance of the Contractors towards the submitted and approved Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan, as well as the recommendations on measures to be taken as shown in the inspection [result report resulted] [Spain - replace].]

[Norway - enclose g.bis and g.ter in brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete (g)ter]

2. The frequency of a performance assessment shall be in accordance with the period specified in the approved Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and shall occur at least every twenty-four months [be undertaken by an Independent Auditor on an annual basis and by an accredited international or national organization every three years, pursuant to Regulation 50bis] [France - replace].

2bis. An [additional] [PEW] ad hoc performance assessment [under this regulation] [PEW] may [also] [PEW] be requested by the [[Council]] [Nauru - delete] [[Compliance body]] [Committee] [Nauru - replace and remove brackets] following:

- (a) An Incident [or Notifiable Event] [PEW] ~~or Notifiable~~;
- (b) Receipt of an unsatisfactory annual report;
- (c) Issuance of a compliance notice or

[(d) When deemed necessary by the [Council] [Nauru - delete] [Committee following investigation into] [Nauru] [in response to] [Nauru - delete] third-party ~~or whistle-blower~~ information submitted to the [Council] [Authority] [Nauru - replace].]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete sub para (d) entirely]

3. [The] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] A Contractor shall [hire a competent and independent auditor to compile and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] submit a [p] [P]erformance [a] [A]ssessment [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] [required for the purpose of this regulation, and shall submit the findings in a] [PEW] [r] [R]eport [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] to the Secretary-General [and the Sponsoring State] [Indonesia] in accordance with, and in the format set out in, [the applicable Standard, taking into account] [PEW] the [applicable Standard or applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] Guidelines.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete para 3 entirely]

3. Alt. [A] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace with “The”] Contractor shall compile and submit a Performance Assessment Report to the Secretary-General in accordance with, and in the format set out in, the applicable Standard.] [Nauru]

[Norway – delete para 3 entirely]

4. The Secretary-General shall publish [the][each] [PEW – replace] Performance Assessment Report [submitted in accordance with paragraph (3)][PEW] and provide opportunity for Stakeholders to comment, and at the end of that consultation period shall transmit the report and any Stakeholder’s comments to the Commission [and Compliance Committee / Inspector-General] [Nauru – delete]. The Commission shall [in consultation with the [Compliance Committee / Inspector-General]] [Nauru – delete] review a the [p][P]erformance [a][A]ssessment [r][R]eport [NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] and any stakeholder comments received [to it at its next available meeting, provided that the report has been circulated at least 30 Days in advance of such meeting][Nauru – delete] [within 60 days of receipt of such report and comments] [Nauru]. If the Commission does not possess sufficient expertise amongst its members, it shall consult independent experts to review the performance assessment. The Commission [should][shall] [Nauru – replace], where necessary and appropriate, consult external [competent independent] [PEW] [independent] [Germany] experts [to][in its] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] review [of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] the performance assessment. The Secretary General shall publish the report and provide opportunity for Stakeholders to comment, and at the end of that consultation period shall transmit the report and any Stakeholders’ comments to the Commission for review.

4. Alt. [The Contractor shall conduct a consultation regarding the Performance Assessment Report with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulation 93bis [and Regulation 93ter] [Micronesia].] [Nauru - delete] The Commission shall review the performance assessment report [and any stakeholder comments received] [Nauru – delete] [within 60 Days of receipt of such report [and comments] [Nauru - delete] ] [Nauru – remove brackets]. The [Commission] [Nauru – remove brackets] shall [may] [Nauru - replace], where necessary and appropriate, consult [external] [Nauru - delete] competent, independent experts in its review of the performance assessment.

5. Where the Commission upon review of the report [and any Stakeholder comments received in relation to it [under Regulation 93bis] [and Regulation 93ter] [Micronesia] [Nauru - delete], [and upon the advice of the [Compliance Committee / Inspector-General]] [Nauru – delete] considers the performance assessment to be unsatisfactory or the report submitted to be inadequate, ~~in~~ relation to the applicable Standards, [taking into account the][PEW] relevant Guidelines [and the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan][PEW - delete], the Commission may require, after providing the Contractor with a reasonable opportunity to address any inadequacies, the Contractor to:

(a) Submit any relevant supporting documentation or information requested by the Commission including a revised report; or

(b) Appoint, at the cost of the Contractor, an independent competent person to conduct the whole or part of the performance assessment and to compile a report for submission to the Secretary-General and review by the Commission.

[6. Where the Commission has reasonable grounds to believe that a performance assessment cannot be undertaken satisfactorily by a Contractor

consistent with the applicable Standards Guidelines, the Commission may procure, [the Commission may,][PEW] at the cost of the Contractor [and subject to consultation with the Contractor to agree on scope of the procurement] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru], [procure] [PEW] an [independent][PEW – delete] competent [person][ independent experts] [PEW – replace] to conduct the performance assessment and to compile the report.]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 6 entirely]

7. Where, as a result of paragraphs 5 and 6 above, a revised assessment and report is produced, paragraph 4 above shall apply to the revised assessment.

8. Where, as the result of a review by the Commission under paragraph 4 above, the Commission concludes that a Contractor has failed to comply with the terms and conditions of its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan or that the plan is determined to be inadequate in any material respect, the Commission shall :

(a) Recommend to the [Council] [Compliance Committee] [Nauru] to [consider][Nauru] issue [ing][Nauru] a compliance notice under regulation 103 or;

(b) Require the Contractor to deliver a revised Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, taking into account the findings and recommendations of the Commission. A revised plan shall be [treated the same as a modification of a Plan of Work pursuant to regulation 57 mutatis mutandis] [Germany, PEW] [subject to the process under regulation 11] [PEW - delete].

9. The Commission shall report annually to the Council on [such] [PEW – delete] performance assessments [conducted pursuant to this regulation,] [PEW] and any action taken pursuant to paragraphs 5 to 8 [by it or the Secretary-General][PEW -delete]. Such report shall include any relevant recommendations for the Council’s consideration [; and][PEW] [. Such report][PEW- delete] shall be published on the Authority’s website. [refer the matter to the Compliance Committee for consideration] [African Group - replace]

10. The Secretary-General shall inform the Sponsoring State or States of any action taken pursuant to this regulation.

#### Explanation/comment

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- A submission proposed to insert new litras “g bis” and “g ter” in paragraph 1. I see merit in especially proposed litra “g ter” but invite for a discussion on these.
- One participant proposed to have the reference in paragraph 2 bis to the “Council” deleted and instead refer to the “compliance body”. I have placed this in square brackets invite for views on this.
- Two participants submitted proposals relating to the Secretary-General publishing the Performance Assessment Report and providing opportunity for Stakeholders to comment and submit the report to the Commission. One participant submitted this as an amendment to paragraph 4 while the other proposed to include it

as a new paragraph “3bis”. I see merit in the proposals and have therefore included these. The two proposals were, to a large extent, similar in wording and content and I have therefore merged them into one amendment to (the beginning of) paragraph 4.

- During our last meeting, one participant reflected on possibly amend paragraph 1 to separately state/list the different elements of this provision. Another participant suggested to alter the structure of paragraph 1 to better align with the mining process. I propose that the listed elements in paragraph 1 *litras a-g ter* could be moved to the “Draft guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans” ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)) which I have also suggested in the accompanying Matrix. I invite for comments to these views and also encourage that concrete proposals for re-wording/re-structuring paragraph 1 are submitted to reflect these positions.

## **Regulation 52**

### **Performance assessments of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan**

1. [In addition to the continual internal assessment required pursuant to regulation 50(4), a)[A] Contractor shall [also periodically] conduct [or commission a formal] performance assessments of its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, [in accordance with this Regulation], the applicable Standard and taking into consideration the applicable Guideline]]. In conducting such a performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, the Contractor shall [, using an Independent Auditor,] assess:

(a) The continued appropriateness and adequacy of the plan, including the management conditions and actions attaching thereto;

(b) The conformity of the plan with [the objectives and] measures included in the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan [including any revisions or updates to the Regional Environmental Management Plan that may be adopted from time to time,];

(c) The accuracy of the findings of the Environmental Impact Assessment as set out in the Environmental Impact Statement[, upon which the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan was based];

(d) That any relevant changes in knowledge, technology, mining patterns, monitoring techniques and detection capabilities, [that were not taken into account in developing or previously updating the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan which are relevant,] are reflected [according to Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques and Best Environmental Practices];



(d) The reports of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, as well as the comments and evaluation from the Commission to the reports in accordance with Regulation 48 above, and any comments received by the [Commission/Compliance Committee] in accordance with Regulation 51.

2. The frequency of a performance assessment shall be in accordance with the period specified in the approved Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and shall occur at least every 24 months.

3. An [additional] ad hoc performance assessment [under this Regulation] may [also] be requested by the [Compliance Committee] following:

(a) An Incident [or Notifiable Event];

(b) Issuance of a compliance notice under Regulation 103; or

(c) When deemed necessary by the [Committee following investigation into third- party information submitted to the [Authority] or following investigation into matters referred by the Commission under regulation 51[ that results in sufficient evidence to suggest a breach of compliance has occurred].

4. A Contractor shall submit the results of a performance assessment in a performance assessment report to the Secretary-General in accordance with, and in the format set out in, the applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines[, and shall, as a minimum contain the following information

(a) information regarding the period applicable to the performance assessment;

(b) the scope of the assessment;

(c) the procedure used for the assessment;

(d) the evaluation criteria used during the assessment.]

5. [Before submission of the performance assessment report, the Contractor shall conduct a consultation on a draft performance assessment report in accordance with Regulation 93bis.]

6. The Commission shall review the performance assessment report in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking account of the Guidelines. [within 60 Days of receipt of such report and comments]. The Commission may, where necessary and appropriate, consult external competent, independent experts in its review of the performance assessment.

7. Where the Commission upon review of the report, considers the performance assessment to be unsatisfactory or the report submitted to be inadequate, the Commission may, after providing the Contractor with a

reasonable opportunity to address any inadequacies, require the Contractor to:

(a) Submit any relevant supporting documentation or information requested by the Commission including a revised report; or

(b) Appoint, at the cost of the Contractor, an independent competent person to conduct the whole or part of the performance assessment and to compile a report for submission to the Secretary-General and review by the Commission.

8. [Where, as a result of paragraph 7 above, a revised assessment and report is produced, a new consultation in accordance with Regulation 93 bis shall be conducted on the revised assessment.]

9. Where, as the result of a review by the Commission under paragraph 6 above, the Commission concludes that the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan is determined to be inadequate in any material respect, the Commission shall require the Contractor to deliver a revised Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, taking into account the findings and recommendations of the Commission. A revised plan shall be [treated the same way as a modification of a Plan of Work pursuant to Regulation 57 mutatis mutandis].

10. The Commission shall report annually to the Council on performance assessments [conducted pursuant to this Regulation,] and any action taken pursuant to paragraphs 6 to 9. Such report shall include any relevant recommendations for the Council's consideration, [and] shall be published on the Authority's website.]

#### **Explanation / comment (2)**

The above text for DR52 has been proposed by the intersessional working group on Environmental Management and Monitoring after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session. It must be read in conjunction with the proposals made for 49 – previously DR46bis – DR50 – previously DR46ter – DR50bis – previously DR46 –, DR51 and a new DRX (still to be numbered, and which has been placed after DR50).

#### **[Section 3 bis**

#### **Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan**

#### **[Regulation 52 bis**

#### **Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan**

1. Each applicant or Contractor shall prepare an Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan in accordance with this Regulation.

2. The purpose of an Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan is to manage and confirm that observed impacts and effects on Underwater Cultural Heritage are consistent with predicted Effects from the Environmental Impact Assessment and do not breach any of the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, including any applicable Standards on Underwater Cultural Heritage. The plan shall address any issues that arise under the Environmental Impact Statement and will set out commitments and procedures on how to monitor, mitigate and manage the Impacts and Effects and risks of Exploitation on Underwater Cultural Heritage.

3. The Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan shall include all elements and matters prescribed by the Authority in Annex xx to these Regulations and shall:

(a) incorporate any recommendations made by the Commission and approved by the Council, including measures and procedures on ;

(i) How Underwater Cultural Heritage will be safeguarded and protected;

(ii) What the management actions and responses will be to monitoring results and new knowledge;

(iii) What management and reporting systems will be adopted and followed;

(iv) Modification of practices based on monitoring results of intangible cultural heritage impacts;

(v) Incorporation of new information to protect Underwater Cultural Heritage;

(vi) Measures taken to preserve, protect and actively monitor Underwater Cultural Heritage;

(vii) Steps to be taken by the applicant or Contractor to engage with Stakeholders and take into consideration Guidelines, during the development of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan.

(viii) Ongoing consultation with stakeholders, including Indigenous Peoples and Local Communities, on the protection and safeguarding of intangible Underwater Cultural Heritage, according to the directions of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee.

4. The Applicant or Contractor shall submit the draft Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan to the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee and shall implement any additions, changes or deletions as directed by the Committee.]

**[Regulation 52 ter**

**Compliance with the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan**

Each Contractor shall, in accordance with these Regulations, implement and adhere to its Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan and shall:

- (a) Monitor continuously in accordance with applicable Standards on the effects of its activities on Underwater Cultural Heritage, to document the actual effects on Underwater Cultural Heritage and manage all such effects as an integral part of its Exploitation activities as set out in the applicable Standards and taking into consideration any applicable Guidelines
- (b) Report annually in writing to the Secretary-General on the implementation and results of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan. The Secretary-General shall transmit the reports to the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee and publish such reports in accordance with Regulation 92bis. The Secretary-General shall also transmit annual reports to the Commission and publish them pursuant to Regulation 38(3).
- (c) Provide information on the implementation and compliance of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan in its annual report in accordance with Regulation 38 for evaluation by the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee;
- (d) Implement all necessary mitigation and management measures to ensure the Protection and safeguarding of Underwater Cultural Heritage as set out in the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan and applicable Standards and taking into account applicable Guidelines;
- (e) Consult with Stakeholders as needed according to the recommendations and directions of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee and at least quarterly;
- (f) Follow the recommendations and directions of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee; and
- (g) Monitor compliance with, assess, and maintain the currency and adequacy of its Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan during the term of its Exploitation Contract, including as a result of management review or audit or any performance assessment under Regulation 52 quater, and with modification to the Plan of Work under Regulation 57, provided that the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee may make recommendations or directions to modify the Plan of Work.]

**[Regulation 52 quater**

## **Performance assessments of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan**

1. A Contractor shall conduct performance assessments of its Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, in accordance with this Regulation, in consultation with Stakeholders. The Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee shall review the performance assessments of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking account of the Guidelines. In conducting such a performance assessment of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, the Contractor shall assess:

- (a) The compliance of the Exploitation activities with the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, as a part of the approved Plan of Work;
- (b) The continued appropriateness and adequacy of the plan, including the management conditions and actions attaching thereto;
- (c) The conformity of the plan with measures included in the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan, including any revisions or updates to the Regional Environmental Management Plan that may be adopted from time to time;
- (d) The accuracy of the findings of the Environmental Impact Assessment as set out in the Environmental Impact Statement;
- (e) The outcomes of management reviews and audits of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan;
- (f) The implementation report of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, as well as the comments and evaluation from the Commission;
- (g) Any finding of the Inspectors, especially those findings that indicate the noncompliance of the Contractors towards the submitted and approved Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, as well as the recommendations on measures to be taken as shown in the inspection result.

2. The frequency of a performance assessment shall be in accordance with the period specified in the approved Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan and shall occur at least every 12 months. An additional ad hoc performance assessment may also be requested by the Compliance Committee following:

- (a) An Incident or Notifiable Event;
- (b) Receipt of an unsatisfactory annual report;
- (c) Issuance of a compliance notice; or

(d) When deemed necessary by the Compliance Committee or the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee following investigation into third party information submitted to the Authority.

3. A Contractor shall hire a competent and Independent Auditor to carry out the performance assessment required for the purpose of this Regulation and shall submit the findings in a report to the Secretary-General in accordance with, and in the format set out in the applicable Standards and taking into consideration applicable Guidelines.

4. The Contractor shall conduct a consultation regarding the Performance Assessment Report with all States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulation 93bis. The Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee shall review the performance assessment report and any stakeholder comments received within 60 Days of receipt of such report and comments. The Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee shall, where necessary and appropriate, consult external competent, independent experts in its review of the performance assessment.

5. Where the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee upon review of the report and any submission received in relation to it under Regulation 93 bis, considers the performance assessment to be unsatisfactory or the report submitted to be inadequate, to the applicable Standards and Guidelines, the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee may require, after providing the Contractor with a reasonable opportunity to address any inadequacies, the Contractor to:

(a) Submit any relevant supporting documentation or information requested by the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee including a revised report; or

(b) Appoint, at the cost of the Contractor, an independent competent person to conduct the whole or part of the performance assessment and to compile a report for submission to the Secretary-General and review by the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee.

6. Where the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee has reasonable grounds to believe that a performance assessment cannot be undertaken satisfactorily by a Contractor consistent with the applicable Standards, the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee may, at the cost of the Contractor, procure competent, independent experts to conduct the performance assessment and to compile the report.

7. Where, as a result of paragraphs 5 and 6 above, a revised assessment and report is produced, paragraph 4 above shall apply to the revised assessment.

8. Where, as the result of a review by the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee under paragraph 4 above, the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee concludes that a Contractor has failed to comply with the terms and conditions of its Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan or that

the plan is determined to be inadequate in any material respect, the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee shall:

(a) Recommend to the Compliance Committee to consider issuing a compliance notice under Regulation 103 or;

(b) Require the Contractor to deliver a revised Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan, taking into account the findings and recommendations of the Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee. A revised plan shall be treated the same way as a modification of a Plan of Work pursuant to Regulation 57 mutatis mutandis. If a revised Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan is required, the Contractor shall conduct a consultation regarding the revised Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan with States and Stakeholders in accordance with Regulations 93bis.

9. The Underwater Cultural Heritage Committee shall report annually to the Commission and the Council on performance assessments conducted pursuant to this Regulation, and any action taken pursuant to paragraphs 5 to 8. Such report shall include any relevant recommendations for the Council's consideration, and shall be published on the Authority's website.

10. The Secretary-General shall inform the Sponsoring State or States of any action taken pursuant to this Regulation.]]

#### Explanation / comment (2)

The above section 3bis (formed by DRs 52bis to 52quater) has been proposed following the work of the IWG on Underwater Cultural Heritage after Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

#### [Section 4 Emergency Response and Contingency Plan, Pollution control, management of waste] [Norway]

#### Regulation 53. ] [50bis] [Norway – delete] [IWG ENV] Emergency Response and Contingency Plan

1. [A Contractor] [The applicant or Contractor] [India - replace] shall [develop] [prepare] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [develop and implement] [African Group - replace] an Emergency Response and Contingency Plan [as part of its Plan of Work] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [prior] [together with] [China - replace] [in conjunction with] [African Group - replace] to the development and application [Nauru – delete] [as part] [Nauru] of [its] [Nauru] Plan of Work [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. [in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking account of the Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [taking into account the result of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking into account the applicable Guideline][Nauru]. Furthermore, a Contractor shall maintain:

1. Alt An applicant or contractor shall develop an emergency response and contingency plan in accordance with this Regulation, Annex 5, applicable standards, taking into account applicable guidelines and the result of the Environmental Impact Assessment. [United Kingdom]

1. Alt. A Contractor shall maintain [Pew]

(a) The currency and adequacy of its Emergency Response and Contingency Plans [in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques, Best Environmental Practices and the applicable Standards and taking into account relevant Guidelines and] [Pew] based on the identification of potential Incidents and [in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Available Techniques, Best Environmental Practices and the applicable Standards and Guidelines, as well as] [Pew - delete] the implementation [and monitoring results] [Pew - delete] of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, [and] [which] [PEW - replace] shall be [reviewed annually and] [PEW] tested at least [annually/quarterly][PEW] [once a year] [Spain - replace]; and

(b) Such resources, training and procedures as are necessary for the prompt execution and implementation of the Emergency Response and Contingency Plans and any Emergency Orders issued by the Authority including on-vessel presence for rapid emergency response.

2. The [Authority] [Secretary-General] [Nauru - replace] shall facilitate the exchange of knowledge, information and experience relating to incidents between Contractors and States, and shall draw on the advice of other relevant international organizations, so that such knowledge and information can be used to prevent, reduce and control pollution and other hazards to the Marine Environment, including the coastline [including the coastline] [Micronesia], by [supporting][PEW] [for the purposes of supporting] [Pew - replace]:

(a) Contractors to meet their requirements, inter alia under regulation 53(1), and

(b) the Authority [to prepare and revise relevant] [in the development, revision and dissemination of] [Pew - replace] Standards and Guidelines ~~where appropriate and~~ [to develop and disseminate] [Pew - delete] other appropriate materials.

[(b) bis The Sponsoring State to be fully informed of the incidents and the actions taken by the Contractor.] [Indonesia]

3. Following an Incident, a Contractor [must] [shall] [Pew - replace] submit a detailed report [to the Secretary-General] [Pew] on whether the Emergency Response and Contingency ~~Plan~~ was adequate and to what extent it was complied with, including, among other aspects, expenses incurred, responsibilities and updating of the plan if necessary.



### Explanation / comment

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- I believe we have an outstanding/unfulfilled matter from our last meeting relating to the placement of this regulation. Should it continue to be placed as “regulation 53” or should it be moved to “regulation 50bis” in section 3 (on Pollution control and management of waste) after regulation 50 (related to restrictions on discharges from mining activities)? I propose to keep it in this section.
- One participant has submitted a proposal to insert a new paragraph 1. I have tried to merge this proposal into the existing paragraph 1 and invite for a discussion on this.
- One proposal suggested deleting litras a and b in paragraph 2. However, I have not noted any such objections to these provisions during the meeting, wherefore I propose to keep it.
- I have suggested to broaden para 2(b) in order to ensure the exchange of knowledge as this is vital to the ongoing sustainability of the industry and improved management measures.

### [Regulation 53bis](#) (previously Regulation 49 Alt.) [IWG ENV]

#### Pollution control

[A Contractor shall take ~~[all the]~~ necessary ~~[and appropriate]~~ ~~[Spain – retain deleted text]~~ measures to protect and preserve the Marine Environment, ~~[including the and]~~ coastlines ~~[from harmful effects, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention,]~~ by preventing, reducing and controlling pollution ~~[and other hazards, including marine litter and underwater noise,]~~ ~~[directly resulting]~~ from its activities in the Area. This is to be done ~~[pursuant to in accordance with]~~ its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, ~~[the and all]~~ relevant ~~[Rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, and taking into account]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ ~~[the relevant applicable]~~ Regional Environmental Management Plan ~~[Argentina - delete]~~, ~~[and]~~ taking ~~[into]~~ account ~~[of]~~ ~~[Russia - delete]~~ the applicable Guidelines ~~[and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan]~~ ~~[Argentina]~~.] ~~[Pew – delete the paragraph entirely]~~

~~[Alt. A contractor shall take all the necessary measures to protect and preserve the marine environment, including the coastline, from harmful effects in accordance with A145 of the Convention by preventing, reducing and controlling pollution and other hazards, including marine litter and underwater noise, directly and indirectly resulting from its activities in the Area. This is to be done pursuant to its environmental management and monetary plan and all relevant rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, the relevant applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan and taking into account the applicable guidelines]~~ ~~[Brazil]~~

~~[Alt. A Contractor shall take necessary measures to protect and preserve the Marine Environment, [including the] coastlines [from harmful effects, in accordance with Article 145 of the Convention,] by preventing, reducing and controlling pollution [, including marine litter, greenhouse gas emissions, and underwater noise,] [resulting] from its activities in the Area. This is to be done:~~

(a) [pursuant to] its Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, [the] relevant rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, [and] taking [into] account the applicable Guidelines; and

(b) By a Contractor using in its Exploitation activities only vessels that: are registered with flag States who have ratified the 'MARPOL' Convention (on prevention of marine pollution from ships) and the 'London Convention and London Protocol' (on the prevention of dumping of waste from ships) and whose current compliance with those instruments has been surveyed and certified.] [Pew]

#### Comment

Regulation 53 bis (previously 49 Alt.) received most support during the third part of the twenty-eight session, and has thus been retained.

[\[Regulation 53ter\]](#) (previously Regulation 50) [IWG ENV]

#### Restriction on Mining Discharges

1. A Contractor shall not [dispose, dump or discharge into the Marine Environment] [introduce] [Pew - replace] any Mining Discharge, except where such [disposal, dumping or discharge] [Mining Discharge] [Pew - replace] is permitted in accordance with:

(a) The assessment framework for Mining Discharges as set out in the [\[applicable\]](#) Standard;

(b) The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and

[\[\(c\) \[Relevant Internationally agreed rules, standards and recommended practices and procedures, \[as set out in the applicable Standard\] \[and established by the International Maritime Organization\].\]](#) [Pew - delete]

[\[\(c\) Alt.\] \[\(d\) \[Russia - replace\] These Regulations.\]](#)

2. ~~Paragraph 1~~ [\[Notwithstanding paragraph 1, a Contractor may make such above shall not apply if such\]](#) [disposal, dumping or discharge] [Mining Discharge] [Pew - replace] into the Marine Environment [\[where it\]](#) is necessary for the safety of the vessel or Installation or the safety of human life, provided that such [disposal, dumping or discharge] [Mining Discharge] [Pew - replace] is conducted so as to [\[prevent/minimize the possibility of\]](#) harm to [\[human life and to\]](#) the Marine Environment. ~~If Harm to the Marine Environment occurs as a result of disposal, dumping or discharge, the Contractor shall, [upon] [after ensuring] [United Kingdom - replace] safe working conditions [being restored] [are in place] [United Kingdom - replace],~~ monitor, mitigate and [\[manage/mediate\]](#) ~~[Spain - supports retaining]~~ the impacts of such harm, and shall report forthwith about such disposal, dumping or discharge to the Authority. ~~[Pew - delete] [Such] disposal, dumping or discharge [Mining Discharge] [Pew - replace] shall constitute [a notifiable event under Regulation 34 and Appendix 1] [an Incident under Regulation 33] [Pew - replace].~~ ~~In addition, the contractor must document that specific circumstances necessitating such actions and provide a detailed report, including measures taken to mitigate the harm, to the Authority within 24 hours] [African Group]~~

~~[2.Alt. Paragraph 1 [notwithstanding, a Contractor may nonetheless make such a above shall not apply if such] disposal, dumping or discharge into the Marine Environment [where it] is necessary for the safety of the vessel or Installation or the safety of human life, provided that such disposal, dumping or discharge is conducted so as to minimize the likelihood of harm to human life and [prevent Harm] to the Marine Environment.]~~

~~[2.Alt.2 If harm to the marine environment occurs as a result of disposal, dumping or discharge, the contractor shall, after ensuring safe working conditions are in place, monitor, mitigate and manage the impacts of such harm] [United Kingdom]~~

~~[3. The disposal, dumping or discharge into the Marine Environment of any Mining Discharge that is not permitted in accordance with paragraphs 1 [and 2] above is considered an unauthorized Mining Discharge and constitutes a Notifiable Event under regulation 34 and Appendix 1.]~~

~~[4. [AThe applicant or] Contractor [shall must also] keep a register of [mining] discharges, to be updated [immediately after any discharge event at least monthly], where possible, that shall be reported annually to the Authority [under Regulation 38,] as part of the [Contractors] mandatory annual report that must be prepared throughout the operation. [This register must include detailed information on the nature and volume of discharges, the methods of disposal, and any observed environmental impacts. It should be accessible to regulatory bodies and stakeholders to ensure transparency and accountability.] [African Group]] [Pew – delete entire para 4, retain 4.alt.]~~

~~[4. Alt. The applicant or Contractor must continuously monitor its Mining Discharges and maintain a register that is reported to the Authority least weekly in addition to the mandatory annual report pursuant to Regulation 38.] [Spain - supports]~~

## Section 5 Environmental Compensation Fund

### Regulation 54 [IWG ENV] Establishment of an Environmental Compensation Fund

~~[1. The Authority hereby establishes the Environmental Compensation Fund]. Referred to as “the Fund” in the following.] [Germany- Delete] [referred to as “the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace]” for the purposes of [the remainder of this Regulation] [these Regulations] [Pew - replace] [Pew - replace]~~

~~[2. The rules and procedures of the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] shall be established by the Council on the recommendation of the Finance Committee [before the [approval of a first Plan of Work for an exploitation contract] [Australia, Germany; Netherlands] [approval of a first plan of work for an exploitation contra] [beginning of Commercial Production]] [Australia, Germany- delete] under these regulations [Nauru - delete].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 2 entirely]~~

~~[[Those rules and procedures shall include, inter alia:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

[(a) [A mechanism for financing the funds] [The requirements and modalities governing contributions to the Fund] [Pew - replace] in accordance with Regulation 56, including [modalities for] [Pew] replenishment [of the ECF] [Pew] upon disbursement;

(a bis) the minimum size of the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace];

(b) A description of how the [funds] [ECF] [Pew - replace] and any interest generated will be managed and by whom;

(c) [The process for accessing the funds;] [The establishment of rules, guidelines and modalities] [Modalities] [Pew - replace] for administering claims against the Fund, including determining entities eligible to access the Fund, which may include States, international organizations and private entities that have suffered damage as well as the Authority] [Pew - replace]

(d) The type of damages and purposes eligible for claims against the [funds] [ECF] [Pew - replace] in accordance with regulation 55;

(e) The standard of proof required for claims against the [funds] [ECF] [Pew - replace];

[(f) (f) Temporal scope of the funds;] [Spain – suggests placing proposed wording before current subpara (f)]

[(f) A policy on refunds of Contractor payments into the funds;] [Netherlands; Pew - delete]

(g) A process for determining disbursements [or refunds] [Netherlands - delete] from the [funds] [ECF] [Pew - replace]; and

(h) The promotion of the participation of affected persons or other Stakeholders in decisions about disbursement of [funds] [ECF] [Pew - replace].]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para a-h]

3. The Secretary-General shall, in consultation with the Finance Committee, within 90 Days of the end of a Calendar Year, prepare an independently audited statement of the income and expenditure of the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] [for circulation to the members of the Authority] [for submission to the Assembly for their consideration and to be made publicly available on the Authority's website] [Pew - replace].]

[Germany- Delete sub-para a-h and 3 entirely]

#### Explanation/comment

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- It is noted that one submission to this regulation welcomes the additions but recalls that it has yet to be decided whether these rules and procedures for the Fund should be developed within the regulations or as a separate standard. I support this view and propose that such a standard or/ guideline is developed, and the content of paragraph 2 litra a-h is placed there as I have also suggested in the accompanying Matrix. I have placed it in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this.

- When reading this regulation, I see a need for underlining the importance of that the rules and procedures of the Fund shall be established by the Council *before* the approval of a first plan of work is given. Also, it is important that the rules and procedures of the finance committee are clarified to assist in streamlining the regulations. I invite for views on whether participants share this view and, if so, how this can be stressed.

## Regulation 55 [IWG ENV]

### Purpose of the Environmental Compensation Fund

1. The purpose of the Fund is to finance the implementation of any necessary measures designed to mitigate or compensate for any ~~[[unlawful]]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~ loss or damage to the Marine Environment ~~[of the Area]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~ or coastal states ~~[outside of approved activities in the Area]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~, ~~[or damage caused to third parties]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ arising from ~~[activities under an exploitation contract]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ ~~exploration~~ ~~[Exploitation]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~ ~~activities in the Area~~ ~~[when]~~ ~~[where]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ the costs of such measures ~~and efforts cannot be recovered from a Contractor~~ ~~[and the Sponsoring State is not liable under Article 139 (2) of the Convention]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ ~~[or Sponsoring State]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~. This includes ~~the remediation restoration~~ ~~[and][or]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ ~~rehabilitation of the Area- Marine Environment~~ (~~[when]~~~~[where]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ ~~[the]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[such remediation, restoration or]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~rehabilitation is]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~ ~~technically and economically feasible)~~ ~~and~~ ~~in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Environmental Practices and Best Available Techniques~~ ~~when the costs of such measures and efforts cannot be recovered from a Contractor or Sponsoring State, as the case may be for environmental damage outside of consented activity.~~ ~~[Compensation can be used in cases when the restoration and rehabilitation are impossible.]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ shall include the costs for implementation of any necessary measures designed to prevent, reduce, mitigate, limit, and remediate any damage to the marine environment and its resources.

[1. Alt. The purpose of the Fund is to finance compensation [and mitigation costs], which cannot be borne by the Contractor or Sponsoring State as the case may be, for environmental damage outside of consented activity.]

~~[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete 1Alt entirely]~~

2. Based on the ~~precautionary~~ ~~polluter pays~~ principle the Contractor ~~[shall]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ pay for any necessary measure to limit, remedy and compensate any ~~[[unlawful]]~~ ~~[Germany - delete]~~ damage ~~[to the Area]~~ ~~[Germany-delete]~~ arising from ~~[activities conducted under an]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ their ~~mining~~ ~~Exploitation~~ ~~[activities]~~ ~~[Contract]~~ ~~[Germany - replace]~~.

[2.Alt. Based on the precautionary principle the contractor shall pay for necessary measures to limit, remedy and compensate damage to the Area arising from exploitation, outside of consented activity.]

~~[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete 2Alt entirely]~~

[3. In cases where the contractor's payment is insufficient to limit, remedy and compensate any damage to the Area arising from] [the mining activities] [Exploitation,] the compensation fund may be used.]

[Germany-delete 3 entirely]

[4. In cases where situations may arise, where a Contractor does not meet its liability in full while the Sponsoring State is not liable under Article 139 (2) of the Convention, the compensation fund may be used.]

#### **[Regulation 55 Alt. [IWG ENV]**

##### **Purpose of the Environmental Compensation Fund**

1. The [purpose of the] [Australia] Environmental Compensation Fund [is to function as a 'last resort' compensation fund only.][Australia] [has two purposes] [Australia- delete] ]:

[(a) [Australia- delete] In the event that there is [unlawful] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] environmental damage caused by contractor activities that [were not consented] [Australia- delete] [were not foreseen in the Plan of Work or that arise from a breach of any conditions of approval] [Australia], then in accordance with the polluter pays principle the contractor shall bear liability for the financing of any measure to mitigate that [unlawful] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] environmental damage and shall also be liable for compensation to any person affected by that [unlawful] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] environmental damage[.][.] [Australia-replace] [but][Australia – delete] [i][I]f [Australia- capitalize] the contractor is unable to meet that liability in full [and the Sponsoring State is not liable under Article 139 (2) of the Convention] [Australia, PEW], then, [the Contractor's financial capabilities has been exceeded to limit, remedy, and compensate any damage to the Marine Environment arising from the activities under the Exploitation Contract, so the Contractor is not able to meet the liability in full,] [Indonesia - replace] as a last resort, the environmental compensation fund may be called upon; [a] [Australia – delete] ]#d

[(b) In the event that there is unforeseen environmental damage caused by contractor activities that were consented activities then the [environmental liability] [Pew- delete] fund shall be used to finance any measure to mitigate that environmental damage and compensate any person affected by that environmental damage.] [Australia – delete b entirely]

[Germany-delete 55 Alt entirely]

#### **[Regulation 55.Alt. 2 [Germany]**

##### **Purpose of the Environmental Compensation Fund**

1. Based on the polluter pays principle and as reflected in these Regulations, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to pay for any necessary measure to limit, mitigate, remedy and compensate any damage arising from the activities conducted under an Exploitation Contract.

2. In cases where situations may arise, where a Contractor does not meet its liability in full while the Sponsoring State is not liable under Article 139 (2) of the Convention, the compensation fund may be used as a last resort after exhausting all other possibilities.

3. The purpose of the Fund is to finance the implementation of any necessary measures designed to mitigate or compensate for any loss or damage to the Marine Environment, coastal states, [or damage caused to third parties] arising from activities conducted under an Exploitation Contract. The Fund shall cover at least two situations:

(a) where there is damage caused by contractor activities that were not consented; or

(b) where there is unforeseen damage caused by contractor activities that were consented activities or where the Contractor acted negligently.

4. Compensation to any person affected by damage pursuant to paragraph 3 shall include the costs for implementation of any necessary measures designed to mitigate any damage to the marine environment and its resources.

5. The Fund shall be subject to periodic review, including the consideration of whether restoration has become technically and economically feasible and could be carried out in accordance with Good Industry Practice, Best Environmental Practices and Best Available Techniques when the costs of such measures and efforts cannot be recovered from a Contractor or Sponsoring State, as the case may be.]

**Explanation / comment**

- Several participants have submitted alternative proposals for rewording/restructuring the draft regulation, both ahead of the meeting in July and this meeting. I have inserted one of these alternative proposals as “Regulation 55 Alt.” as it represents a more streamlined and precise version which I support. To the participants who forwarded very detailed proposals, including to the previous alternative to Regulation 55 which has now been omitted in order to focus discussions, this specific information could perhaps best be placed in a standard or guideline which I have proposed drafted in my comment to the previous regulation (54.) I invite for comments to this.
- If the participants favour the original regulation 55 (or this is to merge with “regulation 55 Alt. I”) I would highlight that during our last meeting one participant suggested to delete paragraph 3. I propose to discuss the scope of paragraph 3, which currently states that Fund covers any damages arising from the Exploration (/mining activity) and invite for views on the extent of the Fund’s scope and how this is best addressed in clear language in the Regulation.
- To regulation 55, one participant has submitted an alternative wording to paragraph 1, which is more condensed. This is inserted as “paragraph 1.Alt.” I invite for a discussion on this.
- Proposals have been put forward to paragraphs 1 and 2 to specify that compensation relates to any “unlawful” damage or loss. I propose not to include this as it could limit the scope of the provision, but I have placed it in square brackets and invite for views on this matter.

- Several participants have proposed to refer to the “polluter pays principle” in paragraph 2 instead of the “precautionary principle”. I fully support this suggested change.
- One participant has submitted an alternative wording to paragraph 2. This is inserted as “paragraph 2.Alt.” I note that the original paragraph 2 refers to the “polluter pays principle” while the alternative paragraph (now) refers to the “precautionary principle” In this context I believe that the original wording (referring to the “polluter pays principle”) is correct and this version should be used going forward. I have placed 2 alt. it in square brackets and invite for a discussion.
- Several participants have proposed deleting paragraph 3 relating to cases where the contractor’s payment is insufficient to remedy the damage which has arisen from the exploitation, thus allowing the compensation fund to be used. As this is a principal discussion, I have put the paragraph in square brackets and invite the proponents of this proposal to present their views and all participants to have a discussion on this. I believe that there is merit to these proposals.
- As stated above, I have omitted the previous alternative to Regulation 55 in order to focus discussions. However, ahead of the meeting in July one participant had submitted a suggested paragraph (para 2 in the previous alternative version) which sought to incorporate the principles of the 2011-Advisory Opinion from ITLOS on “Responsibilities and Obligations of States sponsoring persons and entities with respect to liability Sponsoring States for activities in the Area under article 139 of the Convention”. (See para 206 of the Advisory Opinion). I believe there is great merit to this inclusion and have therefore inserted this paragraph from the previous alternative and placed it (in square brackets) as a new paragraph 4 in Regulation 55. I invite for a discussion on this.

**Regulation 56 [IWG ENV]  
Funding of the Environmental Compensation Fund**

1. [In adherence to] [Consistent with] [Pew - replace] the ~~precautionary~~ polluter-pays principle the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] will consist of, but not be limited to, the following monies:

(a) The prescribed percentage or amount of [fees] [contribution] [Pew - replace] paid [into the ECF by the Contractors or the Enterprise] [Pew] after approval of a plan of work and prior to the commencement of [mining activities] [PEW- delete] [(Commercial Production)] [Germany- delete] [in the Area under an Exploitation Contract] [PEW- delete] [(of activities under an Exploitation contract)] [of Commercial Production]] [Pew – replace] by Contractors or the Enterprise to the Authority;

[(a) alt. The requirements and modalities governing contributions to the Fund in accordance with regulation 56, including the establishment of the minimum size of the fund, and the modalities for replenishment of the fund upon disbursement.]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete (a) alt entirely]



(b) The prescribed percentage of any penalties paid by Contractors or the Enterprise to the Authority;

(c) The prescribed percentage of any amounts recovered by the Authority by negotiation or as a result of legal proceedings in respect of a violation of the terms of an exploitation contract;

[Australia - delete c entirely]

(c) alt. Establishment of rules, guidelines and modalities for determining entities eligible to access the Fund, which may include states and private entities [third parties] [PEW- replace] that have suffered damages.

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete c alt entirely]

(d) Any [other] [Pew] monies paid into the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] at the direction of the Council, based on recommendations of the Finance Committee;

(e) Any income received by the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] from the investment of monies belonging to the [Fund] [Pew - replace];

(f) An annual levy paid by Contractors or the Enterprise to the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace] pursuant to a decision of the Council [Pew]; and [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

(g) (g) Any voluntary contribution from the Authorities' member states; and [Spain – suggest placing proposed wording before current subpara (g)]

(g) The prescribed Any contributions paid by Ssponsoring States to the [Fund] [ECF] [Pew - replace].

(h) Donation or grants from international organisations, non-governmental organization or other entities committed to environmental Protection and sustainability [Morocco]

#### Explanation / comment

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- Two participants have submitted almost identical proposals for amending litra a. I have tried to merge these two and invite for comments to this.
- One participant has submitted a proposal to establish that the fees should be paid “after approval of a plan of work” (and prior to the commencement of mining). I have merged this proposal into the existing litra a and invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant submitted a proposal for an alternative wording of litra a. This proposal has been inserted as “litra a. Alt.” I note that this alternative provision refers to “regulation 56” i.e. this regulation which is being discussed. If this is a mistake the correct regulation should be inserted. If this is not a mistake, I propose to reword this part to e.g., state; “*The requirements and modalities governing contributions to the Fund in accordance with this regulation, (...)*”. I invite for a discussion on utilizing this alternative litra a.

- On litra a, I recall comments, during our previous meeting where this was regulation discussed, on how the fund compensate in the early years of mining? This needs to be clarified, wherefore I invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant noted during our previous meeting where this regulation was discussed that the reference to “prescribed contributions” in litra g needs to be clarified in terms of what the scope is. I invite for views on this.

## Part V

### Review and modification of a Plan of Work

#### Regulation 57 [IWG IM]

#### Modification of a Plan of Work by a Contractor

1. A Contractor shall not modify the Plan of Work annexed to an exploitation contract, except in accordance with this regulation.

2. A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General if it wishes to modify the Plan of Work. The Secretary-General shall, in consultation with the Contractor ~~and the Commission~~ ~~[Brazil]~~, consider whether a proposed modification to the Plan of Work constitutes a Material Change in accordance with the Guidelines. If the Secretary-General considers that the proposed modification constitutes a Material Change, the Contractor shall seek the prior approval of the Council based on the recommendation of the Commission under regulations 12 and 16, and before such Material Change is implemented by the Contractor. ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ ~~[Pew – delete entire para 2]~~

2 alt. If a Contractor wishes to modify a Plan of Work, it shall notify the Secretary-General. The Secretary-General shall ~~inform the Council and~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Nauru – delete]~~ transfer the ~~request~~ ~~[alt 1. request]~~ ~~[alt 2.]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ modified Plan of Work ~~to~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket]~~ to the Commission, to consider whether a proposed modification to the Plan of Work constitutes a Material Change in accordance with the ~~applicable~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ ~~Standard[s]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ ~~Annex~~ ~~[Germany - replace]~~ ~~and in consultation with the Contractor~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~. If the Commission considers that the proposed modification constitutes a Material Change, the Contractor ~~may submit an appropriate recommendation to the Council~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ shall seek the prior approval of the Council ~~[Germany]~~ ~~shall seek the prior approval of the Council b~~ ~~[B]~~ ~~b~~ based on ~~this~~ ~~[a]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace]~~ recommendation of the Commission, under regulations 12 ~~and~~ ~~[to]~~ ~~[Germany- replace]~~ 16, ~~the Council may give its prior approval~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ ~~and~~ ~~[Germany- delete]~~ before such Material Change is implemented by the Contractor. The sponsoring State shall also be informed. ~~[Pew; United Kingdom supports 2alt]~~

3. Where the proposed modification under paragraph 2 ~~relates to a Material Change in~~ ~~[alt 1.]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~relates to a Material Change in~~ ~~[alt 2. may have a potential impact on]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ ~~[Norway – delete]~~ the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan or Closure Plan, such plans shall be dealt with in accordance with the procedure set out in regulation

11, prior to any consideration of the modification by the Commission. [Norway: Pew - delete]

[3 alt 1. Where the proposed modification under paragraph 2 is determined to constitute a Material Change, the Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission, shall determine whether the Contractor is required to undertake a [a revised Norway - replace] environmental impact assessment and prepare an environmental impact statement [Pew – capitalize defined terms] of the proposed modification in accordance with Regulation[s [46bis] and [47], respectively] [48bis] Norway - replace shall determine whether the Contractor is required to update the environmental impact assessment and prepare an updated environmental impact statement of the proposed modification Norway - replace. The Environmental Impact Statement, and any revisions to the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan or Closure Plan, shall be dealt with in accordance with the procedure set out in regulation 11, prior to any consideration of the modification by the Commission.]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 alt 1 entirely]

[3 alt 2. Where the proposed modification constitutes a Material Change, the public participation procedure as outlined in regulation 11 shall be held.]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 alt 2 entirely]

4. [Notwithstanding Paragraph 2, [Norway - delete] the Secretary-General may propose to and the Contractor may agree [the Contractor may propose and the Secretary-General may agree] united Kingdom - replace to a change to the Plan of Work that is not a Material Change in accordance with the relevant Standards, to correct minor omissions, errors or other such defects. After consulting the Contractor, the Secretary General may make the change to the Plan of Work, and the Contractor shall implement such change. Norway – supports deletion The Secretary-General shall so inform the Commission and the Council at its their next meeting. The Council may decide to apply the procedure as provided in paragraph (2) in any event Pew.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Nauru – delete original para 4 entirely]

[4. alt 1. The Commission may propose a change to the Plan of Work that is not a Material Change, to correct minor omissions, errors or other such defects. The Secretary General will transmit the proposal to the Contractor. The Contractor will respond to the proposed change. In case of Contractor's agreement the Commission will recommend the change to the Plan of Work, and the Contractor shall implement such change. The Secretary General shall so inform the Council at its next meeting.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Norway – supports deleting]

[4 alt 2. The Commission may recommend a change to the Plan of Work that is not a Material Change. The Secretary General will transmit the recommendation to the Contractor, and the Contractor shall implement such change. The Secretary-General shall so inform the Council at its next meeting. In the instance of correcting minor omissions, errors or other such defects which are not substantive, the ISA Secretariat will be responsible for making the change and informing the Contractor and the Sponsoring State.]

[4 alt 3. [Notwithstanding paragraph 2, t] The [Nauru] Contractor, the [Japan] Commission [or the Secretary-General] [Nauru - delete] [or the Contractor]

[India] may propose a change to the Plan of Work that is not a Material Change in accordance with the applicable Standards [India], to correct minor omissions, errors or other such defects. The Secretary General [will] [shall] [Nauru - replace] transmit [the proposal] [details of the proposed change] [Nauru - replace] to the Contractor. The Contractor will respond to the proposed change. The Commission [will] [, taking into account the Contractor's response, may] [Nauru - replace] recommend the change to the Plan of Work, and the Contractor shall implement such change. The Secretary-General shall so inform the Council at its next meeting] [and the Sponsoring State.] [Germany]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 4 alt 2 and 4 alt 3 entirely]

[5. All modifications to a plan of work under this regulation should be recorded in the Seabed Mining Register] [Germany]

[5. Modifications that are not considered Material Changes or correction of minor omissions, errors or other such defects, shall be subject to the approval of the Commission.] [Norway]

#### Comments / Remarks

- [During Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session, the delegation of Norway has suggested to swap the placement of Regulations 57 and 58.]

#### Regulation 58 [IWG IM]

##### Review of activities under a Plan of Work

[1. [A Plan of Work shall be reviewed aAt intervals not exceeding five years from the date of signature of the exploitation contract. [[alt 1. The Commission or the Council can initiate additional reviews][alt 2.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] or by decision of the Council based on the recommendations of the Commission][Nauru – delete bracket]] [A plan of work shall be reviewed at intervals not exceeding five years from the date of signature of the exploitation contract or at any time, at the request of the Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission] [France - replace] in accordance with the applicable Standards and taking into account the applicable Guidelines [[or]][[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] where, according to the relevant organ of the Authority, as appropriate in the opinion of the Secretary-General, there have occurred any of the following events or changes of circumstance taking into account:] [Australia; Pew – delete entire para 1]

[1 alt. [Activities under] [Germany; Pew- delete] a Plan of Work shall be reviewed at intervals not exceeding five years from the date of signature of the exploitation contract, or more frequently at the request of the Commission or the Council, including where any of the following events or changes of circumstance have occurred:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 1 alt entirely]

[1. Alt.2. A Plan of Work shall be reviewed at intervals not exceeding five years from the date of signature of the Exploitation Contract, or more frequently by decision of the Council based on the recommendations of the Commission, in accordance with the applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines, including where any of the following events or changes of circumstance have occurred:] [United Kingdom]

[(a) A proposed Material Change in the implementation of the Plan of Work;]  
*[Facilitators' note: proponents for deletion of this sub-paragraph noted that a material change would be a potential outcome of a review, not a trigger for a review.]*

[(a bis.) Identification of a new significant environmental risk, or a significant change to existing risk calculations;] [Pew - delete]

(a bis alt.) Information has come to light that was not available when the Plan of Work was approved [and is relevant to the Contractor's continued adherence to the Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives] [Pew], including changes in [Good Industry Practice,] [Pew] Best Available Techniques [or] [,] [Micronesia - replace] [Best Available Scientific Information] [Best Environmental Practice] [Pew], [and Best Environmental Practices] [Micronesia] and shows that more appropriate conditions are necessary to deal with the Environmental Effects of the activity;

(a ter.) An indication that the [cumulative effects impacts] [Cumulative Environmental Effects] [Pew] as a result of Exploitation [activities] [Pew - delete] exceed any environmental thresholds established under the applicable Standards [and] [objectives established under the applicable] [Pew - delete] Regional Environmental Management Plan;] [Argentina - delete]

[(a quat.) New significant information relevant to the effective protection of the Marine Environment;] [Pew - delete]

(a quin.) Adverse impacts on the environment or other activities have arisen that were not anticipated, or are of a scale or intensity that was not anticipated, when the Plan of Work was approved.

(a sexies.) a request by another international body concerning other activities or measure in the Marine Environment pursuant to regulation 31.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete a- a sexies entirely]

[(b) Any Incident;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[(c) Recommendations for improvement in procedures or practices following an inspection report under regulation 100;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

(d) A performance assessment which requires action under regulation 52(8);

[(e) Changes in ownership or financing which may adversely affect the financial capability of the Contractor;] [PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

*[Facilitators' note: proponents for deletion of this sub-paragraph consider this criteria should trigger a compliance response, not a regular review process that leads to an amended Plan of Work. This point may be relevant to the Intersessional Working Group on Inspections, Compliance and Enforcement.]*

[(f) Significant Changes in Best Available Techniques [relevant to the Contractor's activities under its Plan of Work] [NORI, TOML, BMJ];

(g) Significant Changes in Best Available Scientific Information [relevant to the Contractor's activities under its Plan of Work] [NORI, TOML, BMJ];

(g bis.) Significant Changes in Best Environmental Practices [relevant to the Contractor's activities under its Plan of Work] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]; [Australia; Micronesia – delete subparagraphs (f), (g) and (g)bis entirely] [Pew – delete subparagraphs (e), (f), (g) and (g)bis entirely]

[Germany- delete f to (g bis.) entirely]

[(h) Operational management changes, including changes to subcontractors and suppliers], whereby the Commission, after review with the Contractor of the Contractor's activities under the Plan of Work, shall recommend to the Council whether any modifications to the Plan of Work are necessary. [Pew - delete] the relevant organ of the Authority as appropriate shall [Secretary-General may] review with the Contractor the Contractor's activities under the Plan of Work, and such organ shall recommend to the Council [discuss] whether any modifications to the Plan of Work are necessary or desirable.

[(h bis.) Changes in the overall policy of the Authority. [Australia - delete]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete h and h bis entirely]

*[Facilitators' note: one submission asks for more clarity on the procedure for 'pulling the trigger' to initiate the review; and queries whether or not the Contractor is expected to suspend activities until the review concludes and a new Plan of Work is adopted? Another submission noted the need for a threshold of 'significance' for trigger events, and suggested this could be further detailed in Standards.]*

[2. [[alt 1.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [In performing a review required in accordance with paragraph 1] [PEW] The Contractor shall [commission a competent, independent expert or experts to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] undertake a review under paragraph (1)] [alt 2.] [Nauru – delete] A review of activities under paragraph (1) shall be undertaken [by the Contractor and verified by an independent expert]] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] in accordance with the [relevant regulations,] [applicable] [Nauru] Standards [and taking into account the Guidelines] [Nauru – delete]. The [[Secretary-General] [Nauru – remove brackets] [[or][and]] [Germany- delete] [the Contractor]] [Nauru – delete] shall invite the sponsoring State or States, and relevant [adjacent] [Micronesia] coastal States, to participate in the review of [activities][the Plan of Work]. The results of the review shall be compiled as a report.]

[2. Alt. A review of [activities] [a Plan of Work] [United Kingdom - replace] under paragraph 1 shall be undertaken [by the Contractor and verified by an independent expert]] [Nauru - delete] [by competent independent experts at the Contractor's expense] [Pew - replace] in accordance with the applicable [regulations,] [Nauru - delete] Standards and taking into [consideration] [account] [Pew - replace] Guidelines. [The [Secretary-General]] [or][and]] [Pew - delete] [the Contractor]] [Nauru - delete] shall invite the Sponsoring State or States, and relevant coastal States, [Nauru - delete] to participate in the review [and shall provide all information required by the competent independent experts] [Pew]] [A sponsoring State or States may invite relevant coastal States, as appropriate, to participate in the review of activities] [China - replace]. The

results of the review shall be compiled as a report in a report and submitted by the Contractor to the Secretary-General Pew and communicated to the Authority immediately India.]

[2. Alt.2. The Contractor shall commission a competent independent expert or experts to undertake a review under Paragraph 1 in accordance with the relevant Regulations, Standards and taking into account the Guidelines. The Contractor shall invite the Sponsoring State or States and relevant coastal States to participate in the review of the Plan of Work. The results of the review shall be compiled as a report by the Contractor, be accompanied by an endorsement of the report by the experts involved in the review and submitted to the Secretary-General within 30 days of completion of the review Germany]

*[Facilitators' note: submissions noted that it was yet to be discussed who would be conducting the review, which point needs to be settled in order to be reflected clearly in this regulation 58].*

3. The Secretary-General shall forward the report on each review under paragraph 2 Pew - replace to the Commission and Council, and the sponsoring State or States and the relevant coastal States Pew. Where, as a result of a review, alt 1. the Contractor or the Council, based on the recommendation by the Commission, wishes to make any changes to a Plan of Work and such changes are Material Changes requiring the approval of the Council, based on the recommendation of the Commission, the Contractor shall seek that approval in accordance with regulation 57(2) and, where applicable, regulation 57(3) alt 2. NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete the Contractor considers that NORI, TOML, BMJ Material Changes need to be made to the Plan of Work, it shall submit such changes for approval by the Council based on the recommendations of NORI, TOML, BMJ the Commission shall recommend the relevant changes to the Council, NORI, TOML, BMJ and the Contractor shall implement them. Germany- delete Where, as a result of a review, material changes need to be made to the plan of work, the relevant procedures under Regulation 57 shall apply Germany - replace The Commission shall evaluate in accordance with the applicable Standards and recommend the relevant changes to the Council India - replace Where, as a result of a review, the Council, Commission, Contractor or reviewer identifies that modifications need to be made to the Plan of Work Regulation 57 shall apply. Pew - replace

[[3 alt.] The organ person or persons in charge of the review shall report on each review to the Commission and Council, the sponsoring State or States and the relevant adjacent Micronesia coastal States. Where, as a result of a review, material changes the Council, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete Commission, Contractor or reviewer NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete identifies that modifications need to be made to the Plan of Work, the Commission shall recommend said changes to the Council, and the Contractor shall implement such changes as soon as viable. Where, as a result of a review, the Contractor wishes to make any changes to a Plan of Work and such changes are Material Changes requiring the approval of the Council, based on the recommendation of the Commission, the Contractor shall seek that approval in accordance with regulation 57(2) and, where applicable, regulation 57(3) shall apply. Pew - delete

[3. Alt.2. The Secretary-General shall forward the report on each review to the Commission and Council, and the Sponsoring State or States. Where, as a result of a review a Material Change needs to be made to the Plan of Work, Regulations 57(2) and (3) shall apply United Kingdom]

4. ~~[[alt 1.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ For the purpose of the review, the Contractor shall provide all ~~[[alt 2. The Secretary-General may request the Contractor to submit such additional data and]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ information required by the ~~[[alt 1. independent expert or experts] [alt 2.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ Secretary-General] in the manner and at the times ~~[[alt 1. as the Secretary-General reasonably requested]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ as may be necessary for the purposes of this regulation] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], [Pew - delete]~~

5. Nothing in this regulation shall preclude the ~~appropriate organ of the Authority] Commission or the Council Secretary-General,~~ the sponsoring State or States, or the Contractor from making a request to initiate discussions regarding any matter connected with the Plan of Work, exploitation contract or the activities under the exploitation contract in cases other than those listed in paragraph (1).

6. The Secretary-General shall make publicly available the findings and recommendations resulting from a review of ~~activities under this regulation] [a Plan of Work under this Regulation in accordance with Regulation 92] [United Kingdom].~~

## Part VI

### Closure plans

#### Regulation 59 [IWG ENV]

##### Closure Plan

1. A Contractor shall develop ~~[and implement] [African Group]~~ a Closure Plan ~~[for the [project] [mining] [Russia - replace] area] [Germany],~~ in accordance with Regulation 7 (3) (i), Annex VIII to these regulations, ~~[the Environmental Management System] [PEW – delete]~~ and ~~[consistent with] [PEW]~~ other Environmental Plans of the Contractor, as well as ~~applicable [the relevant] [Germany] Standards [and the applicable Regional Environment Management Plan],~~ also taking into consideration ~~[the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Guidelines [and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan][Germany – delete].~~

1.bis. The objectives of a Closure Plan are to ensure that:

(a) The ~~[m][M]arine [e][E]nvironment [PEW – capitalize]~~ is effectively protected ~~[during Closure or any temporary suspension of Exploitation activities] [Germany] [and the site meets the agreed closure objectives] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and will have [a clear] [Germany – delete] and healthy status] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] following the end of [mining activities] [Exploitation][Germany, PEW – replace].~~

~~[[a) Alt. the Marine Environment will be set at a clear and healthy status following the end of mining activities.]] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~

~~[(a)(a) the effective protection of the marine environment and of human health and safety are ensured during Closure or any temporary suspension of Exploitation activities.] [PEW]~~

(b) ~~[The] [Any] [United Kingdom - replace]~~ adverse ~~[Environmental] [Germany (lower case),PEW] [e][E]ffects [PEW- capitalize] arising from [c][C]losure [PEW – capitalize] [activities] [PEW – delete] are [avoided]~~



~~prevented~~ ~~Russia - replace~~, ~~remedied, or mitigated,~~ ~~[Mitigated]~~ ~~[PEW - replace]~~

~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete sub-para b entirely]~~

~~(c) Any ~~[remaining]~~ ~~[Nauru - delete]~~ ~~[Russia - supports]~~ ~~[residual]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ;]~~ ~~[e][E]nvironmental~~ ~~[e][E]ffects~~ ~~[PEW - capitalize]~~ continue to be monitored and reported for ~~[a][the]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ period prescribed in the ~~[c][C]losure~~ ~~[p][P]lan~~ ~~[PEW - capitalize]~~.~~

~~(d) The mined site ~~[is returned to its natural state, or returned to its natural state to the extent possible,~~ ~~[has regained healthy environmental status]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~ through rehabilitation and restoration,~~ ~~[where technically and economically feasible]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~

~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete d entirely]~~

~~[d. alt. The Mining Area is returned, where ~~[the Contractor in consultation with the Commission determines it to be]~~ ~~[NOR, TOML, BMJ; Nauru]~~ technically and economically feasible, to a condition resembling its pre-mining condition through active restoration. Where active restoration is ~~[not]~~ ~~[determined not to be]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace]~~ feasible, the Mining Area is rehabilitated, to the extent it is technically and economically feasible to facilitate passive restoration.] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~~~

~~(e) The closure of mining activities is a process that is incorporated into the mining life cycle,~~

~~(f) Contractors take appropriate steps to minimise ~~[harm]~~ ~~[Serious Harm]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ to the environment and to human health during any period of temporary suspension.]]~~

~~[PEW - delete sb-paras e and f]~~

~~2. ~~[In developing]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ ~~[T][t]he~~ ~~[PEW]~~ Closure Plan ~~[the Contractor]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ shall, in accordance with the requirements of Annex VIII, set out the responsibilities and actions of a Contractor during any temporary suspension, and also for the ~~[d][D]ecommissioning~~ and ~~[c][C]losure~~ ~~[PEW]~~ of activities in a Mining Area, including the post-closure management and monitoring of remaining Environmental Effects. ~~[In fulfilling these responsibilities, the Contractor shall, *inter alia*:~~~~

~~(a) Undertake ~~[activities and]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ the scheduling of studies, based on available baseline data, to inform ~~[about]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ Closure ~~[throughout Exploitation]~~ ~~[PEW]~~.~~

~~(a bis) Undertake a gap analysis of existing environmental data to determine if additional baseline information and/or surveys will be required, and~~

~~(a ter) Utilise ~~[Best][ Good]~~ Industry Practice ~~[and][PEW]~~, Best Environmental Practices, ~~[Best Available Techniques and Best Available Scientific Information]~~~~[PEW]~~.~~

~~(b) Set a date of cessation or suspension of mining activities, at which point a management and monitoring plan must also be in place for the period prescribed in the Closure Plan and in accordance with the ~~[applicable]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ Standards and taking into account the relevant ~~[g][G]uidelines~~ ~~[PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize]~~ and results obtained in previous monitoring activities,~~

(b bis) Undertake ~~early~~~~timely~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] discussions ~~between~~~~with~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] the ~~Authority and contractors~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] ~~Commission~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~through the Secretary-General~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] so that ~~regulators understand~~ ~~the Authority is duly informed of~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] the likely timing of ~~Closure~~ [PEW]

(i) ~~mining cessation,~~ ~~the cessation of activities~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]

(ii) decommissioning, ~~and~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

(iii) post-closure monitoring.]

~~PEW – delete i-iii entirely~~

~~(c) Identify, quantify, assess and detail the management measures for the~~ ~~Identify, quantify, assess and detail the management measures for the~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~F~~~~final~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – lowercase] environmental condition of the ~~relevant mining~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] area, including the state of remaining ~~reserves~~~~resources~~ [Germany – replace], the oceanographic, geological, biological, socioeconomic and sociocultural condition, and the risks relating to ~~remaining~~~~residual~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Environmental Effects are identified, quantified, assessed and managed in accordance with Best Available Scientific Information, Best Available ~~Technologies~~ ~~Best Available Technologies~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] ~~Techniques~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] and Best Environmental Practices, which includes the gathering of information relevant to closure or suspension,] ~~PEW – enclose (C) in brackets~~

~~(c alt) demonstrate that the agreed closure objectives have been met,~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

~~(d) Comply with the necessary health and safety requirements related to closure activities,~~

~~(e) Report~~ ~~to the Authority~~ [Nauru] ~~on the identification, monitoring, and quantification of~~ ~~remaining~~~~significant residual~~[Nauru] Environmental Effects ~~to the Authority~~ [Nauru – delete], including data to inform about recovery or lack thereof, over ~~a~~~~the~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] period established in the ~~c~~~~C~~losure ~~p~~~~P~~lan, and ~~that necessary~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~and appropriate~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] management responses are implemented in a timely manner, including plans for further surveys, data collection, Mitigation, or remediation where appropriate ~~in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking into account relevant Guidelines~~ [Germany, PEW]. ~~The collected monitoring data shall inform the Authority about the recovery, or lack thereof, over a time period required by the Closure Plan, in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking into account relevant guidelines.~~

~~(f) Make and fulfil required disposal, restoration and rehabilitation commitments in accordance with the~~ ~~relevant~~ ~~applicable~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standard~~s~~[Nauru – delete] and taking into account the ~~relevant~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] ~~applicable~~ [Nauru - replace] Guideline~~s~~[Nauru – delete].] ~~PEW – enclose in brackets~~

~~(f bis) Remove completely any Installations and equipment, or parts therefrom, from the Mining Area, as well as any kind of abandoned waste~~

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. The Closure Plan should include an assessment of options leading to the identification of the contractor’s preferred decommissioning solution for Installations [and equipment] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete], as well as parts therefrom, and

\_\_ (g) The mining activities are closed or suspended efficiently and safely.]

2bis. The Contractor shall ~~take steps to promote~~ ensure transparency during the Closure process and [consult][engage][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Stakeholders in the Closure Plan design, review, and implementation.

[3. The Closure Plan shall cover the aspects prescribed by the Authority in annex VIII to these regulations and in accordance with the relevant Standards and taking into account the relevant guidelines.]

[Nauru, PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3 entirely]

4. A contractor shall maintain and update its Closure Plan [on the basis of the data and learning arising from implementation of the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan and] [Germany, PEW] in accordance with these regulations, [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Good Industry Practice, Best Environmental Practices, [Best Available Techniques, Best Available Scientific Information] [PEW] and the [applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standards and taking [into][Nauru] account [of] [Nauru – delete] the [relevant][applicable][ Nauru – replace] Guidelines.

[5. The Closure Plan shall be reviewed and updated taking into account the results obtained from monitoring [closure] [[PEW – delete] activities]; including] [PEW];

(a) Each time there is a Material Change in a Plan of Work, including new knowledge, technologies, devices and new scientific findings, change of contractor or sponsoring State,

\_\_ (b) Every five years, when no Material Change has required an earlier update, and

\_\_ (c) In the [five][PEW – insert brackets] years preceding the planned end of the period of Exploitation, the Closure Plan shall be updated [annually] [[every 2 years] [every 3 years] [in the third and fifth year] [in the year before closure]] [Germany, PEW – delete] and [be] [PEW] finalized in accordance with Regulation 60 (1).]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 5 entirely]

5. Alt. In the five years preceding the planned end of [the period of Exploitation] [commercial production] [African Group; China - replace], or any other period as deemed necessary by the Contractor [and the Sponsoring State] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], the Closure Plan shall be reviewed annually and, if necessary, be updated and be finalized in accordance with regulation 60(1). [The review and update of the Closure Plan shall take into account the results obtained from monitoring post-closure activities and each time there is a Material Change in a Plan of Work. In cases where no such Material Change has occurred and no monitoring data and information or improved knowledge or technology has signalled need for updates, every five years and at the end of the project and be finalized in accordance with regulation 60 (1)] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]. Details on the procedures of review of the Closure Plan, including conditions requiring updates thereof, shall be further elaborated in the

[applicable][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standards and [take into account the applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Guidelines.

**Explanation / comment**

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- At a previous meeting, several participants called for streamlining this and other regulations. Some participants agreed to form an intersessional working group to rework and submit a revised/streamlined version of regulation 59, using the previous version of the regulation as a basis. I thank the group for its hard work and for the submitted proposal which I have reviewed and will use as the basis of this regulation going forward.
- In para 2(e), one group suggested to delete the last sentence as this is already covered by a separate insertion in the beginning of the para.
- I note that the group has presented a draft where the participants weigh in with (sometimes diverging) views and comments to the submitted provision. For example, in paragraph 5, litra c there is a reference to requiring the Closure Plan to be updated at a specific interval in the last five years leading up to the planned end of the period of exploitation. These different intervals (annually, every 2 years, every 3 years, in the third and fifth year or in the year before closure) have been placed in square brackets. I invite for views on this.
- Some participants have proposed an alternative to paragraph 5. This has been inserted as paragraph 5 alt and I invite for a discussion.
- In general, and as also referred to in paragraph 5 alt, several participants have stated a need for consolidation or rewording or formal drafting of the regulation, perhaps moving parts to a relevant standard or guideline. I fully agree and propose that the detailed provisions in paragraph 1 bis, paragraph 2 litra a-g and paragraph 5 litras a-c are moved to a standard and/or guideline, either to be developed or in the existing “Draft guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans” which has references to the Closure Plan (see [The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#) or Annex VIII. I have also suggested this in the accompanying Matrix. I have placed these mentioned sections (eligible for transfer to standard and guideline) in square brackets and invite for a discussion on this and/or concrete suggestions on streamlining this provision to be able to proceed on finalizing these Draft Regulations.

**Regulation 60 [IWG ENV]  
Final Closure Plan: cessation of production**

1. A Contractor shall, at least 24 months prior to the planned end of Commercial Production, or as soon as is reasonably practicable in the case of any unexpected cessation including a temporary suspension, submit to the Secretary-General, for the consideration of the Commission, a Final Closure Plan, taking into account the results of monitoring and data and information gathered during the exploitation phase and the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan.

1bis. The Secretary-General shall make the Final Closure Plan submitted pursuant to paragraph (1) available on the Authority's website for a period of at least 60 days and invite members of the Authority and Stakeholders to submit comments in writing. Once the Final Closure Plan has been finalized, approved, United Kingdom - replace in accordance with this regulation, it shall remain available on the Authority's website. [Australia]

1 ter. The Secretary-General shall, within seven calendar days following the close of the commenting period under paragraph 1bis, provide the comments submitted by members of the Authority and Stakeholders, to the applicant or Contractor for its consideration and to the Commission. The Contractor shall consider the comments and provide responses to the substantive and relevant comments received and shall submit any revised plans and responses to the Commission within 90 days from after receiving the comments from the Secretary-General.

2. The Commission shall examine the Final Closure Plan and any comments received pursuant to paragraph 1bis and revisions and responses made pursuant to paragraph 1ter within 90 days of receipt of the Final Closure Plan at its next meeting, provided that these have been circulated at least 30 60 90 Days in advance of the meeting or of receipt of the Final Closure Plan. The Commission should shall may, where necessary and appropriate to ensure sufficient technical expertise, consult external competent PEW independent experts, identified in accordance with Annex VIII to evaluate the Final Closure Plan.

3. If the Commission determines that the final Closure Plan meets the requirements of Regulation 59, it shall recommend approval of the final Closure Plan to the Council.

4. If the Commission determines that the final Closure Plan does not meet the requirements of Regulation 59, the Commission shall require the Contractor to make and submit amendments to the final Closure Plan as a condition for recommendation of approval of the plan in accordance with paragraph 3 of this regulation.

5. The Commission shall give the Contractor written notice of its decision under paragraph 4 above and provide the Contractor with the opportunity to make representations or to submit a revised final Closure Plan for the Commission's consideration, within 90 Days of the date of notification to the Contractor.

6. [At its next available meeting.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [t][T]he [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] Commission shall consider any such representations made or [any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] revised final Closure Plan submitted by the Contractor [when] [in] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] preparing its report and recommendation to the Council[, provided that the representations have been circulated at least [30] [60] [90] Days in advance of that meeting] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].

7. The Commission and Finance Committee shall review the amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee provided under Regulation 26 and include the results of that review and any recommendations in [its] [the Commission's] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] report to the Council on the final Closure Plan.

8. The Council shall consider and take a decision [based] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] on the report and recommendation of the Commission relating to the approval of the final Closure plan and the amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee.

9. Any reports and recommendations submitted to the Council and decisions made by the Council under this regulation shall be published on the Authority's Website by the Secretary-General within [7] [14] days of a submission or decision being made.

**Explanation / comment**

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- At a previous meeting, several participants called for streamlining this and other regulations. Some participants agreed to form an intersessional working group to rework and submit a revised/streamlined version of regulation 60, using the previous version of the regulation as a basis. I thank the group for its hard work and for the submitted proposal which I have reviewed and will use as a basis on this regulation going forward.
- I noted that not all paragraphs have been amended by the group; for example, paragraph 1 bis to which one participant has submitted a proposed change regarding deadlines for uploading on the Authorities website and submitting comments in writing. I have left these proposed changes in square brackets for your consideration and invite for views on this.
- I invite the group members to lead the discussion during our meeting, including the deliberations on whether reports, responses and recommendations should be circulated at least 30, 60 or 90 days ahead of meetings as suggested in paragraph 2 and 6 as well as whether decisions should be published on the Authority's website within 7 or 14 days as suggested in paragraph 9. (Suggestions left in square brackets). I invite for a discussion on this following the introduction by the group.
- Finally, I would note that – as I also referred to in my comments to the previous regulation (60) – parts of this regulation could perhaps be relocated to Annex VIII or a standard and/or guideline, either to

be developed or in the existing “Draft guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans” ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)). although I have no concrete proposal for which parts should be moved. I invite for a discussion on this.

**[Regulation 60bis  
Unexpected and temporary suspensions of production]**

1. As soon as reasonably practicable after any unexpected cessation in Commercial Production, including a temporary suspension, the Contractor shall put in place a care and maintenance plan, taking into account the results of monitoring and data and information gathered during the exploitation phase and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan.

2. The Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General of any such unexpected cessation or temporary suspension in Commercial Production as soon as reasonably practicable and shall provide the Secretary-General with a copy of the care and maintenance plan.]

**Explanation / comment**

The inclusion of a new Draft Regulation 60bis has been suggested by NORI, TOML, BMJ for the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

**Regulation 61 [IWG ENV]**

**[Post-closure monitoring] [Monitoring pursuant to Closure Plans]  
[Germany - replace]**

[1. A Contractor shall implement the Final Closure Plan in accordance with Best Environmental Practices and Good Industry Practice and shall report to the Secretary-General on the progress of such implementation on an [annual] [two year] basis [after an initial 5 year period] [Germany, PEW- delete] [or on a case-by-case basis agreed by the Council on recommendation from the Commission]. This report shall include a summary of the results of monitoring, conducted in accordance with the applicable Standard and pursuant to the post closure monitoring programme, and management actions taken in response to any adverse Environmental Effects identified through monitoring, until completion [of execution] [PEW- delete] of the Final Closure Plan.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 1]

1 alt. A Contractor shall implement the Final Closure Plan and shall report to the Secretary-General on the progress of such implementation, including a summary of the results of monitoring, conducted in accordance with the applicable Standard and pursuant to the monitoring programme, and management actions taken in response to any [residual] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] adverse Environmental Effects identified through monitoring, until completion of execution of the Final Closure Plan. Such report will be submitted in accordance with the following schedule: on annual basis during the first [three] [five] years after cessation of mining activity, on two year basis during the next [six] [four] years, on five yearly basis during the remaining term of the Closure Plan. This schedule [can] [may] [Nauru – replace] be [corrected in agreement with]

[adjusted by] [Nauru – replace] the Council [based] [Nauru] on recommendation[s] [Nauru] from the Commission. If significant adverse environmental effects are detected, the contractor shall report more frequently as required by the Council [African Group]

1. bis The purpose of post-closure monitoring is:

(a) To acquire new knowledge and data about ecosystems and the possibility of their restoration and rehabilitation [African Group]

(a) To obtain evidence that the contractor fulfilled its obligations under these Regulations including with regards to the effective protection of the Marine Environment [including any remediation measures required by the Closure Plan], and to verify that there are no more impacts from the Exploitation activities arising after Closure cessation;

(b) To [implement] [accompany and document] [Germany - replace] the restoration and rehabilitation (wherever possible) of the Marine Environment; and [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]

(c) To get new knowledge and data about ecosystems and possibility of their restoration and rehabilitation

2. The Contractor shall continue to monitor the Marine Environment [for a minimum of [such period] [X years][PEW – delete]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] after the cessation of activities, [or][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] until the closure objectives have been achieved, as set out in the Closure Plan [and for the duration provided for in the Standards and taking into account Guidelines] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

2 bis. Monitoring data [collected by the Contractor pursuant to this regulation and its Closure Plan] [PEW] shall be released publicly in an accessible format according to the [relevant][applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Standard and taking into account [the applicable] [Nauru] [the relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Guideline[s] in [Nauru – delete] [at] [Nauru] intervals [defined][set out] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] in the Final Closure Plan [Nauru] [according to the [applicable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Standard-~~in~~ intervals defined in the Standard [adhering to internationally recognized data principles, [consistent with Best Scientific Practices] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], [~~in~~ monthly intervals] [in annual intervals] [at intervals appropriate to the monitoring schedule]] [Nauru – delete] [and taking into consideration guidelines] [Russia - replace]

3. Upon completion of implementation of the Final Closure Plan, the Contractor shall, in accordance with the procedure described in the [applicable][Nauru] Standard, hire a competent, independent and accredited auditor to conduct a final compliance assessment and submit a final compliance assessment report according to the [relevant][applicable][Nauru] Standard[s][Nauru – delete] and taking into account [relevant][the applicable][Nauru – replace] Guideline[s][Nauru – delete] to the Secretary-General to ensure that the [closure objectives contained in the][PEW – delete] [if][F]inal [PEW -capitalize] Closure Plan [have][has] [PEW - replace] been [met] [successfully delivered] [PEW – replace]. [Such report shall be reviewed by the Commission at its next meeting, [provided that it has been circulated at least 30 Days in advance of the meeting]] [Such report shall be reviewed by the Commission at its next meeting, provided that it has been published on the website of the Authority at least 30 days in advance of the meeting] [Germany - replace] [Nauru – delete].



3 bis. The Commission shall provide a report and recommendations on that performance assessment report to the Council for [its] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] consideration,– who shall[, in light of the final compliance assessment report determine] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [decide] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] whether the final Closure Plan has been satisfactorily delivered, the objectives of the final Closure Plan have been achieved, which decision shall be relevant to the retention, release, forfeiture or use by the Authority of the Contractor’s Environmental Performance Guarantee. The report shall be published on the website of the Authority.

4. If, on the basis of ~~the auditor’s report and Commission’s recommendations~~ ~~the recommendations of the Commission, taking into account the auditor’s report~~ ~~[France - replace]~~ provided pursuant to paragraphs (3) and(3bis).), the Council decides that a Contractor has failed to meet the conditions of, or deadlines related to, the objectives of the Final Closure Plan and reporting hereon, the Council shall direct the Contractor ~~to take the necessary~~ [Nauru] [and appropriate] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~what further~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] action ~~[must be taken]~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to achieve satisfactory delivery of the objectives of the ~~final~~ [Nauru] Closure Plan.

**Explanation / comment**

- For overall remarks to Regulation 49-61 and the annexes, please see my comments to Regulation 49.
- At a previous meeting several participants called for streamlining this and other regulations. Some participants agreed to form an intersessional working group to rework and submit a revised/streamlined version of regulation 61, using the previous version of the regulation as a basis. I thank the group for its hard work and for the submitted proposal which I have reviewed and will use as basis on this regulation going forward.
- I note that the group has presented a draft where the participants weigh in with, sometimes diverging, views and comments to the submitted provision. Exemplified by there being both a “paragraph 1” and “Paragraph 1 alt.”.
- I invite the group members to lead the discussion during our meeting, including the deliberations in paragraph 1 and 1 bis as well as in paragraph 2 and 2 bis, on specific intervals – listed in square brackets – for different periods of monitoring. I invite for a discussion on this following the introduction by the intersessional working group.
- In paragraph 1, several participants have submitted different proposals regarding the timeframe for the Contractor to submit a report to the Secretary-General on the progress of the implementation of the Final Closure Plan. I have placed these suggestions in square brackets and invite for views on this.
- I also note that several references are made to the need for consolidation or rewording or formal drafting of the regulation.

- As mentioned in my previous comments to the Closure Plan regulations, parts of this regulation could perhaps be relocated to Annex VII to a standard and/or guideline, either to be developed or in the existing “Draft guidelines for the preparation of Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans” ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)) although I have no concrete proposal for which parts should be moved. I invite for a discussion on this.
- On a final note, this group has also proposed definitions of “Closure”, “Decommissioning” and “Final Closure Plan” which have been inserted in the Schedule.
- **During Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session, the African Group has proposed to refer, throughout the Regulation, to “Closure Monitoring”, instead of “Post-Closure Monitoring”.**

## Part VII Financial terms of an exploitation contract

### Section 1 General

#### Regulation 62 [OEWG]

**[Equality of treatment] [Objectives of the financial terms of contracts]  
[Brazil – suggests replacing]**

The Council ~~[[~~shall, based on the recommendations of the Commission, apply the provisions of this Part ~~in on~~ a transparent, uniform and non-discriminatory ~~[basis]~~ ~~[Brazil – supports]~~ ~~manner~~, and~~]]~~ ~~[PEW – delete]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – remove brackets]~~ shall ensure equality of financial treatment and comparable financial obligations for Contractors ~~[[to counter any disparity arising out of any grossly incomparable concentration of given resources]]~~ ~~[PEW, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Brazil – delete]~~.

~~[Alt. The Council shall [, based on the recommendations of the Commission], apply the provisions of this Part with the purpose of achieving all objectives of the financial terms of the contract envisaged by UNCLOS. Particular attention shall be given to the objectives of ensuring the transfer of technology, training and scientific knowledge to developing States; providing incentives for contractors to undertake joint arrangements with the Enterprise and developing States; and guaranteeing equality of financial treatment and comparable financial obligations for contractors.] [Brazil]~~

#### Explanation / Comment

- Participants at the July meeting supported inclusion of the word “transparent”. Those participants also proposed to change “manner” to “basis”. I propose to change “manner” to “basis”, to be consistent with other provisions (i.e. Regulation 63).
- One participant proposes adding “to counter any disparity arising out of any grossly incomparable concentration of given mineral resources”. I invite comments.
- One participant proposes deleting, “shall be applied in a uniform and non-discriminatory manner” as it may create a

negative inference for sections where these words are not included. It recommends adding “transparency” to Regulation 1. I invite comments.

## Regulation 63 [OEWG]

### Incentives

1. The Council may, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission ~~and the Economic Planning Commission~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], ~~in accordance with the Standards and taking into account the Guidelines.~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] ~~and the Economic Planning Commission in accordance with the applicable Standard~~ [Nauru] provide for incentives to Contractors, ~~including financial incentives, [as well as regulatory and technical advice]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] on a transparent, uniform and non-discriminatory basis, ~~to further~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] ~~[limited to]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the objectives set out in article 13 (1) of annex III to the Convention. ~~Incentives introduced by the Authority shall [may] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], where appropriate, incentivize also Contractors to go beyond their existing contractual obligations and good industry practice, in particular in the context of environmental performances, and fully reflect any impacts on ecosystem services and the natural capital.]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

2. ~~[Furthermore,]~~ the Council may provide incentives, ~~including financial incentives,~~ to ~~those Contractors entering into~~ [Contractors to undertake] joint arrangements with the Enterprise under article 11 of annex III to the Convention, ~~and developing including to developing~~ States or their nationals, to stimulate the transfer of technology thereto and to train the personnel of the Authority and of developing States.

~~3. The Council shall ensure that, as a result of the incentives provided to Contractors under paragraphs 1 and 2 above, Contractors are not subsidized so as to be given an artificial competitive advantage with respect to land-based miners.]~~

~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3]~~

~~[4. Any incentives shall be fully compatible with the policies and principles under Regulation 2.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4]~~

~~4.alt. Any incentives introduced by the Authority shall ensure that: (i) Contractors are not subsidized so as to be given an artificial competitive advantage with respect to land-based miners; (ii) Contractors are incentivized to go beyond their existing contractual obligations and good industry practice, in particular in the context of environmental performances, and fully reflect any impacts on ecosystem services and the natural capital; and (iii) are fully compatible with the policies and principles under Regulation 2.” [Germany]~~

### Regulation 63 ALT

1. ~~In accordance with the Standards and Guidelines and considering the recommendations of the Commission, the Council may offer incentives, [as well as regulatory and technical advice to all Contractors.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] transparently, uniformly, without discrimination or arbitrariness, to advance the goals outlined in article 13 (1) of Annex III to the~~

### Convention.

2. Furthermore, the Council may provide advice and support to Contractors entering into joint arrangements with the Enterprise as stipulated in article 11 of annex III to the Convention. The primary purpose of these incentives is to promote technology transfers and to support the training of personnel from both the Authority and developing States.
3. The provision of these incentives should not create an artificial competitive advantage for any of the [Contractors] [companies] [NORI, TOL, BMJ – replace] holding exploitation contracts.
4. The Council will ensure that the incentives granted to Contractors, as per paragraphs 1 and 2, do not result in an explicit or implicit subsidy, giving them an unfair competitive [advantage] [leverage] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] over land-based miners.

### Chair's Proposed text

1. [Pursuant to Article 11 of Annex III to the Convention,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Council may provide financial incentives to Contractors [to undertake joint arrangements with the Enterprise,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] as provided for in Article 13 of Annex III to the Convention.
2. The Council shall ensure that, as a result of the incentives provided to Contractors under paragraphs 1 and 2 above, Contractors are not subsidized so as to be given an artificial competitive advantage with respect to land-based miners.
3. [Any incentives shall be fully compatible with the policies and principles under Regulation 2.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3 entirely]

### Text included in the Consolidated Text

1. The Council, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission and the Economic Planning Commission, may provide ~~[[financial] incentives [Pew - capitalize]~~ [to Contractors and/or] pursuant to Article 11 of Annex III to the Convention, to Contractors entering into joint arrangements with the Enterprise, ~~[[in accordance with the applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines rules set out in Standards] [Pew - delete].~~

~~[[1. Alt. The Council may, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission and the Economic Planning Commission in accordance with the applicable Standard, provide for incentives, including Financial Incentives, on a uniform and nondiscriminatory basis, to Contractors to further the objectives set out in Article 13 (1) of annex III to the Convention.] [Pew – delete entire para 1.alt.]~~

2. Those incentives shall be applied on a uniform and non-discriminatory basis, to further the objectives set out in Article 13(1) of Annex III to the Convention including, where applicable, the objective of stimulating the transfer of technology to, and training the personnel of, the Authority and of developing States]

[2. Alt Those incentives shall further all the objectives set out in Article 13 of Annex III to the Convention including the objectives of ensuring the transfer of technology, training and scientific knowledge to developing States, and providing financial and non-financial incentives for contractors to undertake joint arrangements with the Enterprise and developing States.] [Brazil]

3. The Council shall ensure that, as a result of the ~~F~~financial ~~I~~ncentives provided to Contractors, Contractors are not subsidized so as to be given an artificial competitive advantage with respect to other Contractors and/or land-based miners.

4. Any incentives shall be fully compatible with the policies and principles under Regulation 2, and any applicable Standards [and Guidelines].

[5. A financial Incentives Registry shall be established, maintained and published through the Seabed Mining Register, pursuant to Regulation 92.] [France]

[5. The Council shall not permit any incentive, or other arrangement from which a Contractor may benefit, that would infringe the prohibition against subsidisation contained in section 6 of the Annex to the 1994 Agreement, in accordance with any applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines.] [Pew]

#### Explanation / Comment

- There are now three options to consider for this regulation. The first option includes 4 paragraphs incorporating the text mark-up to date. The second option is a 4 paragraph proposal from a participant. The third option is a Chair's proposal.
- As requested at the July meeting, I have prepared a proposal for consideration as a Chair's text. It attempts to limit the reference to financial incentives to the scope of Article 11 and Article 13 of Annex III, and also seeks to avoid selectively referencing from those articles.  
7.
- One participant proposes that the incentives referred relate to joint ventures with the Enterprise only, and therefore suggests merging paragraphs 1 and 2 and clarifying that financial incentives are only permitted to further a subset of the objectives listed in Article 13 paragraph 1 of annex III.
- One participant proposes including a reference to the Economic Planning Commission, with the explanation that UNCLOS Annex III Article 13 paragraph 14 requires recommendations of the Economic Planning Commission and the LTC before rules, regulations and procedures are adopted in relation to incentives to further the objectives set out in article 13(1). I invite comments.
- One participant has proposed a change "Contractors to undertake" to replace "to those Contractors undertaking" to more closely reflect Article 13(1)(d).
- One participant has proposed adding "regulatory and technical

advice”, in addition to incentives. I invite comments.

- One participant has proposed to clarify that any incentives should be aligned with efforts to reduce environmental impacts such as, for instance, through the use of zero-carbon fuels. The concept of incentives is supposed to take into account efforts of contractors that go beyond legal obligations and best business practices, in particular in the context of the environment. Contractors should not be given any incentives to execute what they are already obliged to do under the contract. I invite comments.
- One participant proposes deletion of ‘Furthermore’ in DR63(2), as this seems to indicate incentives for joint arrangements with the Enterprise are further and additional to another type of incentive that may be offered, which we do not consider to be an accurate reading of UNCLOS.
- Three participants proposed that the Standards and Guidelines should include a clear definition and explanation of “financial incentives”. Another participant opposes this and considers it should be left to experts. I invite the view of the participants as to what that definition would include.
- Participants at the July meeting supported including paragraph 4. One participant now opposes paragraph 4.

#### **Explanation / Comment (2)**

The text discussed during Part I of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session has been included in the Compilation Document. Proposals received after Part I have been included in this last version.

## **Section 2 Liability for and determination of royalty**

### **Regulation 64 [OEWG]**

**[Contractor shall pay royalty] [Obligation to pay royalty] [Royalty Payment]  
[NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [Brazil - replace]**

A Contractor, from the date of commencement of Commercial Production, shall pay a royalty in respect of the mineral-bearing ore sold or removed without sale from the Contract Area as determined in appendix IV to these regulations pursuant to paragraph 1 of section 8 of the annex to the Agreement.

#### **Explanation / Comment**

- Following discussions at the March 2023 meeting where a number of participants expressed views that Commercial Production should be defined with more specificity, some participants submitted comments indicating that further guidance is needed concerning the definition of “Commercial Production”. One participant has expressed concerns about

commercially strategic stockpiling.

**[Regulation 64Bis [OEWG]**

**Determination of the applicable equalization measure**

1. If a Contractor's most recent Equalization Measure Audit confirms that:

(a) the Contractor does not have any Tax Exemptions from its Sponsoring State(s); and

(b) the Contractor does not receive any Subsidies from its Sponsoring State(s).

then the Contractor shall pay the Top-up Profit Share Payment to the Authority.

2. If a Contractor's most recent Equalization Measure Audit confirms that:

(a) the Contractor does have Tax Exemptions from its Sponsoring State(s); and/or

(b) the Contractor does receive Subsidies from its Sponsoring State(s).

then the Contractor shall pay the Additional Royalty to the Authority.

3. A Contractor shall ensure that an Equalization Measure Audit shall be carried out prior to the commencement of Commercial Production and periodically thereafter as determined by the Authority in accordance with the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru – replace] Standard and [the] [Nauru] applicable Guideline[s] [Nauru – delete]. Promptly on its completion a Contractor shall forward a copy of the Equalization Measure Audit to the [Secretary-General] [Commission] [Nauru – delete].

[4. A Contractor [will] [shall] [Nauru – replace] pay for each Equalization Measure Audit, which shall be undertaken by an Independent Auditor in accordance with the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru – replace] Standard [and applicable Guidelines] [Nauru – delete].

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4 entirely]

5. A Contractor and [the] [Nauru] Sponsoring State [or States] [Nauru] [(s)] [Nauru – delete] shall fully assist an Independent Auditor undertaking an Equalization Measure Audit and shall [, subject to appropriate measures to protect confidential information] [Nauru] [subject to measures or redactions to protect confidential information] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] provide the Independent Auditor with all relevant documentation, including but not limited to the Contractor's audited accounts, any sponsorship agreement or other arrangements between the Contractor or any of its Related Entities and the Sponsoring State(s) or any other government authority in any jurisdiction, any contract, and any other documents that evidence or provide the Contractor with an actual or potential Tax Exemption or Subsidy.

6. If a Contractor or any of its Related Entities, at any time after the initial Equalization Measure Audit has been completed, enters into, or otherwise agrees, or receives the benefit of, any arrangement that could be considered to provide the Contractor with an actual or potential Tax Exemption or Subsidy, the Contractor shall immediately notify the [Secretary-General][Commission]. The [Commission] may, in accordance with the relevant Standard and applicable Guidelines, determine that an Equalization Measure Audit must be carried out.

**Regulation 64Ter Additional Royalty [OEWG]**

1. The Additional Royalty payable under Regulation 64Bis is in addition to the royalty provided for in Regulation 64.
2. If required under regulation [64Bis], a Contractor, from the [commencement of the Second Period of Commercial Production][fifth anniversary of the date of commencement of Commercial Production], shall pay an Additional Royalty in respect of mineral-bearing ore sold or removed without sale from the Contract Area as provided for in Appendix IV to these regulations.
3. The Authority shall set an Applicable Additional Royalty Rate in respect of the Additional Royalty to be paid by the Contractor to the Authority for the Minerals which constitute polymetallic nodules, as set out in the [relevant [applicable] [Nauru – replace] Standard [and applicable Guidelines] [Nauru – delete].
4. [The Applicable Additional Royalty Rate shall be [8%].] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4]
5. The Additional Royalty payable to the Authority for each [royalty return period] [Calendar Year] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] shall be equal to X minus Y, where:
  - (a) X is the product of the Applicable Additional Royalty Rate multiplied by the Aggregate Relevant Metal Value for that [royalty return period][Calendar Year]; and
  - (b) Y is any amount of Allowable Sponsoring State Tax that has not been deducted in previous [royalty return periods][Calendar Years] when calculating an Additional Royalty payment or a Top-up Profit Share Payment, calculated in accordance with the Standard and taking into account the Guidelines. In no circumstances shall the Additional Royalty be less than zero.
6. A payment from a Contractor to the Sponsoring State(s) is an Allowable Sponsoring State Tax, where:
  - (a) the payment is [a]n actual [Nauru – delete] cash payment [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [, in kind contribution or other financial contribution] [Nauru] made by the Contractor to its Sponsoring State(s) in respect of taxes and/or royalties [related to activities associated with][accruing from seabed mining under] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [related to] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] the exploitation contract;
  - (b) there is a [signed letter][receipt] from the Sponsoring State’s tax authority stating the actual cash amount paid by the Contractor to the Sponsoring State for taxes [and/] [Nauru – delete] or royalties [related to activities associated with][accruing from seabed mining under] the exploitation contract [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]; and
  - (c) [where there is a signed letter from an Independent Auditor confirming the actual cash amount paid by the Contractor to the Sponsoring State for taxes and/or royalties [related to activities associated with][accruing from seabed mining under] the exploitation contract.]



[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-para c entirely]

7. [The Contractor shall pay for the audit referred to in regulation [64Ter.6(c)].]
8. [Draft Regulations 27, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82 and 89 shall apply to the Additional Royalty as they apply to the royalty.]
9. [Appendix IV definitions apply to the Additional Royalty as they apply to the royalty.]
10. [Draft Standard sections 1 to 4 apply to the Additional Royalty as they apply to the royalty.]

[Nauru – delete paras 8 – 10 entirely] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete paras 7-9 entirely]

**Regulation 64Qua [OEWG]**  
**Top-up Profit Share Payment**

1. If required under regulation [64Bis], a Contractor, from the [commencement of the Second Period of Commercial Production] [[fifth anniversary of the date of commencement of Commercial Production]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], shall pay a Top-up Profit Share Payment [ as provided for in Appendix IV to these regulations].

2. The Authority shall set an Assumed CIT Rate in respect of Top-up Profit Share Payment to be paid by the Contractor to the Authority, as set out in the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru – replace] Standard [and applicable Guidelines] [Nauru – delete].

3. [The Assumed CIT Rate shall be [25%].] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3]

4. The Top-up Profit Share Payment payable to the Authority for each [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [[Calendar Year]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] shall be equal to A minus B, where:

- (a) A is the Assumed CIT Rate multiplied by Profits for that [royalty return period][Calendar Year]; and
- (b) B is Total Eligible Payments for that year,  
calculated in accordance with the Standard and taking into account the Guidelines. In no circumstances shall the Top-up Profit Share Payment be less than zero.

5. Profits for the [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [[Calendar Year]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] are equal to C plus D plus E (without double counting) where:

- (a) C is the sum of the Income for that [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [[Calendar Year]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] from Relevant Activities from all Related Entities that have not met the Inclusion Criteria;
- (b) D is the sum of the Income for that [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [[Calendar Year]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] from all activities from all Related Entities that have met the Inclusion Criteria; and
- (c) E is the Income of the Contractor for that [royalty return period] [NORI,

TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

6. Total Eligible Payments for a [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] are equal to Eligible Royalty Payments to the Sponsoring State(s) for that [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] plus Eligible Tax Payments for that [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

7. Eligible Royalty Payments are royalties payable to the Sponsoring State(s) by the Contractor [related to activities associated with] [accruing from seabed mining under] the exploitation contract.

8. Eligible Tax Payments are equal to F plus G, where:

- (a) F is the sum of Covered Taxes [incurred][paid] by all Related Entities to the Sponsoring State(s) or any other government authority in any jurisdiction arising due to Income that has been included in the calculation of Profits provided for by regulation 64Qua.5 for that [royalty return period][Calendar Year]. Any payment made to any Sponsoring State(s) or any other government authority due to Income not included in the definition of Profits in Draft Regulation 64Qua.2 is not an Eligible Tax Payment; and
- (b) G is Covered Taxes [incurred][paid] by the Contractor to the Sponsoring State(s) [or any other government authority in any jurisdiction] for that [royalty return period][Calendar Year].

9. A Contractor shall lodge with the Secretary-General a Top-up Profit Share Return not later than 90 Days after the end of each [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

10. A Top-up Profit Share Return shall include the following information for each [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], in accordance with the Standard and taking into account the Guidelines:

- (a) the Top-up Profit Share Payment due, Profits, Income, Income included in Profits, Total Eligible Payments, Eligible Royalty Payments, and Eligible Tax Payments for that [royalty return period] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(Calendar Year)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete];
- (b) for each Related Entity, whether it meets the Inclusion Criteria;
- (c) for each Related Entity that meets the Inclusion Criteria, its Income, Total Eligible Payments, and Eligible Tax Payments;
- (d) for each Related Entity that does not meet the Inclusion Criteria, its Income from relevant Activities, Total Eligible Payments, and Eligible Tax Payments;
- (e) audited accounts for the Contractor and its Related Entities;
- (f) for each Related Entity that does not meet the Inclusion Criteria, audited segmented accounts for each of those Related Entities showing the Income, Eligible Tax Payments and Covered Tax payments from Relevant Activities and separately from non-Relevant Activities; and

- (g) any other information, document or anything required under the Standards, Guidelines or reasonably requested by the Authority for the administration and validation of the Top Up Profit Share Payment.

11. A Profit Share Audit shall be carried out by an Independent Auditor [employed by and reporting to the Authority and] in accordance with the relevant Standard and applicable Guidelines.

12. [A Contractor will pay for each Profit Share Audit.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 12 entirely]

### **Regulation 64Qui [OEWG]**

#### **Applicable Standards for financial payments**

The Authority shall adopt Standards [and Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] providing for the effective operation of the Additional Royalty and Top-up Profit Share Payment, including but not limited to:

- (a) definitions of Inclusion Criteria, Subsidies, Relevant Activities, and Tax Exemptions;
- (b) applicable rates for the Assumed CIT Rate and Applicable Additional Royalty Rate;
- (c) definitions of Related Entities, Income and Covered Taxes that will be based to the greatest extent practical on the Pillar 2 Global Anti-Base Erosion Model Rules, or alternatively, may directly reference the relevant articles of the Pillar 2 Global Anti-Base Erosion Model Rules (as amended or updated from time to time);
- (d) the criteria an auditor must meet to be an Independent Auditor;
- (e) the criteria for the Equalization Measure Audit and Profit Share Independent Audit;
- (f) the fees for the Equalization Measure Audit and Profit Share Audit;
- (g) the format and required content of the Top-up Profit Share Return;
- (h) [the penalties, fees, and interest that the Authority shall levy on a Contractor due to non-cooperation with an Independent Auditor, late submission of a Top-up Profit Share Return, failure to submit a Top-up Profit Share Return, submission of an incomplete Top-up Profit Share Return, late payment of the Top-up Profit Share Payment and non-payment of a Top-up Profit Share Payment;] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and
- (i) any other provisions as required.

#### **Explanation / Comment**

- The text proposal (based on a hybrid royalty and top up profit share equalization measure) submitted by a group of participants following the intersessional work on the equalisation measure has been included here, with further suggested amendments to align with existing text proposals. I invite comments on both the concepts and drafting. See also the additional proposed definitions which have been included for discussion purposes in

the definitions section in Enclosure V of this document.

- If there is broad support for the proposal reflected in the text of DR 64Bis to DR 64Qui, I would propose that the text is moved into the various other draft regulations where similar issues are dealt with, for example moving some text to Appendix IV and the relevant Standards, and some text to the other draft regulations which deal with audit requirements, etc.
- The following explanation was submitted with the text proposal:

*Under this measure, the contractor pays the additional royalty if it receives tax exemptions or subsidies (an indicative figure of 8% for the additional royalty is included square brackets in DR64ter, paragraph 5(a), but further modelling from MIT on the rate to be used will be required), and it pays the top-up profit share if it does not. The equalization measure is designed so that a contractor and its related entities paying at least 25% of their profits in taxes and royalties to sponsoring and other states pay nothing additional under the equalization measure.*

*The hybrid equalization measure demotivates tax avoidance by contractors and is better at equalization than the additional royalty only. The hybrid measure builds on definitions of income and taxes provided by the GloBe Rules, which simplifies administration and audit.*

*Standards and Guidelines will be needed to define terms and aspects of the implementation of the hybrid measure by the Authority. For example, an Equalization Measure Audit (DR 64Bis) will determine whether the contractor is liable to pay the Additional Royalty or the Top-up Profit Share Payment. The initial audit should be conducted prior to the commencement of commercial production to provide certainty to the contractor and the Authority. However, after the initial Equalization Measure Audit, further such audits may not need to be conducted annually and may be initiated only if the Authority believes that new tax exemptions or subsidies have been provided to the contractor since the last audit.*

*By way of another example, 'Inclusion Criteria' (DR 64Qua) will need to be defined to make it clear what activities of entities related to the contractor, or percentage of revenues of the related activities, are counted as falling within the 'mining perimeter'. This will avoid all related entities of a contractor being required to submit accounts to the Authority.*

### **Regulation 65 [OEWG]**

#### **Explanation / Comment**

- At the March 2023 meeting the participants agreed to delete **Regulation 65** (Secretary-General may issue Guidelines) on the basis that the draft Regulations 94 and 95 already provides the Commission with the powers to make Standards and Guidelines.

## **Section 3 Royalty returns and payment of royalty**

### **Regulation 66 [OEWG] Form of royalty returns**

A royalty return lodged with the Secretary-General shall be in the form prescribed by ~~any the~~ [applicable] [Nauru] Standard~~s~~, and taking into account any ~~of~~ Guidelines [Nauru – delete] and signed by the Contractor’s designated official.

**Explanation / Comment**

- As a general point, I would suggest a review of all references to Standard(s) and Guideline(s) throughout the text to ensure there is consistency and also to take account of whether there will be one or multiple relevant and applicable Standards.

**Regulation 67 [OEWG]**

**Royalty return period**

A royalty return period for the purposes of this Part is a half-year return period, from:

- (a) 1 January to 30 June; and
- (b) 1 July to 31 December.

**Regulation 68 [OEWG]**

**Lodging of royalty returns**

1. A Contractor shall lodge with the Secretary-General a royalty return for ~~each Mining Area~~ the Contract Area not later than 90 Days after the end of the royalty return period in which the date of commencement of Commercial Production occurs, and thereafter not later than 90 Days after the end of each subsequent royalty return period for the duration of the exploitation contract.
2. In connection with any joint venture arrangement or a consortium of Contractors, one royalty return shall be submitted for the Contract Area by the joint venture or consortium.
3. A royalty return may be lodged electronically.

**Explanation / Comment**

- Regulation 64 requires royalties to be paid for the Contract Area. On the suggestion of a participant, I have adjusted the text of this regulation to harmonize.

**Regulation 69 [OEWG]**

**Error or mistake in royalty return**

A Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General promptly of any error in calculation or mistake of fact in connection with a royalty return or payment of a royalty.

**Regulation 70 [OEWG]**

**Payment of royalty shown by royalty return**

1. A Contractor shall pay the royalty due for a royalty return period on the Day

the royalty return is required to be lodged. ~~[[The Council may request the advance payment of any royalty due by way of instalment where special circumstances exist, in accordance with relevant Standards and [Guidelines] [ rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority], to reflect for instance impacts on ecosystem services and the natural capital.]]~~ ~~[[China, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]]~~

2. Payments to the Authority shall be made in United States dollars or other foreign currency which is freely convertible and approved in accordance with relevant Standards.

2.bis. A Contractor shall declare the currency to be used in the payment of royalties ~~[[in the exploitation contract] ]~~ ~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]]~~ prior to the commencement of Commercial Production ~~]]~~ ~~[[Nauru – remove bracket]]~~.

2.ter. Unless otherwise decided by the Council, a Contractor may only change the currency used for the payment of royalties on the anniversary of the fifth year of Commercial Production and at the end of every subsequent ~~[[fifth] ]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]]~~ year of Commercial Production ~~[[after requesting the change of currency, and only after obtaining [authorization from the Authority][approval of the Council], which shall decide on this after assessing that income will not be affected by the requested change].]~~ ~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]]~~

~~[[ALT 2. bis/ter. The currency to be used in the payment of royalties must be stated in the exploitation contract and declared before the commencement of Commercial Production. Such currency may be changed by previous request of the Contractor and approval by the Council at the end of every subsequent fifth year of Commercial Production.]]~~ ~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]]~~

3. All payments made to the Authority ~~]]~~ shall be made ~~gross net~~ and ~~]]~~ ~~[[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]]~~ shall be free of any deductions, transmission fees, levies or other charges.

~~[[4. The Council may approve the payment of any royalty due by way of instalment where it determines that special [and extenuating] circumstances [of force majeure] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] exist, that justify payment by instalment, in accordance with [relevant][applicable] Standards, taking account of [relevant Guidelines] ]~~ ~~]]~~ ~~[[rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority. ]]~~ ~~[[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]]~~

| <b>Explanation / Comment</b>  |
|---|
| <p><b>Paragraph 1</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One participant has proposed additional text in paragraph 1 in relation to advance payments. <u>I invite comments, including on whether the reference to Rules, Regulations, and Procedures should be changed to Standards and Guidelines as this is a reference to the royalty regime – or are other Rules, regulations, and Procedures considered to be applicable?</u></li> </ul> <p><b>Paragraph 2</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Participants at the July meeting supported this paragraph as now drafted.</li> </ul> <p><b>New paragraph 2.bis</b></p> |

- Participants at the July meeting supported this paragraph as drafted. One additional change has now been proposed for greater certainty.

***New paragraph 2.ter***

- This paragraph was supported by participants at the July meeting. Two participants have now proposed new language to ensure that the Authority’s income will not be negatively affected. I welcome views on this additional language.
- One participant has now raised a question as to how frequently currency changes should be permitted. I invite views on how frequently currency can be changed after the initial five year period.
- One participant has proposed a simplified Alt paragraph to replace paragraphs 2bis and 2 ter. I invite comments.

***Paragraph 4***

- Participants at the July meeting supported paragraph 4 as now drafted, and proposed that there should be a definition of force majeure. One participant proposed that the circumstances for using instalment payments should be further clarified in the relevant Standards, and force majeure is suggested to be one of the circumstances. One participant now proposes that “special circumstances” should be sufficient. One participant now proposes its deletion of paragraph 4. I invite comments, including on: (i) a definition of force majeure; and (ii) whether the reference to Rules, Regulations, and Procedures should be changed to Standards and Guidelines as this is a reference to the royalty regime – or are other Rules, regulations, and Procedures considered to be applicable?

**Regulation 71 [OEWG]  
Information to be submitted**

1. [The Standards and Guidelines shall set out the information to be included in each [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [A] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] royalty return [shall include the following information] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [including] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] for each royalty return period[, in accordance with Standards and taking into [account the] [account] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] Guidelines] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]:

- (a) [The quantity in wet metric tons and dry metric tons of mineral-bearing ore recovered from each Mining Area;]
- (b) [The quantity and value by Mineral in wet metric tons and dry metric tons of the mineral-bearing ore shipped from the ~~Mining Area~~ Contract Area; The value, grades and the basis of the valuation (by Mineral and Metal) of the mineral-bearing ore sold or removed without sale from the ~~Mining Area~~ Contract Area, as [verified by a Suitably Qualified Person and] [NORI TOML, BMJ - delete] supported by a representative chemical analysis of the ore by a certified laboratory, with the cost of weighing and testing to be borne by the Contractor;]
- (c) [[Details of all contracts [and amendments to contracts] and sale or exchange

agreements relating to the mineral-bearing ore sold or removed without sale from the Contract Area]; and]

- (d) [A calculation of the royalty payable ~~in accordance with section 3~~, including any adjustment made to the prior royalty return period and a declaration signed by a designated official of the Contractor that the royalty return is accurate and correct.]
- (e) [Details of all revenues and operating costs associated with activities in handling and processing, to the degree available.] [China – delete] [Pew – supports retaining]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete sub paras (a) – (e)]

2. In respect of a final royalty return period ending on the date of expiry, surrender or termination of the exploitation contract, the Contractor shall provide:

- (a) A final calculation of the royalty payable;
- (b) Details of any refund or overpayment of royalty claimed; and
- (c) The quantity and value (by Mineral and Metal) of all closing stocks of the mineral-bearing ore.

3. Within 90 Days from the end of a Calendar Year, the Contractor shall provide the Secretary-General and the Sponsoring State or States with a statement from an auditor or certified independent accountant that the royalty calculation for that Calendar Year:

- (a) Is based on proper accounts and records properly kept and is in agreement with those accounts and records; and
- (b) Complies with these regulations and is accurate and correct.

**Explanation / Comment**

- Some participants have proposed changing “mineral-bearing” to “metal-bearing”, and “mineral” to “metal”, throughout this Regulation, because the mineralogy of nodules is fluid depending upon the level of desiccation and moisture content. I have not included this change as “metal-bearing” is a subset of “mineral-bearing” in the context of the definitions of Mineral and Metal in the Schedule, and so narrower. However, as previously noted, the Guidelines should require distinctions by Metal.

**Paragraph 1**

- At the July meeting participants supported the text referencing collecting both wet (at time of extraction) and dry (calculated outside of Area) weights. Some participants have proposed to further clarify the definition and difference between dry and wet nodules and an agreed procedure for converting wet metric tons to dry metric tons in the Standards. I do not propose a conversion formula in the text. To my understanding, the most reliable measure to ensure consistency in analysis is to use DMT. The modelling assumes reporting and assays are done on the basis of dry metric tons (DMT). Calculations of royalties will need to be against DMT, however, contractors should



be required to submit information on both the wet metric tons (WMT) and DMT collected from the area for data collection and audit purposes. Additional technical specifications and parameters (such as the point(s) in time at which wet metric tons should be measured, and a requirement to report details of the moisture content) may be included in Standards and Guidelines as already contemplated.

- Regulation 71 refers to sale or removal without sale from the Mining Area (now proposed to refer to the Contract Area). For accuracy and consistency, weighing and sampling should take place at the same Valuation Point (as defined in Appendix IV) irrespective of whether there is a sale.
- Some participants propose that suitably qualified person and certified laboratory be qualified in the Guidelines; that this should be “as defined by ISO standards”; and that a list of approved persons and certified laboratories could be maintain by the Council. I welcome language proposals.
- One participant proposes deleting subparagraph 1(c) as these materials may be confidential, and in any case, serve no purpose.
- One participant has proposed a new subparagraph 1(e) to ensure that the Authority is appropriately informed, to the degree possible, of each sale, shipment, transfer, exchange or other disposal beyond the Contract Area so that it can ascertain that the same standards, including environmental standards are deployed throughout the value chain.

**Regulation 72 [OEWG]  
Authority may request additional information**

The Secretary-General may, by notice to a Contractor who has lodged a royalty return, request the Contractor to provide, by the date stated in the notice, which shall be no later than 90 days from the date of the notice, information to support the matters stated in the royalty return.

**Regulation 73 [OEWG]  
Overpayment of royalty**

1. Where a royalty return shows any overpayment of royalties, a Contractor may apply to the Secretary-General to request a refund of any such overpayment. [Contractors [will] [shall] [Nauru – replace] [properly] [Nauru – delete] demonstrate that an overpayment was made, and support their claim [with] [Nauru – delete] [by providing] [Nauru] all necessary documentation and justifications [to] [Nauru]. [T][t]he [Nauru] Secretary-General[, ] [Nauru]. [shall authorize refunds as an exceptional measure, [but no more than [XX] times for the same Contractor [].] [China – delete] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

2. Where no such request is received by the Secretary-General within 90 Days of the due date of submission of the relevant royalty return, the Authority shall carry forward any overpayment and credit it against a future royalty amount payable under this Part, or, if the exploitation contract has expired, refund the amount within 90 days.

3. Any request to reduce a royalty-related amount payable by a Contractor must be made within [one year of an applicable financial report] ~~[[five years]]~~ ~~[Nauru – delete]~~ [three years] ~~[[six months]]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ after the Day the relevant royalty return was lodged with the Authority.

4. Where any final royalty return shows an amount to be refunded, the Secretary-General shall refund such amount within 90 days provided he or she determines that such refund is properly due. The Secretary-General may request, and the Contractor shall provide, such additional information or confirmation, as he or she considers necessary to determine that such refund is correct and due to a Contractor.

### **Explanation / Comment**

#### ***Paragraph 1***

One participant has proposed language that would impose additional obligations and restrictions on contractors seeking refund, on the explanation that overpaying royalty and then requesting refunds could become a path for obtaining other indirect benefits, such as corporate tax reductions in contractors' home countries, or others. I invite comments on the proposal.

#### ***Paragraph 2***

- Some participants have proposed that relevant contents be added to paragraph 2 to deal with the situation that the contract has expired and no future royalty is needed. For example, if the contractor does not request a refund of any such overpayment within 90 days, and the contractor does not need to pay any future royalties upon expiration of the contract. Prior to the March 2023 session, I proposed text to address this situation, reflecting the time limits proposed in the preceding Regulation.

#### ***Paragraph 3***

- Two participants propose changing “5 years” to “6 months” on the basis that a five year period for paragraph 3 is too long. One participant proposes changing “5 years” to “one year of an applicable financial report”. One participant proposes 3 years. I welcome views on these proposals.

~~[[Regulation 73bis [OEWG]~~  
~~[title] [Underpayment of royalty]~~

1. Where a royalty return shows any underpayment of royalties. ~~[the Contractor~~

shall pay the outstanding sum within 7 days of notification by] [Brazil] the Secretary-General [must demand payment from the Contractor within [XX] number of days] [Brazil - delete].

2. If no payment is received, [the Authority shall add the payment due to the next period of royalty collection] [the Council shall act in accordance with Regulation 79 [Interest on Unpaid Royalty] and shall consider the unpaid debt from the date it became due and payable] [Brazil - replace].

[3. Proper measures shall be taken against contractors who do not pay the underpaid royalty in due time.] [Brazil - delete]

[China, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 73 bis entirely]

#### Explanation / Comment

- One participant has proposed a new regulation to address underpayment. I invite comments on whether this is necessary, or whether underpayment of royalties would constitute a non-payment of royalty (for the underpaid portion) and so be covered by the existing provisions requiring payment of royalties and imposing penalties for late or non-payment.

## Section 4 Records, inspection and audit

### Regulation 74 [OEWG] Proper books and records to be kept

1. A Contractor shall keep and maintain, [both physically and online.] [PEW] at a place agreed by the Contractor and the Secretary-General, [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] complete and accurate [physical and digital] [PEW] records relating to the Minerals recovered in order to verify and support all returns or any other accounting or financial reports required by the Authority in relation to Exploitation.

2. The Contractor shall prepare such records in conformity with internationally accepted accounting principles [and appropriate environmental, social and governance standards and disclosure requirements, including but not limited to, IFRS, ISSB, TFCD, TFND.] and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [that] [that] [Nauru] verify, in connection with [each Mining Area and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the Contract Area], inter alia:

- (a) Details of the quantity and grade of the Minerals, by Metal, recovered from [each Mining Area and the Contract Area];
- (b) Details of sales, shipments, transfers, exchanges and other disposals of Minerals, by Metal, from [the Mining Area] [each Mining Area and the Contract Area], including the time, destination, value and basis of valuation and the quantity and grade of each sale, shipment, transfer, exchange or other disposal;
- (c) Details of all eligible capital expenditure and liabilities by category of expenditure and liability incurred in [each Mining Area and the Contract Area] or in direct support of activities within [the Mining Area] [each

Mining Area and the Contract Area]; and

- (d) Details of all revenues and operating costs associated with activities in [the Mining Area] [each Mining Area and the Contract Area].

[(e) Details of any sales, shipments, transfers, exchanges and other disposals of any Minerals, to the degree available.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete / Pew - retain]

3. [Subject to any protections necessary to protect confidential or commercially sensitive information, a] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [A] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]  
Contractor shall supply and file such records at such times as may be required by the Authority under these regulations and within 60 Days of the receipt of any such request from the Secretary-General.

4. A Contractor shall maintain all records for the duration of the contract and a period of [[10 years]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [[2 years]] [Nauru – delete] following the expiry or cancellation of the contract and including duration of the Closure Plan, and make such records available for [inspection and] audit under regulation 75.

#### **Explanation / Comment**

- This Regulation refers to Minerals recovered from the Mining Area, as opposed to mineral-bearing ore recovered. As discussed in the July meeting, reference to “Metals” has been added, given that it is for record keeping purposes. This will aid auditing and analysis. It seems particularly appropriate given the level of detail of this Regulation (i.e. with respect to operating costs, and with respect to transfers and disposals).
- Additionally, these Regulations require Contractors to keep records of quantity and grade of Minerals recovered from each Mining Area and the Contract Area, and the details of shipments from the Mining Area. This supports the formulation of a royalty based on weight and sampling at a Valuation Point, and calculation of the royalty based on weight and assays per shipment, as drafted here.

#### ***Paragraph 1***

- One participant has proposed specifying that records must be kept both digitally and physically, and online and physically. I propose retaining the current drafting as it is neutral as to technology and covers records irrespective of where they are kept, as this should future-proof the obligation.

#### ***Paragraph 2***

- Paragraph 2 as drafted was supported by participants at the July meeting.
- One participant now proposes that contractors should not have to keep records for each particular Mining Area but only for the Contract Area. I invite comments.
- One participant proposes to add additional language in

paragraph 2, to clarify that internationally accepted accounting principles should include appropriate environmental, social and governance standards and disclosure requirements. I invite comments.

- One participant proposes to add a subparagraph 2(e) to ensure information on the entire value chain is collected for environmental disclosure. I invite comments.

#### **Paragraph 4**

- Paragraph 4 as drafted was supported by participants at the July meeting. One participant has now proposed changing 10 years to 2 years; and removing “inspection” (as it considers this to be addressed in Part XI). I invite comments.

### **Regulation 75 [OEWG]**

#### **Audit [and inspection] [of books and records] [Nauru] by the Authority**

1. [Once per year] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [t][T]he [NORI, TOML, BMJ - lower case] Secretary-General, [by itself or at the request of the Council] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [or Council,] [Nauru – delete] may [upon a genuine belief of non-compliance,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [request an] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] audit of the Contractor’s [books and] [Nauru] records [and [all subcontractors’ records associated with the exploitation activities] [the records of subcontractors’ directly engaged in the Contractor’s [e][E]xploitation [PEW – capitalize] [activities] [PEW – delete]] in the Area.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

1. Alt. [The Council] [At most once per year, the Commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], on its own initiative, or upon the request of the Secretary-General [or the commission] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete], may[, upon genuine belief of non-compliance by a Contractor in regard to royalty payments,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] request an audit of the Contractor’s books and records [and all subcontractors’ books and records] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] associated with the Exploitation activities in the Area.

[1.Alt.2. The Council or Compliance Committee may request an audit of the Contractor’s records, which shall be undertaken at the Contractor’s sole cost, by an independent auditor approved by the Council.] [Pew]

[2. Any such audit shall be undertaken at the Contractor’s sole cost and shall be performed by [(an) [(Council approved) Inspector in accordance with Part XI of these regulations]]] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [independent auditor [approved] [appointed] [Nauru – replace] by the [Council]] [Nauru – delete] [Secretary-General in accordance with the applicable Standard.] [Nauru] [and following consultation with and upon the agreement of the Contractor] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].

3. An Inspector may, in connection with a liability for a royalty payment:

- (a) [Audit] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Inspect] [all corporate offices, [plants] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] the mining and on-board processing facilities [that are

located within the Area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] with a view to verifying the accuracy of [all information reported and the accuracy of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] the equipment measuring the quantity of Mineral ore [sold or removed without sale from the Contract Area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets];

- (b) ~~Inspect~~, audit ~~and examine~~ any [relevant] documents, papers, records and data [available at the Contractor’s offices or on-board any mining vessel or Installation];
- (c) Require any duly authorized representative of the Contractor to answer any [relevant] questions in connection with the ~~inspection~~ audit and provide any missing documents, papers, records and data; and
- (d) Make and retain copies or extracts of any documents or records relevant to the subject matter of the ~~inspection~~ audit and provide a Contractor with a list of such copies or extracts.

[[3. bis An [auditor] [Independent Auditor] [UK - replace] may, in connection with a liability for a royalty payment require assistance from the Inspectors, through the Secretary-General, and the Inspectors shall assist the auditors in discharging their functions under this part]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 Alt entirely]

4. [For the purposes of an audit] The Contractor shall make available to an [~~Inspector~~] [auditor] [Independent Auditor] [UK - replace] such financial records and information contemplated as reasonably required by the Secretary-General to determine compliance with this Part.

5. Members of the Authority, in particular a Sponsoring State or States, shall, ~~to the best of their abilities~~, cooperate with and assist the [Secretary-General] [relevant organ of the Authority] and any [~~Inspector~~] [auditor] [Independent Auditor] [UK - replace] in the carrying out of any audit under this regulation, and shall facilitate access to the records of a Contractor by an [~~Inspector~~] [auditor] [Independent Auditor] [UK - replace] and assist in the exchange of information relevant to a Contractor’s obligations under this Part. [Pew - delete]

| Explanation / Comment   |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One participant proposes that this regulation duplicates Part XI on inspections and so should be deleted except to state “The Council or Compliance Committee may request an audit of the Contractor’s records, which shall be undertaken at the Contractor’s sole cost.” That participant also proposes that this regulation should be bracketed until Regulation 99 is progressed.</li> <li>• Participants have mixed views on whether to include the word “inspection” in the title and in the body of the regulation. One participant argues that Audit and inspection are two different issues. Part XI of the Draft Regulations, entitled "Inspection, compliance and enforcement ", already contains provisions on matters relating to inspection, so it is proposed that Regulation 75 should only deal with audit matters, and that the contents relating to inspection should be provided for in Part XI. <u>I invite comments.</u></li> <li>• As mentioned in the Drafting Note to Regulation 74, this</li> </ul> |

Regulation also refers to Minerals recovered from the Mining Area, as opposed to mineral-bearing ore recovered. It is recommend including additional detailed requirements in the Guidelines to also refer to “mineral-bearing ore” and “Metals”.

- This Regulation as drafted suggests the possibility of some assaying of samples on-board the harvesting and/or transfer vessel. While the Valuation Point is the point that might be used as the weighing and sampling point, it is possible that detailed assaying of the samples is likely to take place at onshore facilities, and the grade will then be attributed retrospectively to the Valuation Point for the purpose of calculating the royalty on that shipment. It is therefore important to prescribe the appropriate parameters for independent assaying in the Guidelines.

***Paragraph 1***

- At the March 2023 meeting the participants agreed to paragraphs 1, 2, 4 and 5. Two participants have proposed reopening the text of paragraph 1 to extend it to all Contractors’ and their sub-contractors’ records, not just those in relation to activities in the Area. One participant has proposed to narrow it to only subcontractor’s directly engaged in activities in the area.

***Paragraph 2***

- Two participants proposed that the Inspector be “Council-approved”. Some participants have proposed that a financial audit should be undertaken by an independent auditor or accountant, rather than an Inspector. One participant proposes that it should be expressly stated as an “independent auditor”, as Annex IV, article 11, paragraph 5, of the Convention provides that "the records, books and accounts of the Enterprise, including its annual financial statements, shall be audited annually by an independent auditor appointed by the Council." One participant proposes to remove “Council approved” as an Inspector will be Council approved under Part XI as being included on the roster with relevant audit experience. I propose that text regarding the qualifications and approval of Inspectors be addressed in the Standards, and invite participants to propose text. This will also ensure greater consistency. I propose that if there is support for that proposal, adjusting the qualifications and functions of an Inspector, to require an independent auditor or accountant, could be addressed in Part XI itself, which contains provisions on Inspectors’ functions.
- One participant proposes that “questions” in paragraph 3(c) should be restricted to “relevant” questions.

***Paragraph 3 ALT***

- One participant proposes a new para 3, as it considers that most of the contents concerning inspections in

Paragraph 3 of this regulation are covered in Part XI of the draft regulations " Inspection, compliance and enforcement ", and should not be repeated in this paragraph. Audit and inspection are two separate issues, and the auditor may, through the Secretary-General, request the assistance of inspectors if inspections are required in order to carry out its responsibilities with respect to royalties.

**Paragraph 5**

- Two participants recommend the phrase "to the best of their abilities" be removed. Their view is that the members of the Authority, including Sponsoring States must cooperate and assist the Secretary-General.

**Regulation 76 [OEWG]**

**Assessment by the Authority**

[1. The Secretary-General may, by notice to a Contractor who has lodged a royalty return, request the Contractor to provide information to support the matters stated in the royalty return within 90 days of such a notice.] [Pew – suggests proposed wording to be placed before current para 1.]

[1.] [Ibis] [Pew - replace] Where the Secretary-General so determines, taking into account the relevant guidance provided by the Council and following any audit under this Part, or by otherwise becoming aware that any royalty return is not accurate and correct in accordance with this Part, the Secretary-General may, by written notice to a Contractor, request any additional information that the Secretary-General considers reasonable in the circumstances, including the report of an auditor.

2. A Contractor shall provide such information requested by the Secretary-General [under paragraph 1bis] [Pew] within 60 Days of the date of such request, together with any further information the Contractor requires the Secretary-General to take into consideration.

3. The Secretary-General may, within 60 Days of the expiry of the period prescribed in paragraph 2 above, and after giving due consideration to any information submitted under paragraph 2, make an assessment of any royalty liability that the Secretary-General considers ought to be levied in accordance with this Part.

4. The Secretary-General shall provide the Contractor with written notice of any proposed assessment under paragraph 3 above. The Contractor may make written representations to the Secretary-General within 60 Days of the date of such written notice. The Secretary-General shall [in consultation with the Finance Committee.] [Pew] consider such representations and shall confirm or revise the assessment made under paragraph 3 above.

[4bis. If the Contractor is not satisfied with the Secretary-General's confirmation or revision of the assessment, the Contractor may request a review of that decision in writing and provide any further information the Contractor wishes the Secretary-General to consider within 30 Days of a decision being made. The Secretary-General shall then re-consider and either affirm, revise, or revoke the assessment, taking into account the further information provided by the Contractor, within 60 Days.]



[4.ter The Secretary-General shall provide the Council with each approving assessment confirmed or revised according to paragraphs 4 and 4bis above [including any information or recommendations provided by the Finance Committee under paragraph 4bis.] [Pew]. The Secretary-General shall provide the Contractor the written notice of the decision of the Council.]

5. The Contractor shall pay any such royalty liability within 30 Days of the date of the determination made by the Secretary-General under paragraph 4 [or, where applicable, paragraph 4bis].

6. Except in cases of fraud or negligence, no assessment may be made under this regulation after the expiration of 6 years from the date on which the relevant royalty return is lodged.

#### Explanation / Comment

- One participant suggests there is a duplication between paragraphs 2 and 5; and Regulation 72.
- One participant has proposed an administrative review mechanism (4bis). I invite comments.

## Section 5

### Anti-avoidance measures

#### Regulation 77 [OEWG]

##### General anti-avoidance rule

1. Where the Secretary-General reasonably considers that a Contractor has entered into any scheme, arrangement or understanding or has undertaken any steps which, directly or indirectly: [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[R][r]esult [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – lower case] in the avoidance, postponement or reduction of a liability for any payment ~~of a royalty~~ under this Part [and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ];

- (a) Have not been carried out for bona fide commercial purposes; or
- (b) Have been carried out solely or mainly for the purposes of avoiding, postponing or reducing a liability for any payment ~~of a royalty~~; then the Secretary- General shall determine the liability for a ~~royalty payment under this part~~ as if the avoidance, postponement or reduction of such liability had not been carried out by the Contractor and in accordance with this Part.

[2. The Secretary-General shall provide the Contractor with written notice of any proposed determination under paragraph 1 above. The Contractor may make written representations to the Secretary-General within 60 Days of the date of such written notice. The Secretary-General shall consider such representations and shall determine the liability for a ~~royalty payment under this part~~ for the original or revised amount. [If the Contractor is not satisfied with the Secretary-General's determination, the Contractor may request a review of that decision in writing and provide any further information the Contractor wishes the Secretary-General to consider within 30 Days of a decision being made. The Secretary-General shall then re-consider and either affirm, revise, or revoke the decision, taking into account the further information provided by the Contractor, within 60 Days.]

[Germany – delete para 2 entirely]

[2 ALT 2. The Secretary-General shall provide the Contractor with written notice of any proposed determination under paragraph 1 above. The Contractor may make written representations to the Secretary-General within 60 Days of the date of such written notice. The [Secretary-General] shall consider such representations and shall determine the liability for a royalty for the original or revised amount. If the Contractor is not satisfied with the Secretary-General's determination, the Contractor may request a review of that decision in writing and provide any further information the Contractor wishes the [Secretary-General/the Council] to consider. The Commission and Finance Committee shall consider any such representations made by the Contractor at their respective next available meetings provided that the representations have been circulated at least 30 Days in advance of the respective meetings. The Commission shall then prepare its report and recommendations to the Council based on consultation with the Finance Committee. The Council shall then re-consider and either affirm, revise, or revoke the decision made by the [Secretary-General]].]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 2 Alt 2]

[2 bis. The Sponsoring State shall be informed at the beginning of any procedure potentially leading to a determination according to this Regulation, and may provide written representations to the SecretaryGeneral, the Council or the Finance Committee.] [Brazil]

3. The Contractor shall pay any such ~~royalty~~ liability under this part within 30 Days of the date of the determination made by the Secretary-General under paragraph 2.

[4. If the Contractor [incurs] [is found to be in] is in -a- [gross and persistent breach]] [Germany, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ; Pew – delete] [serious, persistent and willful violation] [Germany, Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] -non-compliance of payment of a- [of] [Nauru – delete] royalty any payment obligations in accordance with this Part, the Council [shall] [may] [Nauru - replace] suspend or [rescind] [terminate] [Nauru] the [exploitation] [NORI, TOL, BMJ – remove brackets] contract pursuant to regulation 103 of these Regulations [and the Contactor's company principals shall be barred from direct or indirect involvement with any Contractor or subcontractor operating in the Area for a period of [10] years].] [Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[5. The Sponsoring State shall be informed at the beginning of any procedure potentially leading to a determination according to this Regulation, and may provide written representations to the Secretary-General, the Council or the Finance Committee.] [Brazil]

#### Explanation / Comment

##### Paragraph 2

- Some participants note that if a Contractor disagrees with the decision of the Secretary-General, the Contractor will have no recourse or method for reviewing a decision unless the Contractor commences costly dispute resolution procedures pursuant to Section 5, Part XI of the Convention. I invite for discussions of this view.
- One participant proposes more oversight of the

Secretary-General's decision, and proposes 2 ALT. I invite comments.

***Paragraph 4***

- Previously participants proposed adding this additional paragraph to address cases where a Contractor repeatedly fails to comply with its payment duties, namely that the Council shall be entitled to terminate the contract in accordance with DR 103. This suggestion is made in support of DR 80, which only provides for conventional (pecuniary) penalties. I included language that would allow the Council to effect both the termination and suspension of the contract and to have the power to impose conventional penalties for breaches of a Contractor.
- Three participants now propose additional language in this paragraph that would bar the Contractor, or its company principals from direct or indirect involvement with any Contractor or Subcontractor, operating in the Area for a period of, for example, 10 years. However, they recognize that this addition may be better suited to be included in Draft Regulation 103. I invite comments on the proposed text and proposed changes to Regulation 103.
- Several participants have proposed changes to paragraph 4. Some participants noted that Article 185 of the Convention limits suspension to circumstances of gross and persistent violations. I invite views on the text. One participant proposes that more appropriate language to use here would be 'serious, persistent and wilful violation' in accordance with Article 18 of Annex III, which relates to Contractor compliance with their contract and the rules of the ISA.
- One participant proposed deletion of paragraph 4 expressed as follows: "If the Contractor incurs in a non-compliance of payment of a royalty in accordance with this Part, the Council shall suspend or rescind the Contract pursuant to regulation 103 of these Regulations." It said Regulation 77 is targeted at anti-avoidance and not compliance per se. It said matters relating to any violation under this Part VII are addressed by Regulation 80 which appears adequate for this purpose and now reflects suspension or termination.
- A participant proposed paragraph 4 is deleted and discussed in Part XI of the Draft Regulations, entitled "Inspection, compliance and enforcement".

**Regulation 78 [OEWG]  
Arm's-length adjustments**

1. For the purposes of this regulation:
  - (a) “Arm’s length”, in relation to contracts and transactions, means contracts and transactions that are entered into freely and independently by parties that are not related parties and without one party influencing another; and
  - (b) “Arm’s-length value”, in relation to costs, prices and revenues, means the value that a willing buyer and willing seller, who are not related parties, would agree to in a competitive environment.
2. Where, for the purposes of calculating any amounts due under this Part VII, any costs, prices and revenues have not been charged or determined on an arm’s-length basis, pursuant to a contract or transaction between a Contractor and a related party, the Council may adjust the value of such costs, prices and revenues to reflect an arm’s-length value, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission, in accordance with internationally accepted principles.
3. The Secretary-General shall provide the Contractor with written notice of any proposed adjustment under paragraph 2 above. The Contractor may make written representations to the [Secretary-General] [Council] [Brazil - replace] within 60 Days of the date of such written notice. If the Contractor submits written representations, the [Secretary-General] [Council] [Brazil] shall affirm, amend or revoke the adjustment, taking into account the further information provided by the Contractor, within 60 Days of being provided with that further information.

4. The Commission and Finance Committee shall consider any such representations made by the Contractor at their respective next available meetings provided that the representations have been circulated at least 30 Days in advance of the respective meetings. The Commission shall then prepare its report and recommendations to the Council based on consultation with the Finance Committee. The Council shall decide the value of relevant costs, prices and revenues based on the recommendation. [Pew - reinstate]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

| <b>Explanation / Comment</b>  |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In July participants supported the text as drafted. One participant has now proposed a new paragraph 4, to ensure more oversight of the Secretary-General’s decision. <u>I invite comments.</u></li> </ul> |

## Section 6

### Interest and penalties

#### Regulation 79 [OEWG] Interest on unpaid royalty

[Where any royalty or other amount levied under this Part remains wholly or partly unpaid after the date it becomes due and payable, a Contractor shall, in addition to the amount due and payable, pay interest on the amount outstanding, beginning on the date the amount became due and payable, at an annual rate calculated by adding [5] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [(10) [20]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable in accordance with

**Appendix IV.]**

[Alt. Where any royalty or other amount levied under this Part remains wholly or partly unpaid after the date it becomes due and payable, a Contractor shall, in addition to the amount due and payable, pay interest on the amount outstanding, beginning on the date the amount became due and payable, in accordance with the applicable Standard, at an annual rate calculated by:

(a) Adding [Nauru] [5] per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable for the first month of non-payment;

(b) Adding [10] per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable for the second and third months of non-payment; and

(c) Adding [15] [20] per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable for any further period of non-payment. [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub-paras (b) and (c) entirely and move (a) to the chapeau]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Participants have proposed different proposals for the interest rate. One participant proposes 5% for a month delay and 10% for one to three month delay. I invite participants to settle on a percentage.

**Regulation 80 [OEWG]**

**Monetary penalties and suspension or termination of exploitation contract**

Subject to regulation 103 (6), [and depending on the seriousness of the breach.] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] the Council may impose a monetary penalty [or] [Nauru – remove brackets] [and] [Nauru – delete] may [Nauru – remove bracket] suspend or terminate the exploitation contract in respect of a [ny] [Nauru] [serious, persistent and wilful] violations [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [[gross and persistent] [material breach] [violation] under this Part [or of the contract] [and company principals would be barred from direct or indirect involvement with any Contractor or Subcontractor operating in the Area for a period of 10 years].] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Germany; Pew – delete DR 80 entirely]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Two participants have proposed that this Regulation (and Regulation 77) should include the possibility of "barring company principals from direct or indirect involvement with any Contractor or Subcontractors operating in the Area for a period of, for example, 10 years." However, they note this may better fit within Regulation 103. I invite proposals for changes to Regulation 103.

- Two participants suggest that criteria be included for "seriousness of the breach", although they note this too may be best included in Regulation 103. I invite them to propose changes to Regulation 103.
- Some participants have proposed inclusion of a materiality obligation. They say that suspension and termination of an exploitation contract may only occur in the event of a material breach under the Convention. Another participant proposes "gross and persistent".
- One participant proposes that this paragraph should be deleted, as it overlaps and seems to conflict with other provisions in the Regulations including DR103, and Annex X, and is inconsistent with the Convention, which requires serious, persistent and willful violations of the fundamental terms of the contract, and the rules of the ISA, as well as warnings, before a contractor's rights under their contract can be suspended or terminated by the ISA. It proposes revisiting this regulation after negotiations on DR103 have progressed.

## Section 7

### Review of payment mechanism

#### Regulation 81 [OEWG]

##### Review of system of payments

1. The system of payments adopted under these regulations and pursuant to paragraph 1 (c) of section 8 of the annex to the Agreement, shall be reviewed in accordance with relevant Standards [China] [by the Council five years from the first date of commencement of Commercial Production in the Area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [(and in any case before the start of the second stage of Commercial Production)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] and at intervals thereafter in accordance with the applicable Standard [Nauru] in accordance with the [relevant] [applicable] [Nauru - replace] Standards [Canada] [as determined by the Council, taking into account the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area]] [Canda] in accordance with relevant Standards [China – delete] as well as all observed environmental impacts [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Nauru - delete].

2. The Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission and following a review under paragraph 1 [Canada] [and in consultation with Contractors] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Canada – delete], may revise [Canada – delete] decide to adjust recommend the Assembly approve adjusting [Pew - replace] the existing system of payments or introduce a new [Canada] [the] [Canada] system of payments in the light of changing circumstances [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] and following any review under paragraph 1 above, taking into account the economic viability of the project [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] save that any revision shall only apply in a non-discriminatory manner [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] to existing exploitation contracts by agreement between the Authority and the Contractor [Nauru – delete] [Canada - delete] taking into account the level of maturity and

development of Exploitation activities in the Area, as well as the principles under Article 13 of Annex III to the Convention and Section 8 of the Agreement.] [Canada] [after five years of Commercial Production have been completed under that exploitation contract] [from five years after such revising would be adopted] [ ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to (i) new exploitation contracts [agreed] [concluded] [Nauru] between the Authority and a Contractor after the revised system of payments[, if any] [Nauru] is in effect; and (ii) existing exploitation contracts [only] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [if] [Nauru – delete] [by agreement between] [Nauru] the Authority and [the] [Nauru] Contractor[s so agree] [Nauru – delete]].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

[2 ALT The Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission and following a review under paragraph 1, may decide to adjust the existing system of payments or introduce a new system of payments, taking into account the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area.

3. Without limiting the scope of any review by the Council, a review under this regulation may include an adjustment to an existing system of payments, or an introduction of a new system of payments, and may consider changes to all applicable Rules Regulations and Procedures (RRPs) [including any relevant Standards and Guidelines].

4. A review of the system of payments shall consider all Resource Categories unless otherwise decided by the Council.

[4 bis. In making a recommendation pursuant to paragraph (2), the Commission and the Council shall:

a) take into account the sufficiency of the benefits that are being generated for humankind as a whole in return for the loss of the common heritage of humankind;

b) reflect the objectives contained in Article 13, Annex III of the Convention, including to ensure optimum revenues for the Authority from the proceeds of Commercial Production;

c) follow the process and consider relevant matters as set out in the applicable Standard; and

d) be informed by consultations with relevant recognized independent experts and Stakeholders, and the advice of the Economic Planning Commission and Finance Committee.] [Pew]

5. A change to the system of payments shall only apply by agreement between the Authority and the Contractor for Contract Areas that have already commenced Commercial Production.]]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 2 alt – 5]

[3. Recommendations of the Council to the Assembly under paragraph 2:

(a) \_\_\_\_\_ take into account the sufficiency of the benefits that are being generated for humankind as a whole in return for the loss of the common heritage of humankind;

(b) \_\_\_\_\_ reflect the objectives contained in Article 13, Annex III of the Convention, including to ensure optimum revenues for the Authority from the proceeds of Commercial Production;

(b) follow the process and consider relevant matters as set out in the applicable Standard; and

(c) be informed by consultations with relevant experts and stakeholders including the Legal and Technical Commission, Economic Planning Commission and Finance Committee.]]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 3]

#### **Explanation / Comment**

##### ***Paragraph 1***

- Two participants propose that review intervals be determined by Standards rather than the Council.
- One participant proposes to add environmental impacts 8.

##### ***Paragraph 2***

- One participant proposes not “taking into account the economic viability of the project” as it suggests case by case decision making, which it considers is not the intention.
- I invite comments on whether Contractors should be consulted.
- I invite comments on the three options for review after 5 years.

##### ***Paragraph 2 ALT (and paragraphs 3, 4, 5***

- One participant proposes merging Regulations 81 and 82.
- Two participants propose a new paragraph 2 and additional paragraphs 3, 4, 5 to align the review of the system of payments (DR 81) with the review of the rates of payments (DR 82). Section 8, paragraph 1(c) of the Annex to the Implementation Agreement provides that any change to the system of payments may only apply to existing contracts at the election of the contractor and this shall be implemented by agreement between the Authority and the contractor. However, such agreement is not a pre-requisite for the application of a change in the payment rates (DR 82). The need to make a clear distinction between the two provides a strong rationale to avoid merging text under DR 81 and 82 into a single regulation. Specific elements to be included in the review process, including timelines, processes, and methodologies are proposed for inclusion in Standards will ensure greater transparency and predictability of the process from initiation to completion. Draft Standards are included as an appendix to this submission. A compliance and enforcement function (Regulation 103) will also be important. I invite comments.



**Paragraph 3**

- I invite comments on the new proposed paragraph 3.9.

**Regulation 82 [OEWG]  
Review of rates of payments**

1. The rates of payments under an existing system of payments shall be reviewed by the Council five years from the first date of commencement of Commercial Production in the Area and [at intervals thereafter [in accordance with relevant Standards] [Canada] [as determined by the Council] [and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] every five years thereafter, [applying to all contractors that have commenced Commercial Production, unless otherwise determined by the Council]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], [taking into account the Resource category and the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area.]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Canada – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove enclosing brackets from para 1]

2. The Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission [and in consultation with Contractors,] [Canada – delete] may [decide to] [Canada] adjust the rates of payments [in the light of such recommendations and consultation, [taking into account the economic viability of the project, ] save that any adjustment to the rates of payments may only apply to existing exploitation contracts [from the end of the Second Period of Commercial Production reflected in appendix IV to these regulations]] [Canada – delete] [taking into account the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area, as well as the principles under Article 13 of Annex III to the Convention and Section 8 of the Agreement.] [Canada] [after five years of commercial production have been completed under that exploitation contract]].]

3. A review of the rates of payments shall consider all Resource Categories unless otherwise decided by the Council.

4. An adjustment to the rates of payments shall only apply by agreement between the Authority and the Contractor for Contract Areas [where each both of the following conditions are met:

a. the first five years of Commercial Production under the Contract Area have not elapsed; and

b. the Contractor does not hold rights to another Contract Area of the same Resource Category for which the first five years of Commercial Production has elapsed.]] [Canada - delete] [Canada]

[3][5] [Canada]. Without limiting the scope of any review by the Council, a review under this regulation may include an adjustment to the [Applicable Royalty Rate under appendix IV and the manner and basis of the calculation of a royalty] [Canada] [rate associated with any payment mechanism adopted under the Rules Regulations and Procedures, including the manner and basis of their calculation, as well as the establishment of rates of payments for new relevant metals or minerals that are likely to be commercially exploited during the next review cycle.] [Canada] [, including triggers for price-based royalties].

**ALT**

1. The rates of payments under an existing system of payments shall be reviewed by the Council five years from the first date of commencement of Commercial

Production in the Area and [at intervals] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [every five years] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] thereafter [in accordance with relevant standards] [as determined by the Council taking into account the Resource category and the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

2. The Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission ~~[and in consultation with Contractors]~~, may [decide to] adjust the rates of payments [taking into account the Resource Category and the level of maturity and development of Exploitation activities in the Area].

[2 bis. A review of the rates of payments shall consider all Resource Categories unless otherwise decided by the Council.]

[2 ter. An adjustment to the rates of payments shall [apply to all Contract Areas but shall] only apply by agreement between the Authority and the Contractor for Contract Areas where each of the following conditions are met:

a) the first five years of Commercial Production in the Contract Area have elapsed; and

b) the Contractor does not hold [exploitation] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] rights to another Contract Area of the same Resource Category for which the first five years of Commercial Production has elapsed.]

3. Without limiting the scope of any review by the Council, a review under this regulation may include an adjustment to the [rate associated with any payment mechanism adopted under the [Rules Regulations and Procedures,] [including any Standards and Guidelines] including the manner and basis of their calculation, as well as the establishment of rates of payments for new relevant metals or minerals that are likely to be commercially exploited during the next review cycle.]

## **Version included in the Consolidated Text**

### **Regulation 82 [OEWG]**

#### **Review of rates of payments**

1. The rates of payments under an existing system of payments shall be reviewed by the Council five years from the first date of commencement of Commercial Production in the Area and at intervals thereafter in accordance with applicable standards.

2. The Council, based on the recommendations of the Commission, may decide to adjust the rates of payments [taking into account the Resource Category and the [level of maturity and] [Pew - delete] development of Exploitation activities in the Area, as well as the principles under Article 13 of Annex III to the Convention and Section 8 of the Agreement] ~~[and any other changing circumstances the Council reasonably deems relevant]~~ [Pew].

3. A review of the rates of payments shall consider all Resource Categories unless otherwise decided by the Council.

4. An adjustment to the rates of payments shall [apply to all Contract Areas [but shall] only apply by agreement between the Authority and the Contractor for Contract Areas] [Pew - delete] where [both] [either] [Pew - replace] of the following conditions are met:

(a) The first five years of Commercial Production in the Contract Area have not ~~Pew - delete~~ elapsed; and ~~or~~ ~~Pew - replace~~

(b) The Contractor ~~does not hold~~ ~~holds~~ ~~Pew - replace~~ rights to another Contract Area of the same Resource Category for which the first five years of Commercial Production has elapsed.

5. Without limiting the scope of any review by the Council, a review under this Regulation may include an adjustment to the [rate associated with any payment mechanism adopted under the [rules, regulations, and procedures of the Authority,] [including any applicable Standards and taking into account any applicable Guidelines] including the manner and basis of their calculation, as well as the establishment of rates of payments for new relevant metals or Minerals that are likely to be commercially exploited during the next review cycle.]

#### **Comment**

Valuable intersessional work has been carried out on providing one suggested proposal for Regulation 82. The alternative version has thus been retained and updated. For the sake of clarity, the Regulation has been placed in a clean version.

#### **Explanation / Comment**

- Two participants propose an alternative – 5 paragraphs to replace the three, with additional complementary drafting in the Standards. It notes that a systematic, periodic review of the rates would help ensure that the financial mechanisms meet the needs and objectives of the Authority. Specific elements to be included in the review process, including timelines, processes, and methodologies are proposed for inclusion in Standards and will ensure greater transparency and predictability of the process from initiation to completion. I invite comments on the alternative paragraphs.
- One participant proposes deletion of paragraph 2.
- I note that while paragraph 1(c) of section 8 of the Annex to the Agreement indicates that “a change to a system of payments may apply to existing contracts only at the election of the contractor” no such requirement is laid out regarding a change to rates. The fiscal stabilization provisions currently included in DR 82 are inconsistent with current global norms, as evidenced by the 2020 OECD Guiding Principles on Durable Extractive Contracts. It is proposed to have a simple, regular review of rate of payments every 5 years following the commencement of Commercial Production in the Area.
- One participant previously proposed triggers for price-based royalties. It proposes that the Regulation should

be clear about what constitutes a review of system of payments *vis-à-vis* a review of rates of payment. A review of rates of payment should explicitly include reference to price “triggers” under variable royalty rate regimes. Some participants outlined their opposition to the inclusion of “triggers for price-based royalties” in paragraph 3 on the basis that the terms are ambiguous and appear to be inconsistent with the proposed system of payments set out in the Convention and the Part XI Implementation Agreement.

## Section 8 Payments to the Authority

### Regulation 83 [OEWG] Recording in Seabed Mining Register

1. All payment figures made by the Contractor to the Authority under this Part are [shall be] [Pew - replace] [to be deemed non-confidential for the purposes of these Regulations and made] [PEW] publicly available.

[1.Alt. All payments received by the Authority from Contractors shall be recorded in the Seabed Mining Register and shall be publicly available.] [United Kingdom]

2. [The details of] [India] All payments received by the Authority from Contractors shall be recorded in the Seabed Mining Register. ]

### Regulation 83 bis [OEWG]

#### Beneficial Ownership [Registry] [Register] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]

1. A Contractor shall submit information [as part of its annual report pursuant to regulation 38] to the Secretary-General to be included in a Beneficial Ownership [Registry] [Register] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] in accordance with [relevant] [applicable] Standards and [applicable] Guidelines

[1. Alt. Contractors shall submit detailed beneficial ownership information as part of their annual report in compliance with Regulation 38 to the Secretary-General. This information must be compiled in the Beneficial Ownership Registry adhering to all relevant standards and guidelines.] [African Group]

[1.Alt. A Contractor shall submit information:

a) when submitting its application for approval of a Plan of Work, in accordance with [Regulation 7 and Annex I to the Exploitation Regulations]; and

b) as part of its annual report pursuant to Regulation 38, to the Secretary-General to be included in a Beneficial Ownership Registry in accordance with applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines.] [Netherlands]

2. The Beneficial Ownership [Registry] [Register] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] shall be published through the Seabed Mining Register.

Explanation / Comment

- Participants in July supported the regulation as drafted. One has now proposed additional language linking it to the annual report. On participant has now proposed its deletion.

## Part VIII

### Annual, administrative and other applicable fees

*[Facilitators' Note: There has been some agreement to our previous proposal to request the Commission or the Finance Committee to clarify the purpose, use and the mechanism to calculate each annual and administrative fee listed in Appendix II. Submissions also generally noted interest in harmonizing the different fees (e.g. combining the annual fixed fee and the annual reporting fee), and also a need in the regulations expressly to state consequences for failure to pay fees.]*

#### Section 1

##### Annual fees

##### Regulation 84 [IWG IM]

##### Annual reporting fee

1. A Contractor shall pay to the Authority, from the effective date of an exploitation contract and for the term of the exploitation contract and any renewal thereof, an annual reporting fee as determined by a decision of the Council from time to time, based on the recommendation of the Finance Committee [with the aim of covering the costs associated with the Authority's management and review of the Contractor's annual reports] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru].

2. The annual reporting fee is due and payable to the Authority at [the time of [the same time as the deadline for [United Kingdom - replace] submission of the Contractor's annual report under regulation 38.

[3. Where the effective date is part way through a Calendar Year, the first payment shall be pro-rated and made within 30 Days after the effective date of an exploitation contract.] *[Facilitators' Note: One submission noted that the annual report is always submitted at annual intervals, so there should be no need for pro-rating.]*

[4. Where an annual reporting fee remains unpaid after the date it becomes due and payable]:

(a) this constitutes a violation of the fundamental terms of the contract for the purposes of regulation 103, and

[(a)alt. the process set out in Regulation 103 should be followed to determine whether this constitutes a violation of the fundamental terms of the Contract, and] [United Kingdom]

(b) [Nauru – delete sub-para (a)] a Contractor shall, in addition to the amount due and payable, pay interest on the amount outstanding, beginning on the date the amount became due and payable, at an annual rate calculated by adding 5 per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4]

[5. The process set out in Regulation 103 should be followed to determine whether this constitutes a violation of the terms of the contract.] [United Kingdom]

## Regulation 85 [IWG IM]

### Annual fixed fee

1. A Contractor shall pay to the Authority, [[alt 1.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] from the date of commencement of Commercial Production in a Contract Area]] [Pew - delete] [alt 2. from the effective date of an exploitation contract and for the term of the exploitation contract and any renewal thereof]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete / Pew - retain] an annual fixed fee. The amount of the fee shall be established by the Council as required under paragraph (1)(d) of section 8 of the annex to the Agreement- [on the advice of the Finance Committee, and with the aim to cover the likely costs associated with the Authority’s management of the contract, including staffing the Secretariat and conducting inspection and enforcement activities.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

2. The annual fixed fee is due and payable to the Authority within 30 Days of the commencement of each Calendar Year at the rate prescribed by the Council under paragraph 2 above.

[3. Where the date of commencement of Commercial Production occurs part way through a Calendar Year, a prorated annual fixed fee shall become due and payable to the Authority within 30 Days of such commencement date.] [Pew - delete]

[3 bis. Where an annual fixed fee remains unpaid after the date it becomes due and payable].

(a) this constitutes a violation of the fundamental terms of the contract for the purposes of regulation 103, and

[(a)alt. the process set out in Regulation 103 should be followed to determine whether this constitutes a violation of the fundamental terms of the Contract, and] [United Kingdom]

(b) [Nauru – delete sub-para (a)] a Contractor shall, in addition to the amount due and payable, pay interest on the amount outstanding, beginning on the date the amount became due and payable, at an annual rate calculated by adding 5 per cent to the special drawing rights interest rate prevailing on the date the amount became due and payable.]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3 bis entirely]

[3 ter. The process set out in Regulation 103 should be followed to determine whether this constitutes a violation of the terms of the contract.] [United Kingdom]

[[4. In any Calendar Year, the annual fixed fee may be credited against any royalty or other amount payable under Part VII of [Russia - delete] these regulations.]] [PEW – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] *[Facilitators’ Note: One submission noted that retention of this wording would mean using the financial benefits derived from exploitation to fund the ISA’s regulatory costs, i.e. prioritising savings for the contractor above maximising revenue for equitable benefit-sharing for humankind, and particularly developing countries.]*

## Section 2

### Fees other than annual fees

*[Submissions noted that the text would need to be amended to take into account the March 2023 discussions to delete Appendix II.]*

#### Regulation 86 [IWG IM]

##### Application fee for approval of a Plan of Work

1. An applicant ~~[, while submitting the application]~~ ~~[India]~~ for the approval of a Plan of Work shall pay an application fee ~~[alt 1. As determined by a decision of the Council from time to time, based on the recommendation of the Finance Committee]~~~~[alt 2. In the amount specified by the Council]~~ ~~[alt 3. in the amount specified in appendix II].~~

2. If the administrative costs incurred by the Authority in processing an application, ~~[which may include the costs of recruiting competent independent experts,]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ are less than the ~~[alt 1.]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ Amount paid in accordance with paragraph 1 ~~[alt 2. Amount specified by the Council]~~~~[alt 3. Fixed amount in appendix II]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~, the Authority shall refund the difference to the applicant.

2 bis. If the administrative costs incurred by the Authority in processing an application are more than ~~[alt 1. Amount paid in accordance with paragraph 1]~~~~[alt 2. Amount specified by the Council]~~~~[alt 3. Fixed amount in appendix II]~~ the applicant or Contractor shall pay the difference to the Authority, provided that any additional amount to be paid by the applicant or Contractor shall not exceed 10 per cent of the ~~[alt 1. Amount set in accordance with paragraph 1]~~~~[alt 2. Amount specified by the Council]~~~~[alt 3. Fixed fee specified in appendix II]~~.

3. Taking into account any criteria established for this purpose by the Finance Committee ~~or in a case-by-case basis~~, the ~~[Secretary-General]~~~~[Finance Committee]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ shall determine the amount of such differences as indicated in paragraph (2), and notify the applicant or Contractor of its amount ~~[within 30 days of the Council's decision regarding the application]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~. The notification shall include a statement of the expenditure incurred by the Authority. The amount due must be paid by the applicant or reimbursed by the Authority within 90 Days of the effective date of the ~~[Council's decision regarding the application]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[exploitation contract]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~.

#### Regulation 87

##### Other applicable fees

A Contractor shall pay other prescribed fees in respect of any matter specified ~~[alt 1. by the Council]~~~~[alt 2.]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ in appendix II ~~[alt 1.]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ and in accordance with the applicable regulation. ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket]~~

~~[Alt. The Contractor shall pay other prescribed fees in respect of any matter specified by the Council based on the recommendation of the Finance Committee, in accordance with other applicable rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority]~~ ~~[Bangladesh]~~

## Section 3 Miscellaneous

### Regulation 88 [IWG IM] Review and payment

1. The Council shall review and determine on a regular basis ~~], but no more than once every two years,~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] the amount of each of the annual, processing and other applicable administrative fees specified in appendix II in order to ensure that they cover the Authority's expected administrative costs for the service provided. ~~[In undertaking such a review and determination the Council shall ensure appropriate opportunities are provided to Contractors and other stakeholders to make submissions on the amount of applicable administrative fees.]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

~~[1 bis. Any increase to administrative fees made as part of the review referred to in paragraph 1 shall only apply six months after the date of the relevant Council decision, and shall be accompanied with a rationale explaining the reasons for the increase and responding to any submissions received.]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

2. ~~[A Contractor shall pay fees in full at the time of the submission of the relevant application, request, document, or other event except as provided for in this part and as specified in appendix II]~~ Except as provided for in this Part, fees will be a fixed amount expressed in United States dollars [or its equivalent in a freely convertible currency], and are to be paid in full at the time of the submission of the relevant application, request, document or other event as specified in ~~appendix II~~ this Part.

3. The Secretary-General shall not process any application until the applicable fee under ~~appendix II~~ this Part has been paid.

4. Fees paid under this Part are not refundable upon the withdrawal, rejection or refusal of an application.

## Part IX

### Information-gathering and handling

#### Regulation 89 [OEWG]

##### Confidentiality of information

1. ~~[There shall be a presumption that any] [All] [Netherlands - supports]~~ data and information regarding the Plan of Work, exploitation contract, its schedules and annexes or the activities taken under the exploitation contract ~~[are] [shall be] [is]~~ ~~[Netherlands - replace]~~ public, other than Confidential Information.

2. "Confidential Information" means:

- (a) ~~[Data and information that have been designated as Confidential Information by a Contractor in consultation with the Secretary-General under the Exploration Regulations and which remains Confidential Information in accordance with the Exploration Regulations;]~~ ~~[Germany, PEW; Netherlands – delete sub para (a) entirely]~~
- (b) Data and information relating to personnel matters, the health records of individual employees or other documents in which employees have a



reasonable expectation of privacy, and other matters that involve the privacy of individuals;

- (c) Data and information which have been categorized as Confidential Information by the Council; and
- (d) Data and information designated by the Contractor as Confidential Information at the time it was disclosed to the Authority, provided that, subject to paragraph 5 below, such designation is deemed to be well founded by the [Secretary-General] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [the Data Committee in accordance with the relevant Standard] [Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] on the basis that there would be substantial risk of serious or unfair economic prejudice [or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [risk of harm] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets] if the data and information were to be released;
- (e) [documents exempt from disclosure due to] [attorney-client] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [legal professional] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [privilege] [or other legal rights and obligations that may prevent public disclosure] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]. [Netherlands – delete para (e) entirely]

3. “Confidential Information” does not mean or include data and information that:

- (a) Are generally known or publicly available from other sources;
- (b) Have been previously made available by the owner to others without an obligation concerning its confidentiality;
- (c) Are already in the possession of the Authority with no obligation concerning its confidentiality;
- (d) Are required to be disclosed under the Rules of the Authority [to protect the Marine Environment or human health and safety];
- (e) Are necessary for the formulation [from time to time] [Germany – remove brackets] by the Authority of rules, regulations and procedures [and decisions of the Authority] [Germany – remove brackets] concerning the protection and preservation of the Marine Environment and safety, other than equipment design data;
- (f) [Relate to the protection and preservation of the Marine Environment,] [France - delete] [provided that] [unless] the Secretary-General may agree that such information is regarded as Confidential Information for a reasonable period where there are bona fide academic reasons for delaying its release;

[(f)alt. Relate to the protection and preservation of the Marine Environment, provided that the Secretary-General may designate such information as Confidential Information for a reasonable period, subject to such conditions as may be appropriate, where [the Commission] [the Secretary-General] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] [agrees] [considers] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] that there are bona fide academic reasons for delaying its release [on the terms proposed by the Secretary-General and the decision including the reasons are reported to Council:]]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[PEW – delete sub f.alt entirely] [Netherlands; Pew – delete sub (f) and sub f)alt entirely]

[(f) ALT.2. Are environmental data, including all baseline and monitoring information.] [Netherlands; Pew - supports]

[(f) Alt.3. Environmental data, including all baseline and monitoring information, except in such temporary circumstances where some environmental data may be deemed confidential as agreed with the Secretary-General for a reasonable period only, where the Commission agrees that there are bonafide academic reasons for delaying its release. The reasons, terms and decisions are to be reported by the Secretary-General to the Council. The data shall be deemed non confidential on the expiry of the time frame agreed with the Secretary-General.] [African Group]

(g) Are a [n award or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] judgment in connection with activities in the Area (save in relation to any Confidential Information [contained in such [award or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] judgment which may be redacted] [which has been redacted by the relevant court or tribunal] [United Kingdom - replace];

(h) [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket] Relate to contractor payments to the Authority [and Sponsoring State(s)] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]. [governments, state enterprises, other contractors, as well as payments and other forms of financial benefit received by the contractor from] [Nauru – delete] [and] [Nauru] Sponsoring States; [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

(i) Relate to beneficial ownership of contractors;

[(j) [Relate to Sponsorship Agreements or other contractual arrangements between contractors and Sponsoring States; or]]

[Germany – remove brackets] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub para j entirely]

(k) The Contractor to which the data and information relates has given prior written consent to its disclosure.

(l) The area to which the data and information relates is no longer covered by an exploitation contract; provided that following the expiration of a period of 10 years ISBA/25/C/WP.1 56/117 19-04869 after it was passed to the Secretary-General, Confidential Information shall no longer be deemed to be such unless otherwise agreed between the Contractor and the [Secretary-General], [in accordance with the relevant Guidelines] and save any data and information relating to personnel matters under paragraph 2 (b) above.

[(m) are in a category designated by the Council as not being Confidential Information.]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete sub para m]

4. Confidential Information will be retained by the Authority and the Contractor in strictest confidence in accordance with regulation 90 and shall not be disclosed to any third party [without reasonable cause] without the express prior written consent of the Contractor, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed, save that Confidential Information may be used by the Secretary-General and staff of the Authority's secretariat, as authorized by the Secretary-General, and by members of the Commission as necessary for and relevant to the effective exercise of their powers and functions.

5. In connection with paragraph 2 (d) above, a Contractor shall, upon transferring data and information to the Authority, designate by notice in writing to the Secretary - General the Information or any part of it as Confidential Information [describing, in

general and non-prejudicial terms, any information redacted or required to be withheld from publication on the basis of confidentiality with an explanation of the reasons. The Secretariat shall publish a copy of any such notice received upon receipt]. If the Secretary-General [a member state, or another Stakeholder] [Germany – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] objects to such designation [within a period of 30 Days] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], the parties shall consult upon the nature of the data and information and whether it constitutes Confidential Information under this regulation [and consult the Data Committee as appropriate] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]. During the consultations, the Secretary-General shall take into account any relevant [Standard or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] policy guidance from the Council. [The Secretary-General shall report to the Council regarding the types and quantities of data that are designated confidential in accordance with this paragraph.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] Any dispute arising as to the nature of the data and information shall be dealt with [through the administrative procedure described in [insert here cross-reference to relevant provisions or Annex of the Regulations setting out administrative decision review procedures] [in accordance with Part XII of these regulations].

6. Nothing in these regulations shall affect the rights of a holder of intellectual property. [Netherlands - delete]

#### Explanation / Comment

- Participants have proposed amendments to Regulation 89 with the following explanation: Contractor payments to the Authority, governments, state enterprises, other contractors, as well as payments received by the contractor from Sponsoring States, should be disclosed publicly in line with terrestrial mining best practices. This is in line with international standards, like the Extractives Industries Transparency Initiative (EITI), and national best practices, such as the Extractives Sector Transparency Measures Act (ESTMA) in Canada which requires that certain businesses involved in the commercial development of oil, gas and minerals report the payments they make to governments in Canada and abroad. Payments to the contractor from Sponsoring States should also be disclosed. This information will be needed to determine the effective tax rate for contractors and enable reviews of the system of payment. Sponsorship Agreements should also be fully disclosed. A definition for these may be required in the Schedule: use of terms and scope. Beneficial ownership of contractors should also be disclosed as per best practice.
- Some participants submit that the text should mandate the publication, and process for publication, of sponsorship agreements, other contractual arrangements between Sponsoring States and Contractors, and payments between Contractors and Sponsoring States. I invite comments and proposals.
- On participant has proposed deleting subparagraph (a) as it would be inconsistent to consider some data confidential under an exploration contract but not under an exploitation contract. The relevant exploration contract would have expired by the time this provision becomes relevant. Any information carried over from the exploration phase that should remain confidential can be justified under paragraphs 2(b) – (e).
- One participant has proposed the “Data Committee” to be the decision maker for confidential information, rather than the Secretary-General. Designating data as confidential should not be done ad hoc on a case-by-

case basis but should follow pre-agreed, transparent criteria.

- One participant proposes broadening paragraph 5, as given the importance of transparency and public participation as good governance standards, para 5 should be widened to allow stakeholders other than the Secretary-General to object to data being kept confidential and introduce a transparent process to evaluate confidentiality.
- Necessary amendments may be needed to DR 83 Recording in Seabed Mining Registry
- “State enterprises” are referred to in AGXI/A/S6(1)(d)(ii). However, something more definitive may be needed into the Schedule or Standards/Guidelines. Payments to Sponsoring States will be important for determining a nodule transfer price in the future.

## **Regulation 90 [IWG IM]**

### **Procedures to ensure confidentiality**

1. The Secretary-General shall be responsible for maintaining the confidentiality of all Confidential Information held by the Authority and shall not, except [with] [Australia – delete] [following a legal direction] [Australia] [good cause] [Australia - delete] or [Norway, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] the prior written consent of a Contractor, release such information to any person external to the Authority. [The Secretary-General shall be responsible for maintaining the confidentiality of all confidential information held by the Authority and shall not release such information to any person external to the Authority, except where legally obliged to do so or with the prior written consent of a relevant contractor] [United Kingdom - replace] [The Secretary-General may release confidential information with prior written consent of the contractor concerned, or in the following circumstances:

(a) when compelled by a legally binding court order;

(b) to prevent imminent threats to human life or the marine environment;

(c) to investigate suspected violations of ISA Regulations.] [Interim Director-General of the Enterprise - replace]. To ensure the confidentiality of such information, the Secretary-General shall establish procedures, consistent with the provisions of the Convention, governing the handling of Confidential Information by members of the Secretariat, members of the Commission, members of the Council, and any other person participating in any activity or programme of the Authority. Such procedures shall include:

(a) The maintenance of Confidential Information in secure facilities and the development of security procedures to prevent unauthorized access to or removal of such information; and

(b) The development and maintenance of a classification, log and inventory system of all written information received, including its type and source and the routing from the time of receipt until final disposition.

2. A person who is authorized pursuant to these regulations to access Confidential Information shall not disclose such information except as permitted under the Convention and these regulations. The Secretary-General shall require [any person who is authorized to access Confidential Information] [such persons] [United Kingdom - replace] to make a written declaration witnessed by

the Secretary-General or duly authorized representative to the effect that the person so authorized:

- (a) Acknowledges his or her legal obligation under the Convention and these regulations with respect to the non-disclosure of Confidential Information; and
- (b) Agrees to comply with the applicable regulations and procedures established to ensure the confidentiality of such information.

3. The Commission shall protect the confidentiality of Confidential Information submitted to it pursuant to these regulations or a contract issued under these regulations. In accordance with the provisions of article 163(8), of the Convention, members of the Commission shall not disclose or use, even after the termination of their functions, any industrial secret, proprietary data which are transferred to the Authority in accordance with article 14 of annex III to the Convention or any other Confidential Information coming to their knowledge by reason of their duties for the Authority.

4. The Secretary-General and staff of the Authority shall not disclose or use, even after the termination of their functions with the Authority, any industrial secret, proprietary data which are transferred to the Authority in accordance with article 14 of annex III to the Convention or any other Confidential Information coming to their knowledge by reason of their employment with the Authority.

5. Taking into account the responsibility and liability of the Authority pursuant to article 22 of annex III to the Convention, the Authority may take such action as may be appropriate against any person who, by reason of his or her duties for the Authority, has access to any Confidential Information and who breaches any of the obligations relating to confidentiality contained in the Rules of the Authority.

6. In the case of any breach of obligations relating to Confidential Information held by the Authority, the Authority shall notify the relevant Contractor and sponsoring State.

#### **Regulation 91 [IWG IM]**

##### **Information to be submitted upon expiration of an exploitation contract**

1. ~~Upon expiration of an exploitation contract,~~ [Upon expiration of an exploitation contract, or if an application for [renewal] [extension] [Russia - replace] is refused after the original expiration date, upon the date of the refusal, or if an exploitation contract is terminated before its expiration date, upon the date of the termination,] [Norway] ~~†~~ [T][t]he [Norway – lowercase] Contractor shall transfer to the Authority, to the extent feasible within [alt 1. 90][alt 2. 180] Days, all data and information that are required for the effective exercise of the powers and functions of the Authority in respect of the Contract Area, in accordance with the provisions of this regulation and [the Standard] [Norway – delete] taking into account the Guidelines. [This includes, but is not limited to, Geological data, Environmental Impact Assessment, and records of any incidents or breaches of regulations that occurred during the contract period.] [African Group]

[1.Alt. 1. Upon termination of an Exploitation Contract in accordance with regulation 18ter, the Contractor shall, [to the extent feasible] within [90][180] Days [from the date of termination of the contract] in accordance with the provisions of this Regulation and the [applicable] Standard[s], and taking into consideration account Guidelines:

(a) transfer all data and information that are required for the effective exercise of the powers and functions of the Authority in respect of the Contract Area, and;

(b) to the extent requested by the Authority, transfer biological, chemical and geological samples collected under the Contract to the Authority or other location(s) specified by the Authority.] [Pew]

[1 bis. The Contractor may seek advice from the Commission with regards to the data and information that is required pursuant to this regulation, and the Commission will report to the Council in relation to any such advice provided.] [Norway – delete 1 bis]

[1.ter. Any Confidential Data transmitted pursuant to paragraph (1) shall continue to be dealt with in accordance with regulation 89(4) and (5) and regulation 90.] [India]

[2. Upon termination of an exploitation contract, the Contractor and the Secretary-General shall consult together and, taking into account the Guidelines, the Secretary-General shall specify the data and information to be submitted to the Authority [within 90 Days].] [Norway remove brackets] ] [PEW – delete para 2 entirely]

#### **Regulation 92 [IWG IM] Seabed Mining Register**

1. The Secretary-General shall establish, maintain and publish a Seabed Mining Register in accordance with the Standards and taking account of the Guidelines. Such register shall contain the following information (except to the extent it is Confidential Information):

(a) The names of the Contractors and the names and addresses of their designated representatives;

(b) The applications made by [each] [the various] Contractors and the accompanying documents submitted in accordance with Regulation 7 including any revisions, [during the term of a contract] [Pew - delete];

[c] A copy of each Council decision to award, extend, suspend or terminate, a contract including the rationale, and the terms of the various Exploitation Contracts [and its schedules] [Australia] in accordance with Regulation 1, [including copies of the approved Plans of Works, and [any substantial] [Pew - delete] modifications to the plans of work];

]

(d) The geographical extent of Contract Areas and Mining Areas to which each relate;

(e) The category of Mineral Resources to which each relate;

(e bis.) Annual reports, including the amount of Mineral Resources mined, and details of any Incidents, Notifiable Events, Compliance Notices or other compliance-related interventions taken by the Authority;

(e ter.) The results of monitoring and [test mining] [Pilot Mining] [China - replace] projects;

(e quat.) Inspection reports;

(f) All payments made by Contractors to the Authority under these regulations;

**[(f)bis. A financial Incentives Registry, pursuant to Regulation 63.] [France]**

(g) Any encumbrances regarding the exploitation contract made in accordance with regulation 22;

(h) Any instruments of transfer **[or assignment] [Australia]**;

(i) All reports submitted to the Authority by the Contractor, including annual reports submitted under regulation 38, Incident reports submitted under regulation 33(2)(f), environmental monitoring reports submitted under regulation 39bis(3) and (4), and performance assessment reports submitted under regulation 52;

(j) copies of notifications made under regulation 34 of Notifiable Events;

(k) Reports of reviews of activities under plans of works under Regulation 58;

(l) A copy of inspection reports prepared under Regulation 100;

(m) A copy of the compliance record for every Contractor, prepared under Regulation 100bis;

(n) A copy of every compliance notice issued under Regulation 103 and, where applicable, the corresponding improvement plan;

(o) copies of each Contractor's documents validating, declaring, and confirming the Environmental Performance Guarantee;

(p<sup>+</sup>) Any other details which the Secretary-General considers appropriate (save Confidential Information).

**[(q) Any other details as may be directed by the organs of the Authority from time to time] [Germany]**

**[(q) the Beneficial Ownership register, established by Regulation 83,**

**(r) consultation records, as required by Regulation 93bis.] [Australia]**

2. The Seabed Mining Register shall be publicly available free of charge on the Authority's website.

[3. The Secretary-General shall publish the information in the Seabed Mining Register as soon as practicable following its receipt by the Secretary-General.]

**[3. Alt. Following receipts of information, the Secretary-General shall publish it in the Seabed Mining Register within seven days] [United Kingdom]**

### **[Regulation 92bis**

#### **Publication of environmental data and information**

The Secretary General shall publish all environmental data and information relating to a Contract Area **[as well as environmental data and information obtained outside the contract Area, but in connection with the activities in the contract Area] [Russia]**, whether **[produced] [collected] [India - replace]** before, during or after application for a Plan of Work, or during the term of the contract, including any revisions to that data or information, on a central data repository that is publicly accessible via the Authority's website [as soon as practicable], and in accordance with the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority

and applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines. Any new environmental data and information shall be published on the central data repository at regular intervals defined in Standards.]

## Part X General procedures, Standards and Guidelines

### Regulation 93 [President's Text] Notice and general procedures

1. [Replaced to the Schedule]

2. Any communication **[between the Contractor or Applicant and the Authority]** **[African Group]** shall be made by the Secretary-General or by the designated representative of the applicant or Contractor, as the case may be. [If the communication is transmitted orally, it will be followed up by a written confirmation at the earliest time convenient], in writing.

3. **[Service of any communication must be made]** **[All Communications must be made in writing and served]** **[Germany - replace]**:

(a) By hand, fax, registered mail or email containing an authorized electronic signature; and

(b) To the Secretary-General at the headquarters of the Authority or to the designated representative at the address stated on the Seabed Mining Register, as the case may be.

4. The requirement to provide any information in writing under these regulations is satisfied by the provision of the information in an electronic document containing a digital signature.

5. **[Delivery by hand is deemed to be effective when [made] [accompanied with an acknowledgement copy]]** **[Delivery by hand is deemed to be effective when made, if a receipt is provided]** **[United Kingdom - replace]**. Delivery by fax is deemed to be effective when the "transmit confirmation report" confirming the transmission to the recipient's published fax number is received by the transmitter. Delivery by registered mail is deemed to be effective 21 Days after posting. Delivery by email is deemed to be effective when the email enters an information system designated or used by the addressee for the purpose of receiving documents of the type sent and is capable of being retrieved and processed by the addressee.

6. Notice to the designated representative of the applicant or Contractor constitutes effective notice to the applicant or Contractor for all purposes under these regulations, and the designated representative is the agent of the applicant or Contractor for the service of process or notification in any proceeding of any court or tribunal having jurisdiction.

7. Notice to the Secretary-General constitutes effective notice to the Authority for all purposes under these regulations, and the Secretary-General is the Authority's agent for the service of process or notification in any proceeding of any court or tribunal having jurisdiction.

**[8. This regulation shall apply to all Communications by and with the Authority]**  
**[Germany]**



## Regulation 93.bis.

### Stakeholder Consultation

[Under development by the intersessional working group on a standardized approach]

#### Regulation 93 bis [President's Text]

##### Stakeholder Consultation [by Contractors] [Pew]

1. Consultation with States and Stakeholders shall be inclusive and transparent, be conducted in a timely manner [and in accordance with Regulation 93 ter]

[1.Alt. Consultation with States and Stakeholders by Contractors and applicants shall be inclusive and transparent, and be conducted in a timely manner and in accordance with this Regulation, Standards and Regulation 93 ter, taking into consideration Guidelines.] [Pew]

[1 bis Where these Regulations require consultation with States and Stakeholders by an applicant, or a Contractor, consultation shall be conducted in accordance with this Regulation, applicable Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines.] [Pew - delete]

2. The applicant or Contractor shall provide the Secretary General with a list of [potentially directly affected] Stakeholders [and States within scope of Regulation 93 ter].

[2.Alt. Prior to conducting a consultation required by these regulations, the applicant or Contractor shall consult with the Secretary General to agree a comprehensive list of Stakeholders, including but not limited to, all member States of the Authority, other States, all organisations who are observers to the Authority, any parties identified during the project scoping phase or Environmental Impact Assessment with potential to be affected, or otherwise interested in the activities, including persons who have self-identified as Stakeholders in accordance with the applicable Standard and taking into account the Guidelines.] [Pew]

3. At least 2 weeks before the consultation begins, the [Secretary General] [applicant or Contractor] [Pew - replace] shall correspond directly with all States and [potentially directly affected] Stakeholders advising that that the consultation will occur and shall [provide a copy of the same advisory note to the Secretary-General] [Pew] publish [such advice at] [it on] [Pew - replace] the Authority's website.

4. The [Secretary General shall determine] [advisory note under paragraph (3) shall specify] [Pew - replace] the consultation period for each consultation, which shall begin on the date of the publication of a notice of consultation and may not be less than:

- a) [[45]/[60]] [Australia – supports “60”] Days for a consultation relating to a scoping report prepared pursuant to Regulation 47 bis; and
- b) [[60]/[90]] [Australia – supports “90”] Days for all other consultations.

5. The [Secretary General] [applicant or Contractor] [Pew - replace] shall prepare a notice of consultation. The notice of consultation shall [shall conform]

to the applicable Standard and take into account applicable Guidelines, and shall [Pew] invite States and Stakeholders to make submissions to the consultation, describe the matters on which submissions are sought, include the documentation that is the subject of consultation and other relevant information, and specify the final date for submissions. The applicant or Contractor shall provide the Secretary General with all information and documentation required to prepare a notice of consultation [Pew], and the format and media by which comments may be submitted, aiming for an inclusive process that facilitates engagement by States and Stakeholders. [Pew].

6. The [Secretary General] [applicant or Contractor] [Pew - replace] shall publish the notice of consultation [at the Authority's website] [on a free-to-view and publicly accessible website] [Pew - replace] and send written notice of consultation to States and [potentially directly affected] Stakeholders [and to the Secretary-General who shall publish notification on the Authority's website including a web-link to the webpages where the consultation papers are published by the applicant/Contractor.] [Pew].

7. During the consultation period, the applicant or Contractor shall [[endeavour to]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – remove brackets] conduct engagement with States and [[potentially directly affected]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – remove brackets] [and interested] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] Stakeholders [public engagement, and] [Pew] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – replace] in accordance with [Regulation 93 ter] applicable Standards, and taking into [[consideration]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – remove brackets] Guidelines. The Secretary General may [Pew], in consultation with the relevant applicant or Contractor, [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] direct the applicant or Contractor to conduct such meetings, workshops and engagement [or facilitate such meetings, workshops and other forms of engagement] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru].

[7.bis The applicant or Contractor shall organize at least one public meeting during the consultation period to allow stakeholders to ask questions and express their concerns directly] [African Group]

[8. The Secretary General shall receive all submissions.] [Pew - delete]

9. [The Secretary General shall transmit all submissions to the applicant or Contractor.] [Pew - delete] The applicant or Contractor shall consider [the] [all] [Pew - replace] submissions received and may revise the documentation that was the subject of consultation. The applicant or Contractor shall prepare a written response to [the] [Pew] consultation that collates and responds to the [[substantive]] [Nauru – remove brackets / Australia; Pew - delete] [and relevant] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] comments expressed in submissions and includes an explanation of any revisions to the document and how those revisions respond to [[substantive]] [Nauru – remove brackets / Australia; Pew - delete] [and relevant] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] comments expressed in the submissions. [Where the applicant or Contractor considers that a specific comment does not necessitate a substantive response, for example where the comment is considered frivolous, vexatious, or duplicate, then the Contractor shall record that reasoning in the response document.] [Pew] [The applicant or Contractor shall submit [copies of all submissions received and] [Pew] the written response, with any revised documentation, to the Secretary-General [for transmission to the Commission] [Pew - delete].] [Pew – move to a separate paragraph]

10. The Secretary General shall [transmit copies of the documents received under paragraph (9) to the Commissions, and shall] [Pew] maintain [a] [the Authority's own] [Pew - replace] permanent public record of the notice of each consultation conducted under this Regulation, all submissions, and the written response to consultation, [Pew - delete] by publishing the notice, submissions and response at the Authority's website [(except for Confidential Information which shall be redacted from documents before publication)] [Pew - delete]. The Secretary General shall ensure that such consultation records relating to a specific contract are included in, or are accessible from, the relevant entry in the Seabed Mining Register, in accordance with Regulation 92.

[The results of each consultation shall be summarized in a public report, including an analysis of the key points raised by stakeholders and how these key points were addressed] [African Group]

#### Comments/remarks

Comment Several proposals have been received to Regulation 93 bis, including from the intersessional working group on a standardized approach to stakeholder consultation. These proposals have, to the extent possible, been implemented in the draft, and this in a clean version to ensure clarity.

The text of Draft Regulation 93bis included in the Consolidated Text for Part I of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session has been included here, together with the proposals received before Part II.

#### **[Regulation 93 bis bis Stakeholder Consultation by the Authority]**

**[The Authority shall conduct Stakeholder consultations and facilitate public access to information and participation in the Authority's decision-making under these regulations in accordance with the Authority's policy and procedures on public consultation and participation and any applicable Standards and taking into account Guidelines.]**

#### Comments/remarks

**[Regulation 93bis bis has been proposed by Pew after the Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.]**

#### [Regulation 93 ter] [President's Text]

[Consultations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Engagement] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] with coastal States

1. Targeted and proactive [consultation] [engagement] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] with adjacent coastal States [and any other coastal States adjacent] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to the areas of a planned activity when they are potentially most affected States, shall take place at different stages of a plan of work, when

documents are being developed and at other appropriate times during and at cessation of exploitation activities, in particular at the development of:

- \_\_\_\_\_ (a) Environmental Plans;
- \_\_\_\_\_ (b) Any review/update of the environmental plans in light of Material Change;
- \_\_\_\_\_ (c) Performance Assessment; or
- \_\_\_\_\_ (d) Closure Plans.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Potentially most affected coastal States shall be determined by taking into account the potential effects of the planned activity and includes:

\_\_\_\_\_ (a) Adjacent coastal States ~~and any other coastal States adjacent to the areas of a planned activity whose exercise of sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring, conserving or managing natural resources may reasonably be affected by the activity;~~

\_\_\_\_\_ (b) Adjacent coastal States and any other coastal States adjacent to the areas of a planned activity whose exercise of jurisdiction with regard to the protection and preservation of the marine environment may be reasonably affected by the activity; and

\_\_\_\_\_ (c) Coastal States identified as potentially affected by the REMP. ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

3. \_\_\_\_\_ The Secretariat should assist developing States, including small islands developing States, upon request, to identify potential effects of the planned activity on areas under their jurisdiction.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ At the different stages indicated in paragraph 1 above, the following steps will be taken:

\_\_\_\_\_ (a) The contractor/sponsoring State informs the Secretary-General that is ready to engage in a target and proactive consultation. The contractor must then provide a geographical description of the area to be covered by the plan of work and may indicate any coastal State adjacent to the areas of a planned activity that they believe to meet the criteria for potentially most affected States based on studies and available knowledge;

\_\_\_\_\_ (b) The Secretary-General notifies all States, via Note Verbal, that a plan of work is being prepared for the area “X” and requests them to communicate, within [...] days, whether they meet the criteria for potentially most affected coastal States;

\_\_\_\_\_ (c) Coastal States that believe they meet such criteria must justify this based on the criteria outlined above in Section II and other relevant information;

\_\_\_\_\_ (d) The Secretary-General informs the contractor/sponsoring State of the coastal States that have communicated that they meet the criteria for potentially most affected;

\_\_\_\_\_ (e) The contractor must then undertake targeted and proactive consultations

with the coastal States in question [to be further developed in a standard/guideline, which may address inter alia the following issues: (i) the provision of access to information to the coastal States in question relating to the environmental impacts of the planned activity; (ii) consideration of the views

and comments of the coastal States in question; (iii) provision of written responses specifically addressing such views and comments, in particular with respect to potential impacts in areas under national jurisdiction; (iv) revision of the planned activity, if appropriate].]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 4 entirely]

5. If the planned activity includes resources that lie across limits of national jurisdiction, the contractor/sponsoring State must exercise due regard to the rights and legitimate interests of the coastal States across whose jurisdiction such deposits lie, and shall:

(a) Notify the coastal State of the intention to submit a plan of work;

(b) Hold regular consultations with the coastal State in question to avoid violation of its rights and interests in the marine resources over which the coastal State exercises sovereignty;

(c) Obtain the prior consent of the coastal States in question if the activity could result in the exploitation of the marine resources over which the coastal State exercises sovereignty; and

(d) Provide opportunity and resources for the coastal State in question to monitor the exploitation activity within the meaning of Article 142 (1) and (2) of UNCLOS.]

[China – delete DR 93ter]

## **[[Regulation 93 ter Alt.**

### **Consultations with coastal States**

1. Where these Regulations require consultations between a Contractor (which term, for the purposes of this Regulation, include applicant parties) and potentially affected coastal States, consultation shall be conducted in accordance with this Regulation and applicable Standards, and taking into consideration Guidelines. Potentially affected coastal States for the purposes of this regulation should be identified in accordance with Regulation 4.

2. Contractors are required to maintain targeted and proactive consultation with potentially affected coastal States in pursuing their application for the approval of a Plan of Work and during the term of their contract, in particular in relation to:

(a) Environmental Plan(s);

(b) Any review/update of the Environmental Plans in light of Material Change;

(c) Performance Assessment; or

(d) Closure Plans.

3. Consultations between Contractors and potentially affected coastal States should be organised as follows:

(a) Upon the receipt for an application for the approval of a Plan of Work, the Secretary-General notifies all States, via Note Verbale, that a Plan of Work had been submitted, specifying in the notification the area under application defined by geographical coordinates in the Plan of Work (in accordance with Regulation

8) and invite any State considering itself to qualify as a potentially affected coastal state to indicate its position within [21] Days;

(b) Coastal States that believe they meet such criteria must justify this based on Regulation 4;

(c) The Secretary-General shall inform the Contractor and all States of the coastal States that have communicated their position that they qualify as potentially most affected coastal States. Contractors and States are required to raise an objection, if any, to a notification of a State that it considers itself to qualify as a potentially affected coastal State within [21] Days, absent which the State in question should be deemed to qualify as potentially affected coastal State. If such an objection is raised, the Council shall determine whether the State in question qualifies as a potentially affected coastal State; [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]

(d) The Contractor must undertake targeted and proactive consultations with potentially affected coastal States according to the applicable Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines.

(d) bis Emergency Response and Contingency Plan [Indonesia]

4. If the planned activity relates to resource deposits that lie across limits of national jurisdiction of coastal States, the Contractor and its Sponsoring State must exercise due regard to the rights and legitimate interests of the coastal States across whose jurisdiction such deposits lie, and shall:

(a) Notify the coastal State of the intention to submit a Plan of Work prior to the submission of the application for the approval of a Plan of Work to the Secretary-General;

(b) Hold regular consultations with the coastal State in question to avoid violation of its rights and interests in the resource deposits over which the coastal State exercises jurisdiction;

(c) Obtain the prior consent of the coastal States in question if the activity could result in the exploitation of the marine resources over which the coastal State exercises jurisdiction; and

(d) Provide opportunity and resources for the coastal State in question to monitor the exploitation activity within the meaning of Article 142 (1) and (2) of the Convention.

[China – delete entire Draft Regulation 93ter]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have received one proposal for the insertion of a new draft regulation 93 bis with reference to article 142 of the Convention. I am concerned about the interpretation and extent of the application of article 142 of the Convention, and I have asked the Secretariat to prepare a briefing note in this respect. I invite for discussions of this insertion.
- Finally, an alternative proposal has been provided for Regulation 93ter to create better consistency with the current wording of Regulation 4 and compliance with Article 142 of the Convention.

## **[Regulation 93 ter**

### **Consultations with [potentially most affected] [coastal] States**

1. [Meaningful] consultations, including a system of prior, active, timely and effective notification] with States potentially most affected by the planned exploitation activity [with a view to avoid infringement of their rights under the Convention and/or achieving acceptable solutions regarding measures to be adopted in order to prevent significant harm in their territory or in other places under their jurisdiction or control], shall take place, [following standards and taking into account the guidelines, at appropriate stages of preparation and execution of a plan of work by the contractor. The outcomes of such consultations shall be included in the] different stages of preparing a Plan of Work, and at appropriate times during and at cessation of Exploitation activities, at the development of:

(a) Scoping [report].

(b) Environmental Impact Assessment].

(c) Environmental Impact Statement.]

(d) Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans.]

( e) Performance Assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan].

(f) Closure Plans.]

(g) Any review/update of the above documents [in light of] [required by] material change]

2. States should self-identify as being potentially most affected taking into account the potential effects of the [activity carried out in the area covered by the Plan of Work] planned activity and shall include:

(a) [Adjacent] coastal States, [which may include those that are adjacent to the area covered by the Plan of Work], whose [ ] sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring and exploiting, conserving or managing Marine natural resources [in accordance with the Convention] may be affected. .

(b) [Adjacent] coastal States, [which may include those that are adjacent to the area covered by the Plan of Work] whose exercise of jurisdiction with regard to the Protection and Preservation of the Marine Environment [in accordance with the Convention] may be affected.

(c) .

(d) States that carry out, in the area of the planned Exploitation activity, any activities, including economic activities, or Marine Scientific Research, that may be believed to be affected.]

[Alt.

(a) States whose rights under the Convention may be denied, impaired or otherwise affected by the activity carried out in the area covered by the Plan of Work.

(b) States that may suffer significant harm to persons, property or the environment in their territory or in other places under their jurisdiction or control, as a result of the activity carried out in the area covered by the Plan of Work.]

3. [As appropriate,] the Secretariat, [Contractor, Sponsoring State and/or other States or relevant bodies] should [provide technical, financial and advisory support] to developing States, including small islands developing States, upon request, to identify potential effects of the planned activity on Marine areas and their resources under their jurisdiction.

[4. This support should encompass an assistance mechanism, along with training and mentorship programs, to bolster local capacities].

[5. Procedures for consultations with potentially most affected States shall be further developed in Standards and Guidelines].

[6. The [Contractor] (Sponsoring State) shall develop contingency plans for responding to emergencies, in cooperation with the Authority and potentially most affected States.]

[7. The [Contractor] [Sponsoring State] shall, without delay and by the most expeditious means at his disposal, notify potentially most affected States of an emergency concerning a planned activity and provide them with all relevant information]

8. Consultations with coastal States across whose jurisdiction resource deposits lie, shall take place, pursuant to article 142(1) and (2) of the Convention and in accordance with Regulation 93 quarter.

#### **Regulation 93 quarter**

##### **Consultations with coastal States pursuant to Article 142(1) and (2) of the Convention**

1. If the planned activity includes resources deposits in the Area that lie across limits of national jurisdiction, the [Contractor [Sponsoring State or States] shall conducted such activity with due regard to the rights and legitimate interests of the coastal States across whose jurisdiction such deposits lie

2. In this respect , the [Contractor] [Sponsoring State] shall maintain meaningful consultations, including a system of prior , active, timely and effective notification with the State concerned with a view to avoid infringement of such rights and interests. Consultations shall continue until the planned activity is completed.

[3. In cases where the planned activity may result in the exploitation of resources lying within national jurisdiction, the prior consent of the coastal State[must be conducted] [shall be require]].]

#### **[Regulation 93 quinquies**

Identification of and consultations with coastal States pursuant to Article 142 of the Convention, including any acts, measures, decisions or activities undertaken on the basis thereof, shall be without prejudice to, and shall not be relied upon as a basis for asserting or denying any claims to, sovereignty, sovereign rights or jurisdiction, including in respect of any disputes relating thereto. In no case shall the implementation of these procedures nor the abovementioned acts and activities be interpreted as recognition or non-recognition of any claims to sovereignty, sovereign rights or jurisdiction.]



## Comments/remarks

- The above Draft Regulations have been proposed by the intersessional working group on rights and interests of Coastal States after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

## Regulation 94 [President's Text]

### Adoption of Standards

1. The Commission shall, taking into account the views of ~~[[recognized experts identified in accordance with annex X]]~~ ~~[[competent independent experts, identified in accordance with Annex [insert correct number, once Annex has been prepared and added to the Regulations negotiating text]]~~ ~~[[or add 'Competent Independent Experts' the Schedule as a defined term and capitalise it here]]~~ ~~[[Pew]]~~, Stakeholders and relevant existing internationally accepted standards, [\[where applicable,\]](#) make recommendations to the Council on the adoption and revision of Standards relating to Exploitation activities in the Area, including standards relating to, inter alia:

- Operational safety;
- ~~bisAlt.~~ The effective protection of human health and safety, and labour matters;
- The conservation and Exploitation of the Resources; and
- The protection of the Marine Environment, including standards or requirements relating to the Environmental Effects of Exploitation activities, as referred to in regulation 145 ~~[[, inter alia on the following subjects:~~

~~(i) Baseline [environmental studies investigations, including:~~

- ~~- biodiversity status and ecosystem structures, functions and services;~~
- ~~- Physical properties of water (temperature, salinity, turbidity);~~
- ~~- Chemical properties of water;~~
- ~~- Chemical properties of sediments;]~~

~~(ii) Environmental quality objectives;~~

~~(iii) [Resource and region specific] Indicators and quantitative environmental thresholds, including but not limited to:~~

- ~~- plume characteristics (in particular, composition and characteristics of dissolved and suspended matter, plume dispersion, composition, sedimentation rates);~~
- ~~- Physico-chemical Characteristics of seawater and sediment, including water chemistry and temperature~~
- ~~- Light emissions;~~
- ~~- Noise and vibrations emissions~~
- ~~- Greenhouse gas emissions.;~~
- ~~- Discharges of chemicals, and~~

- Discharges of waste

(iv) Monitoring procedures

(v) Mitigation Measures,

(vi) Minimum technical [and operational] requirements for environmental protection with regard to all the equipment, [operational procedures and processes] used for the Exploitation activities, [including criteria for the assessment methodology to be used.]

(vii) Assessment of accidental events and natural hazards leading to environmental emergencies as well as environmentally hazardous discharges and residual effects of such emergencies, including preparation and implementation of Emergency Response and Contingency Plans.

(viii) Procedural and substantive requirements relating to submissions of reports required by these Regulations, including but not limited to: Plans of Work, Environmental Management Systems, Environmental Impact Assessments, [Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report,] Environmental Impact Statements, Environmental Management and Monitoring Plans and Closure Plans.] [Norway].

1. ~~bister~~. Standards shall describe [and determine] how the Authority and Contractors shall implement these regulations, and shall aim for:

(a) a uniform and non-discriminatory operating environment for all Contractors;

(b) a consistent approach by all parties to reduce environmental impacts and human health and safety risks to as low as reasonably practicable; and

(c) an outcomes-based approach to regulation, [where feasible,] [Pew] which prescribes [for][Nauru] rigorous environmental [performance] [Nauru] outcomes while affording flexibility for the processes by which these outcomes are achieved to enable continuous improvement, particularly as technology advances.

2. The Council shall consider [[and approve]], [and adopt,] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and provisionally adopt] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] [based] [Nauru] upon the recommendation of the Commission and taking into account [[statements] [relevant comments]] [comments] [Nauru - replace] [Nauru - replace] submitted by Stakeholders during a public consultation, the Standards, [provided that] [including whether] such Standards are consistent with the intent and purpose of the rRules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, including the decisions of the Council and the Assembly and, to the extent relevant, developed on the basis of Best Available Scientific Evidence, Best Environmental Practices, Best Available Techniques, and Good Industry Practice. If the Council does not [[approve]] [adopt] [Nauru - replace] [provisionally adopt] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] such Standards, the Council shall return the Standards to the Commission for reconsideration in the light of the views expressed by the Council. The Standards [approved] [adopted] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace] by the Council shall remain effective on a provisional basis until approved by the Assembly or until amended by the Council in the light of any views expressed by the Assembly.

3. The Standards contemplated in paragraph 1 above [may] [must] [may] [Nauru - replace] [shall] [Pew - replace] include both qualitative and quantitative standards, if applicable, and [must] [may] [Nauru - replace] include [all the]

~~[Nauru – delete]~~ methods, processes and technology required to implement the Standards.

4.~~alt.~~ Standards or amendments thereto adopted by the Council ~~[[and approved by the Assembly]]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ shall be legally binding on Contractors, member States and the Authority from the date of their adoption and the Commission shall review these Standards at least every five years from the date of their adoption or revision and advise the Council, in the light of improved knowledge or technology ~~and new contributions from Indigenous Peoples and local communities~~ ~~[Pew]~~, as to whether any revision is required] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket]~~

4.bis. Standards adopted or revised may incorporate an appropriate transition period for implementation by existing Contractors.

~~[[4.ter. For the avoidance of doubt, compliance with Standards is a fundamental term of the contract, for the purposes of regulation 103.]]~~ ~~[Pew - reinstate]~~

~~4.ter.alt. Where there are instances of contractor non-compliance with the standards, Regulation 103 shall apply~~ ~~[Germany]~~

5. In the event of any conflict between the provisions of these regulations and the provisions of a Standard, the regulations shall prevail. The Authority should be notified of the conflict, and shall provide additional guidance as necessary.

~~[[5.bis. To the extent of any inconsistency between a Standard and amendments thereto, and an already approved Plan of Work, a Contractor following a reasonable transition period, shall use its best efforts to comply with any additional changes to its Plan of Work as a result of the amendment.]]~~ ~~[Pew – supports deletion]~~

[5.bis. To the extent of any inconsistency between a Standard and amendments thereto, and an already approved Plan of Work, a Contractor following a reasonable transition period, shall use its best efforts to comply with any additional changes to its Plan of Work as a result of the amendment.] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~

#### Comments/remarks

- I suggest deleting 4.ter since this is redundant.
- I suggest deleting 5.bis. as this is overlapping and to some extent contradicts the content of paras 4.alt and 4.bis.

#### Regulation 95 [President's Text]

##### ~~[Issue]~~ ~~[Issuance]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ of Guidelines

~~[[~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket]~~ 1. ~~alt.~~ The Commission ~~or other subsidiary organs of the Authority~~ ~~where so requested by the Council~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~, shall, from time to time, ~~where appropriate or upon request by the Council,~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ develop Guidelines of a technical nature, in order to assist in the implementation of these Regulations, taking into account the views of relevant Stakeholders ~~and competent independent experts~~ ~~[identified in accordance with Annex XI]~~ ~~[PEW]~~.

1. alt bis. The Secretary-General shall, from time to time, develop Guidelines of an administrative nature, in order to assist in the implementation of these Regulations, taking into account instructions from the Council and the views of the Commission as well as other relevant Stakeholders.

2. The full text of [such] [PEW – delete] Guidelines [developed pursuant to this regulation] [PEW] [or any revisions thereto] shall be reported to the Council [as soon as they are developed.] [PEW] Should the Council find that a Guideline is inconsistent with the intent and purpose of the Rules of the Authority, it may direct that the Guideline be modified [by the Commission] or withdrawn.

3. The Commission [or other subsidiary organ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], in the case of technical Guidelines and the Secretary-General, in the case of administrative Guidelines shall keep under review such Guidelines which shall be reconsidered, and revised [subject to Council approval as needed] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], at least every five years from the date of their adoption or revision, and in the light of improved knowledge or information.

[ [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete brackets] 4. Guidelines are only of a recommendatory nature, [ [Japan – delete bracket] yet Contractors shall ensure they are apprised of the Guidelines and take them into account in their performance of functions under these regulations and their contract. [The observance of a Guideline by a Contractor may serve as supporting evidence of compliance by that Contractor with the relevant Rules of the Authority to which the Guideline relates. The Authority may also request applicants or Contractors to identify and explain departures from Guidelines] ] [Japan – delete] [China, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Pew – suggests reinsertion].

[4.Alt. Notwithstanding the non-binding and recommendatory nature of Guidelines, contractors are expected to observe all Guidelines issued by the Authority to the furthest extent possible. The Council may request contractors to explain any divergence from the Guidelines] [Germany]

## Part XI Inspection, compliance, and enforcement

### [Regulation XY Public Complaint

1. The [Council] [Compliance Committee] shall develop and implement public complaints procedure to facilitate reporting to the Authority by any person or entity of any concerns about the activities in the Area.]

#### Comments/remarks

The above Draft Regulation – still without a number – has been proposed by the delegation of Spain after Part II of the 29ths Sesison.

### Section 1 Inspections

#### Regulation 96 [IWG ICE]

## The inspection mechanism

1. The [Commission] [Council] [PEW - replace] shall establish [Russia - delete] a Compliance Committee [shall be established] [Russia] [, within the Commission,][Russia - delete] pursuant to regulation 96 bis. [The Compliance Committee shall regularly prepare a schedule for planned inspections that is subject to the adoption of the Council.] [Russia] [The Compliance Committee shall oversee the Authority's inspections, compliance and enforcement function pursuant to these Regulations, and shall approve and keep updated the Authority's Compliance Strategy.] [Pew]

[1(bis) The Council shall establish the inspections, compliance and enforcement mechanism in order to exercise control over activities in the Area and to direct and supervise a staff of inspectors.] [Russia]

2. The [Secretary-General] [China, Russia - delete] [Compliance Committee] [China; Pew] [Council [on recommendation of the Compliance Committee] [Russia] shall [appoint an officer with suitable qualifications to be Chief Inspector] [China - delete] [establish a Standing Committee, composed of the Chair of Commission and/or the Chair of the Compliance Committee and some individual members from the Compliance Committee.] [China]. The [Chief Inspector] [Compliance Committee] [China] shall [report to the Compliance Committee and shall] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] undertake the day-to-day management and administration of a [R][r]oster [PEW - lowercase] of Inspectors and inspection programme [in accordance the Authority's Compliance Strategy] [Pew].] [PEW - insert brackets]

3. The Council shall, on the basis of the recommendations of the Commission, approve and maintain a code of conduct for Inspectors [based on the principles of independence, transparency, accountability] [proportionality, expertise, probity] [Pew] and non-discrimination] [Australia].

## Regulation 96 bis [IWG ICE]

### The Compliance Committee

1. The Compliance Committee shall be comprised of ten [fifteen] members [of the Commission] [Russia, PEW - delete] [with appropriate expertise to carry out the functions of the Compliance Committee in accordance with this regulation.] [Russia - delete]

2. The Compliance Committee shall, inter alia:

(a) provide recommendations to the Council [and Chief Inspector] [PEW] on the administration and management of the roster of Inspectors and matters relating to inspection, compliance and enforcement [including clarifying what constitutes non-compliance] [PEW] in accordance with relevant policies or directions issued by the Council;

[(a bis) develop a general compliance and enforcement strategy] [PEW]

[(a ter) develop a tailored inspections programme for each contract] [PEW]

[(b) Review the annual reports of Contractors] [China - delete] [and consider any instances of non-compliance][Nauru] [and report to the Council the results of the review] [PEW];

(c) Examine reports and recommendations from the Chief Inspector and Inspectors, and other relevant data and information [which should be transmitted to the Council] [Russia];

(d) Report to the Council, the results of inspections and resulting recommendations for enforcement action, in a timely and comprehensive manner [and coordinate compliance matters with other organs of the Authority that play a role in inspection, compliance and enforcement] [Russia – delete];

(e) Convene, with the support of the Secretary-General, a process to liaise with Contractors in cases of non-compliance or complaints;

[(e) bis Investigate allegations from members of the Authority, members of the Commission, relevant coastal States or the Secretary-General, as well as from observers of the Authority and other Stakeholders on possible instances of Contractor non-compliance, including through any whistle-blowing procedures under regulation 101 bis;] [PEW]

(f) Consult and cooperate, through the Secretary-General with sponsoring States, flag States, port States and competent international organizations as regards compliance and enforcement measures [and fully inform the Council on the matter.] [Russia];

[(g) Make recommendations to the Council for the issue of emergency orders and appropriate penalties; and] [China – delete]

[(g) bis Undertake in collaboration with the Secretary-General compliance promotion activities to promote understanding of and compliance with the Rules of the Authority, including dissemination of best practice arising from inspection activities;] [PEW]

[(g) ter Appoint, where time is of the essence, a competent independent expert to perform any or all of the functions of an Inspector where the nature or subject matter of an inspection requires specialist knowledge or experience that is not available on the approved roster of Inspectors; and] [PEW]

(h) Perform any other duties that the Council directs in writing.

[(h) bis Issue compliance notices under regulation 103, and in urgent cases, take any appropriate interim measures where necessary;] [Nauru]

[(h) ter Undertake in collaboration with the Secretary-General compliance promotion activities including dissemination of best practice arising from inspection activities.] [Nauru]

3. [The Compliance Committee] [The Council][Russia] shall [develop] [adopt] [Russia – replace] [its own] [the] [Russia] rules of procedure [of the Compliance Committee] [Russia], [under the rules of procedure of the Commission.] [Russia, PEW – delete]

\*[6. Within 3 months of the end of a Calendar Year the Compliance Committee shall complete an annual inspection, compliance and enforcement report, together with a non-technical summary, and submit the report and summary to the Council for its consideration.

\*\*7. The report shall include details of any regulatory action taken by a sponsoring State or States as advised in writing to the Chief Inspector or

Secretary-General, any corrective action undertaken by a Contractor and any recommendations as to any enforcement action to be taken by the Council to which regulation 100(2) refers. The report shall also include any findings and recommendations arising from inspections that may contribute to the development of Good Industry Practice, Best Environmental Practices and Best Available Techniques.

\*\*8. The Secretary-General shall make publicly available a copy of the Committee's report and summary on the Authority's website, with any Confidential Information redacted.] [Nauru]

[Germany] [Regulation 96 bis Regulation 102bis [now Regulation 102]

### Compliance Committee

1. A Compliance Committee ("the Committee") [within the Commission] [China] is hereby established [to assist the Council in carrying out its responsibility to exercise control over activities in the Area as provided for under Part XI of the Convention] [China - delete]. All instances of non-compliance shall be brought to the attention of the Committee, which shall report to the Council. [The Committee shall comprise fifteen members [with appropriate regulatory compliance and enforcement expertise] [Nauru]. Each regional group shall designate two members from among Council members, who shall serve for a period of two years, with the possibility of extension. The remaining five members [which] [China - replace] shall be designated by the Commission taking into account geographic representation and from among those with appropriate expertise within the Commission to carry out the functions of the Committee in accordance with this regulation.] [Nauru – suggest moving to new para 1. bis]

2. Without limiting the powers and functions conferred upon another organ of the Authority the Committee shall:

(a) Administer and manage the roster of Inspectors and matters relating to inspection, compliance and enforcement in accordance with relevant policies or directions issued by the Council;

(b) Provide recommendations to the Council on matters relating to inspection, compliance, and enforcement including clarifying what constitutes non-compliance;

(c) Appoint Inspectors as required from the approved roster of inspectors, according to the approved inspection programme and schedule or as may be required;

(d) Establish procedures and routines for investigation of possible instances of non-compliance;

(e) [Review the annual reports of Contractors, as examined by] [Consider any instances of non-compliance of the annual reports of Contractors, upon the request of] [China - replace] the Commission, and consider any instances of non-compliance [China - delete];

(f) Examine reports and recommendations from the Chief Inspector and Inspectors, and other relevant data and information and consider any instances of non-compliance;

(g) Report to the Council the results of inspections and resulting recommendations for enforcement action, in a timely and comprehensive

manner and coordinate compliance matters with other organs of the Authority that play a role in inspection, compliance and enforcement;

(h) Investigate allegations from members of the Authority, members of the Commission, relevant ~~adjacent~~ ~~Micronesia~~ coastal States or the Secretary-General, as well as from observers of the Authority and other Stakeholders on possible instances of Contractor non-compliance, including through any whistleblowing procedures under regulation 101 bis. ~~[China - delete]~~;

(i) Convene, with the support of the Secretary-General, a process to liaise with Contractors in cases of non-compliance or complaints, including conducting oral hearings and conduct an inquiry into any Incident;

~~[(j) Consult and cooperate, through the Secretary-General with sponsoring States, flag States, port States and competent international organizations as regards compliance and enforcement measures;] ~~[Pew - delete]~~~~

~~[(j) alt consult and develop cooperative arrangements with sponsoring, port, and flag States (this will be relevant to specific Contracts – and is supported by new entries into the Consolidated Regulations text that allows the ISA to identify and communicate with these States early, during the application process); and~~

~~[(j) alt bis identify and explore any potential partners who may be able to support or facilitate inspection and compliance activities of the ISA.] ~~[Pew]~~~~

(k) Issue compliance notices under regulation 103, and in urgent cases, take any appropriate interim measures where necessary;

(l) Examining complaints under regulation 101 and making any recommendations to the Council;

(m) ~~[Make] ~~[With the prior authorization of the Commission, make] ~~[China - replace]~~~~ recommendations to the Council for the issue of emergency orders and appropriate penalties; and~~

(n) Undertake in collaboration with the Secretary-General compliance promotion activities to promote understanding of and compliance with the Rules of the Authority, including dissemination of best practice arising from inspection activities;

~~[(o) Appoint, where time is of the essence, a competent independent person to perform any or all of the functions of an Inspector where the nature or subject matter of an inspection requires specialist knowledge or experience that is not available on the approved roster of Inspectors; and] ~~[China – delete sub (o) entirely]~~~~

(p) Perform any other duties that the Council directs in writing.

~~[2 bis. Any recommendations from the Commission to the Council pursuant to Article 165(i), (j) and (k) of the Convention, as well as any instances of non-compliance identified by the Commission or the Secretariat in the course of carrying out their functions or otherwise, shall be promptly forwarded to the Committee in the form of a report for consideration and further action as appropriate. With the exception of complaints made against the Committee, all complaints received pursuant to Regulation 101 and 101bis shall also be immediately forwarded to the Committee for consideration and further action as appropriate. Nothing in this provision shall limit the right of the Committee to commence its own investigation of non-compliance. In cases where complaints~~



are made against the Committee, the Council shall directly address such complaints and determine how to proceed. [China – delete para 2 bis entirely]

3. [The Committee shall develop its own rules of procedure] [The Commission may revise its rules of procedure for the Committee] [China - replace], including for the convening of hearings, which shall be approved by the Council.

4. Decisions of the Committee shall be taken by consensus. If all efforts to achieve consensus has been exhausted, decisions shall be taken by a majority of members present and voting. In the case of a tie, the Chair of the Committee shall have the decisive vote.

5. The Committee shall meet at regular intervals preferably using virtual means, and in urgent cases involving possible instances of non-compliance, shall convene virtually and on short notice. Members of the Committee shall rotate among themselves on a monthly basis in order to ensure that one member is always available “on call” in cases of non-compliance that require urgent action. In addition, the Committee shall appoint its own chair and vice chair. Unless otherwise determined by the Committee, the Chair of the Commission, the Chief Inspector and a member of the Secretariat designated by the Secretary-General shall be invited to attend the meetings of the Committee but without the right to vote. The Secretary-General shall facilitate the meetings of the Committee.

[China – delete para 4 and 5 entirely]

6. Within 3 months of the end of a Calendar Year the Committee shall complete an annual inspection, compliance and enforcement report, together with a non-technical summary, and submit the report and summary to the Council for its consideration.

7. The report shall include details of any regulatory action taken by a sponsoring State or States as advised in writing [to] [by] [Russia - replace] the Chief Inspector or Secretary-General, any corrective action undertaken by a Contractor and any recommendations as to any enforcement action to be taken by the Council to which regulation 100(2) refers. The report shall also include any findings and recommendations arising from inspections that may contribute to the development of Good Industry Practice, Best Environmental Practices and Best Available Techniques [, and any instructions or regulatory interventions made by an Inspector or the Compliance Committee during the reporting period, and the Compliance Committee’s findings from their review of Contractor annual reports (pursuant to sub-paragraph (1)(e))] [Pew].

8. The Secretary-General shall make publicly available a copy of the Committee’s report and summary on the Authority’s website, with any Confidential Information redacted.

9. The Council shall review and ratify any interim measures imposed by the Committee, and consider any of its recommendations as soon as practicable or at its next meeting. A member of the Bureau of the Council shall be on-call and shall convene a virtual meeting of the Council in the case of matters for urgent consideration, including the issue of emergency orders by the Council.

10. The Secretary-General shall provide such administrative support to the Committee and the Chief Inspector as is required, including the processing of all formal communications and notifications to or from the Committee. All notifications to the Committee shall be addressed to the Secretary-General who shall promptly transmit them to Chair of the Committee.]

**Comments/remarks**

Regulation 96 bis is now Regulation 102. Proposals received after the first part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session have been included here.

**Regulation 102Alt.**

1. The Council shall amend the Rules of Procedure of the Legal and Technical Commission to establish the Inspection, Compliance, and Enforcement (ICE) Chamber consistent with the provisions of this regulation.

2. Within the Legal and Technical Commission, the ICE Chamber shall have exclusive responsibility over inspection, compliance and enforcement matters.

3. The ICE Chamber shall direct the Authority's Inspection Programme, in line with any relevant guidance and directives that the Legal and Technical Commission receives from the Council, and consistent with all applicable regulations and relevant standards and guidelines in this Part.

4. The ICE Chamber shall draft reports and develop recommendations on all matters regarding inspection, compliance, and enforcement that will be submitted to Council through a dedicated Legal and Technical Commission Co-Chair.

5. The Council shall only consider a recommendation or report related to inspection, compliance, or enforcement from the Legal and Technical Commission that has been endorsed by the ICE Chamber.

6. Pursuant to the Rules and Procedures of the Legal and Technical Commission, the Council shall elect ten members with appropriate expertise in regulatory compliance, inspection, or enforcement to serve in the ICE Chamber, giving due consideration to the principle of equitable geographic representation.

7. A State Party's representation in the ICE Chamber shall constitute its representation on the Legal and Technical Commission.

**Comments/remarks**

The alternative formulation for Draft Regulation 102 – previously DR96bis – has been suggested by Norway (as facilitator of the working group) together with Canada, after the second part of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

**Regulation 96 ter [IWG ICE]**

**[Access to] [Singapore - delete] inspections**

1. The Inspector decides upon the manner of execution of the inspections. Inspections may be carried out announced, unannounced, remotely, virtually or onsite, or a combination of these. [Netherlands; Norway]

1. [bis] [Netherlands; Norway] [Save for circumstances in which it is determined by the Chief Inspector expedient and safe to conduct a no-notice inspection,]

[Pew] The [Chief] [Netherlands; Norway - delete] Inspector shall [usually] [PEW] give reasonable notice [, which may vary depending upon the chosen manner of execution pursuant to paragraph 1,] [Netherlands; Norway] to a Contractor of [inspection. This notice shall contain: (a) information about the manner of execution of the planned inspection; (b) [Netherlands; Norway] the projected time and duration of inspections, [the names] [(c) the number] [Netherlands; Norway - replace] [means of identifying] [Pew - replace] of the Inspector(s) and [(d) [Netherlands; Norway] any activities that the Inspector(s) are to perform that are likely to require the availability of special equipment or special assistance from the personnel of the Contractor. [The activities of the Inspector(s) should in any case not [unnecessarily] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] impede activities in the Area [unless otherwise provided in these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Netherlands; Norway; Pew - delete] [nor should Inspectors require equipment or assistance beyond what is reasonable, taking into account the Contractor's Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan] [NORI, TOML, BMJ].] [PEW - insert brackets] [This notice shall include a detailed inspection plan, to ensure transparency and preparedness.] [African Group]

[2. Where the Compliance Committee or the Chief Inspector have reasonable grounds to consider the matter to be so urgent that reasonable notice cannot be given, the Compliance Committee or the Chief Inspector shall instruct an Inspector to conduct an [impromptu] [Netherlands; Norway] inspection [without prior notification] [Australia - delete] [, notwithstanding paragraph [bis, without prior notification to a Contractor,] [Netherlands; Norway - replace], and [shall cooperate with a Contractor to conduct the inspection as soon as practically possible] [shall cooperate with a Contractor to conduct the inspection and give notice to a Contractor as soon as practically possible] [China - replace]. [In such cases, the Contractor shall be immediately informed of the inspections agency and the scope to facilitate compliance and minimize disruption.] [African Group]

[China, Russia; Pew - delete para 2 entirely]

3. Inspectors may [, in accordance with these Regulations,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] inspect any relevant documents [or items] [PEW] necessary to monitor a Contractor's compliance under its [ongoing] [India] exploitation contract and the rRules, regulations and procedures of the Authority which include inter alia, all recorded data and samples and any ships or Installation used by the Contractor to carry out Exploitation [and Exploration] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] activities [and activities related to such exploitation activities in the Area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], including its log, equipment, records and facilities, as well as interview relevant personnel. [Inspector shall have the authority to take copies or samples as needed for further analysis.] [African Group]

4. The Contractor, [its subcontractors, agents and employees] [Australia, PEW - insert brackets] shall cooperate with Inspectors and give full assistance to Inspectors in the performance of their duties, and shall:

(a) Accept and facilitate the prompt and safe boarding and disembarkation of ships and Installations used to carry out Exploitation [and Exploration] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] activities and activities related to such activities in the Area by Inspectors;

(a) bis. Keep the Chief Inspector and sponsoring State or States notified of proposed ship schedules including support and supply vessels, and when

feasible, inform the Chief Inspector before any ship commences its voyage to a Contractor's Contract Area to facilitate the conveyance of Inspectors and representatives of Sponsoring States parties, where appropriate and to keep the Chief Inspector informed if there is a change to proposed ship schedules due to operational, logistical or unforeseen circumstances;

(a) ter. Within seven business days of the Chief Inspector informing the Contractor that the Inspector(s) would like to conduct an **announced** **Netherlands; Norway** inspection of a Contractor's ship or Installation, the Contractor shall inform the Chief Inspector of the next date a ship will commence its voyage to the Contractor's Contract Area.

(b) Cooperate with and assist in the inspection of any **[: (i)]** **Pew** ship or Installation or equipment **;** or **(ii)** other premises, offices, laboratories, facilities or sites **]** **Pew** used to carry out **]** **or for purposes related to,** **Pew** Exploitation **[and Exploration]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ]** activities **]** **and activities related to such activities in the Area conducted pursuant to this regulation]** **Pew - delete** and comply with the requests of an Inspector;

(b) bis. Provide reasonable facilities, financed by the Contractor, including, **[where appropriate,]** **[PEW - delete]** food and where feasible accommodation, to Inspectors;

(c) Provide access to all relevant areas, items and personnel on ships and Installations used to carry out Exploitation **[and Exploration]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ]** activities related to such exploitation activities in the Area at all reasonable times.

**[(c). Alt. Provide access at all reasonable times to all relevant areas, items and personnel engaged in activities relating to Exploitation activities in the Area, and to relevant areas, items and personnel on ships and installations engaged in Exploitation activities in the Area.]** **[United Kingdom]**

(d) Provide access to relevant monitoring and surveillance systems and equipment, books, documents, papers and records to determine compliance with terms and conditions of a contract and these Regulations;

(e) Answer fully and truthfully any **[relevant]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ]** questions put to them **]** **without prejudice to any other legal rights and obligations they possess]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ]** **]** **without prejudice to any other legal rights and obligations they possess or are subject to]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ];**

(f) **[To the extent possible and subject to the satisfaction of any conditions reasonably required by the Contractor (including regarding compatibility, liability, and training), ]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ]** **[A][a]cept** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ - lower case]** the deployment of remote real-time monitoring and surveillance equipment **[in a uniform manner and]** **[PEW - insert brackets]** as required by the Council **[or]****[Pew - delete]** the Compliance Committee **]** **or Chief Inspector]** **[PEW];**

(f)bis Facilitate the activities of Inspectors to observe the Contractor's monitoring operations **]** **without unduly impacting the Contractor's operations]** **[NORI, TOML, BMJ].**

**[(f)ter Not obstruct, intimidate or interfere with Inspectors in the performance of their duties, or representatives of sponsoring States, any other State Party, or other party concerned who accompany these Inspectors. Contractors shall also**

establish and communicate internal procedures to ensure that all personnel are aware of and comply with inspection requirements.] [African Group] [PEW]

## Regulation 96 quarter [IWG ICE]

### Request for inspection [in the event of [Serious] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Harm to the Marine Environment] [PEW – delete]

1. [In the event of [Serious] [Nauru] [an Incident that causes Serious] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] Harm to the Marine Environment [and][or] [Germany, PEW – replace] the livelihood of any coastal community [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – delete] harm to the marine environment, marine living resources and the human health of any coastal community [Bangladesh - replace], [the][Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] adjacent [Russia - delete] [Nauru - insert brackets] [potentially affected] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - insert] [A] [Russia] coastal [State or] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] States which ha[s][ve] [Russia] grounds for believing [such] [that] [Russia - replace] [Serious] [Russia; NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] [H][h]arm [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - capitalize] [to the Marine Environment in areas under its jurisdiction] [Russia] is caused by activities in the Area, shall notify the [Chief Inspector [and the relevant Contractor] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru] through the] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] Secretary-General in writing [through appropriate channels] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] of the grounds upon which such belief is based] [such assumption and fact is proven] [India - replace] and request an inspection. [Such information shall be promptly circulated among the Members of the Authority.] [Russia] [The notification shall include all relevant evidence, all documentation supporting the belief that the harm is caused by activities in the Area] [African Group]

[1. Alt. The Chief Inspector shall examine any information received or otherwise obtained that indicates potential for transboundary environmental harm, or other potential harm to the interests of a State, and determine in accordance with the Compliance Strategy what, if any, inspection action may be required by the Authority.] [Pew]

2. The [Secretary-General] [Chief Inspector] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], upon [the][such] [Nauru – replace] notification [of][by] [Nauru – replace] [the respective] [Russia] [a] [Russia, PEW – delete] [any] [PEW] Member State [on reasonable grounds that an inspection is expedient to prevent Contractor non-compliance or harm to the Marine Environment] [PEW], shall [examine immediately the grounds for an inspection request and shall] [Nauru] [notify the [Compliance Committee/Chief Inspector] who shall then] [PEW] [determine whether the request for inspection contains reasonable grounds for believing Serious Harm is being caused. If the Chief Inspector is satisfied that there are reasonable grounds for believing that Serious Harm is being caused, the Chief Inspector shall] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] promptly [request the Compliance Committee to] [Russia] initiate inspection, and invite representatives of [the] [Nauru] [adjacent][potentially affected] [Micronesia] coastal [States or] [Nauru] States [affected] [Russia] [and other Parties where appropriate] [PEW] to [participate in the inspection] [accompany the inspector] [Norway - replace], [no later than 24 hours after such notification was made by the [State or] [Nauru] States, to [facilitate] [Russia] assess[ment by the Council] [Russia] whether [any] [Nauru] [pollution] [Russia - delete] [the][or] [Nauru –

replace] [Serious] [Russia] [H]harm [NORI, TOML, BMJ - capitalize] is attributable to activities in the Area [PEW – delete].

[2.Alt. The Chief Inspector shall respond to the notification within 24 hours indicating whether the grounds for inspection are deemed reasonable and outlining the next steps for initiating inspection, including inviting all States to participate in the inspection] [African Group]

[2. Alt. Where inspection action is planned pursuant to paragraph (1), the Chief Inspector shall invite representatives of any State or States whose jurisdiction or interests have been identified with potential to be harmed to participate in the inspection.] [Pew]

#### Comments/remarks

##### General comments:

- Considering the replacement and redrafting of this provision, I have for the sake of clarity put the new draft regulation 96 (in its entirety) in a clean version.
- Important discussions have been carried out in the group in respect of identifying the most appropriate inspection mechanism, cf. article 162(2)(z) of the Convention. Several participants asked for a streamlined version of draft regulation 96, since it contained a great number of contradictions. Many participants suggested to continue the negotiations based on the proposed hybrid model (the “LTCCC”), since it seems to reflect a compromise between different views and had implemented many of the core elements identified by the working group. Consequently, I have updated draft regulation 96 and based it on the hybrid model. I have implemented the elements from the original draft regulation 96 that there seemed to be consensus around, but I am also aware that I have not been able to accommodate for all views. I invite for discussions and suggest focussing on how this basis can be used and if there are any concerns, concrete proposals should be put forward as to how the concerns can be accommodated for.
- In respect of the choice of the hybrid model, I think it is important to recall the roles assigned to the different organs in the Convention. I would like to highlight, that in the hybrid model, the inspectors will carry out the day-to-day work. The Chief Inspector will be in charge of the unit and the roster. The Compliance Committee will report, review and provide recommendations to the Council and this is in line with the functions assigned to the Commission in the Convention. The decision-making power remain and fully rest with the Council. So, I believe this hybrid model could work within the framework set out by the Convention. If we would like to consider moving this model in another direction, and e.g. establish a completely separate body, we would have to consider how to do this, since we need a solution on how it would be established, rules of procedure, membership etc.

Specific comments on draft regulation 96:

- In respect of the competencies required of the Chief Inspector, I have noted that the Chief Inspector should possess appropriate experience in compliance assurance, and health, safety and environment in marine mining or other related marine extractive industries. I suggest to regulate this further in the relevant Standard.
- In draft regulation 96, para 3, a participant has suggested to replace the Chief Inspector with a Standing Committee. Entailing that the Compliance Committee shall establish a Standing Committee, composed of the Chair of Commission and/or the Chair of the Compliance Committee and some individual members from the Compliance Committee. I invite for discussions of this proposal.

Specific comments on draft regulation 96 bis:

- In draft regulation 96 bis, para 1, one participant has suggested to let the Compliance Committee consist of fifteen members and that the regional groups shall designate two members from among Council members who shall serve for a period of two years, with the possibility of extension. Furthermore, that the remaining five members shall be designated by the Commission taking into account geographic representation. I have also received a proposal for the allowance of a number of individual professionals with the needed competencies to be included in the Compliance Committee. I invite for discussion of these proposals.

**Regulation 97 [IWG ICE]  
Inspectors: Appointment and supervision**

1. The Council, shall on the basis of the recommendations of the [Commission] [Compliance Committee] [Ireland - replace], determine the relevant qualifications and experience for Inspectors to be included in the Roster of Inspectors appropriate to the areas of duty of an Inspector under this Part.

1 bis. [States Parties may, subject to the requirements of this regulation, nominate [its nationals as] [China] Inspectors for consideration, [and] [China - delete] [[individual applications may be submitted directly for]] [Nauru, Japan, China, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [PEW - remove brackets] inclusion in the Roster of Inspectors] [States Parties may, subject to the requirements of this Regulation, nominate individuals for inclusion in the roster of inspectors] [United Kingdom - replace]. Nominees [[and applicants]] [Nauru, Japan, China, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [PEW - remove brackets] will be considered against the qualification and experience requirements. Equitable geographical representation and gender balance will also be considered, in line with the Convention principle. Subject to considerations of protection of personal data,

the roster of Inspectors shall be made publicly available on the Authority's website.

2. The [Commission] [Russia] [Compliance Committee][Russia – insert brackets] shall make recommendations, to the Council on the appointment, supervision and direction of Inspectors included in the Roster of Inspectors, and on an inspection programme and schedule for the Authority in accordance with [any] [Russia - delete] applicable Standards and taking into account [any] [Russia - delete] applicable Guidelines [and an agreed compliance strategy] [PEW]. [The Council shall, on the basis of the recommendations of the Compliance Committee, appoint Inspectors.] [Japan]

3. The inspection programme shall be [overseen]managed [adopted] [United Kingdom - replace] by the Council [and [managed] administrated] [, overseen] [United Kingdom - replace] by the Compliance Committee, [and implemented by the Chief Inspector] and the Inspectors [United Kingdom - delete].

4. The Inspectors shall be independent in the fulfilment of their tasks [in accordance with the code of conduct for Inspectors] [PEW] [and [shall comply with the Inspector Code of Conduct.] [Australia] [[be guided by transparency, accountability and non-discrimination]] [Australia – delete]] [PEW – delete]

[5. The Authority will cooperate with the Sponsoring State or State [s][PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ] to ensure that inspections performed by Inspectors are aligned with [inspection and] [PEW] enforcement at the national level. Inspectors shall report to the [Compliance Committee][ Chief Inspector] [PEW - replace] in writing regarding any difficulties relating to the enforcement of the measures.] [The Chief Inspector shall transmit the report to the Compliance Committee with recommendations to address the difficulties identified.] [PEW] [China; Pew – delete para 5 entirely]

6. Inspectors may be required to undertake relevant training programmes, [including but not limited to project and ship [instructions][inductions] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], health and safety, as well as undergo fit for work medical evaluations], at the request of the Council, based on the recommendations of the Compliance Committee [and as required by the respective Contractor where required to comply with its legal and regulatory obligations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]. The Secretariat shall facilitate the requisite trainings and evaluations.

7. The Compliance Committee shall keep the Roster of Inspectors under review and updated. The Council may[, for reasonable cause,] [Australia – delete] [following non-compliance with the Inspector Code of Conduct,] [Australia] remove an Inspector from the Roster of Inspectors, on the basis of the recommendations of the Compliance Committee.

[7bis. The [Secretariat] shall establish a recruitment programme for the purposes of ensuring equitable geographical representation and gender balance of inspectors, providing the necessary training to recruits to meet qualifications pursuant to paragraph 1.] [PEW]

**Comments/remarks**

- In respect of 97, para 1 (bis) it should be considered whether only state parties may nominate inspectors or whether a person can apply independently and irrespective of a state party



nomination. Currently, the provision is unclear in this respect. I invite for discussions of this matter.

- The reference to transparency and accountability in para 4 has been moved from para 96 to this draft regulation. A participant also proposed to reference non-discrimination, which I have also inserted. I have refrained from referencing the precautionary approach, as I believe that the inspectors must determine objectively that a contractor is in compliance with the terms of the contract. This is also in line with several proposals for the suggested deletion.

### Regulation 97 bis [IWG ICE]

#### Inspector's functions and [liabilities][responsibilities] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ replace -]

1. [In conducting the inspections, the] Inspectors shall:

(a) Carry out inspections in accordance with internationally accepted principles of good seamanship so as to avoid risks to the safety of life at sea, and [where appropriate] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BBJ – delete] follow [reasonable] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] instructions and directions pertaining to the safety of life at sea given to them by the Contractor and the master of the ship vessel; ~~with due regard to the observance of good seamanship and~~

(b) ~~Avoid Refrain from any undue~~ [as much / far as possible] [Netherlands / United Kingdom] interference with the safe and normal operations of the Contractor and of vesselships and Installations ~~unless the Inspector has reasonable grounds for believing that the Contractor is operating in breach of its obligations under an exploitation contract.~~

(b) bis. Comply ~~with to the~~ Authority's code of conduct for inspectors and inspections established pursuant to draft regulations 96 ~~(3+)-bis~~.

(d) Indicate in their reports all vesselships, installations, equipment, facilities, data and samples monitored or otherwise examined, all documents reviewed or copied, all questions posed to the Contractor or any personnel.

2. The [Compliance Committee/ Chief Inspector] [PEW], upon the notification of any Member State on reasonable grounds that an inspection is expedient to prevent Contractor non-compliance or [Serious] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [h][H]arm [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to the Marine Environment, shall promptly initiate inspection.] [Nauru – delete] [PEW – insert brackets]

3. [An Inspector shall be bound by strict confidentiality provisions and must have no conflicts of interest in respect of all duties undertaken and shall conduct his or her duties in accordance with the Authority's code of conduct for Inspectors and inspections.] [PEW – delete] [Inspectors shall have no financial interest in any activity relating to exploration and Exploitation in the Area. They shall not disclose, even after the termination of their functions, any industrial secret, proprietary data or other confidential information coming to their knowledge by reason of their duties under these Regulations.] [PEW]

#### Comments/remarks

- After Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session, it has been suggested through a joint proposal of Netherlands and Norway to move the content of the present Draft Regulation to the Code of Conduct referred to in DR97(4).

#### Comments/remarks

- I have suggested to insert a new section that specifically deals with the inspector's functions and liabilities as, to my understanding, these elements do not strictly fit into either draft regulations 96, 97 or 98.
- Para 2 is a consolidation of paras 7 and 8 of the original draft regulation 96.
- Para 3 stems from draft regulation 98 and is to be considered a replacement. Several participants supported to have a strict liability clause but suggested that it was moved from regulation 98 as that draft regulation relates to the inspector's powers.

### Regulation 98 [IWG ICE] Inspectors' powers

1. An Inspector may, for the purposes of monitoring or enforcing compliance with the ~~Rules, regulations and procedures~~ [Rules] ~~Pew – replace and reinsert the relevant definition in the Schedule~~ of the Authority and the terms of the ~~exploitation~~ [PEW – capitalize] contract:

(a) Question any ~~relevant~~ [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] person ~~who is deemed relevant by the Inspector~~ [Netherlands; Norway] engaged by the Contractor in the conduct of Exploitation ~~and Exploration~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] activities on any matter ~~to which~~ [regulated by] [Russia] the Rules of the Authority ~~relate~~ [Russia – delete];

~~(a) bis Conduct an announced or unannounced, remote, virtual or onsite visit to the ship and installations used by the Contractor;~~ [Netherlands; Norway]

(b) ~~Subject to any legal requirement, obligation or duty that would prevent disclosure~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~(i)~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Require any person who has control over, or custody of, any ~~relevant~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] document, whether in electronic form or in hard copy, including a plan, book or record, to produce ~~a copy of~~ [Russia] that document to the Inspector ~~immediately~~ [promptly] [Russia – replace] or at any other ~~reasonable~~ [United Kingdom] time and place ~~that~~ [as required by] [Russia] the Inspector ~~requires~~ [in writing] [Russia];

~~(b) bis~~ ~~(ii)~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] Inspect any ~~relevant~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] documents or items which are necessary to monitor the Contractor's compliance, all other recorded data and samples and any ~~vessel ship~~ or Installation used ~~to carry out Exploitation activities and activities related to such exploitation activities in the Area~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] ~~in connection with activities in the Area~~

including its log, equipment, records and facilities and question relevant personnel.

(c) ~~Request~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] ~~Require~~ from any person referred to in subparagraph (b) above ~~the~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~reason for~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] ~~an explanation of~~ any entry or non-entry in any ~~relevant, NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ [Nauru] document over which that person has custody or control;

(d) Examine any document produced under subparagraph (b) and make a copy of it or take an extract from it;

(e) Inspect ~~or test~~ ~~or request testing of,~~ [PEW] any machinery or equipment under the supervision of the Contractor or its agents or employees that, in the Inspector's opinion, is being or is intended to be used for the purposes of the Exploitation activities;

(f) ~~After due notification to the Authority giving reasons for the same~~ [PEW – delete], ~~seize~~ [acquire copies of] [China – replace] [relevant] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] document~~s~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], ~~or label~~ [China] article~~s~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], substance or any part or sample of such for ~~further~~ [China] examination or analysis that the Inspector may reasonably require;

[PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets enclosing sub para f] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – suggests moving para (f) so that it becomes sub-para 3(b)(iii)]

(g) ~~Remove~~ [Label] [China – replace] representative samples or ~~acquire~~ [China] copies of assays of such samples from any ~~vessel ship~~ or equipment used for or in connection with the Exploitation ~~and Exploitation~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] activities that the Inspector may reasonably require; [PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

(h) Require the Contractor to carry out such procedures in respect of any equipment used for or in connection with the Exploitation activities as may be deemed ~~reasonably~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] necessary by the Inspector; and,

(h).bis. ~~Issue a~~ A "do not disturb notice", in writing, in order to allow the further inspection, examination or measurement of, or the conducting of tests concerning, any ~~vessel ship~~, installation, equipment or facilities used ~~to carry out Exploitation activities and activities related to such exploitation~~ ~~in connection with~~ activities in the Area. [PEW – remove brackets]

[China, Russia – delete h.bis. entirely]

(i) ~~Upon written authorization from the Council~~ [Russia – delete], ~~an Inspector may~~ [Russia – delete] [Russia – remove brackets] perform~~s~~ [Russia] any other prescribed function of the Authority as its representative ~~in accordance with written authorization of the Council~~ [Russia].

~~3. Before an Inspector may seize any document under paragraph 1(f) above, the Contractor may copy it.~~ [Russia – delete] [PEW – remove brackets]

[China – delete para 3 entirely]

~~4. When an Inspector seizes or removes any item under this regulation, the Inspector shall issue a receipt for that item to the Contractor.~~ [PEW – remove brackets]

[China – delete para 4 entirely]

5. An Inspector shall document any site visit or inspection activity and ~~[may]~~ [shall] use any ~~[reasonable]~~ means to do so, including video, audio, photograph or other form of recording.

**Comments/remarks**

- Paras 1(f) and (g) and paras 3 and 4 of draft regulation 98 remains in brackets as there are divergent views as to whether the inspectors subject to the Convention has the power to seize documents.
- Para 1(h). bis is retained in brackets as some participants are of the view that the regulation should be deleted. I invite for discussions of that.

**Regulation 99 [IWG ICE]**

**Inspectors' power to issue instructions**

1.If, as a result of an inspection, an Inspector has reasonable grounds to determine ~~[or anticipates]~~ that any occurrence, practice or condition endangers or may endanger the health or safety of any person or poses a threat of ~~[Serious]~~ [Serious] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~H[h][H]~~arm [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] to the Marine Environment ~~[or to, human remains [and objects and sites of an archaeological or historical nature] [and/or Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH]]~~ [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ], ~~[[including Underwater Cultural Heritage]]~~[Nauru, Russia – delete] [or a Contractor is otherwise in breach of the terms of its contract with the Authority] ~~[[China – delete]~~ [Nauru, Russia, PEW – remove brackets] the Inspector shall give [an] [a written] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [written] [Russia] instruction[s] [Russia] of a temporary nature considered reasonably necessary to remedy the situation, in accordance with any applicable ~~[decisions of the Council or]~~ [Russia] Standards, including:

(a) A ~~[[written]]~~ [PEW – delete] instruction requiring a Contractor to undertake specific tests or monitoring and to furnish the Chief Inspector with the results or report of such tests or monitoring within a set period;

(b) A ~~[[written]]~~ [PEW – delete] instruction placing a requirement to undertake a specified activity in a specified way, and within a specified period or at specified times or in specified circumstances;

(c) A ~~[[written]]~~ [PEW – delete] instruction that the Contractor must take the steps set out in the instruction, within the specified period, to rectify the occurrence, practice or condition; and

~~[[d) A [[written]] [PEW – delete] instruction requiring a suspension in some or all [exploitation] activities for a specific period. [upon written authorization from the Council, as its representative].]]~~ [China – delete]

~~[[e) A [written] instruction prohibiting the Contractor from continuing or undertaking activities [for a specified period].]]~~

1.bis The instruction will have immediate effect.

2. An instruction ~~[may be issued either orally or in writing]~~ [PEW] under paragraph 1 above ~~[which]~~ [PEW] must be given ~~[in writing]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to the person designated by the Contractor or, in his or her absence, the most senior employee available aboard the ~~vessel~~ ship or Installation to whom the instruction can be issued. ~~[An Inspector may issue an instruction orally under paragraph 1 in urgent situations where the issue of a written instruction is impracticable. Where an instruction is issued orally, the Inspector must confirm it in writing and give it to the designated person at the earliest opportunity.]~~ [Nauru] ~~[If the instruction is issued orally, the Inspector must confirm it in writing and give it to the person concerned at the earliest opportunity]~~ [PEW]

2. bis. ~~[[The Inspector shall notify the Chief Inspector immediately when an instruction has been issued under paragraph 1]]~~ [China – delete] [PEW, Russia – remove brackets]. The ~~[Chief]~~ [China – delete] Inspector shall ~~[[then]]~~ [China – delete] ~~[Russia – remove brackets]~~ report immediately ~~[and provide a copy of the instruction]~~ [Russia – remove brackets] to the Compliance Committee, the Secretary-General and through the Secretary-General to the Contractor's ~~[s][S]~~ponsoring ~~[Russia – capitalize]~~ State or States and, if applicable to the relevant ~~[[adjacent]]~~ [Russia – delete] coastal State or States ~~[and flag State]~~ [Russia], that an instruction has been issued under paragraph 1.

~~2. ter. An instruction shall be for a specified period not exceeding seven days. The Chief Inspector may extend such period by an additional seven days and shall report any such extension to the Compliance Committee.~~

2. ter. An instruction shall specify the information to be provided to the Inspector by the Contractor to demonstrate the steps being taken to implement the instruction within the specified period.

2. ~~[quarter]~~ [PEW] sexes. The Compliance Committee may:

\_\_ (a) Request the ~~[Chief]~~ [Chief] [Nauru, PEW] Inspector to provide further information as to the facts and circumstances giving rise to the issue of an instruction under paragraph 1 for its consideration; or

\_\_ (b) ~~[reasonably]~~ [Russia] revise or set aside an instruction ~~[issued]~~ [Nauru] under paragraph 1 ~~[above]~~ [Nauru] as soon as practicable; or

~~[(b) bis Exercise the powers conferred upon it under paragraph 1 of regulation 103, including where a Contractor has failed to comply with a written instruction; or]~~ [Nauru]

\_\_ ~~[(c) Invite the Council's attention to any cases of non-compliance with the terms of a contract.]~~ [Russia – delete c entirely]

~~[The Council shall be fully informed on the instructions issued by the inspectors, any requests of information and clarifications provided by the Compliance Committee, Inspectors and may request further information as to the facts and circumstances giving rise to the issue of an instruction under paragraph 1 for its consideration]~~ [Russia]

3. An instruction shall be for a specified period not exceeding seven days. ~~[Where still necessary to remedy the situation identified in paragraph 1,]~~ NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~[T][t]he~~ NORI, TOML, BMJ] Chief Inspector may extend such period ~~[by an additional seven days]~~ [Nauru, Russia – remove brackets] ~~[PEW – delete]~~ [/] ~~[Russia – delete]~~ ~~[[until such time the Contractor has complied with the instruction and fulfilled all requirements]]~~ [Nauru, Russia – delete], and shall report any such extension to the Compliance Committee.

[3.bis An instruction is effective from the time fixed by the Inspector and remains in force unless set aside by the Compliance Committee or until [it can be independently verified that] [PEW] the Inspector's instructions have been complied with within the specified period or the instruction lapses at the end of the specified period.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 3bis entirely]

3.ter Within three days of the expiry of the specified period or any extension thereto under paragraph 3, the Chief-Inspector shall assess whether the [issue giving rise to the instruction has been satisfactorily resolved] [PEW] [instruction has been complied with by the Contractor] [PEW – delete] and shall report immediately to the Compliance Committee. [Subject to paragraph 3-bis, where a Contractor has failed to comply with a written instruction or the circumstances giving rise to the instruction remain unresolved, the Compliance Committee may thereafter exercise the powers conferred upon it under regulation 103.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

3.quarter In the case of a written instruction issued under paragraph 1(d), where the circumstances giving rise to a suspension [in some or all [e][E]xploitation [PEW – capitalize] activities] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] are not resolved or are unlikely to be resolved, the Compliance Committee shall [ ] [Nauru – delete bracket] following consultation with the [Contract] [Contractor] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace], notify [the Council] [Russia – insert brackets] [the Commission and the Council] [Russia] immediately together with any recommendation as to whether such suspension should continue. [Following consultations with the Contractor,] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [t†][T]he [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – capitalize] Council shall decide [if][ whether] [Russia- replace] the suspension should continue, including[, where relevant,] [Russia] the [placing of] [Russia – delete] conditions on any recommencement of [exploitation] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] activities, taking into account any recommendations of the [[Commission]] [Nauru – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Compliance] [Nauru] [ or the Compliance] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [Commission and] [Russia] [Committee] [Nauru – remove brackets].

4. Nothing in this regulation shall preclude the Council from issuing emergency orders pursuant to article 162, paragraph 2(w) of the Convention.

#### Comments/remarks

- Several participants supported the deletion of “serious” in para 1. Some participants suggested to retain the reference to written, and I have thus kept this reference in brackets.
- In para 1, some participants suggested to delete the reference to Underwater Cultural Heritage as it is not related to the inspection mechanism of the Authority, I invite for discussion on this.
- Several participants pointed out that there was a need for streamlining para 3 and eliminated the duplications. I have tried to do so and have also implemented 2.ter in the streamlined version of para 3. Considering the replacement and deletions, I have for the sake of clarity put the new para 3 in a clean version. I invite for discussions of this new para 3

and in particular whether the extension should be for another 7 days or open as it is currently drafted.

- I understood from the meeting in July that there was consensus to continue the negotiations based on the alternative version of para 3. In that regard, I have attempted to streamline the para, in particular in relation to 3.alt.bis and 3.alt.quater where there was a degree of overlap.

## Version included in the Consolidated Text

### Regulation 99 [IWG ICE]

#### Inspectors' power to issue instructions

[1. If, as a result of an inspection, an Inspector has reasonable grounds to determine that any occurrence, practice or condition endangers or may endanger the health or safety of any person or poses a threat of **[[Serious] Harm] [harmful effects] [ACOPS; Pew - replace]** to the Marine Environment [or to human remains and objects and sites of an archaeological or historical nature], the Inspector shall give a written instruction, which will have immediate effect, of a temporary nature considered reasonably necessary to remedy the situation, in accordance with any applicable Standards, including:

(a) A [written] instruction requiring a Contractor to undertake specific tests or monitoring and to furnish the Chief Inspector with the results or report of such tests or monitoring within a set period;

(b) A [written] instruction placing a requirement to undertake a specified activity in a specified way, and within a specified period or at specified times or in specified circumstances; and

(c) A [written] instruction that the Contractor must take the steps set out in the instruction, within the specified period, to rectify the occurrence, practice or condition **[including, if necessary, a temporary suspension of certain activities within the specified period or at specified times or in specified circumstances] [Indonesia]**.

2. An instruction under paragraph 1 above must be given [in writing] to the person designated by the Contractor or, in his or her absence, the most senior employee available aboard the ship or Installation to whom the instruction can be issued. An Inspector may issue an instruction orally under paragraph 1 in urgent situations where the issue of a written instruction is impracticable. Where an instruction is issued orally, the Inspector must confirm it in writing and give it to the designated person at the earliest opportunity.

2. bis The Inspector shall report immediately and provide a copy of the instruction to the Compliance Committee, the Secretary-General and through the Secretary-General to the Contractor's Sponsoring State or States and, if applicable to the relevant [adjacent] coastal State or States and flag State, that an instruction has been issued under paragraph 1 above.

2. ter **[An instruction] [Unless otherwise stated, an instruction issued pursuant to this regulation shall have immediate effect and] [Pew - replace]** shall specify the information to be provided to the Inspector by the Contractor to demonstrate the steps being taken to implement the instruction within the specified period.

3. An instruction issued shall be for a specified period not exceeding 7 Days. Where still necessary to remedy the situation identified in paragraph 1, the Chief Inspector may extend such period by an additional 7 Days and shall report any such extension to the Compliance Committee.

3.bis Within 3 Days of the expiry of the specified period or any extension thereto under paragraph 3, the Chief-Inspector shall assess whether the issue given rise to the instruction has been satisfactorily resolved and shall report immediately to the Compliance Committee.

3. ter The Compliance Committee may:

(a) Request the [Chief] Inspector to provide further information as to the facts and circumstances giving rise to the issue of an instruction under paragraph 1 for its consideration;

(b) ~~where identifying a material flaw in substance or procedure,~~ ~~Pew~~ revise or set aside an instruction issued under paragraph 1 above as soon as practicable ~~stating the reasons~~ ~~Pew~~;

(b) bis Exercise the powers conferred upon it under paragraph 1 of Regulation 103, including where a Contractor has failed to comply with a written instruction; or

(c) Invite the Council's attention to any cases of non-compliance with the terms of a contract.

3. quat In the case of a written instruction issued under subparagraph 1(d), where the circumstances giving rise to a suspension are not resolved or are unlikely to be resolved, the Compliance Committee shall following consultation with the Contractor, notify the Council immediately together with any recommendation as to whether such suspension should continue. The Council shall decide if the suspension should continue, including the placing of conditions on any recommencement of Exploitation activities, taking into account any recommendations of the Compliance Committee.

4. Nothing in this Regulation shall preclude the Council from issuing emergency orders pursuant to Article 162, subparagraph 2 (w) of the Convention.]

#### **Comment**

Several proposals were received to refine the Regulation, and the text thus contained significant mark-up. For the sake of clarity, the Regulation has been placed in a clean version.

### **Regulation 100 [IWG ICE]**

#### **Inspection Reports**

1. ~~No later than~~ ~~[During]~~ ~~[Russia - replace]~~ thirty days after the end of an inspection] ~~[No later than 30 days after the end of a routine inspection and 7 days after the end of an urgent inspection]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~, the Inspector shall prepare ~~[and deliver]~~ ~~[China - delete]~~ a report ~~[to the Chief Inspector]~~ ~~[China - delete]~~ in accordance with the template and other requirements ~~[set out in]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~[of]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ the ~~[relevant]~~ ~~[applicable]~~ ~~[Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ Standard[s] ~~[Nauru]~~



~~]~~ and in accordance with ~~[relevant]~~ ~~[applicable]~~ ~~[Russia - replace]~~ Guideline[s]~~[Russia]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[setting out the findings and any recommendations for improvements]~~ ~~[setting out, finding and seeking clarification and providing recommendation for improvements]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~ in performance, procedures or practices by a Contractor~~[, and also recommendations for possible actions to be taken by the Authority]~~ ~~[PEW]~~. The ~~[Chief]~~ ~~[China - delete]~~ Inspector shall send the report to the Compliance Committee ~~[the Council]~~ ~~[Indonesia]~~ and the Secretary General, ~~[who shall send a copy of the report to the Contractor and its sponsoring State or States]~~ ~~[NORI, Russia, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets]~~ ~~[, as well as the [relevant] adjacent coastal State or States or flag State referred to in paragraph 2bis of Regulation 99]~~ ~~[Micronesia]~~. ~~[The Compliance Committee shall ask the Secretary General to send a copy of the report to any relevant coastal State or flag State, the Contractor and sponsoring State or States and, if appropriate, the relevant adjacent coastal State or States and the flag State and to publish a copy of the report in the Seabed Mining Register, excluding confidential information.]~~

1 bis. The Contractor and the sponsoring State or States ~~[, as well as the [relevant] adjacent coastal State or States or flag State referred to in paragraph 2bis of Regulation 99]~~ ~~[Micronesia]~~ may within thirty days of the date of receipt of the Inspector's report, provide to the Secretary-General comments on the findings and ~~[seek clarifications on provided]~~ ~~[India]~~ recommendations, ~~[including details of any action taken or to be taken in accordance with the findings and recommendations of the Inspector's report.]~~ The Secretary-General shall transmit ~~[any]~~ ~~[such]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~ comments to the Compliance Committee ~~[, which shall be further reported to the Council]~~ ~~[Indonesia]~~.

~~[1 ter The sponsoring State or States shall within a reasonable period, provide to the Secretary-General, who shall transmit to the Compliance Committee, details of any regulatory or other action taken or to be taken as a result of the Inspectors' findings or recommendations.] [PEW]~~

2. The ~~[[]]~~ ~~[Russia - insert bracket]~~ Compliance Committee shall ~~[transmit inspector's report to the Council [subject to the confidentiality requirements] and shall]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ pursuant to regulation [96 bis paragraph 6], ~~[in their its annual report]~~ ~~[from time to time]~~ ~~[India - replace]~~ to the Council ~~[under regulation 96(1)(k)-ter]~~ include details on the findings and recommendations ~~[of the Compliance Committee]~~ ~~[Russia]~~ following the inspections conducted in the prior Calendar Year and ~~[shall]~~ ~~[PEW - delete]~~ make any recommendations to the Council on any ~~[enforcement]~~ ~~[PEW - delete]~~ action to be taken by the Council under these regulations and an exploitation contract. ~~[The Council may request the Legal and Technical Commission to review the findings and recommendations of inspection reports and provide recommendations to the Council on regulatory improvements,]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ ~~[T][t]aking [PEW - lowercase]~~ account of any regulatory action taken by the sponsoring State or States or corrective actions taken by a contractor to address the findings or recommendations. ~~The Council may request the Legal and Technical Commission to review the findings and recommendations of inspection reports and provide recommendations to the Council on regulatory improvements.~~

3. The ~~[Compliance Committee]~~ ~~[ Chief Inspector]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ shall report to the ~~[Compliance Committee and the]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ Secretary-General ~~[on]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ any acts of violence, intimidation, or abuse against or the ~~[wilful]~~~~[willful]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ obstruction or harassment by any person of an Inspector, or a representative of

a sponsoring State, any other State Party, or other party concerned who accompanies the Inspector, [as identified in regulation 96] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], in the course of their duty[, or the failure by a Contractor to comply with paragraph 4 of regulation 96ter] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]. [The failure by a Contractor to comply with regulations 96 or 96 ter shall also be reported [by the inspectors in their report to the Compliance Committee and] [PEW] to the Secretary-General. Appropriate measures shall be taken in accordance with regulations 99 and 103 respectively.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

3 bis. The Secretary-General shall report [subject to regulation 100(3)] [Nauru – delete] [any] [Nauru] such acts [or failure to comply with regulation 96ter] [Nauru] immediately to the sponsoring State or States and the flag State of any vessel~~ship~~ or Installation concerned, [and to] [Nauru] [and] [PEW] the [national State] [State of nationality] [United Kingdom - replace] of the Inspector for consideration of the institution of proceedings under national law. [Appropriate measures may also be taken by the Compliance Committee in accordance with regulation 103.] [Nauru]

#### [Regulation 100bis: [IWG ICE]

##### Contractor compliance report

The ~~Compliance Committee~~Secretary-General shall prepare an annual compliance report for each Contractor, which shall be made available in draft form [within thirty Days][Australia – delete] for comment to the Contractor and the Sponsoring State or States, [before] [thirty days prior to] [Australia – replace] being [submitted] [Australia] reported to the Council and published in the Seabed Mining Register. ~~The Council shall invite the attention of the Assembly to cases of non-compliance in accordance with Article 162(2)(a) of the Convention.~~

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 100bis entirely]

##### Comments/remarks

- The last sentence has been deleted since it overlaps with draft regulation 103, para 7. bis.

#### Regulation 101 [IWG ICE]

##### Complaints relating to Inspections

[1. A Contractor who considers that an Inspector has acted unreasonably or outside of the scope of their powers under this Part may complain in writing to the Secretary-General, who will transmit the complaint promptly to the Compliance Committee who shall consider the complaint as soon as practicable.]

[PEW – delete para 1 entirely]

1 bis. A person aggrieved by an action of an inspector [or any organ or official of the Authority] [Pew] under this Part may complain in writing to the [Compliance Committee] [Secretary-General] [Pew - replace], who shall report to the [Commission] [and the Chief Inspector] [India] [Compliance Committee, or where the Compliance Committee is implicated in the complaint to the

Ombudsperson,] [Pew - replace] to consider the complaint as soon as practicable.

[1bis. The Secretary-General shall acknowledge in writing, within 7 days, receipt of every complaint submitted under this regulation, specifying the date of receipt.] [France]

2. The Compliance Committee [in consultation with the Chief Inspector] [India] [may] [shall] [United Kingdom; Pew - replace] take such reasonable action as is necessary in response to the complaint, in accordance with applicable Sstandards and the Authority's Code of Conduct.

3. The Compliance Committee shall issue [submit] a report to the Council describing the complaint and the action taken in response to such a complaint. [The Council shall review the report and, if required, decide for additional action.] [India]

[4. The Secretary-General shall provide, as soon as possible, information to the complainant on the follow-up given to the complaint.]

5. Disputes concerning the handling of complaints shall be settled in accordance with regulation 106.] [France]

#### [Regulation 101bis]

##### ~~Whistle-blowing procedures~~

~~1. The [Compliance Committee] shall develop and implement:~~

~~— a. — whistle blowing policy for the staff of the Authority, the Inspectorate, the Enterprise, and personnel of Contractors, and~~

~~— b. a public complaints procedure to facilitate reporting to the Authority by any person of any concerns about the activities of a Contractor, or the Authority.~~

~~2. The whistle blowing and complaints procedures under this Regulation must:~~

~~— a. be publicly advertised,~~

~~— b. be easy to access and navigate,~~

~~— c. enable anonymous reporting,~~

~~— d. trigger investigations of reports by independent persons, and~~

~~— e. be proactively communicated by the Secretary General to Contractors and their staff, and other Stakeholders.~~

~~3. A Contractor, [its subcontractors and their agents] shall have in operation whistle blowing and complaints procedures, which must be publicly advertised, and which should include details of the Authority's equivalent procedures to enable direct reporting to the Authority by a complainant where preferable.]~~

#### [Regulation 101bis.1]

##### Whistle-blowing procedures

1. The [Assembly, in collaboration with the] Council shall develop and implement: a. whistle-blowing policy for the staff of the Authority, the Inspectorate, the Enterprise, and personnel of Contractors, and b. a public

complaints procedure to facilitate reporting to the Authority by any person of any concerns about the activities of a Contractor, or the Authority.

2. The whistle-blowing and complaints procedures under this Regulation must:

a. be publicly advertised,

b. be easy to access and navigate,

c. enable anonymous reporting,

d. trigger investigations of reports by independent persons, and

e. be proactively communicated by the Secretary-General to Contractors and their staff, and other Stakeholders.

3. A Contractor, shall have in operation whistle-blowing and complaints procedures relating its activities as well as those of its subcontractors and agents, which must be publicly advertised, and which should include details of the Authority's equivalent procedures to enable direct reporting to the Authority by a complainant where preferable.]

**[Germany suggests reinstating the regulation with the noted adjustments]**

**[Regulation 101bis.2]**

**Whistle-blowing procedures**

1. The Compliance Committee shall develop and implement:

a. whistle-blowing policy for the staff of the Authority, the Inspectorate, and the Enterprise, and

b. a public complaints procedure to facilitate reporting to the Authority by any person of any concerns about the activities of a Contractor, or the Authority.

2. The whistle-blowing and complaints procedures under this Regulation must:

a. be publicly advertised,

b. be easy to access and navigate,

c. enable anonymous reporting,

d. trigger investigations of reports by independent persons, and

e. be proactively communicated by the Secretary-General to Contractors and their staff, and other Stakeholders.

3. A Contractor shall have in operation whistle-blowing and complaints procedures, which must be publicly advertised, and which should include details of the Authority's equivalent procedures to enable direct reporting to the Authority by a complainant where preferable.

**[NORI, TOML, BMJ]**

**[Regulation 101bis Alt.]**

**Whistle blowing procedures**

Any complaints received from whistleblowers shall be dealt with under the mechanisms and procedures established by the Authority for this purpose. [Germany]

#### Comments/remarks

- I have suggested to delete the whistle blowing procedures from this part of the draft regulations, as I understand that most participants agreed that this would not be an appropriate placement. Also, as far as I understand, the Council can only require contractors to have a whistle blowing policy, rather than specifying what that policy should contain.

## Section 2 Monitoring

### Regulation 102 [IWG ICE] [now Regulation 102bis] ~~Ship~~vessel notification, electronic monitoring and data reporting

2. All installations, ~~vessel~~ships and mining collectors involved in exploitation activities under the Exploitation contract shall be fitted with:

(a) an electronic monitoring system which shall record, where technically feasible in real time, inter alia, the date, time and position of all [mining] [c][E]xploitation [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ (lower case) – replace] activities, and environmental data, [where applicable] [Russia] [[including Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [Nauru, Russia, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]; and

[(b) The electronic monitoring system shall also encompass the monitoring of the environment, implementing the obligations under Regulation [46ter], allowing for adaptive management during the mining operation] [PEW – delete].

[Russia – delete para b entirely]

[b] [(c)] [Russia] a satellite tracking system to enable identification of each ~~ship~~vessel and determination of its position, navigation status, course and speed.

[2bis] [Russia] The detail and frequency of reporting shall be in accordance with the Standards [and taking into account the Guidelines] [Russia – delete].

2 [bis][ter][Russia – replace]. The Contractor shall use the best-available environmental techniques[, as defined by the Council,] [Russia] [and ensure sufficient information] [DOSI] to monitor in real-time, [where practicable] [Russia – remove brackets] and in the actual environment the mining impact [including the removal of mineral resources, plume dispersal, chemical emissions, introduction of pollutants including light and sound] [PEW].~~5 including the removal of mineral resources, plume dispersal, chemical emissions, introduction of pollutants including light and sound,~~

[2quat][Russia] [The electronic monitoring system shall be in accordance with the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan.

~~[2 ter. The electronic monitoring system [should][shall] also encompass the monitoring of mining impacts and be in accordance with the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan, as well as include a survey of the seabed to~~

~~identify Underwater Cultural Heritage implementing the obligations under Regulation 46, [allowing for adaptive management during the mining operation].~~

3. The Compliance Committee shall [notify the [Contractor and the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets], sponsoring State or States and shall] [Nauru – delete] issue a compliance notice under regulation 103 [to a Contractor] [Nauru], where there is reasonable evidence to suggest based on the data transmitted to the Authority that unapproved [or unreported] [PEW] [mining] [[c][E]xploitation] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ (lower case)] activities [or Environmental Effects] [PEW] have occurred or are occurring.

3 bis.—The Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan shall include:

~~—(a) a description of the monitoring technology and system to be implemented, including the types of data to be collected and monitored, and frequency of monitoring and data that can be collected and monitored in real time;~~

~~—(b) a description of how the monitoring data will be transmitted during operations, how the data will be labelled and monitored by qualified personnel, and how the data will be stored;~~

~~—(c) the qualifications and proposed location of the personnel monitoring the data; and~~

~~—(d) a description of the procedures for providing the Authority and the sponsoring State or States access to or receipt of the monitoring data for the purposes of monitoring compliance with the terms of an exploitation contract and collection of data.~~

4.—A Contractor shall permit the Inspectors having access to any monitoring or surveillance systems and equipment.

5. All data received and transmitted to the Authority under this regulation shall be transmitted to the sponsoring State or States [and non-confidential data be made publicly available in real time on the Authority's website.] [PEW] [~~and non-confidential data be made publicly available in real time on the Authority's website].~~

~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete section 2 entirely]~~

## **Text used during Part I of the 29th Session**

### **Regulation 102 bis [IWG ICE]**

#### **Ship notification, electronic monitoring and data reporting**

1. All Installations, ships and mining collectors engaged in Exploitation activities under the Exploitation Contract shall be fitted with an electronic monitoring [and tracking] [Germany] system, which shall record [continuously] [Germany], where technically feasible in real time, inter alia, the date, time and position of all Exploitation activities, and environmental data. [The electronic monitoring system shall also be capable of detecting and recording any unauthorized activities.] [African Group] The details and [minimum technical requirements, including] [Germany] frequency of reporting shall be in accordance with the Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines.

2. The Installations, ships and mining collectors shall be fitted with a satellite tracking system to enable identification of each ship and determination of its

position, navigation status, course and speed [redacted], and such system shall be operational for the full duration of Exploitation activities.] [Ireland]. [This system shall also include Redundancy Measures to ensure continuous tracking in case of primary system failure.] [African Group] The detail and frequency of reporting shall be in accordance with the Standards and taking into consideration Guidelines.

3. The Compliance Committee shall issue a compliance notice under Regulation 103 to a Contractor, where there is reasonable evidence to suggest based on the data transmitted to the Authority that unapproved [redacted] or unreported [Germany] Exploitation activities have occurred or are occurring. [The Contractor shall be required to provide a detailed explanation and corrective action plan within [X Days]] [African Group] [Pew – delete para 3 entirely]

4. All data received and transmitted to the Authority under this Regulation shall be transmitted to the Sponsoring State or States.

**Comments/remarks**

- I have attempted to consolidate paras 2 bis and 2 ter.
- I suggest deleting para 3. bis since this will be covered by Annex VII (EMMP).
- Para 4 is already covered in draft regulation 96 ter, para 5(d) and thus deleted.
- Several participants have suggested to delete the last sentence from para 5.

**Section 3  
Enforcement and penalties**

**Regulation 103 [IWG ICE]**

**[Non-]Compliance [India] notice, suspension, and termination of exploitation contract**

1. At any time, if [redacted] it appears to [redacted] [Indonesia - delete] the Compliance Committee based on reasonable grounds, [redacted] including [redacted] a report from an Inspector, or failure to comply with a written instruction under regulation 99, that a Contractor is in breach of, ~~or is at risk of breaching~~ [redacted] [or is at risk of breaching] [PEW], the terms and conditions of its exploitation contract, provisions of the Convention related to activities in the Area, the Agreement or the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority [redacted] [or if requested by the Council to do so] [PEW], the Compliance Committee [redacted] [may instruct the Secretary-General, with copy to the sponsoring State and the Council, to] [PEW] [redacted] shall issue a compliance notice to the Contractor requiring such action [redacted] [necessary to remedy the breach] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] as may be specified in the compliance notice and shall report immediately to the Council on the issue of such notice. [redacted] [The Compliance Committee shall, through the Secretary-General provide a copy of the compliance notice to the sponsoring State or States.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] [redacted] [The Secretary General shall provide a copy of the compliance notice to the sponsoring State or States within 24 hours] [United Kingdom - replace] ~~te:~~ [PEW – delete]

~~[(i) seek dialogue with the Contractor to discuss and attempt to resolve the issue];~~

~~(ii) issue written warnings, including warnings in relation to possible action the Authority may take in the event of failure to act or future breaches;~~

~~(iii) agree with the Contractor on an improvement plan, which shall include: actions to be taken to return to compliance, how the actions' effectiveness will be monitored and reported, the time permitted for action, and subsequent steps should the actions be unsuccessful, or should non-compliance continue;~~

~~(iv) agree with the Contractor a modification to the Plan of Work, in accordance with regulation 57; or~~

~~(v) issue a compliance notice to the Contractor requiring the Contractor to take such action as may be specified in the compliance notice.]~~

~~[1.bis. Actions taken under this Regulation by the Authority should be commensurate with the gravity, frequency, and other circumstances of the actual or anticipated breach by the Contractor, which may include taking account of the Contractor's previous conduct under contract with the Authority.]~~

~~[(i) seek dialogue with the Contractor to discuss and attempt to resolve the issue];~~

~~(ii) issue written warnings, including warnings in relation to possible action the Authority may take in the event of failure to act or future breaches;~~

~~(iii) agree with the Contractor on an improvement plan, which shall include: actions to be taken to return to compliance, how the actions' effectiveness will be monitored and reported, the time permitted for action, and subsequent steps should the actions be unsuccessful, or should non-compliance continue;~~

~~(iv) agree with the Contractor a modification to the Plan of Work, in accordance with regulation 57; or~~

~~(v) issue a compliance notice to the Contractor requiring the Contractor to take such action as may be specified in the compliance notice.]~~

~~[PEW – reinstate sub (i) – (v)]~~

~~[1.bis.Alt. The [Authority][Compliance Committee] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] should discuss the issue in detail with the Contractor to inform decisions of the Council.]~~

~~[Nauru, PEW – delete 1.bis. alt entirely] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~

~~[1 ter. Paragraph (1) bis. Notwithstanding, where regulations 4(5), 36(3), 52(8), 99(3) and 102(3) apply, the Authority shall issue a compliance notice under paragraph 1(iv).]~~

~~2. [A compliance notice may be issued only in case of breach of the terms and conditions of its exploitation contract, Part XI and provisions of the Convention related activities in the Area, the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, or these regulations].-A compliance notice shall:~~

~~(a) Describe the [alleged] breach and the factual basis for it; and~~



(b) Require the Contractor to take remedial or corrective action or other such steps as the Compliance Committee considers appropriate to ensure compliance within a specified time period and may include:

(i) the implementation of an improvement plan setting out actions to be taken to return to compliance, how the actions' effectiveness will be monitored and reported, the time permitted for action, and subsequent steps should the actions be unsuccessful, or should non-compliance continue; or

(ii) agreeing with the Contractor a modification to the Plan of Work in accordance with regulation 57.

2 bis. Actions specified in the compliance notice should be commensurate with the gravity, frequency or other circumstances of the ~~[alleged]~~ breach.

3. For the purposes of article 18 of annex III to the Convention, a compliance notice issued under this regulation constitutes a warning by the Authority.

4. The Contractor shall be given a reasonable opportunity not exceeding 30 days to make representations in writing to the Secretary General concerning any aspect of the compliance notice, who shall transmit ~~[the]~~ ~~[PEW]~~ same to the Compliance Committee. Having considered ~~[the]~~ ~~[any such]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ representations ~~[and taking account of any enforcement action taken or to be taken by the sponsoring State or States]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~, the Compliance Committee may make recommendations to the Council to confirm, modify or withdraw the compliance notice.

5. If a Contractor, in spite of one or more warnings by the Authority, fails to implement the measures set out in a compliance notice and ~~[has conducted]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ ~~[continues]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[its]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[has conducted]~~ ~~[has conducted]~~ activities in such a way as to result in ~~[serious, persistent and wilful]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ violations of the fundamental terms of the exploitation contract, ~~[provisions of]~~ ~~[Part XI of]~~ ~~[Nauru]~~ the Convention ~~[related activity in the Area]~~ ~~[Nauru - delete]~~, the Agreement or the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~ ~~[Part XI of the Convention, the Agreement or the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority,]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ the Council ~~[shall]~~ ~~[may]~~ ~~[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ suspend or terminate the exploitation contract ~~[, pursuant to regulation 29 ter]~~ ~~[Pew]~~ by providing written notice of suspension or termination to the Contractor ~~[and notification of such suspension or termination to the sponsoring State or States]~~ ~~[United Kingdom]~~ in accordance with the terms of the exploitation contract.

~~5 bis. The Secretary General shall make public any compliance notice issued to a Contractor, as well as any response received from the Contractor [and Sponsoring State], subject to the confidentiality obligations of Regulation 90, and shall present an annual report to the Council summarizing any compliance notices the Authority has issued.~~

[5. Bis ~~[Alt 1]~~ ~~[Pew - delete]~~ The Secretary-General shall, ~~[subject to the confidentiality requirements of regulation 90]~~ ~~[Pew - delete]~~ make public any compliance notice issued to a Contractor, any response received from the Contractor or Sponsoring State or States~~[, subject to the confidentiality requirements of Regulation 90].~~ The ~~Compliance Committee Inspector General~~ shall ~~[include]~~ ~~[present]~~ in their annual report to the Council a summary of any compliance notices ~~the Inspectorate has~~ issued.]

6. In the case of any violation of an exploitation contract not covered by paragraph 5 above, or in lieu of suspension or termination under paragraph 5 above, the Council may impose upon a Contractor monetary penalties proportionate to the seriousness of the violation which must be in line with indicative penalties set out in the relevant Standards, and which will include any administrative costs incurred by the Authority as a result of the violation.

7. Except for emergency orders under article 162 (2) (w) of the Convention, the Council may not execute a decision involving monetary penalties, suspension or termination until the Contractor has been accorded a reasonable opportunity to exhaust the judicial remedies available to it pursuant to section 5 of Part XI to the Convention.

7.bis. The Council shall invite the attention of the Assembly to cases of non-compliance in accordance with Article 162(2)(a) of the Convention. [The Council will bring to the attention of the Assembly instances of non-compliance, as established in article 162 (2)(a) of the Convention.] [PEW]

[8. The Secretary-General shall notify the Council as soon as reasonably practicable of any matter requiring the Council to issue an emergency order under article 162(2)(w) of the Convention, in accordance with regulation 4(4).] [PEW]

#### Comments/remarks

- Different views were provided during the July session, and I have attempted to accommodate for these views and in general streamline the provision.

#### Regulation 104 [IWG ICE]

##### Power to take remedial action

1. Where a Contractor fails to take action required under regulation 103, the Authority ~~[through the Secretary-General]~~ (a) shall notify the sponsoring State and coordinate with relevant officials of that State on further action that may be taken to enforce compliance by the Contractor; and (b) [Pew] may carry out any remedial works or take such measures as it considers reasonably necessary to prevent or mitigate the effects or potential effects of a Contractor's failure to comply with the terms and conditions of an exploitation contract. The Council[, after consultation with the Contractor [and Sponsoring State] [Pew] and based on the recommendations of the Commission,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] shall[, based on the recommendations of the Commission] [Nauru] determine the nature of such works or measures and the manner in which they are to be carried out.

2. If the Authority takes remedial action or measures under paragraph 1 [above] [(b)] [Pew - replace], the actual and reasonable costs and expenses incurred by the Authority in taking that action are a debt due to the Authority from the Contractor [and, to the extent it is liable, the sponsoring State, and may be recovered from the Environmental Performance Guarantee lodged by the Contractor] [Pew] [and may be recovered from the Environmental Performance Guarantee lodged by the Contractor] [PEW].

#### Regulation 105 [IWG ICE]

##### Sponsoring States

1. Without prejudice to regulations 6 and 21, and to the generality of their obligations under articles 139 (2) and 153 (4) of the Convention and article 4 (4) of annex III to the Convention, States sponsoring Contractors shall, in particular, take all necessary and appropriate measures to secure effective compliance by Contractors whom they have sponsored in accordance with Part XI of the Convention, the Agreement, Rules of the Authority and the terms and conditions of the exploitation contract.

#### Section 4

##### Periodic review of inspection mechanism

##### Regulation 105 bis [IWG ICE]

##### Periodic review of ~~inspection mechanism~~ ~~Inspection, Compliance and Enforcement Mechanism~~ ~~Germany - replace~~

1. ~~Every 5 years from the date of establishing the Compliance Committee, or sooner if required,]~~ ~~PEW]~~ ~~Each five years in the periodic fashion, and extraordinarily, when the Council deems it necessary]~~ ~~Costa Rica - replace]~~ the Council shall ~~review]~~ ~~Russia; PEW]~~ ~~commission through the Secretary-General an independent review of]~~ ~~Russia; PEW - delete]~~ the Authority's inspection, compliance and enforcement mechanism to ensure that the manner of its operation and activities accords to best ~~international]~~ ~~PEW - delete]~~ ~~standards of best]~~ ~~PEW]~~ regulatory practice ~~and for this purpose requests information from the Compliance Committee and Secretary-General]~~ ~~Russia; PEW]~~.

~~1. bis. The report of the periodic review [should] [shall] [Nauru; PEW] be published on the Authority's website, [with [private and] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [any] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] confidential information redacted [subject to confidentiality requirements] [Russia].]~~

~~Russia, PEW - delete]~~ ~~Nauru - remove brackets]~~

2. In the light of the review, the Council may, taking into account any recommendations of the ~~Commission]~~ ~~and the Compliance Committee]~~ ~~Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~ ~~Chief Inspector, the Commission and the Compliance Committee]~~ ~~India - replace]~~, ~~recommend]~~ ~~Russia, PEW - delete]~~ ~~adopt amendments to]~~ ~~Russia]~~ ~~decide on]~~ ~~PEW]~~ ~~changes to improve the way]~~ ~~Russia]~~ the mechanism ~~operates]~~ ~~Russia - delete]~~.

##### ~~Regulation 105 ter [IWG ICE]~~

##### ~~Other member States~~

~~Without prejudice to their obligations under Article 153(4), Part XI and Annex III of the Convention, member States shall, in particular, take all necessary and appropriate measures available to them to ensure that their natural and juridical persons, and ships flying their flags, do not prevent or impair Contractors from effectively complying with and performing their obligations, and enjoying their rights, under Part XI of the Convention, the Agreement, rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority and the terms and conditions of the Exploitation Contract.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~

## Part XII

### Settlement of disputes

#### **DR 105 ter**

#### **Administrative Decision Review**

1. Where a Contractor or a person directly affected by a decision of a subsidiary organ of the Authority considers that the decision has been:

(a) taken outside the legal powers conferred upon the decision-maker, or

(b) taken without adherence to the rules, regulations, procedures, and Standards of the Authority,

that person may apply within three months of notice of the decision to the Secretary-General for an administrative review of the decision in question, providing an explanation of the grounds for objecting to the decision.

2. Upon determining in accordance with the applicable Standard that an application made pursuant to paragraph (1) is not frivolous, vexatious or made in bad faith, the Secretary General shall refer such matter to [the President of the Council] without delay.

3. Upon receipt of a referral from the Secretary-General pursuant to paragraph (2), [the President of the Council] shall convene a Review Committee comprising a representative from one member State from each of the chambers of the Council who shall, in accordance with applicable Standard, review the decision and whether it was lawfully and properly taken.

4. The Review Committee shall examine any referral and related evidence and decide either that the original decision was correct and appropriate in the circumstances, or that the original decision should be referred back to the relevant decision-maker for further deliberations in accordance with the findings of the Review Committee.

5. The Secretary-General shall provide the decision of the Review Committee to the applicant, and shall publish the decision or a summary of it on the website of the Authority. [Pew]

#### **Regulation 106 [IWG IM]**

#### **Settlement of disputes**

1. [Where a] [PEW] Dispute[s][PEW – delete] [arises] [PEW] concerning the interpretation or application of these regulations and an exploitation contract, [(a) the disputing parties shall enter into good faith negotiations with a view to resolving the dispute including through any alternative dispute mechanisms agreeable to the parties; and (b) should the dispute remain unresolved despite best efforts undertaken in accordance with paragraph (1), the matter] [PEW] shall be settled in accordance with section 5 of Part XI and Part XV of the Convention [[and the rules of procedure adopted by the International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea [for the conduct of expedited hearings concerning the Rules of the Authority.]]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Netherlands; Indonesia – delete]

[1.bis. Where a Contractor or an interested person directly affected by a decision of a subsidiary organ of the Authority considers that the decision has been:

(a) taken outside the legal powers conferred upon the decision-maker, or

(b) taken without adherence to the rules, regulations, procedures, and Standards of the Authority,

(c) that person may apply within three months of notice of the decision to the Secretary-General for an administrative review of the decision in question, providing an explanation of the grounds for objecting to the decision. The President of the Council shall convene a Review Committee comprising a representative from one member State from each of the chambers of the Council who shall, in accordance with relevant Standards, review the decision and whether it was lawfully and properly taken. The Review Committee shall decide either that the original decision was correct and appropriate in the circumstances, or that the original decision should be referred back to the relevant decision-maker for further deliberations in accordance with the findings of the Review Committee. The Secretary-General shall provide the decision to the applicant, and except where it is not in the public interest to do so, shall publish the decision or a summary of it on the website of the Authority.] [PEW]

[1 ter. Nothing in this Regulation shall prejudice the Authority's ability to issue a compliance notice under Regulation 103, including a notice pertaining to suspension of activities for a specific period or until such date as the dispute has been resolved.] [PEW] [Netherlands - delete]

2. ~~In accordance with article 21 (2) of annex III to the Convention, a~~ [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – supports removing] Any final decision rendered by a court or tribunal having jurisdiction under the [Convention] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [and the rRules, regulations and procedures of the Authority] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] relating to the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the Contractor shall be enforceable in the territory of [any] [each] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ – support “each”] State party to the Convention [[affected thereby]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru; Netherlands – delete]. [The enforcement mechanisms shall be specified in accordance with the laws and regulations of their respective State. States Parties' Contractors shall be made aware of their obligations under these enforcement mechanisms.] [African Group]

[2.Alt. Any final decision rendered by a court or tribunal having jurisdiction under the Convention relating to the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the Contractor shall be enforceable in the territory of each State party to the Convention.] [United Kingdom]

*[Facilitators' Note: Delegates are requested to consider whether the regulations should provide mechanisms for administrative review procedures for decisions of the Authority (in addition to the more formal dispute resolution procedures in UNCLOS). This may, for example, provide for procedures that can be more efficient than a referral to ITLOS, and may provide more comprehensive grounds for review and/or legal standing in certain circumstances to parties other than Contractors and States. Delegates are also invited to discussed whether the*

*regulations should include a requirement to attempt alternative dispute settlement, rather than requiring immediate recourse to ITLOS.]*

**[Regulation 106 ALT [Brazil]**

**Settlement of disputes**

1. Disputes concerning the interpretation or application of these regulations and an exploitation contract shall be settled in accordance with section 5 of Part XI and Part XV of the Convention.

2. The provisions of Part XV of and Annexes III, IV, V, VI, VII and vm to the Convention shall be deemed to be replicated for the purpose of the settlement of disputes involving these regulations.

3. Nothing in these regulations shall be interpreted as conferring jurisdiction upon a court or tribunal over any dispute that concerns or necessarily involves the concurrent consideration of the legal status of an area as within national jurisdiction, nor over any dispute concerning sovereignty or other rights over continental or insular land territory or a claim thereto of a Party to the Convention, provided that nothing in this paragraph shall be interpreted as limiting the jurisdiction of a court or tribunal under Part XV, section 2, of the Convention.

4. Nothing in these regulations shall be relied upon as a basis for asserting or denying any claims to sovereignty, sovereign rights or jurisdiction over land or maritime areas, including in respect to any disputes relating thereto.]

**Part XIII**

**Review of these regulations**

**Regulation 107 [IWG IM]**

**Review of these regulations**

1. Council shall take a full review of these Regulations. This review shall, at least, include:

(a) The manner in which the Regulations have operated in practice;

(b) The effectiveness and enforceability of the Regulations;

(c) The manner in which the Regulations have ensured compliance with the principles, approaches, and policies pursuant Regulation 2, and the general obligations relating to the marine environment pursuant Regulation 44.]  
[Netherlands – suggest placing proposed wording before current para 1]

1. Five] [bis. The first review shall take place five] [Netherlands] years following the approval of these regulations by the Assembly, [or at any time thereafter, the Council shall undertake a [full] [comprehensive] [African Group - review] review of the manner in which the regulations have operated in practice] [and no later than ten years after the adopted of these Regulations by the Council]

[Netherlands - replace]. [Subsequent reviews may be undertaken at any time thereafter, with a mandatory review every five years.] [African Group]

[1ter. After the review pursuant paragraph 1bis, the Council may also undertake such a review at any time thereafter, but shall do so at least every ten years.] [Netherlands]

2. If, in the light of improved knowledge[, technology, implementation experience, or identification of regulatory gaps,] it becomes apparent that these regulations are not adequate, any State party[, the Commission, any Contractor [or Stakeholder] [Norway] through its sponsoring State, [or Stakeholder [through its relevant State Party]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]] [and any organ of the Authority] [Netherlands - replace] may at any time request the Council to consider, at its next ordinary session, revisions to these regulations [and the matter shall be included in the provisional agenda of the Council for that session]. [As at its next ordinary Session such requests shall be included in the Provisional Agenda of the Council for that session.] [African Group]

3. The Council shall [establish a process [of public consultation and participation] [Netherlands] that gives [[Contractors and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - remove brackets] Stakeholders]] [give Contractors and Stakeholders] [Pew - replace] [Netherlands - delete] adequate time and opportunity to comment on proposed revisions to these regulations [in accordance with the Authority's policy and procedure for public consultation and participation and regulation [insert reference to regulation that provides details for ISA consultation procedures]] [Pew], save for the making of an amendment to these regulations that has no more than a minor effect or that corrects errors or makes minor technical changes.

4. In the light of that review, the Council may adopt and apply provisionally, pending approval by the Assembly, amendments to the provisions of these regulations, taking into account the recommendations of the Commission or other subordinate organs.

[[5. Any amendments to these regulations adopted by the Council and the Assembly, shall not be applied retroactively to the detriment of the Contractors that have already signed an exploitation contract with the Authority.]] [Australia - delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

[5 alt. The Council may incorporate an appropriate transition period for implementation by existing Contractors of any amendments to the regulations [subject to any limitations in the Convention and the Agreement] [Australia].]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 5 alt entirely] [Pew – retain 5alt]

[5alt. Amendments to these Regulations shall be implemented by existing Contractors, subject to any limitations in the Convention and the Agreement. The Council may provide for a transition period for implementation by existing Contractors of amendments to these Regulations.] [Australia]

[5 Alt. The Council may incorporate an appropriate transition period for implementation by existing Contractors of any amendments to these Regulations.]  
[Netherlands]



## Annex I [President's Text]

### Application for approval of a Plan of Work to obtain an exploitation contract

#### Section I Information concerning the applicant

1. Name of applicant.
2. Street address of applicant.
3. Postal address (if different from above).
4. Telephone number [of applicant's designated representative].
- ~~5. — Fax number.]~~
6. Email address [of applicant's designated representative].
7. Name of applicant's designated representative.
8. Street address of applicant's designated representative (if different from above).
9. Postal address (if different from above).
10. Telephone number.
11. Fax number.
12. Email address.
13. If the applicant is a juridical person:
  - (a) Identify applicant's place of registration;
  - (b) Identify applicant's principal place of business/domicile; and
  - (c) Attach a copy of applicant's certificate of registration.

~~(d) [To the extent the information is not considered to be confidential or commercially sensitive,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [I][i]dentify [NORI, TOML, BMJ – lower case] the identities and locations of the applicant's:~~

~~\_\_\_\_\_ (i) management including any members of its board of directors;~~

~~\_\_\_\_\_ (ii) ownership, including any persons or entities holding 5 percent or more of the applicant's equity, if different from the place of registration/domicile, for example in the case the the applicant is a subsidiary of a parent company located in a different jurisdiction and~~

~~(iii) an organisational chart of the group structure.]~~

~~(vi) holding, subsidiaries, affiliated and Ultimate Parent companies, agencies and partnerships at the time of application.]~~

~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets from para 13]~~

[13. bis. Where the applicant is a company, provide an organisational chart or other description of any company group structure, including parent, subsidiary or other associated companies.]

[[13.ter. Provide any additional information to assist determine the nationality of the applicant, or by whose nationals the applicant is effectively controlled.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 13 ter entirely]

14. Identify the Sponsoring State or States.

15. In respect of each Sponsoring State, provide the date of deposit of its instrument of ratification of, or accession or succession to, the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 and the date of its consent to be bound by the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the Convention.

[15.bis. Provide information about relevant national laws and administrative measures that would apply to the applicant in its conduct of Activities in the Area, including on compensation mechanisms in respect of damage caused by pollution of the marine environment.]

[[15.ter. A description of the Contractors and the Sponsoring States (or States) compliance enforcement strategies, and how these align with the Rules of the Authority.]]

[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete para 15ter entirely]

16. Attach a certificate of sponsorship issued by the Sponsoring State or States.

## **Section II**

### **Information relating to the area under application**

17. Define the boundaries of the area under application by attaching a list of geographical coordinates (in accordance with the [World Geodetic System 84] [~~most recent applicable international standards used by the Authority~~] [and a georeferenced file and a map with the limits of the requested area]

[17. alt. Attach information on all the flag States and port States that are proposed to be involved in activities under the Exploitation Contract, in accordance with Regulation 5(2)(e).] [Germany]

## **Section III**

### **Technical information**

18. Provide detailed documentary proof of the applicant's technical capability, or access thereto, to conduct the Exploitation and to Mitigate Environmental Effects.

19. Provide documentary proof that the applicant has the ability to comply with relevant safety, labour and health standards [and is able to apply its policies in a non-discriminatory and gender-sensitive way].

20. Provide a description of how the applicant's technical capability will be provided through the use of in-house expertise, subcontractors and consultants on the proposed Exploitation activities. [[Provide organograms of staffing, and staffing data provided should be disaggregated by gender.]] [Norway – delete]

20. bis. [To the extent possible and with the assistance of the Secretariat in obtaining relevant information and agreement from member States and other relevant entities:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

(a) [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove bracket] Identify the in-service and planned submarine cables and pipelines in, or adjacent to, the area under application; [(to the extent such information is publicly available) and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

(b) [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] provide documentary proof of the measures agreed between the applicant and the operators of the [identified] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] cables and pipelines to reduce the risk of damage to the in-service and planned submarine cables and pipelines [(to the extent such information is publicly available) and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete bracket].

[20.ter. [To the extent available] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [P][p]rovide [NORI, TOML, BMJ – lower case] evidence that the applicant has demonstrated a satisfactory record of past operational performance and compliance, both within the Area and[, where applicable] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ] in [national][Nauru].[other States’] [Nauru – delete] jurisdiction[s] [Nauru].]

[Norway – delete para 20.ter. entirely] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets from 20.ter]

## Section IV Financial information

21. Attach such information, in accordance with the [Standards and] Guidelines, [as applicable], [to enable the Council to determine] [to assist the Authority in determining] whether the applicant has [or will have] access to the financial resources to carry out the proposed Plan of Work and fulfil its financial obligations to the Authority, as follows:

(a) If the application is made by the Enterprise, attach certification by its [competent authority] [Director-General] that the Enterprise has the necessary financial resources to meet the estimated costs of the proposed Plan of Work;

(b) If the application is made by a State or a State enterprise, attach a statement by the State or the Sponsoring State certifying that the applicant has the necessary financial resources to meet the estimated costs of the proposed Plan of Work; and

(c) If the application is made by an entity, attach copies of the applicant’s audited financial statements, including balance sheets and income statements and cash flow statements for the most recent three years, in conformity with internationally accepted accounting principles and certified by a duly qualified firm of public accountants, noting that:

(i) If the applicant is a newly organized entity and a certified balance sheet is not available, attach a pro forma balance sheet certified by an appropriate official of the applicant;

(ii) If the applicant is a subsidiary of another entity, attach copies of such financial statements of that entity and a statement from that entity, in conformity with internationally accepted accounting principles and certified by a duly qualified firm of public accountants, that the applicant will have the financial resources to carry out the Plan of Work; and

(iii) If the applicant is controlled by a State or a State enterprise, attach a statement from the State or State enterprise certifying that the applicant will have the financial resources to carry out the Plan of Work.

22. If, subject to regulation 22, an applicant seeking approval of a Plan of Work intends to finance the proposed Plan of Work by borrowing, attach details of the amount of such borrowing, the repayment period and the interest rate, together with the terms and conditions of any security, charge, mortgage or pledge made or provided or intended to be made or provided or imposed by any financial institution in respect of such borrowing [and the predicted debt-to-equity ratio] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~.

23. Provide details of any Environmental Performance Guarantee proposed or to be provided by the applicant in accordance with regulation 26.

## **Section V Undertakings**

24. Attach a written undertaking that the applicant will:

(a) Accept as enforceable and comply with the applicable obligations created by the provisions of the Convention and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority, the decisions of the relevant organs of the Authority and the terms of its contracts with the Authority;

(b) Accept control by the Authority of activities in the Area as authorized by the Convention; and

(c) Provide the Authority with a written assurance that its obligations under the exploitation contract will be fulfilled in good faith.

## **Section VI Previous contracts with the Authority**

25. Where the applicant or, in the case of an application by a partnership or consortium of entities in a joint arrangement, any member of the partnership or consortium has previously been awarded any contract with the Authority, attach:

(a) The date of the previous contract or contracts;

[(b) The dates, reference numbers and titles of each report submitted to the Authority in connection with the contract or contractors;] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

(c) The date of termination of the contract or contracts, if applicable;

[(d) [The final report on the results of exploration and baseline investigations, including results of testing equipment and operations in the exploration area.]] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

## **Section VII Attachments**

26. List all the attachments and annexes to this application (all data and information should be submitted in hard copy and in a digital format specified by the Authority).

[26.Alt. \[Attach the following attachments and annexes: \[xx\]\]](#)

## Annex II [President's Text]

### Mining Workplan

A Mining Workplan, based on the results of Exploration (at least equivalent to the data and information to be provided pursuant to section 11.2 of the standard clauses for Exploration contracts), should cover the following subject matters:

(a) A comprehensive statement of the Mineral Resource delineated in the relevant Mining Area(s), including details, or estimates thereof, of all known Mineral reserves reported in accordance with the International Seabed Authority Reporting Standard for Reporting of Mineral Exploration Results Assessments, Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves (see [ISBA/21/LTC/15](#), annex V), together with a comprehensive report of a suitably qualified and experienced person that includes details of and validation of the grade and quality of the possible, proven and probable ore reserves, as supported by a pre-feasibility study or a Feasibility Study, as the case may be;

[\[\(a\).bis. A description and schedule of any Exploration activities planned to be conducted following approval of the Exploitation Plan of Work, including a description of the equipment and methods expected to be used.\]](#)

(b) A chart of the boundaries of the proposed Mining Area(s) (on a scale and projection specified by the Authority) and a list of geographical coordinates (in accordance with the [] [most recent applicable international standards used by the Authority];

(c) A proposed programme of mining operations and sequential mining plans, including applicable time frames, schedules of the various implementation phases of the Exploitation activities and expected recovery rates;

(d) Details of the equipment, methods and technology expected to be used in carrying out the proposed Plan of Work, including the results of [\[full-scale mining machinery\] tests \[test mining\]](#) conducted **[as applicable] [China]** and the details of any tests to be conducted in the future, as well as any other relevant information about the characteristics of such technology, including processing and environmental safeguard and monitoring systems, [and electricity or other energy supply](#) together with details of any certification from a conformity assessment body;

(e) A technically and economically justified estimate of the period required for the Exploitation of the Resource category to which the application relates;

(f) A detailed production plan, showing, in respect of each Mining Area, an anticipated production schedule that includes the estimated maximum amounts of Minerals that would be produced each year under the Plan of Work;

(g) An economic evaluation and financial analysis of the project;

(h) The estimated date of commencement of Commercial Production; and

(i) Details of **[principal] [Nauru]** subcontractors [\[\[and suppliers of goods and services\]\] \[Nauru – delete\]](#) to be **[used] [directly engaged] [Nauru – replace]** for Exploitation activities, [\[together with information about their compliance records\]](#).

(j) Details on how many vessels [are proposed to] [will] be involved in the mining operations, including how and to where the collected ores [will] [are

proposed to] be transported from the mining site to shore for processing, ~~as well as details relating to onshore processing~~

~~[(k) Details relating to onshore processing, if applicable.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]~~

### **Annex III [President's Text]**

#### **Financing Plan**

A Financing Plan should include ~~supported by evidence or other relevant sources~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]:

(a) Details and costing of the mining technique, technology and production rates applicable to the proposed mining activities;

(b) Details and costing of the technological process applicable to the extraction and on-board processing of ~~the~~ Mineral ore;

(c) Details and costing of the technical skills and expertise and associated labour requirements necessary to conduct the proposed mining activities;

(d) Details and costing of regulatory requirements relevant to the proposed mining activities, including the cost of the preparation and implementation of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plan;

~~(e)€~~ Details regarding other relevant costing, including capital expenditure requirements;

(f) Details of ~~advance agreed sales, and all~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] expected revenue applicable to the proposed mining activities;

(g) A detailed cash-flow forecast and valuation, excluding financing of the proposed mining activities, clearly indicating applicable regulatory costs; and

(h) Details of the applicant's resources or proposed mechanisms to finance the proposed mining activities, and details regarding the impact of such financing mechanisms on the cash-flow forecast ~~and debt-to-equity ratio~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete].

~~[(i) Details of any loans or planned loans, and the institutions making the loans, with an indication whether those institutions apply relevant best practice international standards or their equivalent] [the Equator Principles or the International Finance Corporation performance standards, or equivalent.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

~~[(j). Details of any insolvency proceedings, current disqualification from acting as a company director or trustee of any fund or organisation, unspent convictions for any financial crime or offence involving dishonesty, in any jurisdiction, involving key personnel from the Contractor's management, senior staff, ownership, parent company, subsidiaries or sub-contractors.] [PEW]~~

## Annex III bis [IWG ENV]

### Scoping Report

A ~~an~~ ~~environmental Impact Assessment~~ Scoping Report shall include the following:

(a) A brief description of the proposed Exploitation activities; ~~and any ancillary features~~

(b) A description and overview of tentative timelines and deadlines for the proposed environmental baseline studies and Environmental Impact Assessment conducted under the Exploration contract and any associated activities;

(c) A description of what is known about the environmental setting, including ~~any~~ ~~human remains and/or~~ ~~IWG on UCH~~ Underwater Cultural Heritage, for the project (Contract Area and regional setting);

(d) A description of data gaps, potential data gaps or data with a large uncertainty associated with it for the project, ~~including environmental baseline data, and a plan describing the methodology for collecting and analyzing that information prior to commencement of Exploitation activities and to inform the Environmental Impact Assessment~~;

(e) A summary of existing environmental baseline studies, and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of indigenous peoples and local communities;

(f) A description of the technical, spatial and temporal boundaries for the Environmental Impact Assessment;

(g) A ~~brief~~ description of the socioeconomic and sociocultural aspects of the project, ~~including sociocultural uses of the project area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities);~~ ~~IWG on UCH~~

(h) Any assumptions and how they are being addressed, and assessment of their implications to the Environmental Risk Assessment findings;

(i) A preliminary impact analysis which categorizes the important issues into high-risk, medium-risk and low-risk for the Environmental Impact Assessment to address and evaluates the need for further information, taking into account the Environmental Risk Assessment; ~~which includes:~~

(i) The identification of potential hazards;

(ii) The environmental consequence for each identified potential impact(s) (the magnitude of the impact(s), the duration of the impacts, and the receptor characteristics), and the likelihood of the consequence occurring;

(iii) A description of the cumulative effects of the project, combined with other authorized, anticipated, or expected ~~IWG on UCH~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete~~ activities, ~~IWG on UCH~~ ~~and~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace~~ actions, or natural phenomena;

(iv) The confidence levels of experts, in order to account for uncertainty and a precautionary approach; and



(v) A description of the methodology employed in the Environmental Risk Assessment.

(j) A preliminary Environmental Risk Assessment;

(k) A description of the results of the Environmental Risk Assessment, including identification of high priority risks for local and regional ecosystem functioning over short and long term, requiring particular focus in the subsequent impact assessment phase of the Environmental Impact Assessment;

(l) A ~~[preliminary Stakeholder]~~ list [of potentially directly affected that proactively identifies likely] [key] Stakeholders, [and States within the scope of Regulation 93 ter] and ~~[an indicative]~~ schedule and methodology for engagement with [suchkey] Stakeholders [and States during throughout] the Environmental Impact Assessment [process and development of the Environmental Impact Statement], taking into account [to not to publish privacy concerns related to the publication of] personal information of identified Stakeholders;

(m) A report of [any written] consultations undertaken during scoping;

(n) A consideration of reasonable alternative means of carrying out the project that will be examined in detail [as in] the Environmental Impact Assessment [proceeds], including a no-action alternative, and any others that [not] have been ~~[not]~~ carried forward for further analysis at this stage, and the reasons for that selection **[United Kingdom; Canada - delete]**;

(o) A ~~[draft Terms of Reference]~~ [terms of reference] **[United Kingdom; Canada - replace]** for the Environmental Impact Assessment, which identifies the activities and studies planned for the [subsequent impact assessment stage of the] Environmental Impact Assessment, and any additional baseline data that will be required;

**[**(p) An explanation for how the activities and studies planned for the Environmental Impact Assessment will be sufficient to determine likely environmental impacts, and to propose **[M**[m]itigation **[United Kingdom; Canada]** and management strategies and monitoring methodology: and; **[United Kingdom; Canada – move after sub (n) as (n)bis]**

(q) A note describing and explaining any divergence from [relevant applicable Standards or [ISA] Guidelines of the Authority].

## Annex IV [IWG ENV]

### Environmental Impact Statement

#### Explanation / comment

General comments by the Facilitator relating to the work on streamlining this annex and relevant regulations:

- Ahead of our meeting in July, I highlighted that there seems to be a tendency to include much detailed methodological suggestions. For example, I received a proposal to reference “particle modelling or other means of establishing dispersal kernels or connectivity paths” in section 3.1.1 of this annex. I believe that we should attempt to avoid such references as they might not be sufficiently accurate and comprehensive. I therefore urged participants to keep this in mind through the reading of this annex and other annexes. Furthermore, I urged for participants attempting to simplify the annexes and try to identify areas that could be more suitable for the Standards and Guidelines.
- As a result, I moved some parts of this annex to the regulations on the Environmental Impact Assessment Process, the Environmental Impact Assessment, the Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report and the Environmental Impact Statement as suggested by the intersessional working group on this.
- Ahead of this meeting in October/November, I have received proposals to keep and reinstate some of the parts which was moved previously. I have followed those suggestions as it aligns with the work of the intersessional working group on streamlining section 2.
- Furthermore, as I stated previously, I have attempted to introduce a Matrix overview of what regulations and parts of the annexes could be moved to relevant Standards and Guidelines. I have for example suggested in the Matrix to move different parts of this annex (IV) into the “Draft guidelines for the preparation of environmental impact statements” as can be seen here; ([The Mining Code: Standards and Guidelines – International Seabed Authority \(isa.org.jm\)](#)) Furthermore, it could be relevant to consider drafting a Standard on this matter to entail the more overall provisions.
- This to have a better overview going forward as it is imperative that we move on with this work output to create the needed regulatory basis. I therefore propose, when we read through this annex, that we decide after each section whether it should be *included* in the relevant regulation(s), be *moved* to a Standard or *kept* as an annex. I invite for a discussion on this.
- Some participants proposed to delete point “5.5.4” and use “Alt. 5.4.4” going forward. However, as other participants have submitted changes to 5.5.4, I propose to have a discussion on which to use going forward.

- I propose to follow all recommendations from the intersessional working group on “Underwater Cultural Heritage”, both in respect to suggested deletions, but also regarding proposed insertions, e.g. point Alt. 6.2.5 which I believe should serve as basis going forward.
- One participant proposed to move parts of point 7.9 (on noise and light emissions) and 7.10 (on GHG emissions and climate change) top point 8.6.1. I see merit in this proposal and suggest using this.

## 1. Preparation of an Environmental Impact Statement

The Environmental Impact Statement prepared under these regulations and the present annex shall:

(a) Be prepared in clear language and in an official language of the Authority together with an English-language version, where applicable;

(b) Provide information [based on data from,] [Germany – remove brackets] [[as a general rule, a minimum of 15 years of]] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany – remove brackets] [monitoring] [Germany – remove brackets], in accordance with the relevant regulations, and taking into account the applicable regional environmental management plan, [requirements of regional environmental management plans,] and [Standards and [taking into account the relevant.] Guidelines and the relevant applicable regional environmental management plan, and taking into account the relevant applicable regional environmental management plan], corresponding to the scale and potential magnitude of the activities, to assess the likely Environmental Effects of the proposed activities. Such effects shall be discussed in proportion to their significance. Where an applicant or Contractor considers an Environmental Effect to be of no significance, there should be sufficient information to substantiate such conclusion, or a brief discussion as to why further research is not warranted; and

[(c) Include a non-technical summary of the main conclusions and information provided to facilitate understanding of the nature of the activity by Stakeholders.] [Germany – remove brackets]

[(d) Be peer reviewed by competent independent experts, before submission and include a description of the experts, their qualifications, and the results of their review.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [Germany – remove brackets]

## 2. Template for Environmental Impact Statement

~~—[The [required] recommended format and contents for an Environmental Impact Statement is outlined below. It is intended to provide the International Seabed Authority, its member States and other stakeholders with unambiguous documentation of the potential Environmental Effects based on the Best Available Scientific Evidence, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, and Good Industry Practice on which the Authority can base its decision, and any subsequent approval that may be granted. Further detail for each section is provided following the overview.]~~

The required contents and recommended format for an Environmental Impact Statement is outlined below. It is intended to provide the [International Seabed] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Authority, its member States and other stakeholders with [unambiguous] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [clear [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] documentation of the potential Environmental Effects based on the Best Available Scientific Evidence, Best Environmental Practices, and Best Available Techniques, and Good Industry Practice on which the Authority can base its decision, and any subsequent approval that may be granted. Further detail for each section is provided following the overview.

This document is a template and does not provide details of methodology or thresholds that may be resource- and site-specific. These methodologies and thresholds may also change over time in according to, for example, development of new technologies, ~~or~~ new scientific data or new knowledge, and will be developed as Standards and Guidelines to support the regulations.

## Contents

|  | <i>Page</i> |
|--|-------------|
| Executive summary .....  | 76          |
| 1. Introduction .....  | 76          |
| 2. Policy, legal and administrative context .....  | 77          |
| [2bis Regional context] [Germany]  |             |
| 3. Description of the proposed project .....   | 77          |
| [3bis Summary of Scoping results, including of the risk assessment process<br>3ter Methodology for the description of the marine environment and the<br>assessment of environmental effects and impacts] [Germany]   |             |
| 4. Description of the existing oceanographic environment .....   | 80          |
| 5. Description of the existing biological environment .....  | 81          |
| 6. Description of the existing socioeconomic environment .....   | 82          |
| 7. Assessment of [effects and] [Germany] impacts on the physicochemical<br>environment and proposed Mitigation .....   | 83          |
| 8. Assessment of [effects and] [Germany] impacts on the biological<br>environment and proposed Mitigation .....  | 86          |
| 9. Assessment of impacts on the socioeconomic environment and proposed<br>Mitigation .....   | 87          |
| 10. Accidental events and natural hazards .....  | 89          |
| [10bis Assessment of Uncertainty<br>10ter Potential impacts and issues to be addressed<br>10quart Environmental management measures to avoid, reduce and mitigate<br>impacts<br>10quin Analysis of residual effects against the RRP, Standards and<br>Guidelines of the Authority] [Germany] |             |
| 11. Environmental management, monitoring and reporting .....   | 89          |
| 12. Product stewardship .....  | 90          |
| 13. Consultation .....   | 91          |
| 14. Glossary and abbreviations .....   | 91          |
| 15. Study team .....   | 91          |
| 16. References .....   | 91          |
| 17. Appendices .....   | 91          |

## Executive summary

One of the main objectives of the executive summary is to provide an overview of the project and a summary of the content of the Environmental Impact Statement for non-technical readers. Information provided in the executive summary should include:

(a) A description of the proposed project, its objectives, if any, a description of alternatives analysed, and a justification of the alternative chosen;

Alt (a)bis A description of alternatives analyzed;

(b) Anticipated Economic, financial and other benefits to be derived from the project, and the beneficiaries for each[, including humankind] [Germany];

(c) A description of anticipated and cumulative, [risks and] [Germany - remove brackets] impacts of the activity, as assessed by experts, (. including, but not limited to, oceanographic, geological, biological, socioeconomic and sociocultural) including the expected spatial extent and duration of impacts and cumulative impacts in relation to the identified baselines, and the expected recovery rates of the system to its original state [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete];

(d) Measures to [avoid,] [Germany] [minimize and] [~~to~~] [Germany - remove brackets] mitigate anticipated and cumulative environmental impacts [support recovery of the marine environment from impacts,] [Germany - remove brackets] and a description of any anticipated and cumulative residual impacts, that may occur despite Mitigation, noting how the mitigation hierarchy is being employed in assessing impacts;

~~[[Alt (d bis) A description of any residual impacts:]] [Germany - remove brackets]~~

~~[[Alt (d ter) Expected recovery rate of the marine environment impacted:]] [Germany - remove brackets]~~

(e) Linkages with development of the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan and the Closure Plan; [and]

~~[[e)bis Conformity with the Authority's global environmental policy and strategy and the applicable regional environmental management plan; and]]~~

[e)bis Conformity with the Authority's global environmental policy and strategy and the applicable regional environmental management plan; and] [Germany]

(f) Consultation undertaken with other parties and Stakeholders.

## 1. Introduction

The purpose of the Introduction section is to set the scene for the Environmental Impact Assessment. This section should contain enough detail for a reader to form an overall impression of the proposed project and how it has developed and understand how the Environmental Impact Assessment is

structured. As this section mainly provides a 'roadmap' to more detailed material in the Environmental Impact Assessment, it may be relatively short.

### **1.1 Background**

Summarize briefly the project being proposed, including all main activities and locations.

### **1.2 Project viability**

Provide information on the viability of the proposed development, its economic context and why the project is needed.

Provide understanding of the policy on alternatives being followed by the applicant. The determination of project viability may include a summary of feasibility investigations related to geophysical, engineering, geotechnical, oceanographic, biological and other components of project operations.

### **1.3 Project history**

Summarize briefly the work undertaken up to the date the Environmental Impact Statement was finalized and ready to be submitted to the International Seabed Authority. This should include a brief description of the resource discovery, the exploration undertaken depth zones, and any component/system testing conducted to date. The time, location, and parties involved in exploration work should be included. For the component/ system testing, provide a brief description of activities here. If applicable, include any report(s) related to results of component/system testing and Test Mining studies including any monitoring and assessment of the environmental impacts in an appendix.

### **1.4 Project proponent**

Summarize the credentials of the proponent, including major shareholders, other contracts or licences held (including in other jurisdictions), previous and existing contracts with the Authority. The proponent's technological and environmental expertise, capacity and financial resources should be outlined, and the proponent's environmental record for this work and any previous comparable works should be summarised as well as how they intend to support commitments made elsewhere in the application.

### **1.5 This report**

This section should constitute a guide for users of the Environmental Impact Statement on how to effectively use the information contained in the Environmental Impact Statement.

#### **1.5.1 Scope**

Provide detail as to what is and is not included, and which risks have been prioritised and which received less emphasis, in this Environmental Impact Statement, based on the Scoping Report and previous feedback from the Authority and Stakeholders. Link to other supporting information.

#### **1.5.2 Report structure**

This subsection should refer to the prescribed structure of the template but should also indicate where to find information that is not obvious from the table of contents, for example in cases where the Environmental Impact Statement relates to a larger project covering several Mining Areas within the

Contract Area or for an Environmental Impact Statement that contains a large volume of information (especially multiple volumes). Authorship should be provided for chapters.

### **1.5.3 Consultation overview.**

Provide overview of mandatory [\[, as well as any\]](#) voluntary stakeholder consultation processes and consultations.

## **2. Policy, legal and administrative context**

Provide information on the relevant policies, legislation, agreements, Standards and Guidelines that are applicable to the proposed mining operation.

### **2.1 Applicable national and international legislation policies and procedures,**

Outline the national and international legislation, procedures and policies, for example those adopted in accordance with article 209 of the Convention to prevent, reduce and control pollution of the marine environment [\[, including the coastline,\]](#) from activities in the Area, as well as applicable rules, regulations, procedures, standards and Guidelines and the Regional Environmental Management Plan of the Authority, that is applicable to the proposed mining operation in the Area, including any guidance provided for implementation and how the proposed operation will comply with them.

### **2.2 Other applicable /national legislation, policies and regulations**

Outline any other legislation, policies, regulations or Sustainable Development Bills that do not necessarily apply specifically to seabed mining or the environment, but may be relevant to the proposal (e.g., shipping regulations, maritime declarations, flag State laws, climate [\[change policies\]](#)). This section should also refer to national regulations and laws that relate to the effects of Exploitation activities on coastal States, [\[or other places where components of Exploitation \(e.g., processing\) could occur.\]](#) [\[Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete\]](#)

### **2.3 Applicable international and regional agreements**

In addition to the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea and the 1994 Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the Convention, list the international and regional agreements applicable to the operation, (whether directly or via incorporation into domestic laws cited in section 2.2 above), such as relevant conventions, including annexes and Guidelines, of the International Maritime Organization related to protection of the environment, biodiversity and safety. These include the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships (MARPOL), the Ballast Water Management Convention (BWMC), the International Convention on the Control of Harmful Anti-fouling Systems on Ships and the 1996 Protocol thereof and the Convention on Biological Diversity and the Convention on Migratory Species of Wild Animals [and the international legally binding instrument under the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea on the conservation and sustainable use of marine biological diversity of areas](#)



[beyond national jurisdiction \(BBNJ\)](#); and describe how the proposed operation will comply with them.

## 2.4 Other applicable standards, principles and Guidelines

Discuss applicable standards and Guidelines, including those mandated by the source(s) of funding for the operations, that will be adhered to or aligned with throughout the operation, such as those of the International Seabed Authority not already included in section 2.1, the Equator Principles, the Environmental Management Standards of the International Organization for Standardization, the Code for Environmental Management of Marine Mining of the International Marine Minerals Society, the Performance Standards on Environmental and Social Sustainability of the International Finance Corporation and the Standards of the Extractive Industries Transparency Initiative.

## 2.5 National Processes related to [\[S\]](#)ponsoring State permits

Describe any national processes followed and permits received from the [S](#)ponsoring State in relation to the environmental impact assessment.

## 2.6 Ecologically and/or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) and Area-based management tools

Describe any relevant area-based [\[designation and/or\]](#) management [\[tools\]](#) established under subregional, regional or global processes and the scope, geographical coverage [\[, supporting data,\]](#) and objectives of such tools. Also describe any relevant area-based [\[designation and/or\]](#) management [\[tools\]](#) in adjacent areas under national jurisdiction. [\]](#)

[\[Germany – delete para 2.6 entirely\]](#)

[\[Germany\] \[2bis: Regional context\]](#)

### [2bis.1 The regional context](#)

[Give an account of relevant regional conventions and other agreements.](#)

### [2bis.2 Applicable REMP](#)

[Summarise the provisions of the applicable REMP, its environmental objectives and key measures.](#)

### [2bis.3 Other exploitation contractors in the Region](#)

[If applicable, give an account of other mineral exploitation activities in the region \(public information on contract areas, resource, state of contract\)](#)

### [2bis.4 Other spatially relevant human activities in the Region](#)

[Give an overview of other activities in the region \(public information on type of activity, location, sensitivity to mining effects\)](#)

### **2bis.5 Existing and planned spatial or environmental measures in the Region**

Describe any relevant area-based designation and/or management tools established under subregional, regional or global processes and the scope, geographical coverage, supporting data, and objectives of such tools, including Ecologically and/or Biologically Significant Areas (EBSAs) and similar designations. Also describe any relevant area-based designation and/or management measures in adjacent areas under national jurisdiction.

### **2bis.6 Potential interference with other ISA contractors' interests**

### **2bis.7 Existing or planned cooperation with other contractors.]**

## **3. Description of the proposed project**

Provide details of the proposed project and the area of influence of the project or impact area, including relevant diagrams and drawings. It is understood that most projects will likely involve the recovery of minerals from the Area, with the concentrating process(es) occurring on land within a national jurisdiction (outside the jurisdiction of the Authority). While this section should provide a description of the entire project, including offshore and land-based components, the Environmental Impact Statement should focus on those activities occurring within the Authority's jurisdiction (e.g., activities related to the recovery of the minerals from the Area up to the point of trans-shipment).

Details to be provided under this section should include the headings listed below.

### **3.1 Project area definition**

#### **3.1.1 Location**

[Provide a map (drawn to scale),] [Germany] [Include] [Germany – delete] [and list the] [Germany] coordinates [detailing the location] [Germany] of the project area, [with] [Germany] [detailed location maps (drawn to scale), showing] [Germany – delete] the [relevant sites] [Germany – delete] proposed [as] [Germany – delete] Contract Area [and] [Germany – delete] [Mining Area and] [Germany – delete] [the sequence of areas planned to be mined (Mined Areas), the Impact Reference Zones (IRZ) and Preservation Reference Zones (PRZ) for each Mined Area, and the presumed impact zones covering the benthic and pelagic extent of sediment plumes created by the mining operation. Add] [Germany] any other features that can [be] [Germany – delete] usefully [be] [Germany] marked upon the map at the time of application, including the locations [of impact reference zones and preservation reference zones as well as locations] [Germany] of other nearby contract areas or known seabed infrastructure. Provide general location of the project on a regional map.

[The map should indicate] [Germany – remove brackets] Areas of Particular Environmental Interest, Sites [Areas] [Germany – remove brackets] in Need of Protection, or other sites designated for particular status under the rules, regulations, procedures, Standards, or Regional Environmental Management Plans of the Authority, [as well as area-based designations] [Germany]. [This may also include sites] [Germany – delete] of other competent authorities, as

well as information on any other known conservation or spatial measures and other uses of the marine environment (e.g. submarine cables and pipelines, long-standing scientific research sites and established fishing areas) in the vicinity of the project area. The map shall also identify the nearest coastal States and States that may be affected by mining activities, and any adjacent ISA contract sites. **The map shall also identify areas designated for protection or preservation under the relevant Underwater Cultural Heritage Management Plan.** **[IWG on UCH]** This map may be the same as the map supplied in Annex 1 Section II.

### 3.1.2 Associated activities

Describe the supporting activities and infrastructure required (e.g., transportation corridors, ports for disembarkation of vessels, ports for unloading of ore that are outside the direct mining site, anchoring areas for vessels and machinery).

### 3.2 Mineral resource

Provide details of the type of resource proposed for extraction (e.g. sea floor massive sulphides, polymetallic nodules, ferromanganese crusts), the type, size, shape, tonnage, volume ~~and~~ grade and distribution pattern [Italy] of the mineral deposits. Estimates of the inferred indicated resource should be provided on the basis of the international CRIRSCO reporting template or national accepted codes (NI 43-101, JORC Code) and the official ISA mineral classification (PMN, PMS and CFC).

### 3.3 Project components

Provide background information on the proposal and the technologies and equipment to be employed, and include the subsections set out below.

#### 3.3.1 Project scale

Provide an overview of the spatial (horizontal and vertical) and temporal (seasonal and annual) scales of the mining operation, including volumes, depth of penetration into the seabed. Provide an overview of physical, chemical, geological and oceanographic properties of material to be recovered, dewatered and deposited or discharged into the water column or back to the seabed, and the target depth range for any such discharge **[, in accordance with the applicable Standards and Guidelines] [Germany]**. This should include an account of the **[residual] [Germany]** area to be directly impacted over time, including the water column and seafloor beyond the contract area, if applicable, as well as the likely extent of any secondary impacts (e.g., sediment plumes, noise, light), which will be discussed in greater detail later.

#### 3.3.2 Mining Equipment

Describe any equipment expected **[to be used] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [to qualify as Best Available Technology] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]** for mining and support operations (e.g., mining vessels/platforms, supply vessels, barges), including the anticipated frequency of vessel movements for these activities. Also, including a description of any specific technologies developed to reduce impacts should be included.

Provide details of methodologies of exploitation (drilling, dredging, excavating, disposing of waste, constructing and operating or maintaining

installations, pipelines and other devices) and give specifications of [Germany – remove brackets] [and][Germany] the technologies to be employed in relation to Best Environmental Practice, including relevant diagrams and drawings, that address: the Mining Workplan, timelines and the general mining sequence, the technologies to be employed to recover the resource from the seabed, the depth of penetration into the seabed the specific technologies developed to reduce the direct impact of mining activities (e.g. noise, light, plumes) and other details of the mining activities subsea and on the surface. Describe the energy requirements of the requisite machinery. [Germany – remove brackets]

### 3.3.3 Transport/materials handling

Provide a description of all methods to be used to transport the mineral-bearing ore, including from the sea floor to the surface and how it relates [NORI, TOML, BMJ] in relation [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to Best Environmental Practice, and any methods related to the trans-shipment of the mineral-bearing ore, including transfers at sea. Describe the energy requirements of the requisite machinery. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Also, include [Germany] a description of any specific [Germany – delete] measures and [Germany] technologies developed to avoid [Germany] reduce and mitigate [Germany] impacts should be included, highlighting at which levels, [Germany – delete] anywhere [Germany] in the water column (e.g. generation of plume at the seafloor, turbidity in the water column, addition of bottom sediments to the surface waters) resulting impacts to the marine ecosystem, may be mitigated [Germany – delete] during the different phases for collection, separation, lifting, transportation, processing, and discharge of effluents. [Germany – delete bracket]

### 3.3.4 On-site processing

Provide a detailed [Germany – remove brackets] description of the plan for [Germany – remove brackets] processing of the mineralized material that will occur within or above the Area and how it relates [NORI, TOML, BMJ] in relation [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] to Best Environmental Practice, including water column activities (such as riser pipe transfer) and shipboard processing. Include a description of any methods to be used on the sea floor to separate the mineralized material from surrounding sediment and/or rock, as well as any dewatering and separation of the mineralized material at the surface. This section should also cover any disposal of seawater/finest [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] and include the spatial layout of the activities over time which will provide a comprehensive map of the disturbance area from which to assess harm impact [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] to the Marine Environment [Germany – remove brackets].

Include a description of the waste management, transport, disposal and discharge of sediment, wastes or other effluents into the Marine Environment and the disposal of waste from general ship operations, including the specific technologies and methods to be adopted to reduce harmful impacts of such disposal to the marine environment. The description should acknowledge respective ISA Standards and Guidelines as well as other applicable legal frameworks. Describe the management of shipboard wastes to be transported to shore-based disposal facilities, including the handling and management of hazardous materials should also be described, together with a description of the nature of such material and its transportation, storage and disposal. Describe the energy requirements of the requisite machinery. [Germany –

~~remove brackets~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] Also, a description of any specific technologies developed to reduce impacts should be included.

### 3.4 Commissioning

Describe the pre-production activities that will take place with regard to the establishment and set-up of the site for mining operations. The management of this process (such as the establishment of safety zones around vessels) should also be described.

### 3.5 Construction and operating standards

Outline the design codes or certification standards to which the equipment will be or has been built, as well as the operating standards that will be applied to mining operations, including [those for] [any relevant] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace] Best Available Technology and Best Environmental Practice [guidance] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] issued by the ISA [International Seabed Authority]. This section should include subsections such as those set out below.

#### 3.5.1 Design codes

#### 3.5.2 Health and safety

#### 3.5.3 Workforce description

This section should also outline capacity-building objectives and commitments.

### 3.6 Decommissioning and closure

Describe the steps that will occur when the mining operation is completed or in the event of an emergency, including the decommissioning and removal of offshore infrastructure or the temporary suspension of mining activities, under a Closure Plan.

### 3.7 Other alternatives considered

Provide an account of alternative options that were rigorously explored and objectively evaluated, including a no-action alternative, that were considered and rejected in favour of the current proposal with justification as to why the alternatives were rejected. Aspects should include the selection of the mine site, mine production scenarios, equipment design and engineering decisions, including technologies selected to reduce the direct impact of mining activities, environmental impacts, financial feasibility, transport and materials handling, shipboard processing and stakeholder support. A no mining scenario must be included.

#### 3.7bis Environmental management measures to mitigate impacts

Provide a summary description of [the sufficiency information on environmental management measures and] [DOSI] [reasonable] [Germany – delete] measures taken to [avoid, reduce and] [Germany] mitigate adverse impacts to the physical, chemical, geological, biological[, and] [Germany – remove brackets]–socioeconomic[, and sociocultural] [Germany; IWG on UCH – remove brackets]\_environment [while developing the project] [Germany].

### 3.8 Development timetable (detailed schedule)

Provide a description of the overall timetable, from initiation and equipment construction the implementation of the mining programme, through to the decommissioning and closure of operations. The description should include the major phases of the operation as well as the milestone dates on which relevant tasks are expected to be completed. Information on the development timetable provided under this section should clearly communicate the different phases in the development proposal. For reasons of clarity, a flow chart or a Gantt or PERT (Programme Evaluation and Review Technique) chart should be used where appropriate. Information provided in this section should include the following:

- (a) The funding arrangement for the proposed activity, or whether the availability of funds is subject to this or other approvals being granted;
- (a) bis Timing of expected regulatory approvals
- (b) Pre-construction activities including the development and testing of mining equipment, operations and systems in situ (if applicable);
- (c) A construction schedule and staging timetable;
- (d) An infrastructure development schedule;
- (e) A monitoring schedule (during and after operations); and
- (f) A closure schedule.

Whether the availability of funds is subject to approvals should be noted on the timetable.

### **Section 3bis1 Summary of Scoping results, including of the risk assessment process**

Provide a brief overview of the results of the scoping exercise including with regard to the sufficiency of the scientific baseline data collected during exploration [or through other means] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] to support a robust Environmental Impact Assessment.

### **Section 3bis [2] Methodology for Description of the Marine Environment and Assessment of Impacts and Environmental Effects**

[Methodological approaches should be consistent with established community standards. In the case that novel sampling techniques, new technology, or sampling designs are employed, particularly detailed methodology and justification should be provided in this section.]

#### **3bis.1 Studies completed**

Describe any prior research/Exploration that could provide relevant information for this Environmental Impact Statement and future activities. These [studies] should be detailed in the appendices.

#### **3bis.2 Methodology for Collecting Baseline Data**

For each of the baseline descriptions of the Marine Environment in sections 4 and [5 and socioeconomic [and sociocultural] [Germany – remove brackets] environment in section 6] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], describe the methodology for collecting and analysing baseline data, including:

1. spatial and temporal extent of sampling;

2. spatial and temporal frequency of sampling;
3. gear used for sampling and any modifications or calibrations conducted to the gear;
4. results of power analysis;
5. limitations of sampling and how this may impact certainty of impact assessments; and
6. any cooperation with other research programmes in the Area, such as with the ISA, States, other Contractors, or non-governmental organizations.

Highlight any deviations from baseline data collection requirements provided in relevant Standards and Guidelines, and the Regional Environmental Management Plan [ , and provide a rationale for those deviations.] [Germany – remove brackets]

Assess the sufficiency of baseline data collected and compiled in view of the aim to establish mining-related environmental change in relation to natural variability.

Raw baseline data [and computer code[, with sufficient metadata and code comments.]] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] used to analyse and provide a description of the Marine Environment shall be included in the annexures of the Environmental Impact Statement or, if the data [and/or code has+ve] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [has] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] \_been previously submitted to the Authority, the applicant may provide a link to the Authority’s database where the data [and/or code [+][are]] [NORI, TOML,, BMJ – delete] [is] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] stored or other location where such information has been made available online.

### **3bis.3 Methodology for Summarizing Baseline Data**

Provide a description of the methodology used to summarize baseline data collected. This shall include:

a description and justification of transformations performed to the data and analyses used to summarize the data;

a list of program(s) used to analyze results;

a list of methods to determine species identification and life history; and,

any limitations associated with the results of the analysis.

### **3bis.4 Methodology for Assessments of potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects to the Marine Environment**

For each assessment of potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects in sections 7 and 8 and socioeconomic [and sociocultural] [IWG on UCH – remove brackets] environment in section 9, describe the methodology used to assess impacts and Environmental Effects from proposed operations and alternatives considered in section 3.7. in line with the applicable regulations and standards and taking into account the applicable guidelines.

Data [and] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], predictive models, and computer code used to analyse and provide a description of the Marine Environment shall be included in the annexures to the Environmental Impact Statement or, if the data [and/or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], model, [and/or code] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] has been previously submitted to the Authority, [~~the applicant may provide a link to the Authority’s database where the data and/or code is stored~~] other location where such information has been made available online. Each description of methodology used to assess impacts shall include:

- a) a description and justification of analyses and models used to summarize the data; and
- b) any limitations associated with the analysis or results.

[In accordance with Regulation 47quater, where predictive models have been used these shall be reviewed by competent independent experts and the relevant review reports shall be provided as annexures to the Environmental Impact Statement.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

#### 4. Description of the existing physiochemical and geological oceanography

Give a detailed account of [knowledge of] [Germany – delete] the oceanographic (physical, chemical and geological) conditions at each mining site, [the expected total] [Germany] and impact area[,] [Germany] as well as as [the Impact and Preservation] [Germany] Reference Zones, which should include information from a thorough literature review as well as from on-site studies in accordance with the Regulations and applicable Standard and taking into account the relevant Guidelines to be specified. The Guidelines on baseline data collection as updated from time to time by the Commission, shall guide the drafting of this section by providing information on the minimum amount of detail required for an acceptable baseline description. The account will provide the baseline description of the oceanographic conditions, including physical, chemical and geological oceanographic setting, including its spatial and temporal variability and temporal trends [[conditions]] [Germany – delete], against which impacts will be measured and assessed. The detail in this section is based on the prior environmental risk assessment carried out in line with the respective standard and guideline, that will have identified the main impacts, and thus the priority elements that need to be [measured] considered and assessed in the environmental impact assessment.

##### 4.1 Key messages

Provide an overview of key content (this information can be provided in a box that contains up to 6 bullet points on either the main aspects covered or the main findings).

##### 4.2 Regional overview

Describe the general baseline environmental conditions [and expected trends and variability] [Germany] of the site and impact area, in accordance with the Standard and Guideline on baseline data collection, including but not limited to the physical, chemical and geological oceanographic setting [as well as known or suspected Underwater Cultural Heritage] within a broader



regional context and [\[taking into account\]](#) [\[Germany – remove brackets\]](#) ~~in accordance with~~ the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan. This should be a brief section that includes a map. ~~[While intangible cultural heritage may not lend itself to a map, known intangible human connections to the area should also be acknowledged.]~~ A more detailed site-specific and impact area description will be provided in accordance with the sections below.

#### 4.3 Studies completed

Describe any prior research/Exploration studies (including methods used for completing the studies based on Best Available [\[Science using Best Available\]](#) ~~[Micronesia – delete]~~ Techniques, ~~[including surveys of the seabed for Underwater Cultural Heritage]~~ that could provide relevant information for this Environmental Impact Statement. This research should be detailed in the appendices [\[and/\] \[Germany\]](#) or in reports attached to the appendices. [\[The environmental baseline data collected for the Authority, as outlined in exploration contract conditions, should accompany the Environmental Impact Statement.\] \[Germany\]](#)

#### 4.4 Meteorology and air quality

Provide a general [\[overview\]](#) [\[Characterization\]](#) of the local meteorology (e.g., wind directions and speeds, seasonal [\[and interannual\]](#) patterns and variability). Provide description of air quality, including chemical characteristics. This section may be most relevant to surface operations [and the general risk assessment.](#)

#### 4.5 Geological properties and habitat classification

Provide a baseline description of the nature and extent of the mineral resource and bedrock within a broader geological context. Describe the geological petrographic and geomorphological setting of the [mining sites, the impact areas, and the designated](#) [\[impact and\] \[Germany\]](#) [preservation reference zones \(PRZs\)](#) including sea floor mapping (bathymetry and backscatter), high-resolution sub-bottom profiling, and sedimentation rates, and refer to submarine features such as hydrothermal vents, seamounts abyssal hills and canyons as appropriate.

Provide habitat classification using an appropriate system as prescribed in the relevant Standard [\[and\] \[Germany – delete\]](#) [taking into consideration the](#) ~~[ ] [ ] [Germany – delete]~~ Regional Environmental Management Plan.

#### 4.6 Oceanographic setting

Provide a description of oceanographic aspects including but not limited to thermohaline conditions, optical properties and turbidity, [\[surface, \[mid-\] \[Germany – delete\] water \[column\] \[Germany\] and bottom\]](#) currents regime, tides, waves, turbulence, and oceanographic fronts, eddies and climate change projections, including spatial variation at and above the site. Seasonal [and longer-term](#) variability is an important element. Detail is required on the regional setting, as well as the specific mining site and impact area, [and the designated](#) [\[Impact and\] \[Germany\]](#) [Preservation Reference Zones \(PRZs\)](#), and should include changes in physical conditions and processes according to depth and horizontal distance from the proposed mine site to boundaries of the Impact Area. [\[For activities conducted in areas of seamount chains, hydrothermal vent fields, trenches and canyons or other areas with complex bathymetry, oceanographic currents will be influence by topographic forcing\]](#)

and will require a more detailed oceanographic assessment, including targeted sampling programs, to determine the impact area.] Climate change projections should also be included.

#### 4.7 Chemical oceanographic setting

Provide a description of water mass characteristics at the mining sites, the impact areas, and the designated [Impact and] [Germany] Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs) and above the sites at various depths of the water column, including the structure and development of the oxygen minimum zone in particular near the sea floor (up to 200m above bottom), that includes nutrients, particle loads, temperature and dissolved gas profiles, vent-fluid characteristics if applicable, turbidity, etc.

Provide a description of chemical oceanographic properties at the mining sites[,] [Germany] the impact areas, and the designated [Impact and] [Germany] Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs), [above the site] throughout the water column and horizontally from the proposed mine site, that includes nutrients, particle loads, temperature, oxygen, salinity, density, particulate and dissolved organic matter, pH, chemical composition, including [, but not limited to] [Germany – remove brackets] concentrations of trace metals, dissolved gas profiles, depth range and characteristics of oxygen minimum zone, redox regimes, carbonate saturation, [hydrocarbon] and spatial (horizontal and vertical) and temporal (seasonal and interannual) variability of these properties, and vent-fluid characteristics if applicable.

#### 4.8 Seabed substrate and sub-seabed characteristics

Provide a description of seabed substrate and sub-seabed composition (to benthic subsurface layers) of the wider mine sites, the impact areas, and the designated [Impact and] [Germany] Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs), including, but not limited to, physical, chemical, geological and oceanographic properties, specific gravity, bulk density, sediment composition, physical and chemical composition of pore-water and pore-water profiles, grain size, [mineralogy] sediment mechanics, dissolved and particulate organic and inorganic carbon, nutrients, carbonates, redox regimes, and spatial (horizontal and vertical) and temporal (seasonal and interannual) variability in these characteristics). Substrate composition shall [should] be described to a depth below the seafloor prescribed in the relevant Standard on Baseline Information and the applicable [as indicated in the] [ø#] Regional Environmental Management Plan.

##### 4.8bis Rare or sensitive habitats

Identify and describe the physical and chemical characteristics of rare or sensitive habitats in line with the respective international guidelines (FAO 2009, Azores Criteria 2010) and policy decisions (, UN, CBD ...) such as hydrothermal vents, ridges, seamounts, as well as oceanographic fronts or eddies, abyss hills and canyons and other geological and oceanographic features [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete].

#### 4.9 Natural hazards

Provide a description and trend analysis of variation related to applicable potential natural hazards for the site, including, but not limited to, volcanism, seismic activity, cyclone/hurricane, tsunamis, climate-related oceanographic changes and variability [, slides, slumps,] etc. and how these may develop [vary] in future, e.g. as a consequence of climate change.

#### 4.10 Noise and light

Provide a description of local ambient noise and light at the seabed, ~~[#]~~ throughout the water column and at the surface, including, but not limited to, light intensity, backscatter, and attenuation, bioluminescence, and spatial (horizontal and vertical) and temporal (seasonal and interannual) variability in these characteristics, indicating pertinence to fauna where known.

#### 4.11 Greenhouse gas emissions ~~[and climate change]~~

Provide a description ~~[and quantification]~~ of the level of gas and fluid emissions from ~~[both natural and]~~ anthropogenic activities ~~[in the Area]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] [related to the proposed exploitation activities in the proposed mining area] [NORI, TOML, BMJ], as well as those affecting sea floor and water-column chemistry. ~~[The climate mitigation functions and services of the ocean should also be described (including CO2 uptake and sequestration, or nutrient cycling).]~~

---

#### 4.11bis Climate Change

Description of the expected changes in physical and chemical oceanographic conditions and processes in the broader area of the mine site due to climate change. ~~[Japan - delete]~~

#### 4.12 Summary of the existing physicochemical environment

Summarize key findings and include notes on special considerations for rare or sensitive habitats hydrothermal vents, ridges, seamounts and oceanographic fronts or eddies, abyss hills [, fracture zones] and canyons and other geological and oceanographic features described in this section. It is anticipated that this summary will be up to one page and be more extensive than the key messages section.

### 5. Description of the existing biological environment

Give a detailed account of knowledge of the biological communities' composition and structure and ecosystem functions in the proposed mining sites and impact areas, and the designated [Impact and] [Germany] Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs), including information from a thorough literature review and baseline data collected from on-site campaigns, in accordance with the Regulations and applicable Standard and taking into account the relevant Guidelines. The description of the site should be divided by depth regime (surface, midwater from 200m depth to 50m above bottom and benthic including benthopelagic, where appropriate) or otherwise as indicated in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan and provide a description of the various biological components and communities that are present in or utilize the area. The Standard [Guidelines] on baseline environmental data collection shall guide the drafting of this section by providing information on the minimum amount of detail required for an acceptable baseline description. The detail in this section is expected to be based on a prior environmental risk assessment that identified, and thus the elements that need to be measured and assessed in the environmental impact assessment.

#### 5.1 Key messages

Provide key messages (overview of main findings, covered in six or fewer bullet points).

## 5.2 Regional overview

Provide regional context for the baseline environmental conditions [and expected trends and variability] [Germany] of the mining site and impact areas, and the designated [Impact and] [Germany] Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs), including but not limited to the general biological setting, [taking into account] in accordance with the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan. This should be a brief section that includes a habitat classification map. A more detailed description of the mining site, the Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs) [specific] and impact area description will be provided in accordance with the sections below.

## 5.3 Studies completed

Describe any prior research/Exploration studies (including methods used for completing the studies based on Best Available [Science using Best Available] [Germany] Techniques) that could provide relevant information for this Environmental Impact Statement and future activity. This research should be detailed in the appendices [and/or in reports attached to the appendices] [Germany] , and the environmental reference baseline data collected for the Authority, as outlined in the exploration contract conditions, should accompany the Environmental Impact Statement.

## 5.4 Biological environment

Provide a description of biological [and ecological] [Germany – remove brackets] properties in the [region and the mine site, with special focus on the designated preservation reference zones PRZ and the total [mine site and] [Germany – remove brackets] Impact Area, including diversity, abundance, biomass, life history parameters, relevant behaviour, including feeding rates, community-level analyses, connectivity, trophic relationships, resilience, ecosystem functions and services as well as seasonality and spatial (horizontal and vertical) and temporal variability. Any work on ecosystem models and appropriate ecosystem indicators, etc., should also be presented here. This section should span the size range from megafauna to microbial communities and shall be guided by the variables given by the Standard for the establishment of baseline environmental data.

The description of the [benthic [and pelagic communities and] [Germany] ecosyste [with functional relationships] [Germany] [Germany – remove brackets] [fauna and its food web] [Germany – delete] is structured by depth range, as this enables a direct link [age] to the source and location of an impact. For each depth zone, (at least surface, [midwater] [water column] [Germany – replace] and [benthic] [seafloor] [Germany – replace] as below) there should be a [n inventory] [Germany – remove brackets] [USA] [description] [Canada] [Germany – delete] of the known taxonomic/ecological groups (e.g., plankton, fish, marine mammals, marine turtles, benthic microbial invertebrates, demersal scavengers) [in accordance with] the Authority's Guidelines.

Describe the biological communities and ecosystem functions, structured by depth ranges in accordance with the relevant Standards and [taking into account] [Germany – remove brackets] Regional Environmental Management Plans, may encompass:

1. surface seawater
2. epipelagic zone (< 200 metres)
3. mesopelagic zone (200-1000 metres),
4. bathypelagic zone (1000 - 4000 metres),
5. abyssopelagic zone (4000 - 6000 metres),
6. hadalpelagic zone (> 6000 meters),
7. demersal zone (part of the water column near to and significantly affected by the seabed), and
8. benthic zone.

The description should evaluate the temporal and spatial variability in distribution and composition.

The description should include the size and habitat distributions of the fauna and their life history stages (such as larval and juvenile stages, which differ from the adult stage) as well as trophic pathways. Discussions of species and communities should include considerations of whether they are endemic (restricted to just the site, resource substrate or region) or are known to be rare, threatened or endangered.,

Migratory and highly mobile species should be included where foraging ranges / migration pathways / management units have been noted as overlapping with proposed operations during scoping.

The climate mitigation functions and services of the ocean shall also be described (including CO2 uptake and sequestration, or nutrient cycling).

#### **5.4.1 Surface**

Describe the biological communities from the surface to a depth of 200 metres, including [microbes] [Germany – delete] plankton (phytoplankton and zooplankton, microbial plankton and organic matter), micro-nekton surface/near-surface fish such as tuna, and seabirds, marine turtles and marine mammals. Address factors provided in 5.4, as well as spatial and temporal variability and trends.

[Alt. 5.4.1 Surface

~~Describe the biological communities and ecosystem functions, structured by depth ranges in accordance with relevant Standards and [taking into account] Regional Environmental Management Plan, which may encompass:~~

~~surface seawater~~

~~epipelagic zone (< 200 metres)~~

~~mesopelagic zone (200–1000 metres),~~

~~bathypelagic zone (1000–4000 metres),~~

~~abyssopelagic zone (4000–6000 metres),~~

~~hadalpelagic zone (> 6000 meters),~~

~~demersal zone (part of the water column near to and significantly affected by the seabed), and~~

~~benthic zone.~~

~~— The description should evaluate the temporal and spatial variability in distribution and composition.]~~

#### 5.4.2 **[Midwater] [Water column] [Germany – replace]**

Describe the pelagic communities ~~[fauna]~~ and their habitat in the open water from a depth of 200 metres down to 50 metres above the sea floor, and include particulate organic matter, microbes, zooplankton, nekton, mesopelagic, bathypelagic and abyssopelagic fishes and deep-diving mammals. **[Particular focus should be given to gelatinous and other fragile taxa which may be most vulnerable to sediment loads.] [Germany]** Address factors provided in 5.4, as well as spatial and temporal variability.

#### 5.4.3 **Benthic**

Describe the [known] benthic microbial, invertebrate and fish communities, including infauna, epifauna, benthopelagic fauna, and demersal fish and scavengers, up to an altitude of [ca.] [Germany] 50 metres above the sea floor **[(or the height of the nepheloid layer)] [Germany]** **[and at least 5 meters below (into the sediments).] [Germany – remove brackets]** This inventory should include considerations of species richness, biodiversity, faunal densities, taxonomic uniqueness, community structures and connectivity, etc. Ecosystem functions, such as ~~[B]~~bioturbation, habitat and food [creation [supply]] [Germany – delete] [supply] [Germany] and elemental cycling etc. should also be covered in this section. Address factors provided in 5.4, as well as spatial and temporal variability and patchiness.

#### **[5.4.3bis Rare or sensitive habitats and species]**

**Identify and describe the biological characteristics of rare or sensitive habitats and species potentially affected by the planned mining operation. The identification (as in 4.8bis) shall be guided by the respective international guidelines (FAO 2009, Azores Criteria 2010) and policy decisions (UNGA, CBD) and include features such as hydrothermal vents, ridges, seamounts, as well as oceanographic fronts or eddies, abyss hills and canyons and other geological and oceanographic features [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]. Identify any unique, rare and threatened elements and their potential vulnerability to the effects of mining, outline which habitats and communities can be considered representative and their distribution, indicate existence and connectivity to the same habitats and communities outside the mine site and the potential impact zone.] [Germany]**

#### **[5.4.4 Ecosystem/community-level description]**

Summarize existing community and ecosystem studies that integrate elements of the above sections. The summary should consider productivity, habitat heterogeneity, food-web complexity, carbon and nutrient cycling, benthopelagic coupling, biodiversity, succession, stability, the potential toxicity effects of plumes, bioavailability of toxins, trophic relationships, ecosystem functioning, benthic-pelagic couplings, ecosystem connectivity, early life-history stages, recruitment and behavioural information. Identify, preserve and distribute to the scientific community [Name] any unique, rare and threatened elements, outline which habitats and communities can be considered representative and their distribution, indicate existence and

connectivity to the same habitats and communities outside the mine site and the potential impact zone. ]

[Germany – delete 5.4.4 entirely]

#### [Alt. 5.4.4 Ecosystem/community-level description

Summarize existing community and ecosystem-level studies. This should include integration of connectivity studies (e.g. life history and recruitment research), trophic interactions and the linkages between food energy and contaminants in the food chain (including benthopelagic couplings) and ecosystem functioning / services. Food energy linkages and the complexity of the food web should be included, giving consideration to the impacts that may result from contaminants or other disruptions to the food web. Understanding across depths should be provided. Emphasis might be placed on knowledge of trophic levels, the degree of interaction between benthic and pelagic communities, whether there are specialized predators that could be more vulnerable than generalists, and the complexity of the food web and species interactions, with a view to gaining an idea of the resilience of the system to disturbances. It is important to consider wider community relationships to enable assessments to move beyond community descriptions to incorporate potential changes in ecosystem function. [Identify, preserve and distribute to the scientific community any unique, rare and threatened elements, outline which habitats and communities can be considered representative and their distribution, indicate existence and connectivity to the same habitats and communities outside the mine site and the potential impact zone.] [Germany]]

### 5.5 Summary of the existing biological environment

Summarize the findings focusing on key ecosystems and species determined above. It is envisaged that this summary will be up to one page in length.

#### 5.6 Rare or sensitive habitats and species

Identify and describe the biological characteristics of rare or sensitive habitats and species potentially affected by the planned mining operation. The identification (as in 4.8bis) shall be guided by the respective international guidelines (FAO 2009, Azores Criteria 2010) and policy decisions (UNGA, CBD) and include features such as hydrothermal vents, ridges, seamounts, as well as oceanographic fronts or eddies, abyss hills and canyons and other geological and oceanographic features.

Identify any unique, rare and threatened elements, outline which habitats and communities can be considered representative and their distribution, indicate existence and connectivity to the same habitats and communities outside the mine site and the potential impact zone.]

[Germany – delete 5.6 entirely]

## 6. Description of the existing human activities / the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment

This section should describe the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment aspects and potential impacts of the project [~~based~~] on [~~the~~] existing human activities. This may include consideration of the scale of effects (such as the creation of jobs and estimates of the risk of environmental impacts), extent of duration of impacts in time and space, intensity or severity

of social impacts and an assessment of whether impacts are likely to be cumulative. It is important to consider the social equity or distribution of impacts across different populations: in other words, which groups are likely to be affected in which ways.

## 6.1 Key messages

**Provide key messages (overview of main findings, covered in six or fewer bullet points).**

### 6.2 Existing uses

#### 6.2.1 Fisheries

Relevant fisheries shall be described here to further assess the socioeconomic impacts. This should include description of areas of significance for [migratory](#) fish stocks, such as spawning grounds, nursery areas or feeding sites. Any closed fishery areas such as VME closures, MPAs, or voluntary closures must be named and taken into consideration. Provide a ‘heat map’ showing important fishery areas in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact.

#### 6.2.2 Marine traffic

This section describes the non-project-related marine traffic occurring within the Contract area and uses the Regional Environmental Management Plan [in accordance with IALA's regulations](#) to provide a summary of regional movements. Provide a ‘heat map’ showing densities of marine traffic in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact. Provide this per season if repeatable seasonal variation exists.

#### 6.2.2bis Submarine cables

This section describes the [\[known\] \[NORI, TOML, BMJ\]](#) in situ non-project-related submarine cables occurring within the Contract area. Provide a map showing known submarine cables in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact.

#### 6.2.3 Tourism

Describe areas used by cruise liners and for game fishing, sightseeing, marine mammal watching and other relevant tourism activities. Provide a ‘heat map’ showing densities of tourism in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact. Provide this per season if repeatable seasonal variation exists.

#### 6.2.4 Marine scientific research

Outline the [\[ongoing current\] \[past, present and planned\] \[Germany – replace\]](#) scientific research programmes taking place in the [\[area\] \[region\] \[Germany – replace\]](#), studying the essence of phenomena and processes occurring in the marine environment and the interrelations between them.

#### 6.2.5 Sociocultural uses

[\[List \[human activities in\] \[sociocultural uses of\] the project area \(e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities \[as well as known or suspected Underwater Cultural Heritage\).\]\]](#)

[\[Germany – delete 6.2.5 entirely\]](#)



**Alt 6.2.5 Sociocultural values and uses [IWG on UCH]**

List sociocultural ~~[values and] [Germany]~~ uses the project area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities as well as known or suspected objects or sites of an archaeological or historical nature), taking into account the work of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization referred to in Regulation 35(2). ~~[IWG on UCH - delete].~~

**6.2.6 Other**

—List other uses of the project area that are not related to the above (e.g., other, exploitation projects ~~[sports and leisure]~~).

**6.2.7bis Other mineral exploration**

**6.2bis Planned uses**

Describe the planned uses of the area for which information is publicly available (e.g. other exploitation contracts, exploration contracts, fisheries, maritime traffic, tourism, marine scientific research, submarine cables, area-based management tools).

**6.3 Sites of an archaeological, historical significance**

List any sites of archaeological or historical significance that are known to occur ~~[or may occur]~~ within the potential area of impact. Provide a map as applicable showing known archaeological and historical sites in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact taking into account the work of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization referred to in Regulation 35(2). ~~[Known human connections to or uses of the area should also be acknowledged. Copies of surveys of the project area shall be submitted with notes about anomalies that may [indicate the presence of objects of an archaeological and historical nature that should be subject to further research before any potentially destructive activities occur.]~~

**[6.3.Alt. Sites of an archaeological, historical or cultural significance**

**List any sites of archaeological, historical or cultural significance that are known to occur within the potential area of impact. Provide a map as applicable showing known archaeological and historical sites in relation to proposed operations and note any areas of interaction or cumulative impact. The Authority may decide to limit the public disclosure of the map in order to prevent looting of the sites or similar actions.] [IWG on UCH]**

**6.4 Summary of existing socioeconomic and sociocultural environment**

Summarize key findings regarding the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment. It is envisaged that this section will be up to a page in length, and more extensive than the key messages.

## 7. Assessment of [effects and] [Germany] impacts on the physical, chemical and geological environment and proposed Mitigation

Provide a detailed description and evaluation of potential impacts and Environmental Effects of the operation [which could degrade the current status and functioning of] [Germany] [to] [Germany – delete] components of the physical chemical and geological environment identified in section 4. This should consider the entire lifespan of the project, i.e. construction/development (precommissioning-) of the mine site, operational and decommissioning phases, and following Closure of the site. The potential for accidental events and natural hazards. The detail in this section is expected to be based on a prior environmental risk assessment prepared, reviewed, and revised in accordance with [Annex IVbis (h) Regulation 47ter and respective Standard and Guideline for Environmental Impact Assessment (chapter III Scoping, D)]. It should include for each component a description of:

(a) The [hazard: detailing the] [Germany] source (action, temporal and spatial duration), [probability and frequency of the risk] [Germany] and [the] [Germany] nature [and severity of] [Germany] of the [disturbance] [ecological effect] [Germany – replace];

(a)bis [Exposure characterization: evaluation and probability of exposure of the ecosystem components (see section 5) to the identified hazard,] [Germany] [The] [Germany – delete] nature, duration and extent of any actual or potential impact, including cumulative effects and taking into account ecological and biologically significant areas;

(a)ter The methods used to determine impacts (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling or other analysis undertaken);

(b) [Risk evaluation and management: Document how decisions were taken to determine.] [Germany] Measures [that will be taken] [Germany – delete] to prevent, mitigate and manage such impacts; and

(c) The unavoidable residual impacts that will remain, including their expected longevity.

(d) The extent to which any potential impacts and Environmental Effects may occur [beyond the contract area or] [Germany] in areas under a State's national jurisdiction.

The detail in this section is expected to be based on the environmental risk assessment carried out according to the relevant regulations, Standards and Guidelines that will have identified the main impacts, and thus the elements that need to be emphasized in the environmental impact assessment.

### 7.1 Key messages

Provide an overview of the key content covered in section 7.

### 7.2 Description of potential impact categories

Provide an overview and description of the categories of potential impacts caused by [hazards owing to] [Germany] the proposed mining operation.

Key elements that need to be included are:

(a) The major types of potential impacts, such as habitat removal, variations in communities' composition, the creation of sediment plumes, dewatering plumes, noise, light, etc.;

(b) Descriptions of impact studies carried out during exploration (e.g., component testing and the resulting observations from the associated monitoring);

(b bis) Descriptions of test mining studies undertaken prior to the application;

(c) Descriptions of the results of any environmental risk assessments, which should be included as separate reports or appendices where appropriate; and

(d) Descriptions of the methods applied to describe and quantify impact categories and assessment from impact to receptor (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling undertaken);

### **7.2 bis Description of impact pathways**

The preferred approach for this template is to include for each receptor descriptions of:

(a) The methods used to determine the pathway from impact to receptor (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling undertaken);

(b) The source(s) of impact

(c) The nature, spatial extent and temporal extent of potential impact(s), including cumulative impacts;

(d) Measures that will be taken to avoid, minimise or mitigate such impacts; and

(e) The unavoidable (residual) impacts that will remain, including their expected longevity and outline the measures that will be taken to ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

### **7.2 ter Receptors and impacts**

Receptors for which this will be done include:

(a) Meteorology and air quality

(b) Geology [\[and Geophysics\]](#)

(c) Physical oceanography

(d) Chemical oceanography of the mine site and impact area

(e) Seabed substrate characteristics

Impacts to be considered include:

(a) Sediment plume generation,

- (b) discharge of water
- (b)bis Energy flow pathways (such as hydrothermal fluid);
- (c) Noise and light
- (d) Greenhouse gas emissions and climate change emissions (including estimated greenhouse gas emissions and a greenhouse gas emissions assessment where appropriate)

Effects to be considered include:

- (a) changes in temperature and salinity of water,
- (b) optical characteristics / water clarity
- (c) turbidity / particulate loading
- (d) sediment characteristics (including changes in the sediment composition, grain size, density and pore-water profiles)
- (e) discharge plumes (frequency, spatial extent, composition and concentration, etc.)
- (f) primary sediment plume (frequency, spatial extent, composition and concentration)
- (g) dissolved gas levels
- (h) nutrient levels
- (i) For a sea floor massive sulphide project, the modification of vent-fluid discharges, if present, should be addressed.

## 7.8 Accidental events and Natural hazards

Discuss impacts of accidental events and the cumulative effects of the mining operation in relation to any natural hazards that could occur, including, but not limited to, volcanism, seismic activity, cyclone/hurricane, tsunamis, etc. and the measures that will be taken to avoid, remedy or mitigate those impacts.

## 7.9 Noise and light

Provide a description of the expected emissions of noise and light from the proposed operations ~~[and any potential environmental effects, especially any impacts of noise on avoidance, masking and availability of prey (e.g., on marine mammals) and fish. Provide a description of the measures that will be taken to ensure compliance with applicable environmental quality objectives and quantitative thresholds for noise and light levels for relevant fauna, in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.]~~ [The deleted part has been suggested moved to section 8.6.1.1. See facilitator comment for more information].

## 7.10 Greenhouse gas emissions and climate change

Provide an assessment of gas and chemical emissions from proposed operations, relative to emissions both natural and anthropogenic activities. Subsections should include estimated greenhouse gas emissions and

a greenhouse gas emissions assessment where appropriate. ~~[Effects of mining on ocean climate mitigation functions and services should be described (including any anticipated alteration of CO<sub>2</sub> uptake and sequestration, or nutrient cycling.)]~~ [The deleted part has been suggested moved to section 8.6.1.2. See facilitator comment for more information].

### **7.13 Cumulative impacts**

Provide a description of the source of nature and extent of any interactions between various potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects across the environment. Where they may have cumulative effects, they must be considered on both spatial and temporal scales over the lifetime of the proposed mining operation and in the post-Closure period and alternatives considered.

#### **7.13.1 Proposed operations impacts**

Cumulative within the mining site and Impact Area of the mining proposed herein.

#### **7.13.2 Regional operation impacts**

Cumulative between activities, actions, or natural phenomena, where known in the region.

### **7.14 Other issues**

Outline here other, more general issues, as applicable.

### **7.15 Summary of residual effects**

Summarize key findings on potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects, environmental management measures, and any potential impacts and effects to areas under any State's national jurisdiction. A table may be a useful summary format to pull together the above elements in a simple visual mode. The table should include a column outlining the measures that will be taken to address potential environmental impacts and manage residual effects and ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

## **8. Assessment of ~~[effects and]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ impacts ~~[and Environmental Effects]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~ on the biological environment and proposed Mitigation**

Provide a detailed description and evaluation ~~[of the sufficiency of available information]~~ ~~[DOSI]~~ of potential impacts and Environmental Effects of the proposed operation and alternatives considered in section 3.7 ~~[which could degrade the current status and functioning of]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ ~~[to]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~ the biological environment components identified in section 5 in the ~~[contract area, the]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ mine site and ~~the~~ ~~[total]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ Impact Areas ~~[with special regard to the Impact and Preservation Reference Areas]~~ ~~[Germany]~~. Consider impacts and effects that could happen during the entire lifespan of the project i.e. construction/development (pre-commissioning), operational and decommissioning phases and following Closure of the site. The potential for accidental events and natural hazards should be considered.

The detail in this section is expected to be based on a prior environmental risk assessment prepared, reviewed, and revised in accordance with [\[Regulation 47ter\]\[Annex IVbis\(h\)\] and respective Standards and Guidelines for Environmental Impact Assessment Process](#). The ~~[[description]] [Germany - delete]~~ analysis shall be structured by the depth ranges described in section 5 and shall for each component, provide a description of:

(a) The ~~[hazard: detailing the] [Germany]~~ source (action, temporal and spatial duration) ~~[of the risk] [Germany]~~ and nature ~~[and severity of] [Germany]~~ of the ~~[disturbance] [ecological effect] [Germany]~~;

(a)bis ~~[Exposure characterization: evaluation and probability of exposure of the ecosystem components (see section 5) to the identified hazard,] [Germany]~~ ~~[The] [Germany - delete]~~ nature and extent (temporal and spatial) of any actual or potential impact, including cumulative effects;

(a)ter The methods used to determine impacts (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling or other analyses undertaken);

~~[(a)quart Risk characterization: Evaluation of the probability, frequency and severity of potential adverse environmental and health effects] [Germany]~~

(b) ~~[Risk evaluation and management: Document how decisions were taken to determine] [Germany]~~ Measures ~~[that will be taken] [Germany - delete]~~ to prevent, mitigate and manage such impacts with reference to the submitted Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan; and

(c) The unavoidable residual impacts that will remain, including their significance and expected longevity.

(d) An evaluation of the impacts and effects against the applicable environmental goals and objectives, ~~[and]~~ indicators and thresholds as identified in the ~~[the]~~ relevant environmental standards and Guidelines and in the applicable Regional Environmental Management Plan. (e) The extent to which any potential impacts and Environmental Effects may occur in areas beyond the contract area or under a State's national jurisdiction.

The detail in this section is expected to be based on the ~~[scoping]~~ environmental risk assessment, carried out according to the relevant regulations, Standards and Guidance that will have identified the main impacts, and thus the elements that need to be emphasized in the environmental impact assessment.

## 8.1 Key messages

This section should provide an overview of the key content covered in section 8.

### 8.1bis Description of the key sources of environmental impacts

This section should describe the key sources of ~~[risks and] [Germany]~~ impacts on the marine environment from the mining operation.

### 8.2 Description of ~~[hazards and the nature of] [Germany]~~ potential impact~~s]~~~~[Germany]~~ ~~[categories] [Germany - delete]~~

Provide an overview and description of the categories of potential impacts caused by the hazards arising from the proposed mining operation and alternatives considered. This should introduce the major types of impacts and

their effects [on the biotic environment](#), such as habitat removal, the crushing of animals, the creation of sediment plumes, noise and light, etc. and be referred to in subsequent descriptions and evaluations of potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects from the [hazards posed by the](#) proposed operation and alternatives considered. A description should be included of any lessons learned from activities during the exploratory phase of the programme (e.g., mining system component tests).

Key elements that need to be included are:

(a) Description of the major types of potential impacts, such as habitat removal, the biological effects of sediment plumes and dewatering plumes, noise, light, etc. [\[Each impact has to be characterized by its nature, duration and extent of any actual or potential exposure, including cumulative effects and taking into account ecological and biologically significant areas, rare and fragile species and habitats.\] \[Germany\]](#) These impact categories should be used in subsequent descriptions and evaluations of potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects from the proposed operations.

(b) Descriptions of impact studies carried out during exploration (e.g., component testing and the resulting observations from the associated monitoring);

(b bis) Descriptions of test mining studies undertaken prior to the application; Descriptions of the results of any environmental risk assessments, which should be included as separate reports or appendices where appropriate; and

(c) Descriptions of the methods applied to describe and quantify impact pathways and assessment [in line with the relevant Standard and Guideline, i.e. EIA Guideline](#).

## **8.2 bis Description of impact pathways**

The preferred approach for this template is to include for each impact pathway an overarching description of:

(a) The methods used to determine the pathway from impact to receptor (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling undertaken);

(b) The source(s) of impact

(c) The nature, spatial extent and temporal extent of potential impact(s), including cumulative impacts;

(d) Measures that will be taken to avoid, minimise or mitigate such impacts; and

(e) The unavoidable (residual) impacts that will remain, including their expected longevity and outline the measures that will be taken to ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

## **8.2 ter [\[Receptors and \[\\[Assessment of risks and\\] \\[Germany – replace\\]\]\(#\) impacts](#)**

[The Assessment of risks and impacts must be done in as much detail as possible for the following community][Germany] Receptors [for which this must be done include] [including] [Germany – replace]:

- (a) Microbial communities
- (b) Phytoplankton ~~[- zooplankton / nekton]~~
  - [\(b\)bis zooplankton and micronekton](#)
  - [\(b\)ter nekton](#)
  - [\(b\)quart benthopelagic fauna, including scavengers](#)
- (c) Meiofauna (infauna / epifauna)
- (d) Macrofauna (infauna / epifauna / demersal fish)
- (e) Megafauna, including surface/near-surface fish such as tuna, and seabirds, marine turtles and marine mammals

As appropriate, these receptors are to be considered:

- (a) at the surface (from the surface down to a depth of 200 metres)
- (b) [midwater] [for the water column] [Germany] (from a depth of 200 metres down to 50 metres above the sea floor) [separate for the different water masses, including deep diving and migratory species] [Germany]
- (c) up to an altitude of 50 metres above the sea floor, including zooplankton, [scavengers,] [Germany] nekton, mesopelagic and bathypelagic fishes and deep-diving mammals.

Impact[s] [Germany – delete] [categories] [Germany] to be considered include:

- (a) Sediment plume generation [(frequency, spatial extent, composition and concentration)] [Germany],
- (b) discharge [of water] [plumes] [Germany – replace]  
[\[\(b\) bis Seafloor destruction\] \[Germany\]](#)
- (c) Noise and light [emissions] [Germany]
- (d) Greenhouse gas emissions and climate change emissions (including estimated greenhouse gas emissions and a greenhouse gas emissions assessment where appropriate)

Effects to be considered include:

- (a) changes in temperature [and] [Germany - delete] salinity[, stratification and mixing] [Germany] of water [column] [Germany],
- (b) optical characteristics / water clarity
- (c) turbidity / particulate loading
- (d) sediment characteristics (including changes in the sediment composition, grain size, density and pore-water profiles)



- (e) [Effects of] [Germany] discharge plumes [(frequency, spatial extent, composition and concentration, etc.)] [Germany – delete] [contamination and pollution, turbidity, temperature change] [Germany]
- (f) [Effects of] [Germany] primary sediment plume [(frequency, spatial extent, composition and concentration)] [Germany – delete] [(gravity currents, contamination and pollution, turbidity, temperature change)] [Germany]
- (g) dissolved gas levels
- (h) nutrient levels
- (i) For a sea floor massive sulphide project, the modification of vent-fluid discharges, if present, should be addressed.

**8.6 [Summary of] [Germany] Ecosystem/community level [effects caused by the project] [Germany]**

[Analyse and] [Germany] Describe [estimated] [Germany] [potential and probable] [Germany] effects on the ecosystem [and ecosystem dynamics during the term of the contract and longterm.] [Germany] [or where linkages between the various components above are known.]

**8.6.1 [Potential] [Other effects and] [Germany] impacts [and issues] [Germany – delete] to be addressed**

8.6.1.1 Noise and light

Provide a description of the expected emissions of noise and light from the proposed operations and any potential environmental effects, especially any impacts of noise on avoidance, masking and availability of prey (e.g., on marine mammals) and fish. [Indicate the range of light pollution and potential effects in the different depths.] [Germany] Provide a description of the measures that will be taken to ensure compliance with applicable environmental quality objectives and quantitative thresholds for noise and light levels for relevant fauna, in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines. [This part has been inserted from section 7.9. See facilitator comment for more information].

8.6.1.2 Greenhouse gas emissions and climate change Effects of mining on ocean climate mitigation functions and services should be described (including any anticipated alteration of CO2 uptake and sequestration, or nutrient cycling.) [This part has been inserted from section 7.10. See facilitator comment for more information].

**[8.6.2 Environmental management measures to mitigate impacts] [move to section 8.7bis] [Germany]**

**8.7 Cumulative effects**

The nature and extent of any interactions between various impacts where they may have cumulative effects must be considered. This should include an evaluation of the spatial and temporal intensity of mining and its effects on other impacts including existing uses considered in the Assessment and

described in Section 9 of the Environmental Impact Statement as well as an evaluation of the resulting cumulative effects to the ecological balance of the marine environment, including the spatial and temporal extent of such effects. Describe how spatial and temporal cumulation will differ between faunal groups and different habitats.

Provide a description of the source of nature and extent of any interactions between various potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects across the environment. Where they may have cumulative effects, they must be considered on both spatial and temporal scales over the lifetime of the proposed mining operation and in the post-Closure period and alternatives considered.

#### **8.7.1 Proposed operations effects**

Cumulative effects [of the proposed mining with all other known influences and effects, including from other mining operations.] [Germany] within the scope of the site and Impact Area of the mining proposed herein.

#### **8.7.2 Regional operation effects**

Cumulative effects [on a regional scale] [Germany] [between] [Germany – delete] [due to ISA-related and other] [Germany] activities to be analysed by the Secretariat according to the REMPs, [where known in the region]. [The analysis will periodically be provided in a regional quality status report.] [Germany]

**[8.7bis Mitigation hierarchy: measures to avoid, reduce and mitigate the effects caused by the projects (moved from 8.6.2)]**

##### **8.7bis.1 Decision-making**

Explain here how decisions were taken to mitigate environmental effects, and what were the goals to be achieved.

##### **8.7bis.2 Measures taken to avoid, reduce and mitigate effects, including alternatives**

##### **8.7bis.3 Expected unavoidable residual effects**

##### **[8.7bis.4 Restoration and rehabilitation measures (moved from 8.9)]**

Practicable restoration and rehabilitation of the project area – approach. The restoration and rehabilitation of the project area should be considered as a part of the mitigation hierarchy. At this stage in the Environmental Assessment Process, there might be no final knowledge on the potential of restoration and rehabilitation in the area, so a plan should be proposed to develop this knowledge throughout the lifespan of the project and to prepare the decision on the issue at the end of the project. This should be done in accordance with relevant Standards and taking into account relevant guidelines.] [Germany]  
[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete 8.7bis.4 entirely]

#### **8.8 Summary of residual effects**

Summarize key findings on potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects, environmental management measures, residual effects, and any potential impacts and effects to areas under any State's national jurisdiction. Information on potential recovery times following disturbance and the longevity of residual effects should be included. This will

give readers an understanding of the temporal component and efficacy of proposed mitigation measures. A table may be a useful summary format to pull together the above elements in a simple visual mode. The table should include a column outlining the measures that will be taken to address potential environmental impacts and residual effects and ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.

8.9 Practicable restoration and rehabilitation of the project area – approach  
The restoration and rehabilitation of the project area should be considered as a part of the mitigation hierarchy. At this stage in the Environmental Assessment Process, there might be no final knowledge on the potential of restoration and rehabilitation in the area, so a plan should be proposed to develop this knowledge throughout the lifespan of the project and to prepare the decision on the issue at the end of the project. This should be done in accordance with relevant Standards and taking into account relevant guidelines.

#### Alt. 8.9 Accidental events and Natural hazards

Discuss impacts to the biological environment of accidental events and the cumulative effects of the mining operation and natural hazards and the measures that will be taken to avoid, remedy or mitigate those impacts.

[Germany – delete 8.9 and Alt 8.9 entirely]

## **9. Assessment of impacts on the socioeconomic and sociocultural environment and proposed Mitigation**

Provide a detailed description and evaluation of potential impacts and Environmental Effects of the operation to the socioeconomic and sociocultural components identified in section 6. This should include projections on the potential impacts in national waters outside the mining area and should also consider the entire lifespan of the project i.e. construction/development (pre-commissioning), operational (including maintenance) and decommissioning phases. A description of the benefits to mankind may be included. Attitudes towards, and perceptions of, the proposed project are among the variables that should be considered in determining the significance of impacts. The potential for accidental events [and natural hazards] should also be considered.

### **9.1 Key messages**

This section should provide an overview of the key content covered in section 9.

#### **9.1 bis Description of potential impact categories**

Provide an overview and description of the categories of potential impacts caused by the proposed mining operation. Key elements that need to be included are:

(a) the major types of potential impacts, such as habitat removal, the creation of sediment plumes, noise, light, etc. These impact categories should

be used in subsequent descriptions and evaluations of potential environmental impacts and Environmental Effects from the proposed operations.

(b) Descriptions of impact studies carried out during exploration (e.g., component testing and the resulting observations from the associated monitoring);

(c) bis Descriptions of test mining studies undertaken prior to the application;

(d) Descriptions of the results of any environmental risk assessments, which should be included as separate reports or appendices where appropriate; and

(e) Descriptions of the methods applied to describe and quantify impact pathways and assessment.

### **9.1 ter Description of impact pathways**

The preferred approach for this template is to include for each impact pathway an overarching description of:

(a) The source

(a)ter The methods used to determine impacts (including the assumptions and limitations of any impact modelling undertaken);

(a)bis The nature, spatial extent and temporal extent of potential impacts, including cumulative impacts;

(b) Measures that will be taken to avoid, minimise or mitigate such impacts, including a comparative analysis of how measures taken may differ across alternative operations considered;

(c) The unavoidable (residual) impacts that will remain, including their expected longevity. The detail in this section is expected to be based on the scoping environmental risk assessment that will have identified the main impacts, and thus the elements that need to be emphasized in the environmental impact assessment; and

(d) The extent to which any potential impacts and effects may occur in areas under a State's national jurisdiction.

## **9.2 Impact identification**

### **9.2.1 Impacts on |E|existing human uses**

For each of the following marine uses, describe:

(a) Potential impacts and effects and issues to be addressed;

(b) Environmental management measures to Mitigate impacts and effects;

(c) Residual impacts and effects; and

(d) Potential impacts and effects in areas under any State's national jurisdiction.

#### **9.2.1.1 Fisheries and biological conditions**

A description of potential impacts, e.g., effects from light and noise on fisheries and biological conditions, with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts.

### 9.2.1.2bis Submarine cables

A description of potential impacts on ~~[known]~~ [NORI, TOML, BMJ] non-project-related submarine cables occurring within the project area, along with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts.

### 9.2.1.3 Tourism

A description of potential impacts and issues to be addressed, along with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts.

### 9.2.1.4 Marine scientific research

A description of potential impacts and issues to be addressed, along with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts ~~[~~ [according to the IALA's regulations.](#)].

### ~~[9.2.1.5bis]~~ 9.2.2 Impacts on Sociocultural values and uses

A description of potential impacts and issues to be addressed pertaining to sociocultural uses of the area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities), along with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts.

### ~~[9.2.1.5ter]~~ 9.2.3 Impacts on Ecosystem Functions and Services

A description of potential impacts of the operation on any ecosystem [functions and](#) services, for example, carbon burial and sequestration, [taking into account the relevant Guidance.](#)

### ~~[9.2.1.6]~~ 9.2.4 Other impacts

List other potential impacts that are not related to the above (e.g., submarine cables, other mineral Exploration or Exploitation projects).

### ~~[9.2.1bis]~~ 9.2.5 Impacts on Planned uses

Describe the potential impacts on planned uses of the area for which information is publicly available (e.g. fisheries, maritime traffic, tourism, marine scientific research, submarine cables, area-based management tools).

### 9.[2.6~~2~~] Impacts on Area-based management tools

A description of potential impacts and [cross-boundary](#) issues to be addressed, along with proposed management measures and a description of residual impacts.

### 9.[3] [Impacts on](#) Sites of an archaeological or historical nature

Describe, as applicable, potential impacts to sites of archaeological, ~~[paleontological]~~ or historical significance that are known to occur within the potential area of impact, along with proposed management measures, [taking into account the work of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization referred to in Regulation 35\(2\)](#) ~~[and a description of residual impacts.]~~

### **9.3.Alt. Impacts on Sites of an archaeological, or historical or cultural nature**

Describe, as applicable, potential impacts to sites of archaeological, or historical or cultural significance that are known to occur within the potential area of impact, along with proposed management measure. [IWG on UCH]

## **9.4 Gender Impact analysis**

Assess and analyse how the proposed operations may impact on gender roles and relationships.

### ~~9.5 Socioeconomic and sociocultural issues~~

~~This section will highlight and provide a description of socioeconomic and sociocultural benefits or impacts, including any applicable social initiatives.]~~

## **9.5.1 Summary of socioeconomic and sociocultural environment**

Summarize findings on management measures, residual effects, and any potential impacts and effects, (including to sociocultural conditions). A table may be a useful summary format to pull together the above elements in a simple visual mode. Potential cumulative effects should also be included.

### **9.5bis. Assessment of Uncertainty] [(suggest to move to 10bis)] [Germany]**

#### **9.5bis.1 Uncertainty Assessment] [(suggest to move to 10bis.1)] [Germany]**

Provide a detailed description and evaluation of any uncertainties in the assessments described in section 7, 8, and 9. This uncertainty assessment shall:

- (1) Identify any relevant areas of uncertainty and gaps in knowledge and their implications for the environmental impact assessment and its findings; and,
- (2) Describe the measures taken in the environmental impact assessment to reduce uncertainty in its findings to as low as reasonably practicable.

#### **9.5bis.2 Addressing Significant Uncertainty**

Where significant uncertainty exists despite the efforts described in 9bis.1(b), provide a detailed description of environmental monitoring and management measures for managing and reducing uncertainty during the proposed operations, to be incorporated into the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan and describe how these will enable the applicant to ensure compliance with relevant Rules of the Authority.

## **9.6 Accidental events and Natural hazards**

Discuss any impacts of accidental events and the cumulative effects of the mining operation and natural hazards, and the measures that will be taken to avoid, remedy or mitigate those impacts.

### **9.6.1 Potential impacts and issues to be addressed**

### **9.6.2 Environmental management measures to mitigate impacts**

### **9.6.3 Residual effects**

Provide a description of any residual impacts that may remain following the application of mitigation measures, including the expected longevity of those impacts, and outline the measures that will be taken to ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines. ]

[Germany – delete 9.5bis – 9.6.3]

## **10. Hazards arising from natural, accidental and discharge events**

This section should outline the possibility/probability of accidental events and natural hazards occurring, an assessment of the impact they may have, to the mine site and impact area, the measures taken to prevent or respond to such an event and an assessment of the residual impact should an event occur. This should include an overview of potential environmentally hazardous discharges resulting from accidental and extreme natural events as these are fundamentally different from normal operational discharges of wastes and wastewaters. Reference should be made to the ERCP.

For each component include:

- (a) The nature and extent of any impact;
- (b) Measures that will be taken to avoid, mitigate or minimize such impact; and
- (c) Residual impacts.

### **10.1 Extreme weather**

For example: hurricanes/cyclones.

### **10.2 Natural hazards**

For example: volcanic eruptions, seismic events.

### **10.3 Accidental events**

For example: leakage or spillage of hazardous material, fires and explosions, and collisions, including potential loss of equipment.

### **10.4 Maritime safety and interactions with shipping**

Provide a description of predicted maritime safety issues and potential interactions with other vessels from the proposed activities with reference to compliance with the relevant conventions.

### **10.5 Emergency response and contingency plan**

Provide a description of an emergency response and contingency plan.

### **10.6 Waste management**

Provide a description of proposed vessel waste management, with reference to compliance with relevant conventions, legislation and principles, and methods of cleaner production and energy balance.

#### **10.7 Blast Water management**

Provide a description of proposed vessel blast water management where applicable, with reference to compliance with relevant rules and principles, and methods of cleaner production and energy balance.

#### **[Germany] [10. Hazards arising from natural, accidental and discharge events]**

Discuss any impacts of accidental events and the cumulative effects of the mining operation and natural hazards, and the measures that will be taken to avoid, remedy or mitigate those impacts.

#### **10bis Assessment of Uncertainty (moved from 9.5bis.)**

##### **10bis.1 Uncertainty Assessment**

Provide a detailed description and evaluation of any uncertainties in the assessments described in section 7, 8, and 9. This uncertainty assessment shall:

- (1) Identify any relevant areas of uncertainty and gaps in knowledge and their implications for the environmental impact assessment and its findings; and,
- (2) Describe the measures taken in the environmental impact assessment to reduce uncertainty in its findings to as low as reasonably practicable.

##### **10bis.2 Addressing Significant Uncertainty (moved from 9.5bis.2)**

Where significant uncertainty exists despite the efforts described in 9bis.1(b), provide a detailed description of environmental monitoring and management measures for managing and reducing uncertainty during the proposed operations, to be incorporated into the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan and describe how these will enable the applicant to ensure compliance with relevant Rules of the Authority.

#### **10ter Holistic cumulative impact assessment and issues to be addressed (moved from 9.6.1)**

#### **10quart Environmental management measures to avoid, reduce and mitigate impacts (moved from 8.7 and 9.6.2)**

#### **10quin Analysis of residual effects against the RRP, Standards and Guidelines of the Authority (moved from 9.6.3)**

Provide a description of any residual impacts that may remain following the application of mitigation measures, including the expected longevity of those impacts, and outline the measures that will be taken to ensure long-term site compliance with the environmental quality objectives, quantitative thresholds, and indicators in accordance with these regulations and the applicable Standard, and taking into account the relevant Guidelines.



## **11. Environmental management, monitoring and reporting**

Provide sufficient information to enable the Authority to anticipate possible environmental management, monitoring and reporting requirements for an environmental approval. Information listed include a description of the applicant's environmental management system and should reflect the proponent's environmental policy and the translation of that policy to meet the requirements of this section and previous sections during different stages of the project life (i.e., from construction to decommissioning and closure and the post-closure period).

The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan is a separate report from the Environmental Impact Statement, but this could be a useful opportunity to highlight some of the key issues from the Statement that will be addressed in the full Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan. Information detailed in this section should include the headings set out below.

### **11.1 Organizational structure and responsibilities**

This section should show how the Contractor's environmental team fits into its overall organizational structure. Responsibilities and professional qualifications of key personnel should be outlined.

### **11.2 Environmental management system**

A full environmental management system shall exist at the time the Environmental Impact Statement is submitted. The applicant has to demonstrate that it will be capable of managing appropriate relevant environmental questions and outline the standards that will be considered and/or aligned with when developing the system for the project.

### **11.3 Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan**

An Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan will be submitted as a separate document for the Authority's approval prior to the commencement of mining operations. This section should provide an overview of what the Plan would entail. With reference to, the headings set out below and Annex VIII of the Exploitation Regulations of the Authority.

#### **11.3.1 Mitigation and management**

Summarize the mitigation and management measures that will be taken, based on the impact minimization and mitigation analysis undertaken as part of the environmental impact assessment, and as described in the environmental impact statement in Sections 7, 8, and 9.

#### **11.3.3 Closure Plan**

A Closure Plan will be submitted as a separate document for the Authority's approval prior to the commencement of mining operations. However, this section should provide an overview of what the Closure Plan will entail, including decommissioning, continued monitoring and rehabilitation measures, if applicable.

### **11.4 Reporting**

Outline how [information and] [Germany] data collected at the mine site and impact area will meet reporting requirements and best scientific practices

outlined in Annex VII on the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.

#### 11.4.1 Monitoring

Outline how the results of monitoring studies will be reported to the Authority, as well as the frequency and format of data releases in accordance with the regulations and any relevant Standards and taking into account any relevant Guidelines.

#### 11.4.2 Incident reporting

Outline how Incidents will be reported and managed.

## 12. Product stewardship

Provide a brief description of the intended use of the mineral-bearing ore once it leaves the Area. The description should also address how the Contractor will minimize health, safety, environmental, ~~and~~ socioeconomic and sociocultural effects of the intended product or products to meet standards for environmental management, and should address the following potential impacts:

- (a) Energy and materials consumption;
- (b) Waste generation;
- (c) Toxic substances;
- (d) Air and water emissions.

The intention is not to provide a full and highly detailed account, but, where information is known about environmental impacts, these impacts should be described briefly here.

## 13. Consultation [and engagement] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

\_\_\_\_ Consultations [and engagements] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] shall be inclusive, transparent and open to all relevant stakeholders, including States, global, regional, subregional and sectoral bodies, as well as civil society, the scientific community, indigenous peoples and local communities, [and in accordance with this regulation and the related Standard and/or Guideline.] [Germany].

### 13.1 Consultation methods

Provide a description of the nature and extent, participation and outcomes of consultation(s) that have taken place with relevant Stakeholders, and how their ~~substantive and relevant~~ comments have been addressed in the Environmental Impact Assessment. This will include the description of the mechanisms [and criteria] [Germany] used to manage the diversity of Stakeholders addressed and comments provided.

This includes describing the mechanism(s) used to consult with different groups and how this aligns with the relevant Standards and Guidelines, also incorporating criteria for Preservation Reference Zones and Impact Reference zones.

### 13.2 Stakeholders

List Stakeholders that have been consulted and explain the process by which Stakeholders were identified. This should include a brief description of the Stakeholders and a historic overview of any previous activities conducted by the Stakeholders in The Area.

### 13.3 Public consultation and disclosure

Provide a description of the goals and consultation workshops/meetings that occurred prior to the preparation of the report, including outlining any concerns and comments made by Stakeholders and how these will be addressed, and, if not, describe the reasons for that decision.

### 13.4.3bis Commission consultation

Summarize the Legal and Technical Commission's recommendations on the Scoping Report and proposed Terms of Reference for the applicant's environmental impact assessment submitted to the Commission, and justification for any deviation either from those submitted Terms of Reference, or from the Commission's recommendations. ~~[If the Legal and Technical Commission has not issued a recommendation concerning the Scoping Report and proposed Terms of Reference for the applicant's environmental impact assessment, then the applicant is to summarize efforts taken to consult with the Legal and Technical Commission and any response received.]~~

### 13.5.3 ~~ter~~ [Germany] Stakeholder and coastal State [China - delete] Consultation

Describe how comments received under Stakeholder consultation have been or will be taken into account, or why they have not been taken into account, and the reasons for that decision. The summary should be based on the detailed response of the applicant to each consulted party and be available for review.

### 13.4 Continuing consultation and disclosure

Outline any further consultation with Stakeholders that has been deemed necessary and is being planned.

## 14. Glossary and abbreviations

Include a glossary of terms, acronyms and abbreviations used throughout the document. The glossary should include definitions for, and key terms defined in the regulations so as to ensure that users of the Environmental Impact Statement, including the decision-makers and relevant stakeholders, have a clear understanding of the intention behind the use of certain terms in the Environmental Impact Statement. The glossary should be included in the table of contents for the Environmental Impact Statement and referenced in the introduction section.

## 15. Study team

Outline the people involved in carrying out the environmental impact assessment studies and in writing the Environmental Impact Statement. If independent scientists or other experts were involved in any of the work, they should be listed. [\[Any remuneration should be mentioned.\]](#) [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] The names, [current and validated contact information,] occupational qualifications and their role in the generation of the Environmental Impact Statement of such people should also be included. [A statement that those individuals so named concur with the content of the report should be included.] Any conflict of interest must be identified, disclosed in detail in this section including the way it was and continues to be managed.

## 16. References

Evidence obtained from outside sources should be documented throughout the Environmental Impact Statement, with the use of footnotes or other suitable reference mechanism. In addition, all sources used in preparation of the Environmental Impact Statement (including those specifically referenced in the body of the document) should be listed in bibliography format, with full details of the source (including website addresses, if applicable). This enables users of the Environmental Impact Statement to review the supporting documentation independently.

## 17. Appendices

The appendices section should include a list of all the technical reports carried out for parts of the environmental impact assessment or that are used in support of any aspect of the environmental impact assessment (such as prior risk assessments or monitoring activities conducted as part of exploration contracts). Copies of these reports should be provided as appendices to the Environmental Impact Statement, with clear indications as to which section(s) the document is being provided to support.

## Annex (IV bis) [IWG ENV]

### Scoping Report

#### Explanation / comment

- This entire annex has been moved to paragraph 4 of the new regulation 47ter following the outline by the intersessional working group on streamlining the regulations on the Environmental Impact Assessment Process, the Environmental Impact Assessment, the Environmental Impact Assessment Scoping Report and the Environmental Impact Statement. From there, further parts can be moved to the relevant Standard and Guideline as suggested in the Matrix I have introduced.
- For an overview of these new regulations see my comments to the new regulation 47 or in my initial statement.
- I note that no suggested amendments to this annex was received after our last meeting.

~~[A Scoping Report should be submitted to the Authority in accordance with the Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines, and should include:~~

~~A brief description of the proposed Exploitation activities and any ancillary features, including what is known or anticipated about where the mining will occur within a Contract Area and the mining machinery to be used.~~

~~A description and overview of tentative timelines and deadlines for the proposed Exploration and any associated activities.~~

~~(e) A description of what is known about the environmental setting, including Underwater Cultural Heritage, for the project (Contract Area and regional setting),~~

~~(e-bis) A description of information for the project that is not yet known but must be, or should be known, including baseline data, and a plan for gaining that information prior to commencement of the exploitation activities;~~

~~(d) Summary of existing environmental baseline studies, and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of indigenous peoples and local communities including a description of methodology for collecting and analyzing the baseline data,~~

~~(d)bis Summary of gaps in environmental baseline including description of methodology for collecting and analyzing additional baseline data to inform the Environmental Impact Assessment~~

~~(e) Description of the technical, spatial and temporal boundaries for the Environmental Impact Assessment,~~

~~(f) A list of any assumptions relied upon and identification and quantification of the uncertainties at this stage of the Environmental Impact Assessment, how they are being addressed, and assessment of their implications to the environmental risk assessment findings~~

~~(g) A preliminary impact analysis which categorizes the important issues into high-risk, medium-risk and low-risk for the Environmental Impact~~

~~Assessment to address and evaluates the need for further information, taking into account the environmental risk assessment;~~

~~(h) An environmental risk assessment, which includes:~~

~~(i) The identification of potential hazards;~~

~~(ii) The environmental consequence for each identified potential impact(s) (the magnitude of the impact(s), the duration of the impacts, and the receptor characteristics);~~

~~(ii bis) A description of the cumulative effects of the project, combined with other authorized, anticipated, or expected activities, actions, or natural phenomena;~~

~~(iii) The likelihood of the consequence occurring;~~

~~(iv) The confidence levels of experts, in order to account for uncertainty and a precautionary approach;~~

~~(i) A description of the methodology employed in the environmental risk assessment~~

~~(j) A description of the results of the environmental risk assessment, including identification of high priority risks for local and regional ecosystem functioning over short and long term, requiring particular focus in the subsequent impact assessment phase of the Environmental Impact Assessment;~~

~~(k) A preliminary Stakeholder list that proactively identifies likely Stakeholders, and an indicative schedule and methodology for engagement with key Stakeholders throughout the Environmental Impact Assessment process, taking into account to not to publish personal information of identified stakeholders;~~

~~(l) A report of consultations undertaken during scoping;~~

~~(m) Consideration of reasonable alternative means of carrying out the project that will be examined in detail in the Environmental Impact Assessment, including a no action alternative, and any others that have been not carried forward for further analysis at this stage, and the reasons for that selection;~~

~~(n) A draft Terms of Reference for the Environmental Impact Assessment, which identifies the activities and studies planned for the Environmental Impact Assessment, and any additional baseline data that will be required;~~

~~(o) Explanation for how the activities and studies planned for the Environmental Impact Assessment will be sufficient to determine likely environmental impacts, and to propose Mitigation and management strategies and monitoring methodology;~~

~~(p) A brief description of the socioeconomic and sociocultural aspects of the project, including sociocultural uses of the project area (e.g., traditional navigation routes, migratory paths of culturally significant marine species, sacred sites and waters associated with ritual or ceremonial activities of Indigenous Peoples and local communities);~~

~~(q) A note describing and explaining any divergence from relevant ISA Guidelines.]~~

|

## Annex V [President's Text]

### Emergency Response and Contingency Plan

An Emergency Response and Contingency Plan must:

(a) Be prepared in accordance with Good Industry Practice and the relevant regulations, Standards and Guidelines;

(b) Provide an effective plan of action for the applicant's efficient response to Incidents and events, including processes by which the applicant will work in close cooperation with the Authority, ~~[coastal States,]~~ other competent international organizations ~~[as well as other persons with the relevant expertise or knowhow]~~ and, where applicable, emergency response organizations; and

(c) Include:

(i) The overall aims and objectives and arrangements for controlling the risk of Incidents;

~~(ii) Relevant codes, standards and protocols;~~

(ii) Organizational structure and personnel roles and responsibilities;

~~(iii)~~ Details of individuals authorized to initiate response mechanism(s);

~~(v) Details of control mechanisms in place during the course of normal operations;~~

~~(vi)~~ Details of the emergency response equipment;

~~(vii)~~ Details of the safety management system relevant to emergency response;

~~(viii)~~ Details of the environmental management system relevant to emergency response;

~~(ix) A description of the mining operations and equipment, including emergency response equipment;~~

~~(x)~~ A description of all foreseeable Incidents, an assessment of their likelihood and consequences and associated control measures;

~~(xi) The number of persons that can be present on the mining vessel(s) at any time;~~

~~(xii)~~ A description of the arrangements to protect persons on the mining vessel(s), and to ensure their safe escape, evacuation and rescue [in the event of an Incident that presents risks to their safety];

~~(xiii)~~ Details of arrangements for the maintenance of control systems to monitor the Marine Environment in the event of an Incident;

~~(xiv) Details of the emergency response plan;~~

~~(xv) Details of the known natural Marine Environmental conditions that may influence the efficiency of response equipment or the effectiveness of a response effort;~~

~~(xvi)~~ Information and measures relating to the prevention of Incidents which could result in Serious Harm to the Marine Environment;



(xvii) An assessment of [potential] pollution hazards and the measures to prevent or reduce such hazards, including an assessment of unintentional and unauthorised Mining Discharges and measures to control such discharges;

~~(xviii) An assessment of Mining Discharges and measures to control such discharges;~~

~~[(xviii 1)An assessment of environmental impacts (surface, midwater, benthic) created by the emergency];~~

(xix) Details of the warning mechanisms intended to alert the Authority, together with the type of information to be contained in such warning;

(xx) Details of arrangements for coordinating any emergency response, including coordination with the Authority, other service providers, maritime search and rescue authorities, and nearby vessels, citing the course for such arrangements, where relevant;

(xxi) Details of training programmes for personnel relating to emergency prevention of response;

~~(xxii) A description of the monitoring of performance under the plan;~~

(xxiii) Details of audit and review processes relating to matters covered by this Plan, including regular testing of the Plan, significant changes to the Plan or the nature of operational activities, and the process of Incident investigation, recording and communication to the Authority and the Sponsoring State;

~~(xxiv) Details of the presence of other hazards/harmful substances; and~~

~~(xxv) An assessment of the likelihood of oil spills, leaks, etc., due to the normal operation of the mining vessel.~~

~~[(xxv 01) Details of the presence of other hazards/harmful substances;~~

~~[(xxv 1) A description of accountability and liability for environmental damage resulting from an [Emergency] [Incident]; and~~

~~(xix) Details of how the Plan is gender-responsive and responsive to persons from vulnerable groups”.]~~

**[(d) address:**

**(i) Cyberrisks;**

**(ii) Natech (i.e. Natural Hazards Triggering Technological Accidents);**

**(iii) Response to piracy, or other disruptive or potentially criminal activity at-sea.**

**(iii) Other factors that may affect risk rating over time e.g. climate change effects.] [PEW]**

*Note:* This plan is to be developed further under these regulations and in conjunction with other international organizations, flag States, coastal States and Sponsoring States and other entities that have relevant jurisdictional competence with regard to specific components of the plan.

**Comments/remarks**

- I have received a proposal for simplifying Annex V to keep the focus on it being the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan. For example, elements and descriptions of the environmental management system should be a part of the Environmental Management Plan.

## Annex VI [President's Text]

### Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan<sup>1</sup>

#### A

#### Health and Safety Plan

1. The Health and Safety Plan prepared under these regulations and this annex must:

(a) Be prepared in accordance with Good Industry Practice, and [relevant] [applicable] standards and guidelines;

(b) Comply with applicable national laws and regulations related to safety and health, including occupational safety and health, of personnel on vessels or installations engaged in activities in the Area, as well as applicable international rules and standards of the International Labour Organization and the International Maritime Organization related to safety and health, including occupational safety and health;

(c) [Be designed with the aim to] eEnsure that all personnel on a vessel or installation engaged in activities in the Area are provided with appropriate safety and health protection, including occupational safety and health protection, and live, work and train in a safe and hygienic environment [with roles and responsibilities allocated to relevant named personnel appropriately];

(d) Identify hazards and risks and include a comprehensive and integrated system for the management of the hazards and risks;

(e) Ensure that the risks to the health and safety of personnel on a vessel or installation engaged in activities in the Area are reduced to a level that is as low as reasonably practicable;

(f) Address all matters of safety of life and the prevention of occupational accidents, injuries and diseases that may be identified as hazards and risks for personnel on vessels or installations engaged in activities in the Area;

(g) Include and refer to the requirements of the Emergency Response and Contingency Plan under annex V of these regulations that relate to protecting and securing the safety and health of all persons on vessels or installations during an incident or emergency;

(h) Be worded in plain language [and, for submission as part of the application for approval of a plan of work, prepared in an official language of the Authority].

(i) [Be gender-sensitive, and specifically address women's safety, and freedom from harassment in the workplace, and consider other issues relevant to ensuring an equitable and inclusive working environment for a diverse workforce].

[(x) Take into account that no worker or trainee on board a vessel or installation engaged in the activities in the Area should be under the legal age of its nationality] [Norway]

---

<sup>1</sup> Annex VI on a Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan has been populated with the content of ISBA/26/C/17 and is here shown in a clean version.

2. The Health and Safety Plan must contain, as a minimum:
- (a) Requirements regarding minimum age and medical fitness for all personnel working and living on a vessel or installation;
  - (b) Requirements for the competency and training, including mandatory safety training, for all personnel working and living on a vessel or installation;
  - (c) A description of the measures taken to ensure that the vessel or installation is appropriately and sufficiently staffed ~~manned~~ in order to ensure that the vessel or installation is operated safely, efficiently and with due regard to security under all conditions;
  - (d) Information about the number and positions of all personnel working or living and working on a vessel or installation;
  - (e) Details of shore-based management providing assistance to the vessel or installation, including the designated person with responsibility and authority for monitoring the safety, health and security of operations and with direct access to the highest level of management;
  - (f) Definitions of levels of authority and effective lines of communication between and among shore staff and personnel on board vessels and installations;
  - (g) A description of the duties of the master and/or the person designated by the master to take responsibility for the implementation of and compliance with the occupational safety and health plan;
  - (h) A description of an effective fatigue management strategy determining operational workload requirements matching onboard manning levels and onshore support resources as well as work schedules indicating the maximum hours of work or minimum hours of rest for all personnel living and working on a vessel or installation;
  - (i) Information about the medical care available on the vessel or installation and the communication and response plans in the event that additional or onshore medical care is required;
  - (j) Arrangements and procedures for the safe transfer of personnel to and from or between vessels or installations;
  - (k) A description of [a#] foreseeable occupational hazards, an assessment of their likelihood and consequences, and associated preventative and control measures;
  - (l) Details regarding procedures for hazard identification and risk assessment on vessels or installations and the preventive and protective measures adopted based on the outcomes of those procedures;
  - (m) Details of procedures, plans and instructions for key operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessels and installations;
  - (n) A description of the equipment and tools to be provided to ensure that all operations are conducted in such a manner as to minimize any adverse effects on [the] [workers<sup>2</sup>] occupational safety and health [of personnel] to the extent necessary;
  - (o) Identification of critical equipment and technical systems that may result in hazardous situations;

(p) A description of crew accommodations and recreational facilities enabling and promoting the personnel's health and well-being, and information on their conformity to relevant rules, regulations and standards;

(q) Details of procedures to ensure that the vessels or installations are maintained in conformity with the provisions of the relevant rules and regulations and with any additional requirements that may be established;

(r) Details of audit and review processes, and information on procedures for the implementation of corrective action, including measures intended to prevent recurrence;

(s) Information on procedures ensuring that non-conformities, accidents and hazardous situations are reported, investigated and analysed with the objective of improving safety and prevention;

(t) Details of the procedures for the communication of information between the company/owner/operator and competent authorities and organizations, including the Authority;

(u) Details of the warning mechanisms intended to alert the Authority, together with the type of information to be contained in the warning;

(v) Details regarding consultations with personnel on vessels or installations and, where appropriate, the representative workers' organizations, on the preparation and implementation of the vessel's or installation's occupational safety and health policies and programmes and the procedures to ensure the continuous improvement of the policies to take into account changes in practice and technology;

(w) The occupational safety and health policy and programme for each vessel or installation engaged in activities in the Area;

[\[\(x\) Procedures for the periodic review of the plan and for its updating.\]](#)

3. An occupational safety and health policy and programme for a vessel or installation engaged in activities in the Area must contain the following to ensure a safety culture on board the vessel or installation:

(a) An occupational health, safety and environmental awareness plan to inform all personnel engaged in activities in the Area as to the occupational and environmental risks that may result from their work and the manner in which such risks are to be dealt with;

(b) A plan for the communication of the occupational health, safety and environmental awareness plan;

(c) A training plan to establish a safety culture for occupational safety and health for the vessel or installation, including mandatory personal safety training and specific task and equipment training, including the labelling of safety-related equipment;

(d) The roles and responsibilities of:

(i) Masters, officers or other personnel responsible for safety and health, including occupational safety and health on a vessel or installation;

(ii) The vessel or installation safety committee;

(iii) The worker representative on the safety committee.

(e) Requirements, policies and training on the vessel or installation to address the following:

(i) Food and water safety;

(ii) Hygiene and sanitary facilities;

(iii) Measures to prevent disease and vermin;

(iv) Safety, and structural and design features of the vessel or installation, including means of access and asbestos-related risks;

(v) Provision of personal protective equipment for personnel;

(vi) Machinery;

(vii) Ambient factors in the workplace and living accommodation on the vessel or installation, including exposure to noise, vibration, lighting, ultraviolet light, non-ionizing radiation and extreme temperatures;

(viii) Air quality, ventilation and the effects of other ambient factors, including tobacco smoke;

(ix) Structural features of the vessels or installations and means of access, and materials;

(x) Special safety measures on and below deck on vessels and installations;

(xi) Loading and unloading of equipment;

(xii) Fire prevention and fire-fighting;

(xiii) Anchors, chains and lines;

(xiv) Dangerous cargo and ballast;

(xv) Work in enclosed spaces;

(xvi) Exposure to biological hazards;

(xvii) Exposure to radiological hazards;

(xviii) Exposure to chemicals;

(xix) Ergonomic hazards;

(xx) Physical and mental effects of fatigue;

(xxi) Effects of drug and alcohol dependency;

(xxii) Communicable diseases;

(xxiii) HIV/AIDS protection and prevention;

(xxiv) Emergency and accident response;

(xxv) Harassment and bullying;

(xxvi) Safety and occupational safety and health training of younger workers and trainees on the vessel or installation;

(xxvii) Protection for lone and isolated workers;

(xxviii) Protection of women workers [\[and workers from vulnerable groups\]](#);

(xxix) Measures regarding the safety, and occupational safety and health, of any temporary workers.

4. The occupational safety and health policy and programme must also address:

~~[(a) Cyberrisks;] [Norway – delete]~~

(b) Procedures for the investigation, reporting and follow-up to any safety or occupational safety and health incidents, including occupational diseases;

(c) Protection of the privacy of personal and medical data of personnel.

## **B**

### **Maritime Security Plan**

1. The Maritime Security Plan prepared under these regulations and this annex must:

(a) Be prepared in accordance with Good Industry Practice and relevant standards and guidelines;

(b) Comply with applicable national laws and regulations related to maritime security, as well as applicable international rules and standards of the International Maritime Organization related to maritime security;

(c) Be developed based on a security assessment and risk analysis relating to all aspects of the vessel's or installation's operations in order to determine which of its parts are more vulnerable to maritime security incidents;

(d) Provide an effective plan to ensure the application of measures on board the vessel that are designed to protect the persons on board, the ancillary equipment, the cargo, the cargo transport units, the ship's stores ~~[or] [Australia – delete]~~ the vessel ~~[, and the operation itself] [Australia]~~ from the risks of a security incident;

(e) Be protected from unauthorized access or disclosure;

(f) Be subject to inspection by ~~[] officers duly appointed by [ ] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~ Inspectors appointed by the Authority under Part XI of these Regulations ~~[, the competent authority;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

(g) Be worded in plain language; ~~and, for submission as part of an application for approval of a plan of work, prepared in an official language of the Authority.~~

~~[(h) Be gender-sensitive, and specifically address women's security, and any other issues relevant to ensuring maritime safety measures are applied equitably and inclusively for a diverse workforce.]~~

2. The Maritime Security Plan must contain, as a minimum:

(a) Measures designed to prevent weapons, dangerous substances and devices that are intended for use against persons, vessels, installations or ports, and whose carriage is not authorized, from being taken on board the vessel or installation;

(b) An identification of the restricted areas, and measures for the prevention of unauthorized access to them;

(c) Measures for the prevention of unauthorized access to the vessel or installation;

(d) Procedures for responding to security threats or breaches of security, including provisions for maintaining critical operations of the vessel or installation, or vessel/port interface;

(e) Basic security measures for security level 1 (the level for which minimum appropriate protective security measures shall be maintained at all times), both operational and physical, that will always be in place;

(f) Additional security measures that will allow the vessel or installation to progress without delay to security level 2 (the level for which appropriate additional protective security measures shall be maintained for a period of time as a result of heightened risk of a security incident) and, when necessary, to security level 3 (the level for which further specific protective security measures shall be maintained for a limited period of time when a security incident is probable or imminent, although it may not be possible to identify the specific target);

(g) Procedures for evacuation in case of security threats or breaches of security;

(h) Duties of personnel on board vessels and installations who are assigned security responsibilities, and duties of other shipboard personnel relating to security aspects;

(i) Procedures for auditing the security activities;

(j) Procedures for training, drills and exercises associated with the plan;

(k) Procedures for interfacing with port facility security activities;

(l) Procedures for the periodic review of the plan and for its updating;

(m) Procedures for reporting security incidents;

(n) Identification of the vessel or installation security officer;

(o) Identification of the company security officer, including 24-hour contact details;

(p) Procedures to ensure the inspection, testing, calibration, and maintenance of any security equipment provided on board;

(q) Frequency of testing or calibration of any security equipment provided on board;

(r) Identification of the locations where the activation points of the vessel or installation security alert system are provided (when activated, a ship security alert system automatically transmits a ship-to-shore security alert to a competent authority,

(s) Procedures, instructions and guidance regarding the use of the vessel or installation security alert system, including testing, activation, deactivation and resetting, and regarding the limitation of false alerts.

3. The Maritime Security Plan must establish that:

(a) All personnel on board vessels and installations have received security-related familiarization and security-awareness training or instruction;



(b) Personnel on board vessels and installations with designated security duties have attended a training course on those duties.

## Annex VII [IWG ENV]

### Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan

#### Explanation / comment

- One of the other Working Groups on Draft Regulations asked if the content of Regulation 102 could be inserted in this annex as it pertains to information the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall include. Litra a) from Regulation 102 was merged into litra p) below, while litra's b), c) and d) from Regulation 102 has been inserted as new litra's d), e) and f) in this annex. (The subsequent litra's has been restructured accordingly). I invite for views on this.

1. The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan prepared under these regulations and this annex VII shall be:

(a) Prepared in clear language and in an official language of the Authority, together with, where applicable, an official English-language version;

(a)bis Prepared in accordance with the relevant Regulations ~~[and Standard] [PEW] [and Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Germany] [and Regional Environmental Management Plan]~~, taking into account applicable Guidelines ~~[[and Regional Environmental Management Plan] [Germany – delete]~~, on the basis of Best Environmental Practice, ~~[Best Available Scientific [InformationEvidence] [Germany – remove brackets]~~, and Best Available Information] ~~[PEW]~~; and

~~[(b) Verified by the report of [independent] [PEW - delete] competent persons] [independent experts] [PEW] appointed by the Authority. [NORL TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete]~~

2. An Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan shall contain:

(a) A non-technical summary of the main conclusions and information provided to facilitate understanding by members of the Authority and Stakeholders;

(a)bis Outline the guiding principles which apply to the monitoring approaches;

(b) A description of the project and the area likely to be affected by the proposed activities ~~and by any suspension plumes they generate [including any known or suspected effect on Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH]~~. Include detailed location maps showing proposed impact reference zones and preservation reference zones as well as locations of other nearby contract areas or known seabed infrastructure the Preservation Reference Zones, the Impact Reference Zones and the surrounding area with reference to the Regional Environmental Management Plan ~~including any buffer zones to prevent damage to these areas;~~

(b)ter A description as to how the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan has been prepared;

(c) The project-specific environmental objectives, indicators and thresholds based on baseline environmental data and relevant standards ;

(c)bis A description of the environmental baseline data, [including baseline studies for Underwater Cultural Heritage,] measured baseline values for parameters at the site [[including any known or suspected Underwater Cultural Heritage,]] [IWG on UCH], a characterization of the area proposed to be mined, adjacent areas that could be affected by mining, and areas that will be avoided due to their environmental value [[or due to the presence of Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH].

(d) A description[, prepared in accordance with the relevant Standard and taking into account the relevant Guidelines,] [Germany] of how the monitoring data will be transmitted during operations, how the data will be labelled and monitored by qualified personnel, and how the data will be stored;

(e) The qualifications and proposed location of the personnel monitoring the [data] [environment] [Germany];

(f) A description of the procedures for providing the Authority and the sponsoring State or States access to or receipt of the monitoring data for the purposes of monitoring compliance with the terms of an exploitation contract and collection of data.

(g) Details of or cross-references to the Contractor's Environmental Management System documentation;

(i) implementing the measures reflected in the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan,

(ii) monitoring, recording and reporting fulfilment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, and

(iii) regularly reviewing and updating the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan to ensure that it complies with rules, regulations, and procedures of the Authority;

(h) An assessment of the predicted Environmental Effects of the proposed activities on the Marine Environment [[and Underwater Cultural Heritage]] [IWG on UCH], and any significant changes likely to result, consistent with the environmental impact assessment and the Environmental Impact Statement;

(h)bis A description of uncertainties identified from the environmental impact assessment and the plan to reduce or manage these [[including encountering previously undiscovered Underwater Cultural Heritage and processes for responding to such finds]] [IWG on UCH];

(i) An assessment of the significance of the potential Environmental Effects to receptors identified in the Environmental Impact Statement, their key uncertainties, proposed monitoring approach and objectives, and proposed mitigation measures and management control procedures and responses to minimize, prevent, reduce and control the [harm] [impacts] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] from Environmental Effects, consistent with the environmental impact assessment and the Environmental Impact Statement;

(j~~g~~) A description of the planned monitoring programme, with reference to the applicable Standard on Monitoring, and the overall approach, standards, protocols, methodologies, procedures and performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, including the necessary risk assessment and techniques for managing these risks, including the use of monitoring data to validate predictive models and reduce uncertainties, and adaptive management techniques, if appropriate, needed to achieve the desired outcomes Each component should be described separately in a manner consistent with sections 7-10 of Annex IV. Monitoring methodology/results should provide a sufficient degree of confidence that conclusions in the Environmental Impact Statement can be validated and that agreed performance standards are being met (monitoring should have the statistical power to detect changes in environmental state). The components of the monitoring programme should, at a minimum, include those applicable to the Contractor during its exploration phase to allow for comparison of monitoring data.

(k~~h~~) Details of the proposed monitoring stations across the contract area, including the frequency of monitoring and data collection, the spatial and temporal arrangements for such monitoring and the justification for such arrangements, including how in situ validation of modelled results will be carried out. [Where test mining was conducted,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [I][t]he [NORI, TOML, BMJ – lower case] proposed monitoring stations should, at a minimum, include the monitoring stations used during [test mining] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] [mining tests carried out in the Exploration phase] [NORI, TOML, BMJ];

(l~~i~~) The location and planned monitoring and management of Preservation Reference Zones and Impact Reference Zones designed in accordance with the criteria contained in Annex [Xter], as well as other spatial management planning tools if any;

(l~~i~~)bis The location and boundaries of planned or established long-term protected areas within the Contract Area as [indicated] [determined] in the applicable Regional Environment Management Plan as well as of declared PRZs of neighbouring Contract Areas, if known;

[(l)bis.1 The location and boundaries of planned or established buffer zones around identified Underwater Cultural Heritage;

(l)bis.2 Details of any planned operational controls in accordance with the applicable Standard around identified or suspected Underwater Cultural Heritage;] [IWG on UCH]

(l~~i~~)ter Details of any plans outside of the Contract Area to increase scientific knowledge and other knowledge/information in the relevant region, including in collaboration with other contractors or via international cooperation efforts, as well as in collaboration with Indigenous Peoples and local communities [including in relation to Underwater Cultural Heritage;] [IWG on UCH]

(l)quater A description of procedures to implement revisions to the existing measures based on the monitoring results and new knowledge in relation to Underwater Cultural Heritage;] [IWG on UCH];

(m~~j~~) A description, with threshold levels, of the applicable environmental performance Standards and indicators (trigger and threshold

points) to be monitored, including decision rules based on the results of the monitoring of these indicators;

(j) A description of the planned monitoring programme, with reference to the applicable Standard on Monitoring, and the overall approach, standards, protocols, methodologies, procedures and performance assessment of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan, including the necessary risk assessment and techniques for managing these risks, including the use of monitoring data to validate predictive models and reduce uncertainties, and adaptive management techniques, if appropriate, needed to achieve the desired outcomes. Each component should be described separately in a manner consistent with sections 7-10 of Annex IV. Monitoring methodology/results should provide a sufficient degree of confidence that conclusions in the Environmental Impact Statement can be validated and that agreed performance standards are being met (monitoring should have the statistical power to detect changes in environmental state). The components of the monitoring programme should, at a minimum, include those applicable to the Contractor during its Exploration phase to allow for comparison of monitoring data. **[Any planned monitoring programme should cover known and suspected Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH];**

(~~nk~~) A description of a system for ensuring that the plan shall adhere to **[Good Industry Practice] [Germany – delete] [and] [PEW], [Best Available Techniques,] [PEW] Best Environmental Practices [and Best Available Scientific [InformationEvidence]] [Germany – remove brackets] [PEW - delete]**, and a description of how such practices are reflected in the proposed Exploitation activities;

(~~ot~~) Details of the quality control and management standards, and how the effectiveness of management measures will be monitored, assessed and reviewed, including list of reporting deliverables to the Authority and time schedule, plans for real-time reporting of environmental data to the Authority, internal and external auditing and reporting of environmental performance, and including the frequency of the review of the performance of the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan for the purposes of Regulation 51;

**[(o)bis: “A description of a statistically sound comparison of the monitoring results collected within the Contractor’s IRZs and PRZs which compare the monitoring results with the baseline as well as between IRZs and PRZs to determine and quantify impacts and recovery of impacted areas.” [Germany]**

(~~pm~~) A description of the monitoring technology and system to be to be implemented, including the types of data to be collected and monitored, and frequency of monitoring~~deployed~~, in accordance with Good Industry Practice and Best Available Techniques, reflecting the types of data and formats to be collected and monitored, the use of remote monitoring technology and the types of data available in real time together with a description of the procedures for providing the Authority and the Ssponsoring State or States access to the monitoring system and data for the purposes of monitoring compliance with the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and collection of data;

(~~qm~~) Details of **[the][all] [Germany - replace]** training programme **[s][Germany]** for all persons engaged or to be engaged in activities in the project **[or its] [Germany]** area;

(~~re~~) Details of **[Mining Discharges PEW]**, including those defined and regulated by relevant rules and regulations issued by the International Maritime Organization, within the project area;

(~~sp~~) Details of ongoing consultation with other users of the Marine Environment;

(~~sp~~)bis Details of arrangements made or planned with other marine users, with the aim to ensure due regard to each other's rights and activities.

**[(s)bis.1 Details of the procedures and measures to be taken in accordance with the applicable Standard in response to new finds of previously undiscovered Underwater Cultural Heritage encountered during activities in the project area;] [IWG on UCH]**

(~~te~~) Details of any practicable restoration and rehabilitation of the project area and the monitoring of their success;

(~~uf~~) A plan for further research and studies **[including into Underwater Cultural Heritage] [IWG on UCH]**;

(~~uf~~)bis Detail of the process and measures to be taken in case of non-compliance with the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan.

(~~uf~~)~~ter bis~~ A description of the measures that will be taken to address non-compliance with the Environmental Monitoring and Management Plan, including reporting, recording and response action protocols;

(~~uf~~)~~quart ter~~ A description of the document control system that will be used for environmental management documentation;

(~~vs~~) Details of reporting requirements and timing (<2 years) including details of the methodology to be applied to ensure that monitoring data submitted are provided in an accessible and interpretable format consistent with best scientific practices; and

(~~xt~~) An overview program (list) of all proposed activities

## Annex VIII [IWG ENV]

### Closure Plan

#### Explanation / comment

- One participant has submitted a proposal entailing different changes to this annex, which I have included to the extent possible.
- I highlight the proposed change to point “j” which now refers to “*rehabilitation (where possible)*” instead of merely “*rehabilitation*”. I invite for views on this.

1. The Closure Plan or Final Closure Plan shall be prepared and implemented in accordance with regulation 7, the Environmental Management System, Standards and taking into account the relevant Guidelines and the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan and shall include the following information:

(a) A description of the closure objectives to ensure that the closure of mining activities is a process that is incorporated into the mining life cycle, any **measures** agreed or proposed to implement these, and how these relate to the mining activity and its environmental, socioeconomic and sociocultural setting;

(b) The period during which the plan will be required, which shall be determined by reference to a specified duration, achievement of a specified event or target indicator or compliance with specified terms agreed with the Authority and shall relate to the objectives of the Environmental Impact Assessment, [such as recovery of impacted environment](#);

(c) Coordinates showing the area(s) subject to the closure objectives accompanied by a map;

(d) A summary of the relevant regulatory requirements, including conditions previously documented, e.g. baselines;

(e) Details of the closure implementation and timetable, including descriptions of the arrangements for the temporary suspension of mining activities or for permanent closure as well as decommissioning arrangements for vessels, Installations, plant and removal of equipment (where applicable);

(f) Summary of data and information relating to [\[environmental\]](#) baselines ~~[Russia suggests deleting]~~ for monitoring measures;

(g) A summary of the Environmental Impact Statement entailing an updated environmental impact assessment for the activities that will be undertaken during closure, if any, together with details of the identifiable ~~[residual]~~ [\[remaining\]](#) Environmental Effects, including any relevant technical documents or reports [\[as well as the expected period until recovery of the environment towards natural state conditions\]](#);

(h) [\[Details of monitoring to be undertaken during and after closure \(comparable to monitoring efforts prior and during exploitation\) that specify the sampling design \(spatial and temporal sampling\), the methods to be used and the duration of the post-closure activities\]](#) ~~[Germany - delete]~~; ~~[The temporal and~~

spatial intensity of monitoring to be undertaken during and after closure needs to mirror monitoring efforts prior and during exploitation using ~~the same equivalent~~ ~~Japan - replace~~ methodology to allow for full quantification of the impact as well as of any recovery from impacts; ~~[Germany]~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - delete~~

(i) Details of the management measures to ~~[mitigate, prevent]~~ ~~[minimize, control, mitigate]~~ ~~[reduce and control]~~ the ~~[residual]~~ ~~[remaining]~~ Environmental Effects;

(j) Details of the ~~[restoration and]~~ remediation~~[, restoration and rehabilitation (where possible)]~~ objectives and activities building on those detailed in the Environmental Impact Statement and the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;

~~[(k)]~~ Documentation of environmental recovery and ~~[D]~~ details of any anticipated residual impacts that may remain even after Mitigation measures;

~~[(l)]~~ Information on reporting and management of data and information postclosure- including information on how data will be archived and made publicly available post-closure, and how the formatting of submitted datasets and reports will be consistent with best scientific practices;

~~[(m)]~~ Details of the persons or entity (subcontractor, consultant(s)) that will carry out the monitoring and management measures under the Closure Plan or Final Closure Plan, including their qualification(s) and experience, together with details of the budget, (incl. inflation adjustment for long-term monitoring), project management plan and the protocols for reporting to the Authority under the Closure Plan or Final Closure Plan;

~~[(n)]~~ Details of the amount of the Environmental Performance Guarantee provided under these regulations; and

~~[(o)]~~ Details of consultations with Stakeholders in respect of the plan.

2. The level of detail in the Closure Plan or Final Closure Plan is expected to differ between cases involving a temporary suspension of mining operations, cases involving unplanned abandonment of work, and cases involving final mine closure. The content of the Closure Plan or Final **Closure** Plan is to be commensurate with the nature, extent and duration of activities associated with the level of closure and maturity of the project.



## **Annex IX [President's Text]**

### **Exploitation contract and schedules**

THIS CONTRACT made the ... day of ... between the INTERNATIONAL SEABED AUTHORITY represented by its SECRETARY-GENERAL (hereinafter referred to as "the Authority") and ... represented by ... (hereinafter referred to as "the Contractor") WITNESSETH as follows:

#### **A. Incorporation of clauses**

The standard clauses set out in annex X to the regulations on exploitation of mineral resources in the Area shall be incorporated herein and shall have effect as if herein set out at length.

#### **B. Contract Area**

For the purposes of this Contract, the "Contract Area" means that part of the Area allocated to the Contractor for Exploitation, defined by the coordinates listed in schedule 1 hereto.

#### **C. Grant of rights**

In consideration of (a) their mutual interest in the conduct of Exploitation in the Contract Area pursuant to the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982 and the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the Convention, (b) the rights and responsibility of the Authority to organize and control activities in the Area, particularly with a view to administering the resources of the Area, in accordance with the legal regime established in Part XI of the Convention and the Agreement and Part XII of the Convention, respectively, and (c) the interest and financial commitment of the Contractor in conducting activities in the Contract Area and the mutual covenants made herein, the Authority hereby grants to the Contractor the exclusive right to Explore for and Exploit [specified Resource category] in the Contract Area in accordance with the terms and conditions of this contract.

#### **D. Entry into force and Contract term**

This Contract shall enter into force on signature by both parties and, subject to the standard clauses, shall remain in force for an initial period of [x] years thereafter unless the Contract is sooner terminated, provided that this Contract may be renewed in accordance with the regulations.

#### **E. Entire agreement**

This Contract expresses the entire agreement between the parties, and no oral understanding or prior writing shall modify the terms hereof.

**F. Languages**

This Contract will be provided and executed in the [ ... and] English language[s]  
[and both texts are valid].

IN WITNESS WHEREOF the undersigned, being duly authorized thereto by the  
respective parties, have signed this Contract at ..., this ... day of ....

## **The Schedules [to the exploitation contract]**

### **Schedule 1**

Coordinates and illustrative chart of the Contract Area and proposed Mining Area(s).

### **Schedule 1 bis**

[Certificate of sponsorship]

### **Schedule 2**

The Mining Workplan.

### **Schedule 3**

The Financing Plan.

### **Schedule 4**

The Emergency Response and Contingency Plan.

### **Schedule 5**

The Health and Safety Plan and the Maritime Security Plan.

### **Schedule 6**

The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan.

### **Schedule 7**

The Closure Plan.

### **Schedule 8**

The Training Plan.

### **Schedule 9**

Conditions, amendments and modifications agreed between the Commission and the Contractor, and approved by the Council, during the application approval process.

### **Schedule 10**

Where applicable under regulation 26, the form of any Environmental Performance Guarantee, and its related terms and conditions.

### **Schedule 11**

Details of insurance policies taken out or to be taken out under regulation 36.

### **Schedule 12**

Agreed review dates for individual plans, together with any specific terms attaching to a review, where applicable.

### **Schedule 13**

To the extent that any documentation is not available at the point of signing the Contract, and a time frame for submission has been agreed with the Commission, this should be reflected here, together with, where applicable, deadline dates.

### **[Schedule 14]**

**[The Parent Company Liability Statement] [Netherlands]**

## **Annex X [President's Text]**

### **Standard clauses for exploitation contract**

#### **Section 1**

##### **Definitions**

In the following clauses:

(a) "Regulations" means the regulations on exploitation of mineral resources in the Area, adopted by the Authority; and

(b) "Contract Area" means that part of the Area allocated to the Contractor for Exploitation, defined by the coordinates listed in schedule 1 hereto. ~~[Germany – delete]~~

#### **Section 2**

##### **Interpretation**

2.1 Terms and phrases defined in the regulations have the same meaning in these standard clauses.

2.2 In accordance with the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982, its provisions and Part XI of the Convention are to be interpreted and applied together as a single instrument; this Contract and references in this Contract to the Convention are to be interpreted and applied accordingly.

#### **Section 3**

##### **Undertakings**

3.1 The Authority undertakes to fulfil in good faith its powers and functions under the Convention and the Agreement in accordance with article 157 of the Convention.

3.2 The Contractor shall implement this contract in good faith and shall in particular implement the Plan of Work in accordance with ~~[Regulation 18bis]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ [Good Industry Practice and Best Environmental Practices] ~~[Germany – delete]~~. For the avoidance of doubt, the Plan of Work includes:

- (a) The Mining Workplan;
- (b) The Financing Plan;
- (c) The Emergency Response and Contingency Plan;
- (d) The Training Plan;
- (e) The Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan;
- (f) The Closure Plan; and
- (g) The Health and Safety Plan and Maritime Security Plan,

that are appended as schedules to this Contract, as the same may be amended from time to time in accordance with the regulations.

3.3 The Contractor shall, in addition:

(a) Comply with the regulations, as well as other Rules of the Authority ~~[and Standards]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~, as amended from time to time, and the decisions of the relevant organs of the Authority;

(b) Accept control by the Authority of activities in the Area for the purpose of securing compliance under this Contract as authorized by the Convention;

(c) Pay all fees and royalties required or amounts falling due to the Authority under the regulations, including all payments due to the Authority in accordance with Part VII of the regulations; and

(d) Carry out its obligations under this Contract with due diligence, including compliance with the rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority to ensure effective protection for the Marine Environment, and exercise reasonable regard for other activities in the Marine Environment.

#### **Section 4**

##### **Security of tenure and exclusivity**

4.1 The Contractor is hereby granted the exclusive right under this Contract to Explore for and Exploit the resource category specified in this Contract and to conduct Exploration and Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets Exploitation activities within the Contract Area in accordance with the terms of this Contract. The Contractor shall have security of tenure and this Contract shall not be suspended, terminated or revised except in accordance with the terms set out herein and the Regulations Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets. Any impacts from activities in the Area carried out under an Exploitation Contract must be strictly limited to the Contractor area. Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Germany – remove brackets

4.2 The Authority undertakes not to grant any rights to another person to Explore for or Exploit the same resource category in the Contract Area for the duration of this Contract.

4.3 The Authority reserves the right to enter into contracts with third parties with respect to Resources other than the resource category specified in this Contract but shall ensure that no other entity operates in the Contract Area for a different category of Resources in a manner that might interfere with the Exploitation activities of the Contractor.

4.4 If the Authority receives an application for an exploitation contract in an area that overlaps with the Contract Area, the Authority shall notify the Contractor of the existence of that application within 30 Days of receiving that application.

#### **Section 5**

##### **Legal title to Minerals**

5.1 The Contractor will obtain title to and property over the Minerals upon recovery of the Minerals from the seabed and ocean floor and subsoil thereof, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets onto the Contractor’s mining vessel or installation and receipt by the Authority of the required payment for those Minerals Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete, in compliance with this Contract.

5.2 This Contract shall not create, nor be deemed to confer, any interest or right on the Contractor in or over any other part of the Area and its Resources other than those rights expressly granted in this Contract.

#### **Section 6**

##### **Use of subcontractors and third parties**

6.1 No Contractor may subcontract any part of its obligations under this Contract unless the subcontract contains appropriate terms and conditions to ensure that the performance of the subcontract will reflect and uphold the same standards and requirements of this Contract between the Contractor and the Authority.

6.2 The Contractor shall ensure the adequacy of its systems and procedures for the supervision and management of its subcontractors and any work that is further subcontracted, in accordance with Good Industry Practice.

[6.2.bis. The Contractor shall apply due diligence in selecting its suppliers, and shall be responsible to ensure the adequacy of goods and services it procures, in accordance with Good Industry Practice].

6.3 Nothing in this section shall relieve the Contractor of any obligation or liability under this Contract, and the Contractor shall remain responsible and liable to the Authority for the performance of its obligations under this Contract in the event that it subcontracts any aspect of the performance of those obligations.

## **Section 7 Responsibility and liability**

7.1 [In accordance with the ‘polluter pays’ principle,] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] tThe Contractor shall be [strictly] [Germany] liable to the Authority for the actual amount of [any] [Australia – delete] [all environmental damage caused by Contractor activities that were not foreseen in the Plan of Work or that arise from a breach of any conditions of approval, including arising out of activities of the Contractor’s] [Australia] [damage, including damage to the Marine Environment, arising out of its wrongful acts or omissions, and those of its] [Australia – delete] employees, subcontractors, agents and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under this Contract, [including the costs of reasonable measures to prevent and limit damage to the Marine Environment,] [[arising out of its wrongful acts [or omissions]]] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Australia – delete], account being taken of any contributory acts or omissions by the Authority or third parties. This clause survives the termination of the Contract and applies to all damage [arising out of the Contractors wrongful acts [or omissions]] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] regardless of whether it is caused or arises before, during or after the completion of the Exploitation activities or Contract term. [For the purpose of clauses 7.1 and 7.2, ‘wrongful acts or omissions’, means any unlawful act or omission attributable to the Contractor that results in damage not anticipated and approved in the Plan of Work, irrespective of bad intention or negligence] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets] [Australia – delete]. [Recoverable damages under this clause include: costs of reasonable measures to prevent and limit damage to the Marine Environment, lost revenue, reinstatement, pay-out in lieu of actual reinstatement, and/or measures to compensate for third-party economic loss, as well as pure ecological loss and harm to the living resources of the Area.] [Nauru, NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [Germany – remove brackets]

[For the avoidance of doubt, strict liability in this context applies the polluter pays principle, and means, it is not necessary to prove that a contractor intended to commit or was reckless as to committing a wrongful act or omission, it is necessary only to demonstrate unpermitted damage or [harm] [Serious Harm]

[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] arose as a result of a contractor's wrongful act for the contractor to be held liable for that damage or harm.]] [Germany] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]

7.2 The Contractor shall indemnify the Authority, its employees, subcontractors and agents against all claims and liabilities of any third party arising out of any [[wrongful] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ] environmental damage caused by Contractor activities that were not foreseen in the Plan of Work or that arise from a breach of any conditions of approval, including arising from activities of the Contractor's] [Australia] [[wrongful acts or omissions of the Contractor and its] [Australia – delete] employees, agents and subcontractors, and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under this Contract] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete].

7.3 The Authority shall be liable to the Contractor for the actual amount of any damage caused to the Contractor arising out of its wrongful acts in the exercise of its powers and functions, including violations under article 168 (2) of the Convention, account being taken of contributory acts or omissions by the Contractor, its employees, agents and subcontractors, and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under this Contract, or third parties.

7.4 The Authority shall indemnify the Contractor, its employees, subcontractors, agents and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under this Contract, against all claims and liabilities of any third party arising out of any wrongful acts or omissions in the exercise of its powers and functions hereunder, including violations under article 168 (2) of the Convention.

## **Section 8**

### **Force majeure**

8.1 The Contractor shall not be liable for an unavoidable delay or failure to perform any of its obligations under this Contract due to force majeure, provided the Contractor has taken all reasonable steps to overcome the delay or obstacle to performance. For the purposes of this Contract, force majeure shall mean an event or condition that the Contractor could not reasonably be expected to prevent or control; provided that the event or condition was not caused by Contractor action, negligence or by a failure to observe Good Industry Practice.

8.2 The Contractor shall give written notice to the Authority of the occurrence of an event of force majeure as soon as reasonably possible after its occurrence (specifying the nature of the event or circumstance, what is required to remedy the event or circumstance and if a remedy is possible, the estimated time to cure or overcome the event or circumstance and the obligations that cannot be properly or timely performed on account of the event or circumstance) and similarly give written notice to the Authority of the restoration of normal conditions.

8.3 The Contractor shall, upon request to the Secretary-General, be granted a time extension equal to the period by which performance was delayed hereunder by force majeure and the term of this Contract shall be extended accordingly.

## Section 9

### Renewal

9.1 The Contractor may renew this Contract [in accordance with regulation 20] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] [for periods not more than 15 years each, on the following conditions:] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] ~~for periods not more than 10 years each, on the following conditions:~~

~~(a) The resource category is recoverable annually in commercial quantities from the Contract Area;~~

~~(b) The Contractor is in compliance with the terms of this Contract and the Rules of the Authority, including rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority to ensure effective protection for the Marine Environment from harmful effects which may arise from activities in the Area;~~

~~(c) This Contract has not been terminated earlier; and~~

~~(d) The Contractor has paid the applicable fee in the amount specified in appendix II to the regulations.~~

9.2 To renew this Contract, the Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General no later than one year before the expiration of the initial period or renewal period, as the case may be, of this Contract.

9.3 The Council shall review the notification, and if the Council determines that the Contractor is in compliance with the conditions set out above, this Contract shall be renewed on the terms and conditions of the standard exploitation contract that are in effect on the date that the Council approves the renewal application.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

~~(a) The resource category is recoverable annually in commercial [and profitable] quantities from the Contract Area;~~

~~(b) The Contractor is in compliance with the terms of this Contract and the Rules of the Authority, including rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority to ensure effective protection for the Marine Environment from harmful effects which may arise from activities in the Area;~~

~~(c) This Contract has not been terminated earlier; and~~

~~(d) The Contractor has paid the applicable fee in the amount specified in appendix II to the regulations.~~

9.2 — To renew this Contract, the Contractor shall notify the Secretary-General no later than one year before the expiration of the initial period or renewal period, as the case may be, of this Contract.

9.3 — The Council shall review the notification, and if the Council determines that the Contractor is in compliance with the conditions set out above, this Contract [shall be] [may be] renewed on the terms and conditions of the standard exploitation contract that are in effect on the date that the Council approves the renewal application.

## Section 10

### Renunciation of rights



10.1 The Contractor, by prior written notice to the Authority, may renounce without penalty the whole or part of its rights in the Contract Area, provided that the Contractor shall remain liable for all obligations and liabilities accrued prior to the date of such renunciation in respect of the whole or part of the Contract Area renounced. Such obligations shall include, inter alia, the payment of any sums outstanding to the Authority, and obligations under the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and Closure Plan.

## **Section 11** **Termination of sponsorship**

11.1 If the nationality or control of the Contractor changes or the Contractor's Sponsoring State or States, as defined in the regulations, terminates its sponsorship, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Authority, and in any event within 90 Days following such changes or termination.

11.2 In either such event, if the Contractor does not obtain another sponsor meeting the requirements prescribed in the regulations which submits to the Authority a certificate of sponsorship for the Contractor in the prescribed form within the time specified in the regulations, this Contract shall terminate forthwith.]

[Germany – delete section 11 entirely]

## **Section 12** **Suspension and termination of Contract and penalties**

12.1 The Council may suspend or terminate this Contract, without prejudice to any other rights that the Authority may have, if any of the following events should occur:

(a) If, in spite of written warnings by the Authority, the Contractor has conducted its activities in such a way as to result in serious persistent and wilful violations of the fundamental terms of this Contract, Part XI of the Convention, the Agreement and the rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority;

(b) If the Contractor has failed, within a reasonable period, to comply with a final binding decision of the dispute settlement body applicable to it;

(c) If the Contractor knowingly, recklessly or negligently provides the Authority with information that is false or misleading;

(d) If the Contractor [or any person standing as surety or financial guarantor to the Contractor pursuant to regulation 26 of the regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] becomes insolvent or commits an act of bankruptcy or enters into any agreement for composition with its creditors or goes into liquidation or receivership, whether compulsory or voluntary, or petitions or applies to any tribunal for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee or receiver for itself or commences any proceedings relating to itself under any bankruptcy, insolvency or readjustment of debt law, whether now or hereafter in effect, other than for the purpose of reconstruction; or [r] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]#

[(d bis) If any person standing as surety or financial guarantor to the Contractor pursuant to regulation 26 of the regulations becomes insolvent or commits an act of bankruptcy or enters into any agreement for composition with its creditors or goes into liquidation or receivership, whether compulsory or voluntary, or petitions or applies to any tribunal for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee

or receiver for itself or commences any proceedings relating to itself under any bankruptcy, insolvency or readjustment of debt law, whether now or hereafter in effect, other than for the purpose of reconstruction, and the Contractor is unable to find a suitable replacement for that person within a reasonable period of time; or] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

—(e) If the Contractor has not made bona fide efforts to achieve or sustain Commercial Production and is not recovering Minerals in commercial quantities at the end of five years from the expected date of Commercial Production, save where the Contractor is able to demonstrate to the Council's satisfaction good cause, which may include force majeure, [good faith efforts to comply with the environmental obligations imposed by the Authority,] or other circumstances beyond the reasonable control of the Contractor that prevented the Contractor from achieving Commercial Production.

12.2 The Council may, without prejudice to Section 8, after consultation with the Contractor, suspend or terminate this Contract, without prejudice to any other rights that the Authority may have, if the Contractor is prevented from performing its obligations under this Contract by reason of an event or condition of force majeure, as described in Section 8, which has persisted for a continuous period exceeding two years, despite the Contractor having taken all reasonable measures to overcome its inability to perform and comply with the terms and conditions of this Contract with minimum delay.

12.3 Any suspension or termination shall be by written notice to the Contractor, through the Secretary-General, which shall include a statement of the reasons for taking such action. The suspension or termination shall be effective 60 Days after such written notice, unless the Contractor within such period disputes the Authority's right to suspend or terminate this Contract in accordance with Part XI, Section 5, of the Convention. ~~[In such a which~~ case, this Contract shall only be suspended or terminated in accordance with a final binding decision in accordance with Part XI, Section 5, of the Convention].

[12.4 If the Contractor takes such action, this Contract shall only be suspended or terminated in accordance with a final binding decision in accordance with Part XI, Section 5, of the Convention.]

12.5 If the Council has suspended this Contract, the Council may by written notice require the Contractor to resume its operations and comply with the terms and conditions of this Contract, not later than 60 Days after such written notice.

12.6 In the case of any violation of this Contract not covered under Section 12.1 (a), or in lieu of suspension or termination under Section 12, the Council may impose upon the Contractor monetary penalties proportionate to the seriousness of the violation.

12.7 Subject to Section 13, the Contractor shall cease operations upon the termination of this Contract.

12.8 Termination of this Contract for any reason (including the passage of time), in whole or in part, shall be without prejudice to rights and obligations expressed in this Contract to survive termination, or to rights and obligations accrued thereunder prior to termination, including performance under a Closure Plan, and all provisions of this Contract reasonably necessary for the full enjoyment and enforcement of those rights and obligations shall survive termination for the period so necessary.

### **Section 13**

#### **Obligations on [Suspension or following Expiration, Surrender or] [Australia – delete] Termination of a Contract**

13.1 In the event of termination], expiration or surrender] [Australia – delete] of this Contract, the Contractor shall:

(a) Comply with the final Closure Plan, [and the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan] and continue to perform the required environmental management of the Contract Area as set forth in the final Closure Plan and for the period established in the final Closure Plan;

(b) Continue to comply with relevant provisions of the regulations, including:

(i) Maintaining and keeping in place all insurance required under the regulations;

(ii) Paying any fee, royalty, penalty or other money on any other account owing to the Authority on or before the date of [suspension or] [Australia] termination; and

(iii) Complying with any obligation to meet any liability under Section 8;

(c) Remove all Installations, plant, equipment and materials in the Contract Area; and

(d) Make the area safe so as not to constitute a danger to persons, shipping or [to result in adverse impacts, or a reasonable likelihood of such impacts, to] the Marine Environment.

13.2 Where the Contractor fails to undertake the obligations listed in Section 13.1 within a reasonable period, the Authority may take necessary steps to effect such removal and make safe the area at the expense of the Contractor. Such expense, if any, shall be deducted from the Environmental Performance Guarantee held by the Authority.

13.3 Upon termination of this Contract, any rights of the Contractor under the Plan of Work and in respect of the Contract Area also terminate.

### **[Section 14**

#### **Transfer of rights and obligations**

14.1 The rights and obligations of the Contractor under this Contract may be transferred in whole or in part only with the consent of the Authority and in accordance with the regulations, including payment of the fee as set out in appendix II to the regulations.

14.2 The Authority shall not unreasonably withhold consent to the transfer if the proposed transferee is in all respects a qualified applicant in accordance with the regulations and assumes all of the obligations of the Contractor, and if the transfer does not confer to the transferee a Plan of Work, the approval of which would be forbidden by article 6 (3) (c) of annex III to the Convention.

14.3 The terms, undertakings and conditions of this Contract shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns.]

[Germany – delete Section 14 entirely]

## **Section 15**

### **No waiver**

No waiver by either party of any rights pursuant to a breach of the terms and conditions of this Contract to be performed by the other party shall be construed as a waiver by the party of any succeeding breach of the same or any other term or condition to be performed by the other party.

## **Section 16**

### **Modification of terms and conditions of this Contract**

16.1 When circumstances have arisen or are likely to arise after this Contract has commenced which, in the opinion of the Authority or the Contractor would render this Contract inequitable or make it impracticable or impossible to achieve the objectives set out in this Contract or in Part XI of the Convention, the parties shall enter into negotiations to revise it accordingly.

16.2 This Contract may be revised by agreement between the Contractor and the Authority.

16.3 This Contract may be revised only:

- (a) With the consent of the Contractor and the Authority; and
- (b) By an appropriate instrument signed by the duly authorized representatives of the parties.

16.4 Subject to the confidentiality requirements of the regulations, the Authority shall publish information about any revision to the terms and conditions of this Contract.

## **Section 17**

### **Applicable law**

17.1 This Contract is governed by the terms of this Contract, the Rules of the Authority and other rules of international law not incompatible with the Convention.

17.2 The Contractor, its employees, subcontractors, agents and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under this Contract shall observe the applicable law referred to in Section 17.1 hereof and shall not engage in any transaction, directly or indirectly, prohibited by the applicable law.

17.3 Nothing contained in this Contract shall be deemed an exemption from the necessity of applying for and obtaining any permit or authority that may be required for any activities under this Contract.

17.4 The division of this Contract into sections and subsections and the insertion of headings are for convenience of reference only and shall not affect the construction or interpretation hereof.

## **Section 18**

### **Disputes**

[Any dispute between the parties concerning the interpretation or application of this Contract shall be settled in accordance with Part XII of the regulations.]  
[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[18.1 Any dispute between the parties concerning the interpretation or application of this contract shall be settled in accordance with Part XI, section 5, of the Convention.]

[18.2 In accordance with article 21 (2) of Annex III to the Convention, any final decision rendered by a court or tribunal having jurisdiction under the Convention relating to the rights and obligations of the Authority and of the Contractor shall be enforceable in the territory of any State party to the Convention.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ]

## **Section 19**

### **Notice**

Any notice provided to or from one party to another pursuant to this Contract shall be provided in accordance with the notice provision set out at regulation 91 of the regulations.

## **Section 20**

### **Schedules**

This Contract includes the schedules to this Contract, which shall be an integral part hereof.

## Annex Xter [IWG ENV]

### Design Criteria for Impact Reference Zones (IRZs) and Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs)

#### Explanation / comment

- In general, I have noted that in this Annex Xter many scientific and technical terms are not clearly defined, e.g. “environmentally similar” and “most species” and would need to be further developed and included in the Schedule.
- Furthermore, I believe that there would be merit in considering placing the content in a relevant standard. In any circumstance, to my understanding this annex should be more concise and focused on the purpose of the IRZ/PRZ and the design criteria, while specific details related to baseline data collection and monitoring should refer to the respective standards and guidelines. I therefore, kindly invite for discussions on that.
- Recalling our discussion during March 2023, several participants expressed support for including an annex on design criteria for Impact Reference Zones (IRZs) and Preservation Reference Zones (PRZs). There were two annex versions “Annex Xter” and “Annex Xter ALT”. There seems to be a consensus using the “Annex Xter ALT” version, also considering that all comments received pertained to this version. I therefore propose using this version going forward.
- A proposal to describe characterisation of the pelagic and benthic environment has been forwarded and included. I invite for views on this.
- A proposal, listed as point “13 ALT”, suggests the continued monitoring of post mining *until ecosystem function returns to the level of the pre-mining condition*. This in contrast to the current point 13 which states monitoring should merely *“last until monitoring results show a trajectory towards recovery”*. I invite for a discussion on this.
- One participant suggested to broaden the scope of establishing PRZ’s outside the contract area. I do not believe that the Authority has the mandate to regulate outside contract areas.

1. Contractors must establish impact reference zones (IRZs) and preservation reference zones (PRZs) in order to monitor the environmental impacts of their activities. The following parameters shall be followed in the designation of IRZs and PRZs.

IRZs and PRZs must be situated within the Contract Area (and the Contract Area may need to be selected around the need for appropriate IRZ/PRZs, especially where multiple or large zones are required). IRZs must be sites where direct impacts from mining are likely to occur.

For each type of impact identified in the environmental impact statement, there must be at least one corresponding IRZ which will enable the Contractor to monitor that impact. This is likely to require multiple IRZs (or a very large IRZ). PRZs will be important in identifying natural variations in environmental conditions against which impacts will be assessed. Their species composition, habitat types, and occurrence of mineral resource, must be comparable to that of the impacted areas.

PRZs must be areas that will not be impacted by mining activities, including impacts from operational and discharge plumes.

If a Contract Area consists of several disjunct sub-areas that are isolated from each other, then each of those areas would require a corresponding PRZ.

Use of multiple PRZs should be considered for increase in statistical rigour, and chance of detecting effects and adding redundancy in case of unexpected variation/plan changes.

The area of the PRZ needs to be sufficiently large to contain (and buffer) sufficiently large populations to guarantee long term survival.

In theory, all species within the IRZ and PRZ will need to be monitored to quantify impacts. In practice, some representative set might suffice. To establish an adequate baseline and find suitable indicator species (e.g. the sensitive species that will suffer most from an impact) it will be necessary to catalogue as many species as reasonably possible in the IRZ and PRZ in question. This will require an extensive sampling effort to collect **sample** numbers and volumes that allow for a meaningful comparison (i.e., with high statistical power)

The longevity of PRZs is important. The duration of post mining monitoring should until no measurable difference between IRZ and PRZ can be detected anymore

Isolation of PRZs is important: any PRZ will by definition have to remain unimpacted throughout the post mining monitoring period.

To designate representative IRZs/PRZs requires characterisation of pelagic and benthic communities within all sub-habitats that may be impacted by mining operations, and determination of regional distributions and patterns of connectivity. Temporal variation must also be evaluated annually over multiple years (for at least one test mining site, and the PRZ site).

A Contractor will need to be able to demonstrate a general knowledge of ecosystem functioning and of the ecology of the present species; an average population density alone will not suffice.]

### Annex-[A.H.]

Applicants must establish suitable and effective Impact reference zones (IRZs) and Preservation reference zones (PRZs) in order to monitor the environmental impacts of their activities. The following parameters shall apply in the designation of IRZs and PRZs.

1. IRZs and PRZs must be situated within the Contract Area (and the Contract Area may need to be selected around the need for appropriate IRZ/PRZs, especially where multiple or large reference zones are required)
2. The applicant needs to demonstrate that the IRZ/PRZs are ~~ecologically~~ ~~ecologically~~ ~~Germany~~ ~~environmentally~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ similar before the commencement of mining ~~Additional PRZs and IRZs have to be introduced subsequently, once areas ecologically dissimilar from the primary PRZ are impacted, to warrant future comparability~~ ~~Germany~~.
3. ~~To designate representative IRZs/PRZs requires characterisation of the pelagic and benthic environment including all sub-habitats that may be impacted by mining operations, and determination of regional distributions and patterns of connectivity of communities~~ ~~Exploitations activities~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ – replace~~. Temporal variation must also be evaluated over multiple years. ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~Japan - delete~~
4. IRZs must be zones where direct impacts from mining are predicted to occur once mining commences ~~or have already occurred during test mining~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~.
5. ~~All types~~ ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~For each type~~ of impact ~~from mining-related activities in any contract area~~ ~~Germany~~ identified in the Environmental Impact Statement, ~~there~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ must ~~be at least one~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ correspond~~ing~~ ~~with~~ ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~at least one~~ ~~Germany~~ IRZ~~/IRZs~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ which will enable the Contractor to monitor ~~that~~ ~~these~~ ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ impacts. ~~Designation of~~ ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~This is likely to require~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ multiple IRZs ~~(or a very large IRZ)~~ ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~is possible~~ ~~Germany – delete~~ ~~may be necessary~~ ~~Germany~~ for this purpose. ~~Germany – remove brackets~~ ~~Japan - delete~~
6. The area(s) of the IRZ(s) needs to be sufficiently large and representative to allow adequate assessment of recovery of populations and environmental conditions after the mining activities, in accordance with the relevant Standards, taking into account relevant Guidelines.
7. PRZs will be important in identifying natural variations in environmental conditions against which impacts shall be assessed and must be comparable to that of the impacted areas, in accordance with the relevant Standards ~~and~~, taking into account the relevant Guidelines. ~~The abiotic and biotic baseline data include but are not limited to the quantity and quality of mineral resources, species composition and habitat types.~~ ~~Germany – delete~~
8. PRZs must be areas that will not be impacted by mining activities from any contractor, including impacts from operational and discharge plumes and including during the post-closure period. ~~PRZs must also be~~ ~~Alt. 1 Member States and the Authority will also take all measures available to them to ensure that PRZs are~~ ~~Alt. 2 Contractors shall use their best efforts to ensure that PRZs are also reasonably~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace~~ free ~~as far as possible~~ from impacts of other industrial activities. PRZs must ~~have to~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete~~ remain unimpacted ~~by Contractors~~ ~~NORI, TOML, BMJ~~ throughout the post-mining monitoring period.]



9. Where a Contract Area consists of several disjunct sub-areas that are isolated from each other, then each of those areas would require a corresponding PRZ and IRZ.
10. Use of multiple PRZs and IRZs should be considered for increase in statistical rigour, and chance of detecting effects and adding redundancy in case of unexpected variation/plan changes.
11. The area of the PRZ needs to be sufficiently large to contain sufficiently large populations to guarantee long-term survival. The PRZ will also require a buffer zone around it to protect the populations and ensure maintenance of natural environmental conditions in the PRZ.
12. **Abiotic and biotic parameters, within the IRZ and PRZ will need to be monitored to quantify impacts. This includes but is not limited to monitoring species diversity and function. To establish an adequate baseline and to find suitable indicator species (e.g., the sensitive species that will suffer most from an impact, key-stone species that are crucial for ecosystem processes, or species which abundance indicates a disrupted ecosystem functioning), it will be necessary to catalogue most species in the IRZ and PRZ in question and unravel their functions. This will require sufficient sampling effort to collect sample sizes that allow for a meaningful comparison (i.e., with high statistical power).** **Japan - delete**
13. **The longevity of PRZs and duration of post-mining monitoring** **Germany – remove brackets** **+** **Germany – delete** **are** **Germany – remove brackets** important. **The** **Germany – remove brackets** duration of post-mining monitoring should last until **monitoring results show a trajectory towards recovery. Post-mining monitoring should be described in the final EMMP and/or Closure Plan.** **Germany; NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete** no measurable difference between IRZ and PRZ can be detected anymore. **Japan - delete**

**[13 Alt. Post mining monitoring shall continue until monitoring results show a trajectory towards recovery of] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] ecosystem function [returns to the level of the pre-mining condition] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete] agreed within the EMMP/Closure Plan and taking into account the time taken to reach a new equilibrium state.]**

**Germany – delete 13 Alt entirely**
14. Isolation of PRZs is important. Any PRZ will by definition have to remain unimpacted throughout the post-mining monitoring period.
15. **To designate representative IRZs/PRZs requires characterisation of the pelagic and benthic environment including all sub-habitats that may be impacted by mining operations, and determination of regional distributions and patterns of connectivity of communities. Temporal variation must also be evaluated over multiple years.** **Japan - delete**
16. **An applicant will need to be able to demonstrate knowledge of species' ecological requirements (e.g. for successful reproduction); an average population density alone will not suffice.** **NORI, TOML, BMJ; Japan - delete**

## **[Annex XI Parent Company Liability Statement**

THIS "STATEMENT" made the ... day of ... by

- A. [insert name of Managing Company], with its statutory seat at [insert address and home State] and registered at [insert Chamber of Commerce or Trade Register details], represented by ..., with the authority to provide this Statement on behalf of [Managing Company]; and
- B. [insert name of Contractor], with its statutory seat at [insert address and home State] and registered at [insert Chamber of Commerce or Trade Register details], represented by ..., with the authority to provide this Statement on behalf of [Contractor]; and

irrevocably and unconditionally DECLARE and REPRESENT that:

### **Obligations of [Managing Company]**

- 1. [Managing Company] is jointly and severally liable for any debts and liabilities of [Contractor] arising in relation to: (i) the obligations of [Contractor] that follow from the agreement that is to be concluded between [Contractor] and the International Seabed Authority for the exploitation of Mineral resources in the Area (hereinafter referred to as "the Exploitation Contract"); (ii) the acts performed by [Contractor] in the performance of the Exploitation Contract; and (iii) the omissions that [Contractor] makes in the performance of the Exploitation Contract (hereinafter referred to as "the Joint and Several Liability Obligation");
- 2. [Managing Company] has the financial capability to comply with the Joint and Several Liability Obligation, or can draw on a parent company or its shareholders in order to do so (hereinafter referred to as "Certainty of Funds");
- 3. [Managing Company] confirms that the Contractor is adequately insured to perform the Exploitation Contract in accordance with the applicable regulations and that such insurance will remain in place until such time as the Contractor's insurance should be in place, in accordance with the Regulations on Exploitation of Mineral Resources in the Area (hereinafter referred to as "the Regulations") and the Exploitation Contract (hereinafter referred to as "Certainty of Insurance");
- 4. [Managing Company] will procure that [Contractor] complies with the terms and conditions of their Exploitation Contract and the rules, regulations and procedures of the International Seabed Authority, in a manner consistent with the Convention and the Agreement, by among others, but not limited to, exercising its voting rights in the shareholder's meeting of [Contractor] and issuing instructions to the directors of [Contractor], when it is competent to do so;

### **Enforcement of Obligations of [Managing Company]**

- 5. at any given point in time, the International Seabed Authority is authorized to request documentation to support the [Managing Company's] compliance with its obligations of Certainty of Funds and Certainty of Insurance, and that failure

to do so within 15 working days or inability to substantiate such Certainty of Funds or Certainty of Insurance has to be remedied by [Managing Company] within a period of 90 days;

6. should [Managing Company] fail to comply with the obligations in provision 5 above, the International Seabed Authority shall suspend the Exploitation Contract by issuing a written notice to the Managing Company and the Contractor in accordance with the applicable regulations, as a consequence of which the Contractor shall cease its operations in the exercise of the Exploitation Agreement until the International Seabed Authority is satisfied that [Managing Company] has remedied its failure to comply with the obligations in provision 5 above;

7. notices to [Managing Company] and [Contractor] are to be sent to the following address:

[insert contact details of Managing Company and Contractor]

### **Miscellaneous Provisions**

8. if [Contractor] transfers its rights and obligations under an Exploitation Contract in whole, [Contractor] and [Managing Company] shall procure that the party that qualifies as the “Managing Company” under Regulations of the transferee provides a statement substantially in the same form as Schedule 14 to the Exploitation Contract (Parent Company Liability Statement);

9. if [Contractor] transfers its rights and obligations under an Exploitation Contract in part, this STATEMENT shall remain in full force and effect, unless [Contractor] and [Managing Company] procure that the party that qualifies as the “Managing Company” under Regulations of the transferee provides a statement substantially in the same form as Schedule 14 to the Exploitation Contract (Parent Company Liability Statement);

10. if [Managing Company] no longer directly or indirectly owns or controls [Contractor], the party that comes to qualify as the “Managing Company” under the Schedule to the Regulations shall issue a statement substantially in the same form as Schedule 14 to the Exploitation Contract (Parent Company Liability Statement);

11. this STATEMENT or the obligations provided for in this STATEMENT cannot be assigned, transferred or novated;

12. a change in the corporate seat of [Managing Company] does not affect the validity of this STATEMENT;

13. [Managing Company] undertakes not to engage in any contracting or other corporate practice that serves to avoid its liability and responsibility as provided for under this STATEMENT;

14. this STATEMENT shall remain in effect after the termination of the Exploitation Contract and can be invoked for any conduct that is reasonably attributable to the Contractor; and

15. any disputes arising in relation to this STATEMENT shall be settled in accordance with Part XII of the Regulations. [Managing Party] herewith provides its explicit written consent to being a party to such dispute settlement procedures.]

**Explanation / comment**

The inclusion of a new Annex XI has been proposed by Netherlands before Part II of the 29<sup>th</sup> Session.

## Appendix I [President's Text]

### Notifiable events

In respect of an Installation or vessel engaged in activities in the Area, notifiable events for the purposes of regulation 346 include [any of the following events, except for where it constitutes an "Incident" for the purposes of these regulations]:

~~[1. — Fatality of a person.]~~

~~[2. — Missing person.]~~

3. Occupational lost time illness.

4. Occupational lost time injury.

~~[5. — Medical evacuation.]~~

5.bis. [Marine Mammal Fatality ~~or evident distress~~]

~~[6. — Fire/explosion resulting in an injury or major damage or impairment.]~~

~~[7. — Collison resulting in an injury or major damage or impairment.]~~

8. Significant leak of hazardous substance **[, as determined in accordance with the relevant Standard and Guideline] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru]**.

9. Unauthorized Mining Discharge.

10. Adverse environmental conditions **[with likely] [that caused or had credible chance of causing] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru - replace]** significant safety and/or environmental consequences ~~[such as serious harm]~~.

11. Significant threat or breach of security, [including cyber security].

~~[12. — Implementation of Emergency Response and Contingency Plan.]~~

~~[13. — Major impairment/damage compromising the ongoing integrity or emergency preparedness of an Installation or vessel.]~~

14. Impairment/damage to safety or environmentally critical equipment **[, where such impairment/damage prevents compliance with the Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru]**.

15. [Significant] eContact with fishing gear [resulting in its damage].

16. **[[Suspected] c][C]ontact] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru – supports "Contact"]** with submarine pipelines or cables [resulting in its damage] **[or an event that had a credible chance of causing such damage] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru].]**

17. [Significant] eContact with equipment related to marine scientific research [resulting in its damage].

**[Appendix II: Schedule of annual, administrative and other applicable fees [IWG IM]**

**Prescribed amount (United States dollars)**

**Annual fees**

Submission of annual report (regulation 84) [ ]

**Application and other fees**

Application for the approval of a Plan of Work (regulation 7(3)(j)) [ ]

Renewal of an exploitation contract (regulation 20) [ ]

Transfer of an interest in an exploitation contract and approved Plan of Work (regulation 23) [ ]

Use of a contract or approved Plan of Work as security (regulation 22) [ ]

Temporary suspension in Commercial Production (regulation 29) [ ]

Modification to a Plan of Work (regulation 57) [ ]

Approval of a revised/final Closure Plan (regulations 59(2) and 60) [ ]

Approval of a revised Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan (regulation 52(8)(b))

[Other] ]

*[Facilitators' Note: Several delegations have proposed to delete Appendix II, and instead to set specific fee amounts via Council decision (on the basis of a recommendation by the Finance Committee). Another proposal is to retain the list in Appendix II, but with specific fee amounts.]*

## APPENDIX III: Monetary Penalties [IWG IM]

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <del>Penalty in respect of any underdeclaration or underpayment in respect of a royalty</del>   |  |
| <del>Penalty in respect of any failure to deliver or furnish a royalty return</del>   |  |
| <del>Penalty in respect of false royalty returns and information</del>  |  |
| <del>Failure to submit an annual report (regulation 38)</del>   |  |
| <del>Other: to be considered e.g. relating to Notifiable Events (failure to notify); environmental &amp; other Incidents; not achieving/exceeding environmental thresholds. A desktop study should be performed in connection with monetary penalties under comparable national regimes for extractive industries, including those relating to a broader range of breaches of the environmental provisions and failure to adhere to the Plan of Work annexed to an exploitation contract.</del> |  |

*[Facilitators' Note: Several delegations have proposed to delete Appendix III, and instead to set specific penalty amounts via Council decision.]*

## Appendix IV [OEWG] Determination of a royalty liability

Appendix IV sets out the methodology for the calculation of a royalty payable under Regulation 64 in respect of the categories of resources. It is indicative and presented for discussion only at this time.

Several updates have been made since the last version of Appendix IV. Therefore, I have replaced the Appendix in its entirety.

A participant has expressed support for the Two Stage Variable Ad Valorem (Option 4) and the gross metal value calculation as set out in the Standard.

In the present appendix:

**Aggregate Relevant Metal Value** means the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Relevant Metal calculated in accordance with the [applicable](#) Standard.

**Applicable Royalty Rate** means the royalty rate set out in the [applicable](#) Standard, which may be by a decision of the Council following any review under these regulations.

**Average Listed Price** means the average listed price for a Relevant Metal **[or Relevant Ore]** [NORI, TOML, BMJ], calculated in accordance with the [applicable](#) Standard.

**Average Grade** means the average metal content of the Relevant Metal calculated in accordance with the [applicable](#) Standard.

**Relevant Metal** means a metal contained in the mineral-bearing ore identified and determined in accordance with the [applicable](#) Standard.

**Relevant Metal Value(s)** means the gross market value(s) of a Relevant Metal calculated in accordance with the [applicable](#) Standard.

**Valuation Point** is the first point of transfer of the mineral-bearing ore by delivery onto a vessel transporting the ore out of the Contract Area. In the instance where the transfer of mineral-bearing ore onto another vessel does not take place, the valuation point shall be on board the original vessel before it leaves the Contract Area.

### Explanation / Comment

- In relation to the Valuation Point, further specificity may be required in the Guidelines to clarify as to when, during the transferring process, weighing and sampling may take place, given that it is likely to be a continuous process over hours, or days, to load a single shipment onto the transport vessel.
- Some participants have proposed to add “applicable” before each



reference to “Standards” as there may be different Standards which apply to the various matters listed as defined terms in Appendix IV. I have proposed including that change.

- Some participants have proposed additional text for Valuation Point, with the following explanation: There are scenarios where the ore remains in the hold of the collector ship and is transferred directly out of the area without being transferred onto a transport ship. It is also possible that the ships sink with the mineral-bearing ore in their hold. We recommend amending the definition of “Valuation Point” accordingly and recommend that any associated Guidelines also reflect this possibility. I have included text to address that possibility.
- Following the March 2023 negotiating round, one Contractor proposed a complete rewrite of Appendix IV. It considers the formulas for calculating the royalty to have design defects. The ore in the two formulas are valued according to the metal or mineral in the ore rather than the raw ore. It considers that the valuation should be based on the original ore rather than the metals in the ore. It also considers that the 1994 Implementation Agreement is based on the principle of establishing a payment system that should treat both the contractor and the ISA fairly, and any one-sided pursuit of maximizing benefits by either party deviates from this principle. It considers the payment rate should be set so that the mineral types from the deep-sea bed have the ability of fair market competition with similar mineral types from the land. It suggests adopting a lower royalty rate equivalent to similar types of ore on land during the first 5-year commercial production stage (and as outlined above, it should be priced using the original ore).

## 1. The Authority shall set a royalty rate

The Authority shall set an Applicable Royalty Rate in respect of the royalty to be paid by the Contractor to the Authority for Minerals which constitute polymetallic nodules, as set out in the Relevant Standard and ~~taking into account the any~~ Guidelines.

### [1.bis. Additional Minerals

Additional Minerals shall be included in the calculation of the royalty should evidence become available that such minerals are being profitably extracted.

The Legal and Technical Commission shall recommend to the Council for decision whether additional Minerals shall be included.

The inclusion of additional Minerals in the determination of the royalty shall constitute a review of rates of payments as described in Regulation 82.]

### **Explanation / Comment**

- Regulation 64 prescribes that a royalty will be paid by the Contractor. This paragraph 1 now establishes who will set and collect the royalty, and how it will be calculated. The paragraph only concerns polymetallic nodules. To maintain long term adaptability, it directs the details to the

Standard and Guidelines.

- Some participants have proposed removing the reference to Guidelines. I propose to retain the reference, as it gives greater flexibility of options (including, for example, for worked examples in Guidelines). Regulations 94 and 95 set out when Standards will be used and when Guidelines will be used. I consider that the original text proposal, which would require the Authority to consider the Guidelines, would make consideration of the Guidelines (and therefore compliance with the Guidelines), binding.
- Participants have proposed different options for addressing additional metals. This is one such proposal, another is at the “Relevant Metals” section. I invite views of the participants on whether such updates could fall within the broader review and update mechanism contemplated under DR 81 and 82. I invite the submissions of participants on preferred approach for additional metals.

## 2. Calculation of royalty payable

The royalty payable to the Authority for each royalty return period shall be the product of the Applicable Royalty Rate multiplied by the Aggregate Relevant Metal Value for that royalty return period, [China – delete] calculated in accordance with the Standard and taking into account the Guidelines.

### **Explanation / Comment**

- Regulation 64 prescribes that a royalty will be paid; paragraph 1 of Appendix IV above states that the rate will be set by the Authority. This paragraph 2 establishes how the royalty payment will be calculated.
- To maintain long term adaptability, it directs the details to the Standard and Guidelines. Regulations 94 and 95 set out when Standards will be used and when Guidelines will be used. I consider that while most matters could be included in Standards, there is a role for Guidelines. Guidelines can be more easily changed than Standards, and therefore should be used for administrative and operational matters (such as forms to use etc.) as they can be kept current with industry practice, to ensure that the Authority is applying best practice and most current industry practice. They may also be useful for matters such as worked examples.
- I consider that the original text proposal makes consideration the Guidelines (and therefore compliance with the Guidelines), binding, as it requires the Authority to consider the Guidelines.

## Draft Standard [OEWG]

In the present Standard:

**First Period of Commercial Production** means a period of 5 years following the [date] [year] [China, NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace] of commencement of Commercial Production.

### Explanation / Comment

I invite views on whether it would be preferable for administrative purposes if the First Period of Commercial Production was to end at the end of a royalty return period.

**Listed Price** means:

1. For copper, nickel and cobalt: the price (in United States dollars), quoted for the Relevant Metal in the Official Listing relating to that Relevant Metal for the relevant period.
2. For manganese: the price (in United States dollars), quoted for manganese ore in the applicable Official Listing for the relevant period. ~~the result of the following calculation:~~

~~(0.1 x EMM Price) + (0.4 x LC FeMn Price) + (0.4 x MC FeMn Price) + (0.1 x HC FeMn Price) where:~~

~~(a) EMM Price means the price (in United States dollars), quoted for electrolytic manganese metal in the applicable Official Listing for the relevant period;~~

~~(b) LC FeMn Price means the price (in United States dollars), quoted for low carbon ferromanganese in the applicable Official Listing for the relevant period;~~

~~(c) MC FeMn Price means the price (in United States dollars), quoted for medium carbon ferromanganese in the applicable Official Listing for the relevant period; and~~

~~(d) HC FeMn Price means the price (in United States dollars), quoted for high carbon ferromanganese in the applicable Official Listing for the relevant period.~~

### Explanation / Comment

- Once the relevant indices have been settled, the applicable units for each quotation should be confirmed. It should also be confirmed that the relevant indices do in fact quote the prices for the relevant periods that are reflected by the draft Standards and Guidelines.
- To reflect the discussions of the OEWG, for manganese I have proposed text which features a manganese ore reference price. This also reflects the

new work done by MIT in their updated modelling. I invite further discussion on this point, noting that some participants proposed using only the electrolytic manganese price as the reference price, while another submission proposed eventually moving to a nodule ore price as opposed to a composite based on individual metals prices.

- To expand further on the relevant participant’s proposal to use an official listing of EMM only rather than the composite calculation originally proposed based on MIT’s earlier modelling, the explanation for that proposal is as follows: *The MIT model assumed, and included costs and royalty rates consistent with this assumption, that manganese was processed to the electrolytic manganese metal (EMM) grade. If the royalty rates proposed are levied on a base containing different/lower manganese prices then the conclusions from the MIT model are no longer relevant and the royalty rates should be revised upwards to maintain ISA revenues. Likewise, the proposed minimum acceptable royalty rates assume that the royalty is levied on a base using the EMM price. If there is a change to the manganese price used then the royalty base will be lower and payments to the ISA will be lower, and we will then revise its minimum acceptable royalty rates upwards to maintain acceptable revenues for humankind. It is important to understand that the regulations are not dictating what manganese grade processors process manganese to. The royalty regulations are simply determining a base on which the royalty is applied. There is no reason that the Draft Regulations cannot use the EMM price for that base. Trying to understand exactly what grade processors will process manganese to is likely to be a fruitless and unconstructive task that will only serve to delay the Draft Regulations. Reasons for this include: a.) some nodules may be processed to the EMM grade, while others will be processed to a lower grade, b.) different contractors will sell nodules to different processors, and not all processors will process nodules to the same grade, c.) some contractors may not even know the full downstream sales and processing chain. They will sell unprocessed nodules and are not legally responsible for what happens to the metal in those nodules downstream. In short, the main criteria for the royalty base are that it is simple to calculate, easy to audit and results in significant revenues for the ISA.* In addition review “Issue 3: The Valuation of Manganese” from the “African Group Speaking Notes on the Payment Regime” submitted on 15 January 2023, for further commentary to consider.

**Official Listing** means the quoted or published price of the Relevant Metals as specified for each Relevant Metal in the Guidelines.

**Explanation / Comment**

The reference to the Guidelines is to provide greater flexibility for future changes. The Guidelines also provide for a determination to be made by the Authority or Council (as determined during the negotiations) as to a new index, should the current one cease to be published.

**Second Period of Commercial Production** ~~means the period commencing on the day following the last day of the First Period of Commercial Production.~~ means [a period of [x] years commencing on the day following the last day of the First Period of Commercial Production.] [the period commencing on the day following the last day of

the First Period of Commercial Production.]

[[Third Period of Commercial Production means the period commencing on the day following the last day of the Second Period of Commercial Production.]] [NORI TOML, BMJ – delete]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Participants have proposed to define all periods of Commercial Production. I have proposed text to this effect, although noting that currently ‘Third Period of Commercial Production’ is not used in the text.
- As additional context, the two periods of Commercial Production were intended to reflect the two-stage ad valorem nature of Option 4, with the royalty rate increasing for the second period (namely the duration of the contract following an initial 5 year ramp up).

**Shipment** means each shipment of mineral-bearing ore by a vessel transporting the ore out of the Contract Area.

**1. Relevant Metals**

1. For the purpose of polymetallic nodules and appendix IV, [during the First Period of Commercial Production] Relevant Metals will be copper, nickel, cobalt and manganese [only].

2. During the Second Period of Commercial Production and subsequent periods of Commercial Production relevant metals will include copper, nickel, cobalt and manganese and may include other metals and substances, but only if there is substantial evidence that such other metals and substances are being processed from mineral-ore mined under the exploitation contract and are substantially increasing the value of polymetallic nodules mined in the area and in such case additional Standards will be published providing for the inclusion of these other metals and substances in aggregate relevant metal value.]  
[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Participants have proposed different options for addressing additional metals. One proposal is to include text at Appendix IV. Another is here in the “Relevant Metals” section. Or such updates could be included within the broader review and update mechanism contemplated under DR 81 and 82.

**2. Calculation of Average Grade**

1. In respect of each Relevant Metal, the Average Grade shall be the metal content of that Relevant Metal expressed as a percentage per dry metric ton of mineral-bearing ore in a Shipment.

2. The metal content of each Relevant Metal shall be determined based on samples of the mineral bearing ore collected at the Valuation Point in accordance with the sampling and assaying procedures set out in the Standards and any Guidelines.

**Explanation / Comment**

- This provides for the royalty to be calculated based on the actual (sampled) metal content of each individual Shipment based on a number of samples taken at the Valuation Point during the loading of the transport vessel. This approach approximates the reality of the operations and the likely basis on which the product will be sold on a commercial basis.
- The MIT model assumes a consistent grade / content for each metal due to the fact that, for the purposes of analysing financials, MIT used the average composition and kept this constant. However, in practice the Contractors would need to measure actual composition for reporting and royalty calculations.
- Some participants have proposed removing the reference to Guidelines. I consider that while most matters could be included in the Standards, there is a role for Guidelines. Regulations 94 and 95 set out when Standards will be used and when Guidelines will be used. Guidelines can be more easily changed than Standards, and therefore should be used for administrative and operational matters (such as forms to use etc.) as they can be kept current with industry practice, to ensure that the Authority is applying best practice and most current industry practice. They may also be useful for matters such as worked examples.
- I consider that the original text proposal makes consideration the Guidelines (and therefore compliance with the Guidelines), binding, as it requires the Authority to consider the Guidelines, would make consideration of the Guidelines.

3. **Calculation of Average Listed Price**

The Average Listed Price for a Relevant Metal shall be the Listed Price for the Relevant Metal for the month during which loading of that Shipment commenced.

**Explanation / Comment**

- This calculates the royalty based on the market price applicable to each individual Shipment and avoids averaging market pricing across periods or Shipments. In calculating the price for each Shipment, it is preliminarily proposed that the average price is reported for that month (or some other period, if the OEWG agrees), on the basis that this approach is similar to that used in the pricing of bulk commodities in commercial contracts (i.e. the 'quotational period').
- The model uses a single price over a 12-month period because future price forecasts don't exist on a more granular basis; and it should be noted that the model makes no reference to the time periods for calculating royalties in practice. MIT's modelling has demonstrated that more accuracy (with respect to reflect actual market prices) is achieved by not averaging prices over long periods of time.

#### 4. Calculation of Relevant Metal Value and Aggregate Relevant Metal Value

1. The value of the mineral-bearing ore for a royalty return period shall be the Aggregate Relevant Metal Value for that period.
2. The Aggregate Relevant Metal Value for a royalty return period shall be the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each of the Relevant Metals for that period.
3. The Relevant Metal Value for each Relevant Metal during the royalty return period shall be calculated as follows:
  - (a) For each Shipment:

Quantity x Average Grade of the Relevant Metal x Average Listed Price for the Relevant Metal

- (b) For the royalty return period:

the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Shipment [which commenced loading] in the royalty return period

Where:

- (i) Quantity means the quantity (in dry metric tons) of the mineral-bearing ore in each Shipment [which commenced loading] in a royalty return period and calculated in the light of the applicable Guidelines.
- (ii) Average Grade is calculated in accordance with this Standard and in the light of the applicable Guidelines.
- (iii) Average Listed Price is calculated in accordance with this Standard and in the light of the applicable Guidelines.

#### 5. Determination of the Applicable Royalty Rate

The Applicable Royalty Rate shall be:

~~Two stage variable ad valorem~~

1. For the First Period of Commercial Production, [~~2-3~~ %]; and

~~[1alt For the First Period of Commercial Production, [12%]; and]~~

2. [For][From] the Second Period of Commercial Production, a rate no less than [~~5-7.5~~ %] and no greater than [~~9-12.5~~ %] determined by reference to the table below and the Notional Relevant Metal Value:

~~[2alt [For][From] the Second Period of Commercial Production, a rate no less than [12%] and no greater than [25%] determined by reference to the table below and the Notional Relevant Metal Value:]~~

Where:

- (a) Notional Relevant Metal Value means the [average Aggregate Relevant Metal Value per dry metric ton across all Shipments during the royalty return period].
- (b) The [average Aggregate Relevant Metal Value per dry metric ton across all Shipments during the royalty return period] shall be calculated by dividing the Aggregate Relevant Metal Value for that royalty return period by the total Quantity shipped during that royalty return period.

| <b>Notional Relevant Metal Value</b><br><i>[(as may be adjusted in accordance with the Standards and Guidelines)]</i>   | <b>Applicable Royalty Rate</b><br><b>[for][from] Second Period of Commercial Production</b> |
|---|---|
| Less than <del>[US\$850]</del> [US\$ 510] per dry metric ton ( $x < \frac{\text{US\$850}}{t}$ <del>[US\$ 510/t]</del> )   | <del>[5-7.5 %]</del><br><del>[alt [12%]]</del>  |
| Greater than or equal to <del>[US\$850]</del> [US\$ 510] per dry metric ton but less than <del>[US\$925]</del> [US\$ 580] per dry metric ton ( $\frac{\text{US\$850}}{t} \leq x < \frac{\text{US\$925}}{t}$ <del>[US\$ 580/t]</del> )         | <del>[6-8.75 %]</del><br><del>[alt [15.3%]]</del>   |
| Greater than or equal to <del>[US\$925]</del> [US\$ 580] per dry metric ton but less than <del>[US\$1,000]</del> [US\$ 650] per dry metric ton ( $\frac{\text{US\$925}}{t} \leq x < \frac{\text{US\$1,000}}{t}$ <del>[US\$ 650/t]</del> )     | <del>[7-10 %]</del><br><del>[alt [18.5%]]</del>   |
| Greater than or equal to <del>[US\$1,000]</del> [US\$ 650] per dry metric ton and less than <del>[US\$1,075]</del> [US\$ 720] per dry metric ton ( $\frac{\text{US\$1,000}}{t} \leq x < \frac{\text{US\$1,075}}{t}$ <del>[US\$ 720/t]</del> ) | <del>[8-11.25 %]</del><br><del>[alt [21.8%]]</del>  |
| Greater than or equal to <del>[US\$1,075]</del> [US\$ 720] per dry metric ton ( $\frac{\text{US\$1,075}}{t} \leq x$ )   | <del>[9-12.5 %]</del><br><del>[alt [25%]]</del>   |

**Explanation / Comment**

- The applicable rates and thresholds provided are placeholders. I invite further discussion



on this issue.

- The new proposed rates and thresholds reflect the new work done by MIT in the updated model, noting however that the rates and thresholds need to be considered alongside other proposals which still require further discussion, including that relating to an additional royalty, as proposed in the OEWG, and in two submissions received from participants.
- In particular, one participant proposed changes to the rates and to the proposal to move to a one-stage rather than two-stage model. The alternative text rates reflected here are based on that submission, which notably referenced an EMM price for the manganese component, and also proposed an additional royalty. The proposed alternative rates should be considered in that context.
- The drafting here provides for the variable rate to be set based on the average market price per DMT for all Shipments during the 6-month royalty return period. Although the MIT model uses an annual price so that the rate is constant over the year and does not change for each Shipment, this was because the model was not intended to address the royalty calculation periods. In practice, applying this formulation, the rate will be re-calculated every six months to reflect market prices over that period.
- Reflection should be given to the issue as to whether the Guidelines should address inflationary (or other applicable) increases to the Notional Relevant Metal Value amounts specified in the table. Alternatively, another approach may be to simply amend the table in this Standard from time to time to reflect appropriate price increases in the future.

6. **[Commercial Production**

1. Commercial Production shall commence on the date that recovery, for commercial purposes, of Minerals from the relevant Mining Area has reached at least [60%] of the design capacity outlined in the initial production phase of the Mining Work Plan for that Mining Area for [90] consecutive days.
2. Recovery, for the purposes of Commercial Production, shall take place at the point at which Minerals from the Mining Area are transferred to a vessel directly following collection or removal from the seabed and ocean floor and subsoil thereof.
3. Once ~~the Contractor determines that it is engaging in sustained large scale~~ recovery operations meet the criteria for the commencement of Commercial Production as set out in paragraph 1 above, which yield a quantity of materials in excess of the thresholds specified in the Standards, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Secretary-General of the proposed date of commencement of Commercial Production together with supporting documentation and other evidence as specified in the Standards.
4. The Secretary-General shall transmit the notification and supporting documentation and evidence to the Commission, which shall consider the proposal and supporting materials and approve or reject the Contractor's proposed date.
5. Promptly following approval or rejection by the Commission, the Secretary-General shall, as applicable, confirm the date of commencement of Commercial Production to the Contractor, or notify the Contractor of the rejection and invite the Contractor to re-submit its proposed date of commencement of Commercial Production ~~under~~

~~Regulation 27(2).~~

6. Upon confirmation, the Secretary-General shall notify members of the Authority, in particular coastal states [in close proximity] [adjacent] to the [Mining Area][~~Contract Area~~], that Commercial Production has ~~commenced~~ begun and the location of the Mining Area(s).
7. The date of commencement of Commercial Production, will be the date confirmed to the Contractor according to ~~paragraph 5. Regulation 27(3).~~
8. If the Authority [or Inspectorate] has reasonable grounds to believe that the Contractor's recovery rate does not achieve the level defined in their Plan of Work within [6 months] of the start of recovery operations, the Contractor shall be required to modify its Plan of Work in accordance with Regulation 57.
9. The Contractor shall submit any additional information requested by the Authority [or Inspectorate] within [30] days of any such request by the Authority.

**Explanation / Comment**

- These changes should be read in conjunction with Regulation 27. In July participants supported the text as drafted. One participant has now proposed deleting the relevant paragraphs from Regulation 27 and moving them to the Standards as set out here, with the changes proposed here in mark-up. I invite comments.
- The applicable thresholds provided are placeholders as proposed by one participant. I invite further discussion on this issue.
- I note that if the definition of Commercial Production in the Schedule to the Regulations is amended, this text may require consequential harmonization amendments.

7. **Methodology for the review of Rates of Payments**

1. In line with common practice in cross-country comparisons of fiscal regimes imposed on land-based mining operations, the Commission, when undertaking a review pursuant to this Standard, will use average Effective Tax Rate (AETR) to make comparisons between the rates of payments for deep-sea mining operations and land-based mining operations exploiting similar minerals.
2. In addition, the Commission will draw on established methodology routinely used by intergovernmental organizations conducting such comparisons – for example, the International Monetary Fund's Fiscal Analysis of Resource Industries (FARI) Methodology (see FARI Technical Notes & Manual, 2016).

EFFECTIVE TAX RATE

Mining in the Area  
of deepsea minerals

within  
range

EFFECTIVE TAX RATE

Land-based mining  
of same or similar minerals

ISA Royalty + GovRev  
Pre-tax net cashflows

GovRev  
Pre-tax net cashflows

GovRev is all payments to government composed of royalty, income tax, resource rent tax, withholding taxes, and so on, as specified by the fiscal regime.

Source: [IMF Technical Note on FARI Methodology, 2016](#)

3. The Commission will use the following information when conducting a review pursuant to this Standard:
  - (a) Pre-tax net cashflows for a typical deep sea mining project;
  - (b) Authority and government revenue from deep-sea mining operations; and
  - (c) Government revenue from land-based mining operations exploiting the same or similar minerals.

**Pre-tax net cashflows for a typical deep-sea mining project**

4. The ISA Financial Model will be updated based on best available pre-tax net cashflows data for the five years preceding the most recent review of rates of payments.
5. The data referenced in paragraph 4 above will include prefeasibility studies submitted by Contractors as part of their exploitation contract application, feasibility studies submitted 12 months before the commencement of Commercial Production and any annual reporting required during Commercial Production.

**Authority and government revenue from deep-sea mining operations**

6. Along with royalty payments to the Authority, the Commission shall review the fiscal regimes of governments who either already generate revenue from Commercial Production undertaken by Contractor(s) in the Area or those governments who could generate such revenue in the future if Contractor(s) with existing Exploration contracts were to proceed with Commercial Production. For the purpose of information covered under this paragraph, the Commission will use the median rate of government revenue as the appropriate metric.

**Government revenue from land-based mining operations exploiting the same or similar minerals**

7. The Commission shall review the fiscal regimes of land-based mining jurisdictions that have accounted for at least 80% of global (excluding seabed mining) production of the same or similar minerals during the preceding five years. For example, when reviewing rates of payment for Contractors who exploit polymetallic nodules, the Commission will review land-based mining jurisdictions accounting for at least 80% of global (excluding seabed mining) nickel, copper, manganese, and cobalt mining production during the preceding five years. For the purpose of the information covered under this paragraph, the Commission will use the median rate of government revenue as the appropriate metric.

8. Subject to the review conducted pursuant to these Standards, if the AETR for mining in the Area is determined to differ from the AETR for land-based mining exploiting the same or similar minerals, the Commission shall propose a recommendation for consideration by the Council to adjust the rates of payments with a view to bringing the AETR for Contractors within the range of AETR for land-based mining operations exploiting the same or similar minerals.]

**Explanation / Comment**

- Two participants have proposed the above mechanism relating to the review of rates for payments under draft regulation 82. I invite comments.
- The following explanation has been provided by the participants:

*The establishment of Standards for the review of the financial terms of exploitation contracts will enable the Authority to simplify the text of the regulations and move rates, deadlines, timelines, and technical considerations, etc. into a set of Standards that can be easily updated.*

*The establishment of Standards will ensure that there is a consistent, rigorous, transparent, and timely approach to the process by which the Authority will review the system of payments and the rates of payments.*

*The establishment of a defined review process will also ensure that the Authority can fulfil its mandate to organize and control all mineral-resources-related activities in the Area for the benefit of humankind as a whole.*

*Also, any review of the system of payments and rates of payments should consider the rates of payments across all financial mechanisms established by the Authority (e.g., potential additional tax, profit share mechanism, financial incentives, etc.) and be aligned with the review of the system of payments and rates of payments.*

*Finally, the establishment of a transparent review process by the Authority will ensure that member States and Contractors have confidence in the Authority's ability to manage the financial system of the Area for the benefit of humankind as a whole.*

**[Canada]**

**STANDARD ON THE OPERATION OF A PROFIT SHARE ON THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT TRANSFER OF EXPLORATION AND EXPLOITATION RIGHTS PERTAINING TO A SPECIFIED RESOURCE CATEGORY IN THE AREA**

**SCOPE**

1. For the purposes of this Standard, a Contract encompasses any ownership right pertaining to a specified Resource category in the Area, or other rights that allow exploration, exploitation, concession or similar rights in the Area, as well as shares, participations, other rights representing capital, directly or indirectly, of companies holding such rights.
2. Unless otherwise stated, the provisions of this Standard shall be interpreted in accordance with the Schedule of Terms included below.

**VALUATION REPORT**

3. The Transferor shall submit a reasonable and defensible valuation report to the Secretary-General, together with its application to transfer the rights and obligations under a Contract.
4. The valuation report shall serve the purpose of determining whether a Transfer Profit Share is due to the Authority, as well as the amount of the liability. In this respect, in the case of the Indirect Transfer Profit Share, the valuation report shall also serve the purpose of establishing the value of the Transfer interest derived from the Contract relative to the total value of the transferred interest.
5. The valuation report shall be prepared by a competent and independent firm or expert, and shall satisfy the following minimum requirements:
  - a. The valuation methods used to prepare the report conform with international standards and best practice;
  - b. The valuation report shall be signed off by the Transferor's Board of Directors and any representative(s) thereof that owns, either directly or indirectly, the rights under a contract that pertains to a specified Resource category in the Contract Area;
  - c. The valuation report shall disclose the name(s) of the Suitably Qualified Person(s) that have undertaken and signed off on the valuation report, their qualifications, professional affiliations, relevant experience, and date of their sign-off.
  - d. The valuation report shall include the calculation of the Net Financial Gain generated from the Direct Transfer of a Contract or, in the case of an Indirect Transfer, from the transfer of interest in a Contract that pertains to a specified Resource category in the Contract Area.
6. The Secretary-General shall share the valuation report and any other relevant documentation with the Legal and Technical Commission for its consideration.
7. The Legal and Technical Commission shall review the valuation report taking into consideration its merit and contents when formulating its recommendation to the Council pursuant to Regulation 23, paragraph 3.
8. If the Legal and Technical Commission disagrees with any part of the valuation report or considers the valuation report as failing to effectively demonstrate the market value of the Transfer, its components or the relevant mining asset, it may appoint an independent third-

party to conduct a new valuation, the cost of which shall be borne by the Transferor and/or the Transferee.

#### **DIRECT TRANSFER PROFIT SHARE**

9. The Transferee, regardless of the location of its incorporation, shall pay a [25%] Direct Transfer Profit Share, levied by the Authority, on any Net Financial Gain from the Direct Transfer of rights under a Contract.

10. For the purposes of paragraph 9 above, the Transferee shall be responsible for:

- a. Calculating the monetary amount (in United States dollars) of the Direct Transfer Profit Share liability due to the Authority;
- b. Notifying the Authority of the amount of the Direct Transfer Profit Share liability;
- c. Deducting the amount of the Direct Transfer Profit Share from the consideration to be received by the Transferor for the Transfer;
- d. Paying the Direct Transfer Profit Share to the Authority.

#### **INDIRECT TRANSFER PROFIT SHARE**

11. The Transferee, regardless of the location of its incorporation, shall pay a [25%] Indirect Transfer Profit Share on any gain made from the transfer of a 20% or greater interest in any entity which derives 20% or more of its value, directly or indirectly, and regardless of where that entity is incorporated, from a Contract that pertains to a specified Resource category in the Contract Area.

12. For the purpose of paragraph 11 above, the Transferee shall be responsible for:

- a. Calculating the value of the Net Financial Gain of the Transfer; and
- b. Calculating the amount of the Net Financial Gain of the Transfer subject to the Indirect Transfer Profit Share, using to the following pro rata formula:

$$A \times B/C$$

Where:

'A' is the amount of the Net Financial Gain of the Transfer included in the valuation report;

'B' is the value of interest derived, directly or indirectly, from rights under a Contract that pertains to a specified Resource category in the Contract Area, as indicated in the valuation report; and

'C' is the total value of the interest, as indicated in the valuation report.

- c. Calculating the monetary amount (in United States dollars) of the Indirect Transfer Profit Share liability due to the Authority;
- d. Notifying the Authority of the amount of Indirect Transfer Profit Share liability;
- e. deducting the amount of Indirect Transfer Profit Share from the consideration to be received by the Transferor for the Transfer;
- f. Paying the Indirect Transfer Profit Share to the Authority.

13. Any series of Indirect Transfers in respect of the same Contract undertaken within a period of [365] days shall be treated as a single Transfer for the purposes of meeting the De Minimis Threshold established under paragraph 11 above.

### **TRANSFER PROFIT SHARE RETURN**

14. The Transferee shall submit to the Secretary General a Transfer Profit Share Return for any Direct or Indirect Transfer as defined in this Standard.
15. The Transfer Profit Share Return shall include, at a minimum, the following information:
  - a. The identity of the Transferor and Transferee;
  - b. The calculation of the Transfer Profit Share Liability
  - c. Any information which supports the calculation of the Transfer Profit Share liability, including but not limited to the valuation report referred to in this Standard.
  - d. The submission date of the Transfer Profit Share Return.

### **PAYMENT CERTIFICATE**

16. Following receipt of payment of the Direct or Indirect Transfer Profit Share, the Secretary-General shall provide to the Transferor, on behalf of the Authority, a Transfer Profit Share Payment Certificate, which must include at a minimum:
  - a. The Contract(s) subject to the Transfer Profit Share
  - b. The return period during which the Transfer Profit Share was paid;
  - c. The date of the payment; and
  - d. The amount (in United States dollars) paid to the Authority
17. The Transfer Profit Share Payment Certificate may be used by the Transferor to allow for unilateral tax relief in its effective tax jurisdiction.

### **COMPLIANCE AND PENALTIES**

18. The Authority shall impose a monetary penalty, subject to relevant Rules, Regulations, and Procedures, if the Transferee fails to submit the Transfer Profit Share Return within [30 days] of the Transfer being validly effected.
19. The Authority may impose a monetary penalty when it determines there is any gross error in the Transfer Profit Share Return submitted by the Transferee.
20. Subject to Regulation 103, the Authority may revoke, without compensation, the Contract if it appears, based on reasonable grounds, that:
  - a. The Transferor or Transferee has failed to inform the Authority within [90 days] of a Transfer transaction which could conceivably have led to a Transfer Profit Share liability;
  - b. Underestimated the total financial liability due under Transfer Profit Share; or
  - c. Failed to pay the total financial liability due to the Authority under the Transfer Profit Share within [120 days] of the Transfer.

## Draft Guidelines in accordance with Regulations 95 in respect of the administration and management of royalties prescribed in Part VII [OEWG]

### Official Listings

1. Official Listing in respect of copper means [appropriate reference to be determined].
2. Official Listing in respect of nickel means [appropriate reference to be determined].
3. Official Listing in respect of cobalt means [appropriate reference to be determined].
4. Official Listing in respect of manganese: [appropriate reference to manganese ore to be determined].  
~~(a) — in respect of [electrolytic manganese metal] means [appropriate reference to be determined];~~  
~~(b) — in respect of [low carbon ferromanganese] means [appropriate reference to be determined];~~  
~~(c) — in respect of [medium carbon ferromanganese] means [appropriate reference to be determined]; and~~  
~~(d) — in respect of [high carbon ferromanganese] means [appropriate reference to be determined].~~

### Explanation / Comment

- This definition could be moved directly into the Standard if preferred. It has been included here to provide greater flexibility for future changes.
- As identified in the past, manganese presents a challenge. There is currently no accepted market index price because the manganese product, form and value relative to reference prices remain highly uncertain. The new text in relation to manganese reflects the discussions of the OEWG with respect to a medium-grade manganese reference price. This also reflects the new work done by MIT in their updated modelling. I invite further discussion on this point, noting that one participant proposed using only the electrolytic manganese price as the reference price, while another participant proposed eventually moving to a nodule ore price as opposed to a composite based on individual metals prices.

### Replacement of Official Listing

If:

1. any of the indices or publications listed as an Official Listing ceases to be published or determinable for a period of [one month] and there are reasonable grounds on which to conclude that the index or publication will continue not to be published on a consistent basis in future; or
2. any of the indices or publications listed as an Official Listing does not, in the opinion of the [Council] fairly and reasonably, whether due to persistent errors or omissions, a change in its methodology or for any other reason, reflect the fair market price of the Relevant Metal,



then the [Council] may determine a replacement Official Listing for the Relevant Metal, which shall be:

- (a) the price for the Relevant Metal quoted on a recognized international mineral exchange or market;
- (b) the published price for the Relevant Metal in a publication recognized for quoting or publishing prices of metals in an international market; or
- (c) based on recommendations of the Commission [and following consultation with Contractors], a formula determined by the Council.

**Worked example of royalty calculation**

The following provides a worked example of the calculation of the royalty in accordance with regulation 64, appendix IV, the applicable Standard and these applicable Guidelines. This is for illustrative purposes only.

| <b>Explanation / Comment</b>  |
|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>I invite views on whether the worked example should be retained in the Guidelines.</u> The example (currently based on a two-stage variable ad valorem) will need to be updated and refined as changes are made to the proposed drafting, and if required, more detail could be added. For example, it could include changes to the Average Grade rather than the consistency shown in the example below, and adjustment of Shipment sizes and frequency to more closely emulate a typical nodule mining operation.</li> <li>• Pending further discussion with members, the worked example has simply been updated to reflect the rates and thresholds proposed in this text, and does not yet take account of different participants’ submissions, including on an additional royalty.</li> <li>• Once the equalization measure has been settled in principle, an updated worked example could be included to encompass the relevant equalization payments.</li> </ul> |

**WORKED EXAMPLE 1:**

| (see Worked Example 2 for details)           | <b>Copper</b>  | <b>Nickel</b>   | <b>Cobalt</b>   | <b>Manganese</b>   |
|--|--|---|---|--|
|  | Quantity (DMT) x<br>Average Grade (%)<br>x Average Listed<br>Price (USD/t) | Quantity (DMT) x<br>Average Grade<br>(%) x Average<br>Listed Price<br>(USD/t) | Quantity (DMT) x<br>Average Grade<br>(%) x Average<br>Listed Price<br>(USD/t) | Quantity (DMT) x<br>Average Grade (%)<br>x Average Listed<br>Price (USD/t) |
| <b>Shipment 1</b>                            | US\$47,025,000   | US\$128,700,000   | US\$49,500,000  | US\$62,622,000   |
| <b>Shipment 2</b>                            | US\$57,750,000   | US\$169,000,000   | US\$62,000,000  | US\$67,450,000   |
| <b>Shipment 3</b>                            | US\$75,625,000   | US\$171,600,000   | US\$73,700,000  | US\$70,290,000   |
| <b>Relevant Metal Value (US\$)</b>           | US\$180,400,000  | US\$469,300,000   | US\$185,200,000   | US\$200,362,000  |
| <b>Aggregate Relevant Metal Value (US\$)</b> | US\$1,035,262,000  |   |   |  |
| <b>Royalty Rate</b>                          | First Period of<br>Commercial  | 3%  |   |  |

|   |  |                               |   |
|---|--|-------------------------------|---|
|   | Production                                   |                               |   |
|   | Second Period of Commercial Production       | Notional Relevant Metal Value | US\$1,035,262,000 / 1,500,000 DMT = US\$690/t |
|   |  | 11.25%                        |   |
| <b>Royalty payable (First Period of Commercial Production)</b>  | US\$1,035,262,000 x 3% = US\$31,057,860      |                               |   |
| <b>Royalty payable (Second Period of Commercial Production)</b> | US\$1,035,262,000 x 11.25% = US\$116,466,975 |                               |   |

**WORKED EXAMPLE 2:**

1. Calculation of royalty payable (see Appendix IV)

Applicable Royalty Rate multiplied by the Aggregate Relevant Metal Value

$$= \cancel{2} \underline{3\%} \times \cancel{\text{US\$1,591,760,000}} \underline{\text{US\$1,035,262,000}} = \cancel{\text{US\$31,835,200}} \underline{\text{US\$31,057,860}} \text{ (First Period of Commercial Production) Or}$$

$$= \cancel{8} \underline{11.25\%} \times \cancel{\text{US\$1,591,760,000}} \underline{\text{US\$1,035,262,000}} = \cancel{\text{US\$127,340,800}} \underline{\text{US\$116,466,975}} \text{ (Second Period of Commercial Production, if two stage variable ad valorem)}$$

2. Applicable Royalty Rate (see Standard)

If during First Period:  $\cancel{2} \underline{3\%}$

If during Second Period:  $\cancel{8} \underline{11.25\%}$  (two stage variable ad valorem)

where  $\cancel{8} \underline{11.25\%}$  based is on a Notional Relevant Metal Value of  $\cancel{\text{US\$1,061/t}} \underline{\text{US\$690/t}}$  (as per table in Standard)

*Notional Relevant Metal Value*

= Aggregate Relevant Metal Value / total Quantity

$$= \cancel{\text{US\$1,591,760,000}} \underline{\text{US\$1,035,262,000}} / 1,500,000\text{DMT}$$

$$= \cancel{\text{US\$1,061}} \underline{\text{US\$690}} \text{ per ton}$$

3. Aggregate Relevant Metal Value (see Standard)

Aggregate Relevant Metal Value = the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Value for each Relevant Metal during the royalty return period

= Relevant Metal Value for copper + Relevant Metal Value for nickel + Relevant Metal Value for cobalt + Relevant Metal Value for manganese

$$= \text{US\$180,400,000} + \text{US\$469,300,000} + \text{US\$185,200,000} + \cancel{\text{US\$756,860,000}} \underline{\text{US\$200,362,000}}$$

$$= \text{US\$1,591,760,000} - \text{US\$1,035,262,000}$$

Relevant Metal Value for Copper:

1. For each Shipment of copper:

Quantity x Average Grade of the Relevant Metal x Average Listed Price for the Relevant Metal

2. For the royalty return period:

the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Shipment which commenced loading in the royalty return period

3. Therefore, assuming 3 Shipments:

|  | Quantity (DMT) | Average Grade (%) | Average Listed Price (US\$/t) | Relevant Metal Value (US\$) |
|--|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Shipment 1</b>                          | 450000         | 1.10%             | 9500                          | 47025000                    |
| <b>Shipment 2</b>                          | 500000         | 1.10%             | 10500                         | 57750000                    |
| <b>Shipment 3</b>                          | 550000         | 1.10%             | 12500                         | 75625000                    |
| <b>Aggregate for royalty return period</b> |                |                   |                               | 180400000                   |

Relevant Metal Value for Nickel:

1. For each Shipment of nickel:

Quantity x Average Grade of the Relevant Metal x Average Listed Price for the Relevant Metal

2. For the royalty return period:

The aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Shipment which commenced loading in the royalty return period.

3. Therefore, assuming 3 Shipments:

|  | Quantity (DMT) | Average Grade (%) | Average Listed Price (US\$/t) | Relevant Metal Value (US\$) |
|--|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Shipment 1</b>                          | 450000         | 1.30%             | 22000                         | 128700000                   |
| <b>Shipment 2</b>                          | 500000         | 1.30%             | 26000                         | 169000000                   |
| <b>Shipment 3</b>                          | 550000         | 1.30%             | 24000                         | 171600000                   |
| <b>Aggregate for royalty return period</b> |                |                   |                               | 469300000                   |

Relevant Metal Value for Cobalt:

1. For each Shipment of cobalt:

Quantity x Average Grade of the Relevant Metal x Average Listed Price for the Relevant Metal

2. For the royalty return period:

the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Shipment which commenced loading in the royalty return period

3. Therefore, assuming 3 Shipments:

|  | Quantity (DMT) | Average Grade (%) | Average Listed Price (US\$/t) | Relevant Metal Value (US\$) |
|--|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Shipment 1</b>                          | 450000         | 0.20%             | 55000                         | 49500000                    |
| <b>Shipment 2</b>                          | 500000         | 0.20%             | 62000                         | 62000000                    |
| <b>Shipment 3</b>                          | 550000         | 0.20%             | 67000                         | 73700000                    |
| <b>Aggregate for royalty return period</b> |                |                   |                               | 185200000                   |

Relevant Metal Value for Manganese:

1. For each Shipment of manganese:

Quantity x Average Grade of the Relevant Metal x Average Listed Price for the Relevant Metal

2. For the royalty return period:

the aggregate of the Relevant Metal Values for each Shipment which commenced loading in the royalty return period

3. Therefore, assuming 3 Shipments:

*NOTE: Price based on the following:*

*(0.1 x EMM Price) + (0.4 x LC FeMn Price) + (0.4 x MC FeMn Price) + (0.1 x HC FeMn Price)*

|  | Quantity (DMT) | Average Grade (%) | Average Listed Price (US\$/t) | Relevant Metal Value (US\$)              |
|--|----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>Shipment 1</b>                          | 450000         | 28.40%            | <del>1500</del> <u>490</u>    | <del>191700000</del><br><u>62622000</u>  |
| <b>Shipment 2</b>                          | 500000         | 28.40%            | <del>2000</del> <u>475</u>    | <del>284000000</del><br><u>67450000</u>  |
| <b>Shipment 3</b>                          | 550000         | 28.40%            | <del>1800</del> <u>450</u>    | <del>281160000</del><br><u>70290000</u>  |
| <b>Aggregate for royalty return period</b> |                |                   |                               | <del>756860000</del><br><u>200362000</u> |

## Schedule [President's Text] Use of terms and scope

### Comments/remarks

- General terms and scope used throughout the draft regulations are handled in the President's text. In relation to specialized terms and where expertise within the subject is required for further development, the terms and scope are handled by the relevant working group.

["Additional Royalty" [OEWG] means the additional royalty payable in accordance with regulation [64Bis] and [64Ter].]

["Allowable Sponsoring State Tax" [OEWG] has the meaning given in regulation [64Ter.6].]

["Applicable Additional Royalty Rate" [OEWG] is the rate determined in the [applicable] Standard.]

["Assumed CIT Rate" [OEWG] is the rate determined in the [applicable] Standard.]

["Authority" means the International Seabed Authority as established by part XI of the Convention and for the purposes of these Regulations shall include all organs of the Authority save for the Enterprise, except where the Enterprise is expressly stated as being included.]

**"Agreement"** means the Agreement relating to the Implementation of Part XI of the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea of 10 December 1982.

**"Best Available Scientific [Evidence] [Information] [Knowledge] [Germany – replace]"** means the scientific information and data accessible and attainable that, in the particular circumstances [is accurate, reliable, and relevant] [Germany], [is of good quality and is objective, within reasonable technical and economic constraints,] [Germany] and is based on internationally recognized scientific practices, standards, technologies and methodologies [, including peer review] [Germany].

**"Best Available Techniques"** [IWG ENV] means the [latest stage of development, and state-of-the-art [most appropriate] [Germany – delete] processes]] [Germany – remove brackets] [most appropriate development and processes] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace], [[within reasonable technical and economic constraints,]] [øf] [Germany – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ - keep] facilities or [øf] methods of operation that indicate the practical suitability of a particular measure for the [prevention] [Germany] [avoidanceprevention]] [Germany – delete], reduction and control of pollution and the protection of the Marine Environment from the harmful effects of [Exploitation] [Germany – delete] activities [in the Area] [Germany], taking into account the guidance set out in the applicable [Standards and] Guidelines.] [Germany – remove brackets]

[Alt. 1 "Best Available Techniques" means the most effective and advanced stage in the development of activities and their methods of operation which indicates the practical suitability of particular techniques for providing the basis for emission limit values and other permit conditions designed to prevent and, where that is not practicable, to reduce emissions and the impact on the environment as a whole:

(a) 'techniques' includes both the technology used and the way in which the installation is designed, built, maintained, operated and decommissioned;

(b) 'available techniques' means those developed on a scale which allows implementation in the relevant industrial sector, under economically and technically

viable conditions, taking into consideration the costs and advantages, whether or not the techniques are used or produced inside the Member State in question, as long as they are reasonably accessible to the operator.

(c) ‘best’ means most effective in achieving a high general level of protection of the environment as a whole;] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete alt. 1 entirely]

[Alt 2. [“**Best Available Techniques**” means the most appropriate processes, within reasonable technical and economic constraints, facilities or methods of operation that indicate the practical suitability of a particular measure for the prevention, reduction and control of pollution and the protection of the Marine Environment from the harmful effects of Exploitation activities, [in accordance with the applicable Standard,] [PEW] taking into account the [guidance set out in the applicable] [relevant] [PEW - replace] Guidelines.]]

[Germany – delete Alt 2. entirely]

“**Best Environmental Practices**” [IWG ENV] means the application of the most appropriate combination of environmental control measures and strategies [for purposes of ensuring the effective protection of the Marine Environment, and] [PEW] [based on the Best Available Scientific Information and Best Available Technology [which]] [Germany- remove brackets] [PEW - delete] [[that]] [Germany – delete] will change with time in the light of improved knowledge, understanding or technology, [as well as the incorporation of the relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities] [Germany- remove brackets] [and in accordance with the] [PEW] [taking into account the [[guidance set out in the]] [Germany- delete] [PEW – delete] applicable [Standards [Germany- remove bracket] [, taking into account the relevant] [PEW] [and]] [Germany- remove brackets] [PEW – delete] Guidelines [[including traditional knowledge and international best practices] [Germany- remove brackets].] [PEW - delete]

[“**Best Archaeological Practices**” [handled by the IWG ENV] means (as defined by the 2001 UNESCO Convention) those practices designed to: encourage responsible and non-intrusive public access to underwater cultural heritage in accordance with Articles 2.5 and 2.10 of the Convention; increase public awareness, recognition and protection of heritage; promote the Convention and the establishment of national legal frameworks for protection; support scientific research in accordance with the Convention and the Rules concerning activities directed at underwater cultural heritage annexed to it, and capacity building in this regard; and promote the appropriate conservation of heritage.]

[“**Best Archaeological Practices**” means (as defined by the 2001 UNESCO Convention) those practices designed to: encourage responsible and non-intrusive public access to underwater cultural heritage in accordance with Articles 2.5 and 2.10 of the Convention; increase public awareness, recognition and protection of heritage; promote the Convention and the establishment of national legal frameworks for protection; support scientific research in accordance with the Convention and the Rules concerning activities directed at underwater cultural heritage annexed to it, and capacity building in this regard; and promote the appropriate conservation of heritage.] [Germany]

“**Calendar Year**” means a period of 12 months, ending with 31 December.

[“**Closure**” means activities undertaken within a Contract Area once commercial production has ceased, and includes; Decommissioning, post-mining monitoring and reporting, and any rehabilitation and restoration or compensatory measures that may be agreed.]

[“**Certified Laboratory**” [OEWG] means a laboratory certified to undertake a chemical analysis of mineral-bearing ore in accordance with the relevant standards of the

International Organization for Standardization and which otherwise complies with the requirements for a Certified Laboratory in Standards and Guidelines.]

“**Change of Control**” means where there is a change resulting in ~~different~~ ~~Pew~~ ownership of 50 percent or more of the Contractor, or of the membership of the joint venture, consortium or partnership, as the case may be, ~~or a change resulting in~~ ~~different~~ ~~Pew~~ ownership of 50 percent or more of the entity providing an Environmental Performance Guarantee ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - delete]~~.

“**Closure Plan**” means the document referred to in annex VIII.

[Alt “**Closure Plan**” means a document that contains an integrated environmental, social and economic base case for decommissioning, closure and postclosure activities and conditions against which future monitoring can be compared. It will be revised through the lifetime of the contract and must be considered as an integral. Part of operational planning.] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

“**Commercial Production**” shall be deemed to have begun where a Contractor engages in sustained large-scale recovery operations which yield a quantity of materials sufficient to indicate clearly that the principal purpose is large-scale production rather than production intended for information-gathering, analysis or the testing of equipment or plant.<sup>1</sup>

“**Commission**” means the Legal and Technical Commission of the Authority.

“**Communication**” means any application, request, notice, report, consent, approval, waiver, direction or instruction required or made under these regulations;

“**Confidential Information**” shall have the meaning assigned to that term by regulation 89.

~~“**Contamination**” means the presence of an impurity where a pure or contaminant-free medium would be expected; the contaminant can be the result of human activity or naturally occurring.]~~ ~~[Germany]~~

~~“**Contract**” encompasses any ownership right pertaining to a specified Resource category in the Area or other rights that allow exploration, exploitation, concession. This includes shares, participations, other rights representing capital, directly or indirectly, of companies holding such rights.]~~ ~~[Canada]~~

“**Contract Area**” means the part or parts of the Area allocated to a Contractor under an exploitation contract and defined by the coordinates listed in schedule 1 to such exploitation contract.

~~“**Contractor**” means a contractor having a contract in accordance with Part III and, where the context applies, shall include its employees, subcontractors, agents and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under the contract.]~~ ~~[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

[Alt “**Contractor**” means a party to an exploitation contract (other than the Authority) in accordance with Part III of these regulations] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]~~ [and, where the context applies, shall include its employees, subcontractors, agents and all persons engaged in working or acting for them in the conduct of its operations under the contract.] ~~[Germany – remove enclosing brackets]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

---

<sup>1</sup> This wording is taken from article 17 (2) (g) of annex III to the Convention. Article 17 (1) (b) (xiii) of annex III to the Convention requires the Authority to provide for a definition of commercial production, reflecting the objective criteria under article 17 (2) (g). A clearer definition of commercial production will be needed.

“**Convention**” means the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea.

“**Council**” means the executive organ of the Authority established under article 158 of the Convention.

“**Covered Taxes**” [OEWG] has the meaning given to that term in the [Pillar 2 Global Anti-Base Erosion Model Rules published by the OECD] from time to time.]

“**Cumulative Environmental Effect**” [IWG ENV] [means any [material] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] consequences in the Marine Environment arising over time from the conduct of Exploitation activities or in combination with other stressors and activities in the same area, including those not regulated by the Authority.] [Germany – remove brackets] [In case of cumulative effects, the combination of all effects in the same area may be more severe than the sum of its parts.] [Germany]

“**Damage to the Marine Environment**” [handled by the IWG ENV] | [PEW, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

“**Day**” means calendar Day.

“**Decommissioning**” means measures taken, whether onshore or offshore, to permanently cease the operations, remove, or dispose of structures, facilities, Installations, and other equipment erected or used for the purposes of activities undertaken pursuant to an exploitation contract, in connection with the abandonment or cessation or partial cessation of those activities in a Contract area or part of a Contract area.]

“**Depleted, Threatened or Endangered Species**” [handled by the IWG ENV]

“**Designated representative**” means the person so named on behalf of a Contractor on the Seabed Mining Register [or prior to award of contract, in the application].

“**De Minimis Threshold**” means a minimum percentage of transferred interest in any entity that would trigger an Indirect Transfer Profit Share liability due to the Authority as established in this Standard.] [Canada]

“**Direct Transfer**” means the direct transfer, from one entity to any other entity or entities, of a Contract as defined in this Standard.] [Canada]

“**Ecological Balance of the Marine Environment**” [IWG ENV] means the equilibrium between, and harmonious coexistence of, organisms and their environment.] [PEW – delete]

“**Ecosystem Approach**” [IWG ENV] means a comprehensive, integrated [and interdisciplinary] [Germany] approach to the management of human activities based on the Best Available Scientific [[Information Evidence] [Knowledge] [Germany – replace]-[and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities] [Micronesia] [that accounts for marine ecosystems and their dynamics, in order to achieve ecosystems’ conservation and sustainable use of, and the avoidance of interference with, the ecological balance of the marine environment.] [Germany – delete] [to balance ecological, social and governance principles at appropriate temporal and spatial scales in a distinct geographical area to achieve ecosystem conservation and sustainable resource use. Scientific knowledge and effective monitoring are used to acknowledge connections, integrity and biodiversity within an ecosystem along with its dynamic nature and associated uncertainties. The ecosystem-based approach recognizes coupled socio-ecological systems, with stakeholders involved in an integrated and adaptive management process where decisions reflect societal choice.] [Germany]

“**Effect**” is the consequence or outcome of an action or activity during the project; it is typically broader and more functional than an impact.] [Germany]



**“Effective Control” or “effectively controlled”** [IWG IM] means ~~a required~~ ~~the~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~ substantial and genuine link between sponsoring State and Contractor, ~~which includes for non-State actors the location of the company’s management and beneficial ownership, as well as the ability of the sponsoring State to ensure the availability of resources of the Contractor for fulfilment of its contract with the Authority and any liability arising therefrom, through the location of such resources in the territory of the sponsoring State or otherwise~~ ~~[demonstrated by the Contractor being a national of the Sponsoring State and being subject to its effective jurisdiction and regulatory control]~~ ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ - replace]~~.

[Alt.1 “Effective Control” or “effectively controlled” means the substantial and genuine link between Sponsoring State and Contractor, demonstrated by the Contractor being a national of the Sponsoring State and being subject to its effective jurisdiction and regulatory control.] [Nauru]

**“Effective Protection”** ~~[PEW – delete]~~ [handled by the IWG ENV] ~~[means achieving the Authority’s Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives pursuant to Regulation 44ter, the regional environmental objectives, environmental thresholds and the requirements of Regulation 13(9).]~~ [Germany]

**“Eligible Royalty Payments”** [OEWG] has the meaning given in regulation [64Qua.7].

**“Eligible Tax Payments”** [OEWG] has the meaning given in regulation [64Qua.8].

**“Emergency Response and Contingency Plan”** means the document referred to in annex V.

**“Environmental Effect”** [IWG ENV] means any ~~[material]~~ ~~[Germany, PEW- delete]~~ consequences in the Marine Environment, ~~[including baseline studies for Underwater Cultural Heritage,]~~ arising from ~~[Environmental Impacts caused by]~~ [PEW] the conduct of Exploitation activities, ~~[whether]~~ ~~[Germany – delete]~~ ~~[being]~~ positive, ~~[negative]~~ ~~[Germany – remove brackets]~~, direct, indirect, temporary or permanent, ~~[or [c]Cumulative [environmental effect] [Germany - delete]~~ arising over time or in combination with other effects or impacts stressors and activities in the same area, including those not regulated by the Authority.] ~~[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]~~

[Alt 1. “Environmental Effect” [IWG ENV] means any material consequences in the Marine Environment arising from the conduct of Exploitation activities, whether positive, negative, direct, indirect, [cumulative] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], temporary or permanent.]

~~[Germany – delete Alt 1 entire]~~

**“Environmental Impact”** [IWG ENV] ~~[means]~~ ~~[Germany]~~ [changes (physical and or chemical) to the environment [(marine or air)] [Germany] resulting from [Exploitation] [Germany – delete] activities [under an exploitation contract] [Germany].]

**“Environmental Impact Assessment”** is the process of identifying, predicting, evaluating and mitigating the physicochemical, biological, socioeconomic, and other relevant effects of development proposals prior to major decisions being taken and commitments made. This includes all potential effects, both positive and negative, and encompasses natural and anthropogenic receptors.] [PEW]

**“Environmental Impact Statement”** is the documentation of the Environmental Impact Assessment, which describes the predicted effects of the project on the environment (and their significance), the measures that the applicant is committed to taking to avoid, minimise and reduce them where possible, and the remaining effects that cannot be avoided.] [PEW]

**“Environmental Management System”** [handled by the IWG ENV] means the part of the overall management system implemented by a Contractor that includes organizational structure, planning activities, responsibilities, practices, procedures, processes and resources for developing, implementing, achieving, reviewing and maintaining environmental policy, [including a survey of the seabed to identify objects of an archaeological and historical nature] objectives and environmental performance.

**[Alt. 1 “Environmental Management System”** means that part of the overall management system applied by a Contractor that includes organizational structure, planning activities, responsibilities, practices, procedures, processes and resources for developing, implementing, achieving, reviewing and maintaining environmental policy, goals and environmental performance.]

**[Alt. 2** means the part of the overall management system applied by a Contractor that includes organizational structure, planning activities, responsibilities, practices, procedures, processes and resources for developing, implementing, achieving, reviewing and maintaining environmental policy, goals, objectives and environmental performance.]

**[NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Alt1. And Alt 2 entirely]**

**[Alt. 3 “Environmental Management System”** means part of the management system used to manage environmental aspects, fulfil compliance obligations, and address risks and opportunities.]

**[“Environmental Objectives”** [IWG ENV] means a specific statement of desired environmental outcomes that represent the achievement of a Goal.] [PEW – delete]

**[ “Environmental Risk”** [IWG ENV] means the potential of an event happening that will have an adverse effect measured in terms of the severity of the environmental consequences and the likelihood of those particular consequences occurring.] [PEW – delete]

**“Environmental Risk Assessment”** [IWG ENV] means the process for identifying and evaluating Environmental Risk using a generally accepted risk assessment methodology.]

**“Environmental Performance Guarantee”** means a financial guarantee supplied under regulation 26.

**“Environmental Performance Guarantor”** means each entity or individual that provides an Environmental Performance Guarantee in accordance with these regulations.

**“Environmental Plans”** [IWG ENV] means the Environmental Impact Statement, the Environmental Management and Monitoring Plan and the Closure Plan.

**[“Equalization Measure Audit”** [OEWG] means an audit in respect of a Contractor carried out in accordance with the relevant Standard and applicable Guidelines to determine whether the Contractor has any Tax Exemptions or receives any Subsidies from its Sponsoring State.]

**“Exploit”** and **“Exploitation”** mean the recovery for commercial purposes of Resources in the Area with exclusive rights and the extraction of Minerals therefrom, including the construction and operation of mining, processing and transportation systems in area beyond national jurisdiction ~~the Area~~, for the production and marketing of metals, as well as the Decommissioning and Closure of mining operations.

**“Exploitation Contract”** means an exploitation contract entered into between the Authority and a Contractor in the form prescribed in annex IX to these regulations.

“**Exploration Regulations**” means the regulations on prospecting and exploration for polymetallic nodules in the Area, the regulations on prospecting and exploration for polymetallic sulphides in the Area and the regulations on prospecting and exploration for cobalt-rich ferromanganese crusts in the Area, as the case may be and as replaced or amended by the Council from time to time.

“**Explore**” and “**Exploration**”, as applicable, mean the searching for Resources in the Area with exclusive rights, the analysis of such Resources, the use and testing of recovery systems and equipment, processing facilities and transportation systems and the carrying out of studies of the environmental, technical, economic, commercial and other appropriate factors that must be taken into account in Exploitation.

“**Facilities-maritime infrastructure-floating platforms**” [PEW – delete] [handled by IWG ENV]

“**Feasibility Study**” means a comprehensive study of a mineral deposit in which all geological, engineering, legal, operating, economic, social, environmental and other relevant factors are considered.

“**Final Closure Plan**” [IWG ENV] means the version of a Contractor’s Closure Plan that has been approved by the Council pursuant to Regulation [60(8)].

“**financial incentive**” [OEWG] means [a financial grant or reduction of amounts otherwise payable to the Authority which otherwise complies with the requirements for financial incentives in these Regulations and in Standards and Guidelines.]

“**Financing Plan**” means the document referred to in annex III.

“**force majeure**” means [...]. [OEWG]

“**Good Industry Practice**” [IWG ENV] “**Best Industry Practice**” means the exercise of that degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which would reasonably and ordinarily be expected to be applied by a skilled and experienced person engaged in the marine mining industry and other related extractive industries worldwide and includes meeting the performance requirements under any Rules of the Authority, and relevant Standards. [based on Best Environmental Practice, which is based on Best Available Scientific Information and Best Available Technology]. [Employment of the latest widely accepted stage of development (state of the art) of processes, of facilities or of methods of operation, consistent with the Fundamental Principles, including using skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which is an would reasonably be expected to be applied by a skilled and experienced person engaged in the marine mining industry] [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

Alt 1. the exercise of the degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which would reasonably and ordinarily be expected to be applied by a skilled and experienced person engaged in the marine mining industry and other related extractive industries worldwide [and includes meeting the performance requirements under the Rules of the Authority] [PEW].

“**Guidelines**” means such documents that provide guidance [support on the implementation of the Regulations] on technical and administrative matters, issued by [the] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete] organs of the Authority [/[Commission and the Secretary-General, respectively] pursuant to regulation 95. [Guidelines will also clarify documentation requirements for an application, detail process requirements (e.g. for the public consultation process, annual reporting and periodic review), and provide guidance on the interpretation of regulatory provisions. Guidelines are generally considered as recommendatory]. [Germany – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Alt “Guidelines” means a document that supports the implementation of the Regulations from an administrative and technical perspective. Guidelines will also

clarify documentation requirements for an application, detail process requirements (e.g. for the public consultation process, annual reporting and periodic review), and provide guidance on the interpretation of regulatory provisions. The Guidelines are recommendations and not requirements]. [Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

**“Impact”** is the influence of an action or activity on inter alia the biological, chemical, or physical environment, or sociocultural or economic values.] [Germany]

**“Impact area”** means the zone or region on the seafloor and in the water column subject to measurable effects from activities under an exploitation contract related to one or several mining area(s).] [Germany]

**“Impact reference zone”** (or “IRZ”) [IWG ENV] means a zone designated within the Contract Area [in accordance with Annex XX to these regulations] that is representative of the environmental characteristics of the Contract Area, is predicted to be impacted by mining activities, and will be used to assess the effects of activities under an exploitation contract [Germany] the Exploitation [Germany – delete] on the marine environment, including by way of comparison with the Preservation reference zones.

**“Incident”** means an event, or sequence of events, where activities in the Area result in:

(a) A marine Incident or a marine casualty as defined in the Code of International Standards and Recommended Practices for a Safety Investigation into a Marine Casualty or Marine Incident (Casualty Investigation Code, effective 1 January 2010);

(b) A significant unanticipated or unpermitted adverse impact [Serious Harm] to the Marine Environment or to other existing legitimate sea uses, whether accidental or not, or a situation in which such  Serious Harm to the Marine Environment adverse impact was only narrowly avoided is a reasonably foreseeable consequence of the situation; and/or

(c) Damage to a submarine cable or pipeline, or any Installation.

**“Incidents Register”** means a register to be maintained by the Contractor on board a mining vessel or Installation to record any Incidents or notifiable events ~~a register maintained under regulation 33 (2) (e).~~

**“Inclusion Criteria”** [OEWG] means a substantial (but not necessarily the majority or primary) part of (i) its business is connected to or associated with, and/or (ii) its revenues are derived from, mining, harvesting, transporting, processing and/or sale of Minerals or Metals obtained under an exploitation contract.]

**“Income”** [OEWG] has the meaning given to ‘GloBE Income’ in the [Pillar 2 Global Anti-Base Erosion Model Rules published by the OECD] from time to time [NORI, TOML, BMJ].]

**“Independent Auditor”** [OEWG] means an auditor appointed by [...] to conduct an audit in respect of a Contractor and/or its Related Entities in accordance with the relevant Standards and applicable Guidelines.]

**“Indirect Transfer”** means the indirect transfer of interest in any entity or entities holding rights under a Contract as defined in this Standard.] [Canada]

**“Inspector”** means a person acting under Part XI of these regulations.

**“Installations”** includes, insofar as they are used for carrying out activities in the Area, structures and platforms, whether stationary or mobile.

~~**“Intangible Cultural Heritage”** [handled by the IWG ENV] means the practices, representations, expressions, knowledge, skills — as well as the instruments, objects,~~

~~artifacts and cultural spaces associated therewith – that communities, groups and, in some cases, individuals recognize as part of their cultural heritage (as defined by the UNESCO 2003 Convention for the safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage).]~~

**“Intangible Cultural Heritage”** [handled by the IWG ENV] means the practices, representations, expressions, knowledge, skills – as well as the instruments, objects, artifacts and cultural spaces associated therewith – that communities, groups and, in some cases, individuals recognize as part of their cultural heritage (as defined by the UNESCO 2003 Convention for the safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage).] [Germany]

**“Intangible [underwater] cultural heritage”** refers to practices, representations, expressions, knowledge, skills, and traditions that are transmitted from generation to generation – as expressed in the instruments, objects, artefacts, flora, fauna and cultural spaces associated therewith – that communities, groups, or, in some cases, individuals recognize as part of their cultural heritage; and relate to the underwater environment and its interaction with human cultures. This may include, but is not limited to, traditional navigation knowledge, oral histories associated with maritime landscapes, spiritual and ritual practices linked to water bodies, and artisanal fishing techniques.]] [Nauru; NORI, TOML, BMJ]

**“Intangible underwater cultural heritage”** refers to practices, representations, expressions, knowledge, skills, and traditions that are transmitted from generation to generation – as expressed in the instruments, objects, artefacts, flora, fauna and cultural spaces associated therewith – that communities, groups, or, in some cases, individuals recognize as part of their cultural heritage; and relate to the underwater environment and its interaction with human cultures. This may include, but is not limited to, traditional navigation knowledge, oral histories associated with maritime landscapes, spiritual and ritual practices linked to water bodies, and artisanal fishing techniques.]] [IWG on UCH]

**“Interference with the Ecological Balance of the Marine Environment”**] [PEW - delete] [handled by the IWG ENV]

**“large scale production”** [OEWG] means exploitation, production or removal from the Area of mineral-bearing ore in a quantity which is in excess of the thresholds specified in the Standards.

**“Managing Company”** means [to be discussed at a later stage]] [Netherlands]

**“Marine Environment”** [IWG ENV] includes the physical, chemical, [oceanographic] geological, genetic, and biological components, conditions and factors which interact and determine the productivity, state, condition and quality and connectivity of the marine ecosystem(s), [the underwater cultural heritage] [Germany] [~~the underwater cultural heritage~~], the waters of the seas and oceans and the airspace above those waters, [species, biodiversity, ecosystems,] as well as the seabed and ocean floor and subsoil thereof.

**“Material Change”** means a [substantial] [significant] change that affects [to] the basis on which [~~the~~] [an] original report, document or plan, including a Plan of Work, was accepted or approved by the Authority, and includes changes such as physical modifications, [changes to harmful effects of activities on the Marine Environment, [other environmental] effects or effects on stakeholders], the availability of new knowledge or technology and changes to operational management that are to be considered in light of the applicable Guideline[s].] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Alt “Material Change” means a substantial or significant change to the basis on which the original report, document or plan, including a Plan of Work, was accepted or approved by the Authority.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

[Alt 2 “Material Change” means a change that effects the fundamental basis on which the original report, document or plan, including a Plan of Work, was accepted or approved by the Authority.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

“Metal” means any metal contained in a Mineral.

“Minerals” means Resources that have been recovered from the Area.

“mineral-bearing ore” means [...]. [OEWG]

“Mining Area” means the part or parts within the Contract Area [from which minerals will be extracted, as] [Germany – remove brackets], described in a Plan of Work, as may be modified from time to time in accordance with these regulations.

“Mining Discharge” means any sediment, waste or other effluent directly resulting from Exploitation, including shipboard or Installation processing immediately above a mine site of Minerals recovered from that mine site [and includes but is not limited to, disposal, spilling, leaking, pumping, emitting, emptying, or discharging].

“Mining Workplan” means the document referred to in Annex II, [including any modifications made from time to time in accordance with these Regulations] [NORI, TOML, BMJ; Nauru].

“Mitigate” and “Mitigation” [means acting/an action or activity intended to remedy, reduce or offset known [potential] [potential] [Germany – replace] negative impacts to the environment. These occur in a strict hierarchy] [includes]:

(a) Avoiding an Environmental Effect altogether by undertaking or not undertaking a certain activity or parts of an activity;

(b) For Environmental Effects that cannot be avoided, mMinimizing effects by limiting the degree or magnitude of the activity and its implementation [to the extent practicable and necessary to ensure protection of the Marine Environment];

(c) For Environmental Effects that cannot be avoided or minimised rRectifying the effect by repairing, rehabilitating or restoring the affected Marine Environment; and

(d) For Environmental Effects that cannot be avoided, minimised or rectified, rReducing or eliminating the impact over time through preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the mining activity;:-

[[(e)Offsetting, only as a last resort.] [Germany – delete] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

[“monopolize” [OEWG] means the ability to control over 75 per cent of the estimated annual volume of similar mineral-bearing ore exploited, produced or removed from the Area after Commercial Production has occurred in respect of at least two exploitation contracts.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

“Net Financial Gain” refers to the monetary amount (in United States dollars) equal to the gross consideration received by the Transferor minus the paid-in capital of the Transferor.] [Canada]

“Parent Company Liability Statement” means the statement that is to be validly signed by the Contractor and the Contractor’s Managing Company on behalf of those companies, and provided by the Contractor as Schedule 14 to the Exploitation Contract, as amended from, yet substantially in the same form as, Annex XI to these Regulations.] [Netherlands]

["Pilot Mining" means an in situ operating of the integrated system of all equipment and all related process steps, including collector, raiser and release techniques, for exploitation activities in a Contract Area under appropriate technical, spatial and temporal conditions which provides evidence concerning, inter alia, environmental impact, commercial capacity, duration of operations to validate feasibility of future Commercial Production.] [China]

"Plan of Work" means a Plan of Work for Exploitation in the Area, defined collectively as all and any plans or other documents setting out the activities for the conduct of the Exploitation, which form part of, or is proposed to be part of, an exploitation contract.

"Preservation" [handled by the IWG ENV] means [\[the maintenance of the environment, lands and natural resources in a pristine form\]](#) [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete], [without anthropogenic use beyond access.](#)

"Preservation reference zone" (or "PRZ") [IWG ENV] means a zone designated within the Contract Area in accordance with Annex [XX] to these regulations that has been identified as having similar ecological characteristics to an Impact reference zone, and within which no mining impacts are predicted to occur, which will be used to show a representative and stable ecosystem from the sea surface to the benthic subsurface layers, and can be used to form a comparison with an Impact reference zone.

[\["Profits" \[OEWG\] has the meaning given in regulation \[64Qua.5\].\]](#)

[\["Profit Share Audit" \[OEWG\] means an audit in respect of a Contractor carried out in accordance with the relevant Standard and applicable Guidelines to verify a Top-up Profit Share Return and related Top-up Profit Share Payment.\]](#)

"Proponent" [handled by the IWG ENV]

"Protection" [IWG ENV] [means any action or activity designed to reduce or prevent pollution, negative environmental impacts or other damage to environment, land, ecosystems or](#) [,] [Nauru - replace] [natural resources](#) [, traditional ownership or customary use of resources, human remains and underwater cultural heritage, or intangible underwater cultural heritage] [Nauru] [\[\[remains, or Underwater Cultural Heritage\] \[IWG on UCH\] by human activities, including to mitigate climate change, to reduce the risk of such damage, to protect and restore biodiversity or to lead to more efficient use of natural resources, including energy-saving measures and the use of renewable sources of energy and other techniques to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and other pollutants, as well as to shift to circular economy models to reduce the use of primary materials and increase efficiencies. It also covers actions that reinforce adaptive capacity and minimise vulnerability to climate impacts](#)

"Rare and Fragile Ecosystems" [handled by the IWG ENV]

"Rehabilitation" [IWG ENV] [\[occurs when an ecosystem recovers certain characteristics of, \[or resemblance to,\] \[Germany – delete\] its natural state, such as the presence of \[certain\] \[Germany – delete\] \[all previous\] \[Germany\] species, functions or services\[, without necessarily aiming at exhaustiveness\] \[Germany – delete\].\]](#)

"Regional environmental management plan" [handled by the IWG ENV]

[\["Related Entities" \[OEWG\] means, in respect of a Contractor, \[the 'Group Entities' that are part of the same 'Group' as the Contractor, where 'Group Entity' and Group' have the meanings given to those terms in the \[Pillar 2 Global Anti-Base Erosion Model Rules published by the OECD\] from time to time\].\]](#)

[\["related parties" \[OEWG\] means parties that belong to the same corporate structure, such as a parent and subsidiary company, or sister companies which are both subsidiaries of the same parent company, and a state enterprise shall be considered a "related party" vis-à-vis its host State party or a contractor sponsored by its host State](#)

party unless evidence is provided that any costs, prices and revenues have been charged or determined on an arm's-length basis.]

["**Relevant Activities**" [OEWG] means all activities and business operations which are connected or associated with the mining, harvesting, transporting, processing and/or sale of Minerals or Metals obtained under an exploitation contract].]

**"Reserved Area"** means any part of the Area designated by the Authority as a reserved area in accordance with article 8 of annex III to the Convention.

**"Resources"** [IWG ENV] means all solid, liquid or gaseous mineral resources, [mineral-bearing ore, associated minerals, or mixture thereof] in situ in the Area at or beneath the seabed, including: (a) polymetallic nodules, defined as any deposit or accretion of nodules, on or below the surface of the deep seabed, which contain metals such as manganese, nickel, cobalt and copper; (b) polymetallic sulphides, defined as hydrothermally formed deposits of sulphides and accompanying mineral resources in the Area which contain concentrations of metals such as copper, lead, zinc, gold and silver; and (c) cobalt crusts, defined as cobalt-rich ferromanganese hydroxide/oxide deposits formed from direct precipitation of Minerals from seawater onto hard substrates containing concentrations of metals such as cobalt, titanium, nickel, platinum, molybdenum, tellurium, cerium and other metallic and rare earth elements. [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete]

**"Resource Category"** [polymetallic nodules, polymetallic sulphides, or cobalt crust] [PEW] [handled by the IWG ENV]

**"Restoration"** [IWG ENV] means [a return to pre-disturbance conditions, [implying complete re-creation of a system]] [PEW – delete]

**"Rules of the Authority"** means [the Convention], [the Agreement].] [Germany – delete] these regulations and other rules, regulations and procedures of the Authority [including Standards.] [Germany – remove brackets] [and Guidelines] [decisions of the Council or Assembly of the Authority, and any other ISA instruments expressed as being binding upon Contractors] [Germany – remove brackets] as may be adopted from time to time.

**"Seabed Mining Register"** means the registry established and maintained by the Authority in accordance with regulation 92.

**"Serious Harm"** [IWG ENV] means any effect from activities in the Area on the Marine Environment which represents a [n [unlawful]] significant adverse change in the Marine Environment [outside of the Mining Area and that is irreversible or lasts for multiple generations of the relevant population,] [NORI, TOML, BMJ] determined according to the rules, regulations and procedures adopted by the Authority on the basis of internationally recognized standards and practices informed by Best Available Scientific [Evidence] [Information] [Germany – delete] [and, where available, relevant traditional knowledge of Indigenous Peoples and local communities] [Micronesia].

[Alt. "Serious Harm to the Marine Environment" means an Environmental Effect that, individually in combination or cumulatively meets any of the following criteria:

- \_\_ (a) it is not likely to be redressed through natural recovery within a reasonable period;
- \_\_ (b) it impairs the ability of affected populations to replace themselves;
- \_\_ (c) it degrades the long-term natural productivity of habitats or ecosystems;
- \_\_ (d) causes, on a more than temporary basis, a [significant] [PEW- delete] loss of species richness or biological diversity, including community structure, genetic connectivity among populations, ecosystem functioning and ecosystem services on the



seabed, at the sea surface, and in midwater and in the benthic boundary layer, or habitat; or

(e) [any other] [PEW] criteria [for significance] [PEW – delete] contained in the relevant Regional Environmental Management Plan, or Standards.]

[Germany – remove brackets enclosing Alt.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Alt entirely]

**“Sound commercial principles”** means] [...]

**“Special Circumstances”** means] [...]

**“Sponsoring State”** means a State party or parties to the Convention which submits a certificate of sponsorship of an applicant[, and a certificate of registration for any ships/vessels or installations used to undertake activities in the Area] [Canada] in accordance with regulation 6.

**“Stakeholder”** means a natural or juristic person or an association of persons ~~[[including Indigenous Peoples as well as local communities,] [IWG on UCH]~~ with an interest of any kind in, or who may be affected by, the proposed or existing Exploitation activities under a Plan of Work in the Area, or who has relevant information, [knowledge] or expertise.

**“Standards”** means such technical and other standards and protocols, including performance and process requirements, adopted pursuant to regulation 94. [Standards have to be considered as mandatory.]

[[Alt.1 “Standards” means methodological, procedural, technical or environmental rules that are necessary to implement the regulations and to ensure a coherent approach to monitoring and assessment, including performance and process requirements, adopted pursuant to regulation 94. Standards are legally binding on Contractors and the Authority”.]

[Germany, NORI, TOML, BMJ – delete Standards and Alt 1. Entirely]

[Alt.2. “Standards” means such documents adopted by the Authority pursuant to regulation 94.] [NORI, TOML, BMJ – remove brackets]

**[Strategic Environmental Goals and Objectives** means the goals pursuant to Regulation 44ter(6) and the objectives pursuant to Regulation 44ter(7).] [Germany]

**“Subsidies”** means [...].] [OEWG]

**“sustained large-scale recovery operations”** [OEWG] means the exploitation, production or removal from the Area of mineral-bearing ore in a systematic manner over a minimum period specified in the Standards and which constitutes large-scale production.]

**“Suitably Qualified Person”** [OEWG] means a person qualified to conduct a valuation of mineral-bearing ore in accordance with the relevant standards of the International Organization for Standardization and who otherwise complies with the requirements for a Suitably Qualified Person in Standards and Guidelines.]

[Alt. 1. “Suitably Qualified Person” means a person qualified to prepare a valuation report in accordance with relevant industry standards.] [Canada]

**“Synergistic Impacts”** [IWG ENV] means joint effects caused for the interaction of two or more simultaneous activities that result in a combined effect that is greater than the sum of individual and isolated effects.

**“Tax Exemptions”** [OEWG] means [any reductions in or exemptions or relief from generally applicable tax which would have otherwise been applicable to a Contractor].]

**["Tangible underwater cultural heritage"** refers to all traces of human existence found in the Area which have been underwater for at least 100 years, having a cultural, historical or archaeological character, or are associated with intangible underwater cultural heritage, such as human remains, objects of prehistoric character, sites, structures, buildings, artifacts, vessels, aircraft, other vehicles or any part thereof, their cargo or other contents, together with their archaeological and natural context. [It also refers to objects or sites which are the subject of intangible underwater cultural heritage.] [IWG on UCH]

["Test mining" means an in situ testing of the integrated system of all equipment and all related processing steps (including collector, riser system and release systems) of exploitation activities, at a scale that allows meaningful upscaling of results, in a contract area under technical, spatial and temporal conditions that provide evidence in support of the application for a Plan of Work for Exploitation, and assist the Commission and the Council in its evaluation of the application against the criteria contained in Regulation 13 and 15.] [Germany]

[Alt. 1 "Test mining" means the use and testing of a fully integrated and functional mining system including collection systems and water discharge systems.] [China]

["Top-up Profit Share Payment" [OEWG] means the top-up profit share payment payable in accordance with regulation [64Bis] and [64Qua].]

["Top-up Profit Share Return" [OEWG] means a return in relation to a Top-up Profit Share Payment in the form and with the content prescribed by the relevant Standards and taking into account the Guidelines.]

["Total Eligible Payments" [OEWG] has the meaning given in regulation [64Qua.6].]

["Transfer" refers to any Direct Transfer or Indirect Transfer as defined in this Standard.] [Canada]

["Transferee" [OEWG] means an entity to which a Contractor may transfer, or has transferred, its rights and obligations under an exploitation contract in accordance with Regulation 23.]

[Alt 1. "Transferee" means an entity or entities to which a Contract, as defined in this Standard, may be transferred directly or indirectly.] [Canada]

["Transferor" means an entity or entities which may transfer a Contract, as defined in this Standard, directly or indirectly. ] [Canada]

["Transfer Profit Share" [means [...].]] [refers to a levy imposed by the ISA on the Transfer of any asset(s) and/or right(s) under a Contract as defined in this Standard] [Canada] [OEWG]

["Transfer Profit Share Return" means any document or form submitted by the Transferor which serves the purpose of determining the Transfer Profit Share liability as established pursuant this Standard.] [Canada]

["Transfer Profit Share Payment Certificate" means an official document issued by the Authority confirming the legal payment of a Transfer Profit Share consistent with relevant regulations and applicable standards.] [Canada]

["Ultimate Beneficial Owner" means each individual who ultimately owns or controls, directly or indirectly and legally or nonbeneficially, shares, capital, a right to profits or

voting rights of the Applicant or any individual who otherwise exercises control over the management of the Applicant.

~~["Underwater Cultural Heritage"[IWG ENV] means all traces of human existence having a cultural, historical or archaeological character (as defined by the UNESCO 2001 Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage) including, but not limited to all objects of an archaeological and historical nature found in the Area (which must be treated in accordance with Article 149 of the Convention), and Intangible Cultural as well as paleontological objects (fossils).]~~

**["Underwater Cultural Heritage"[[IWG ENV]].] means all traces of human existence having a cultural, historical or archaeological character (as defined by the UNESCO 2001 Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage) including, but not limited to all objects of an archaeological and historical nature found in the Area (which must be treated in accordance with Article 149 of the Convention), and Intangible Cultural as well as paleontological objects (fossils).] [Germany]**

**["Underwater cultural heritage" includes tangible and intangible underwater cultural heritage.] [IWG on UCH]**